C2665dnf | Dell Document Hub
Color Laser Multifunction Printer

User's Guide

Contents

Setting up the Printer (Printer Setup) 41

Using Your Printer 107

Printing, Copying, Scanning, Faxing, and Dell Document Hub 305

Maintaining Your Printer 465

Before Beginning

Notes, Cautions, and Warnings

NOTE: A **NOTE** indicates important information that helps you make better use of your printer.

CAUTION: A CAUTION indicates potential damage to hardware or loss of data if instructions are not followed.

WARNING: A WARNING indicates a potential for property damage, personal injury, or death.

As for RSA BSAFE

This printer includes RSA BSAFE® Cryptographic software from EMC Corporation.

Dell™ C2665dnf Color Laser Multifunction Printer User's Guide

Click the links to the left for information on the features, options, and operation of your Dell C2665dnf Color Laser Multifunction Printer. For information on other documentation included with your Dell C2665dnf Color Laser Multifunction Printer, see "Finding Information."

NOTE: In this manual, Dell C2665dnf Color Laser Multifunction Printer is referred to as the "printer."

NOTE: In this manual, the procedures for the computer are explained using Microsoft® Windows® 7 unless stated otherwise.

Conventions

The following describe the meaning of the symbols and fonts used in this manual:

Bold texts	:	• Names of hardware button on the operator panel.
		• Screen name on the touch panel.
		• Menus, commands, windows, or dialog boxes displayed on the computer screen.
Texts in `Courier New` font	:	• Menus and messages displayed on the touch panel.
		• Characters entered from the computer.
		• Directory paths.
< >	:	• Key on the keyboard of the computer.
→	:	• Indicates a path to a certain item within a procedure on a computer.
" "	:	• Cross references in this manual.
		• Characters entered from the operator panel.
		• Messages displayed on the computer screen.

Finding Information

What are you looking for?	Find it here
• Drivers for my printer • My *User's Guide*	*Software and Documentation* disc The *Software and Documentation* disc contains setup video, documentation, and drivers for your printer. You can use the *Software and Documentation* disc to install drivers or access your setup video and documentation. Readme files may be included on your *Software and Documentation* disc to provide last-minute updates about technical changes to your printer or advanced technical reference material for experienced users or technicians.
• How to use my printer	*Quick Reference Guide* 📝 **NOTE:** *Quick Reference Guide* may not be included in the package for some regions.
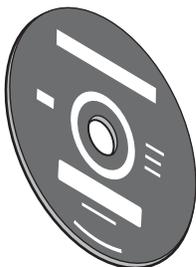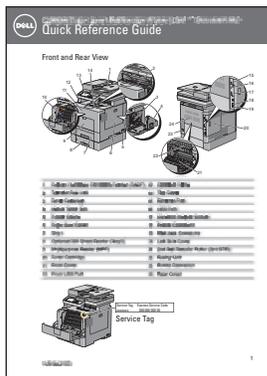
What are you looking for?	Find it here
• Safety information	*Important Information*
• Warranty information	
	⚠ **WARNING: Read and follow all safety instructions in the *Important Information* prior to setting up and operating your printer.**
• How to set up my printer	*Setup diagram*
• Express Service Code and Service Tag	
	Service Tag · Express Service Code xxxxxxx · 000 000 000 00
	The Express Service Code and Service Tag are located inside the front cover of your printer.
• Latest drivers for my printer	Go to **dell.com/support**.
• Documentation for my printer	
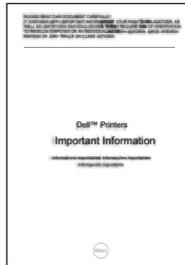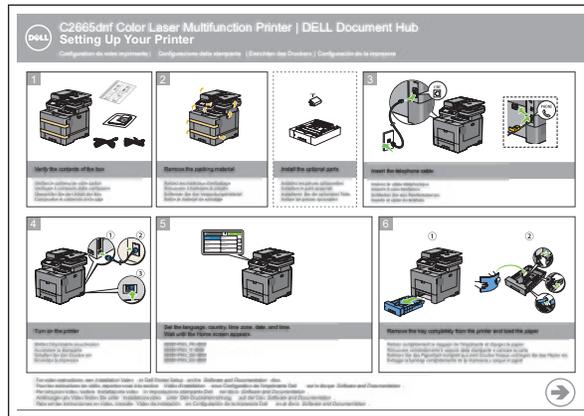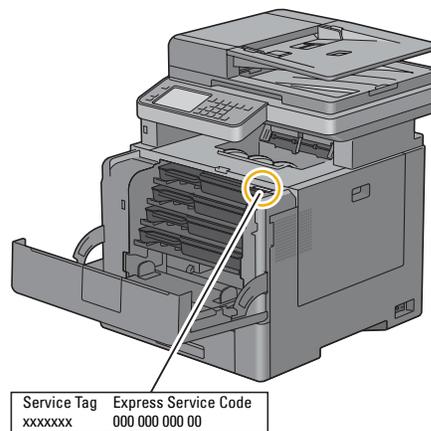
What are you looking for?	Find it here
• Answers to technical service and support questions	**dell.com/support** provides several online tools, including: • Solutions — Troubleshooting hints and tips, articles from technicians, and online courses • Upgrades — Upgrade information for components, such as the printer drivers • Customer Care — Contact information, order status, warranty, and repair information • Downloads — Drivers • Manuals— Printer documentation and product specifications Go to **dell.com/support**. Select your region, and fill in the requested details to access help tools and information.

3

Product Features

This chapter describes the product features and indicates their links.

Converting and storing with Dell Document Hub
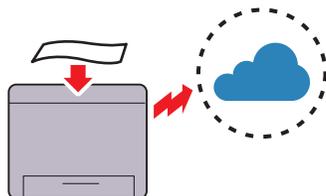
With the Dell Document Hub, you can scan hard copy documents and store them directly in your preferred cloud storage service. You can also convert hard copy documents into editable digital content before sending them to the cloud storage.

Printing with Dell Document Hub
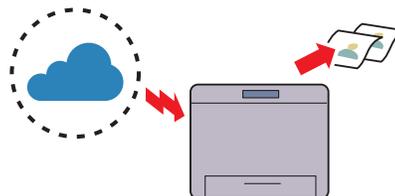
With the Dell Document Hub, you can easily locate and print documents stored in cloud storage. You can also search for files across multiple clouds storage services simultaneously.

Printing from USB Memory (USB Direct Print)
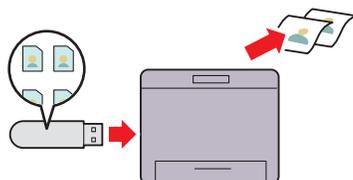
The USB Direct Print feature enables you to print files directly from a USB memory without requiring you to start your computer and an application.

Using the ID Copy (ID Copy)
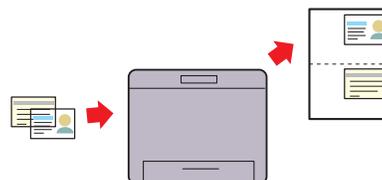
You can copy both sides of an ID card on one side of a single sheet of paper in its original size by tapping ID Copy on the touch panel. This feature helps to show both sides of an ID card in one page in its original size.

Sending an E-Mail With the Scanned Image (Scan to E-mail)
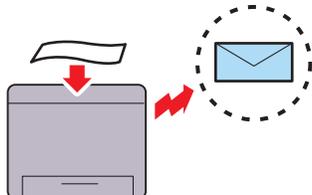
When you want to send scanned data by e-mail, use the Scan to E-mail feature. You can directly send the data scanned as an e-mail attachment. You can choose destination e-mail addresses from the address book on the printer or server. Or, you can enter the address from the touch panel on the printer's operator panel.

Scanning to a PC or Server via SMB/FTP (Scan to Network)
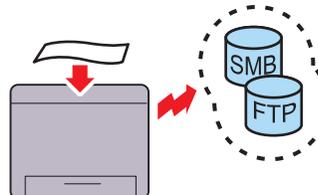
You can transfer data scanned to a PC or a server via SMB or FTP without service software. Although prior registration of the destination FTP server or PC on the address book is required, it helps save your time.

Scanning to a USB Memory (Scan to USB)
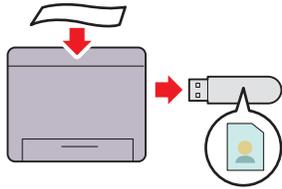
With the Scan to USB feature, you don't need a PC to connect a USB memory. You can specify the USB memory inserted into the printer's port as a data saving location when you scan data.

Making Copies From the DADF (Scan From DADF)
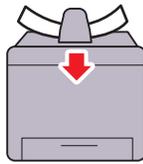
You can scan pieces of unbound paper using the duplex automatic document feeder (DADF). When you scan documents using the DADF, load them facing up.

Making Copies From the Document Glass (Scan From Document Glass)

You can scan the pages of a book or a brochure from the document glass. When you scan documents using the document glass, place them facing down.

4

About the Printer

This chapter provides an overview of your Dell™ C2665dnf Color Laser Multifunction Printer.

Front and Rear View

Front View
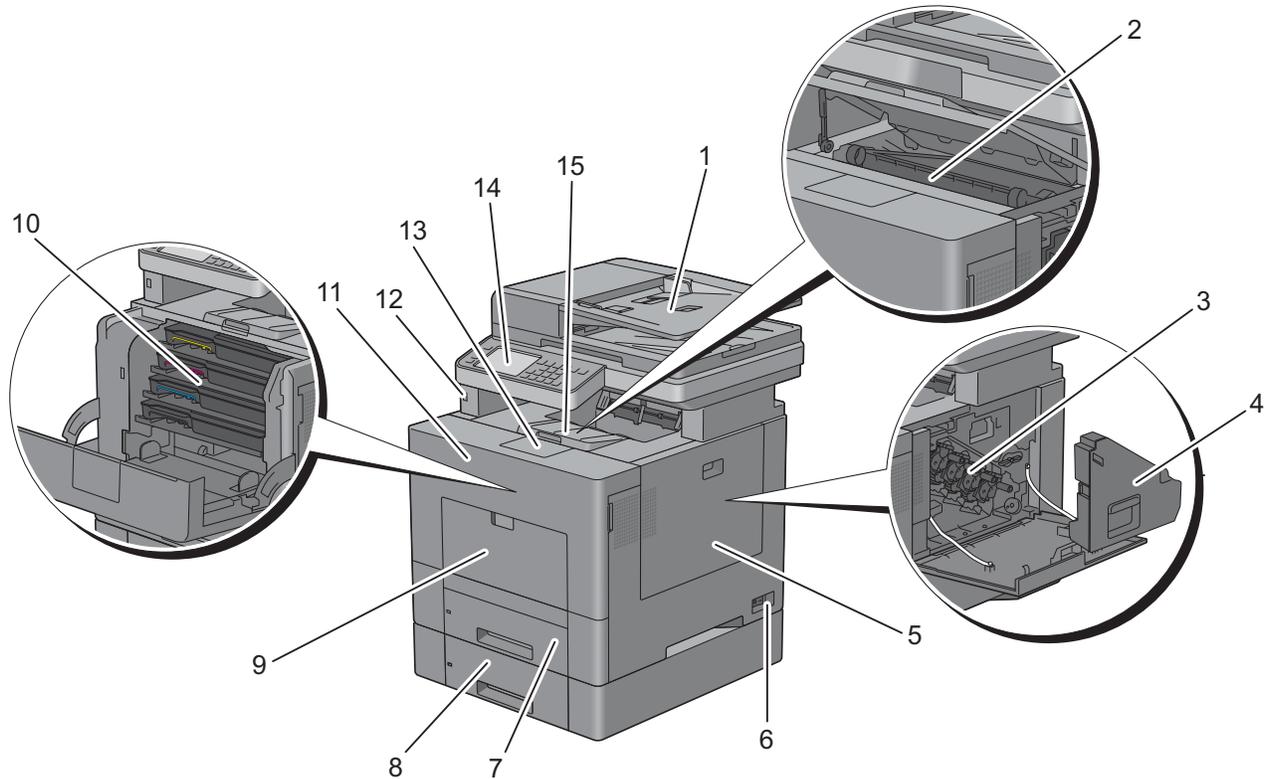
1	Duplex Automatic Document Feeder (DADF)	9	Multipurpose Feeder (MPF)
2	Transfer Belt Unit	10	Toner Cartridges
3	Drum Cartridges	11	Front Cover
4	Waste Toner Box	12	Front USB Port
5	Right Side Cover	13	Output Tray Extension
6	Power Switch	14	Operator Panel
7	Tray1	15	Top Cover
8	Optional 550-Sheet Feeder (Tray2)		

Rear View
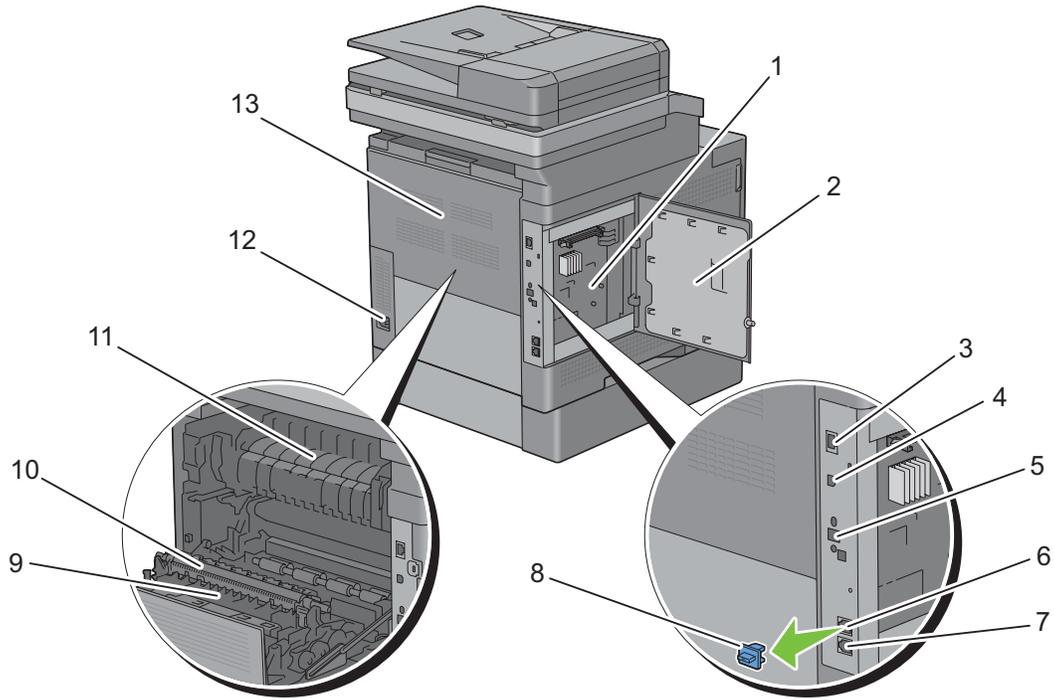
1	Control Board	8	"Blue" Plug
2	Left Side Cover	9	Duplex Unit
3	Ethernet Port	10	2nd Belt Transfer Roller (2nd BTR)
4	USB Port	11	Fusing Unit
5	Wireless Adapter Socket	12	Power Connector
6	Phone Connector	13	Rear Cover
7	Wall Jack Connector		

Duplex Automatic Document Feeder (DADF)
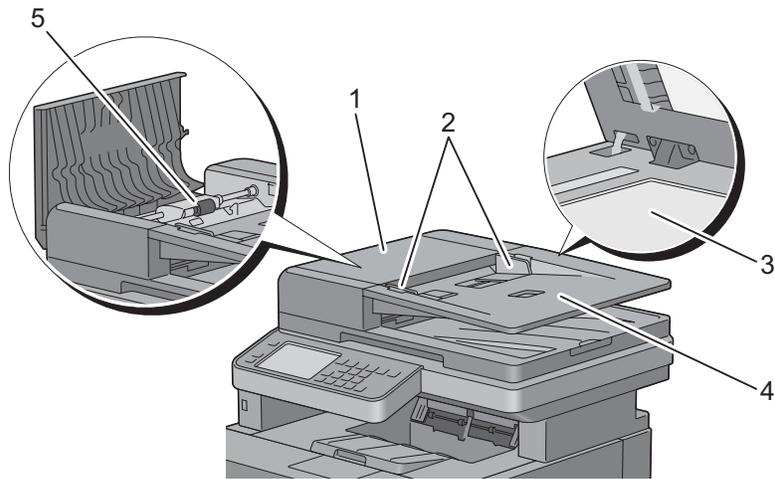
1	DADF Cover	4	Document Feeder Tray
2	Document Guides	5	DADF Feed Roller
3	Document Glass		

Space Requirements

Provide enough room to open the printer trays, covers, and optional accessories, and for proper ventilation.

320 mm/
12.60 inches

558 mm/
21.97 inches

400 mm/15.75 inches

530 mm/20.87 inches

600 mm/23.62 inches

400 mm/15.75 inches

530 mm/20.87 inches

400 mm/15.75 inches
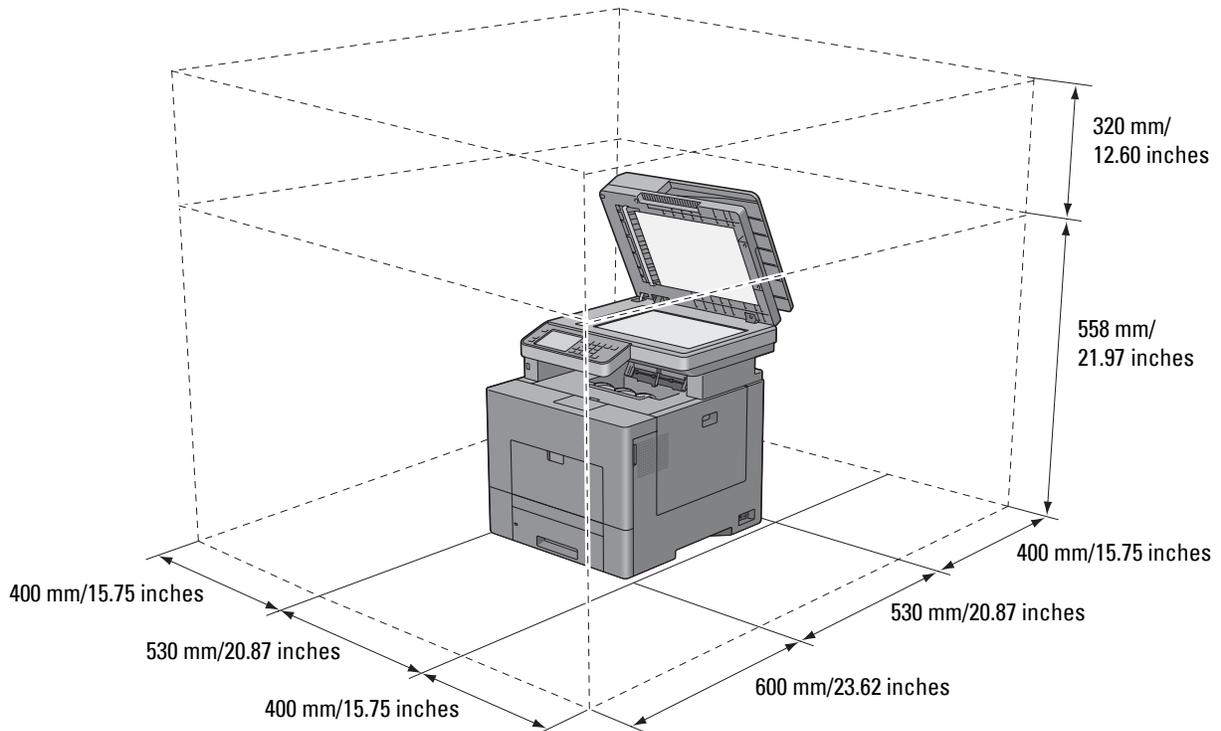
Operator Panel

For more information on the operator panel, see "About the Operator Panel."

Additional Components

Optional Accessories

The following optional accessories are available for the printer.

- Wireless adapter
- Optional 550-sheet feeder

Non-bundled Items

The following items are required for connecting the printer to a computer or a network. Please purchase them as needed.

- USB cable
- Ethernet cable

Securing the Printer

To protect your printer from theft, you can use the optional Kensington lock.

Attach the Kensington lock to the security slot on your printer.

Security Slot

Security Slot
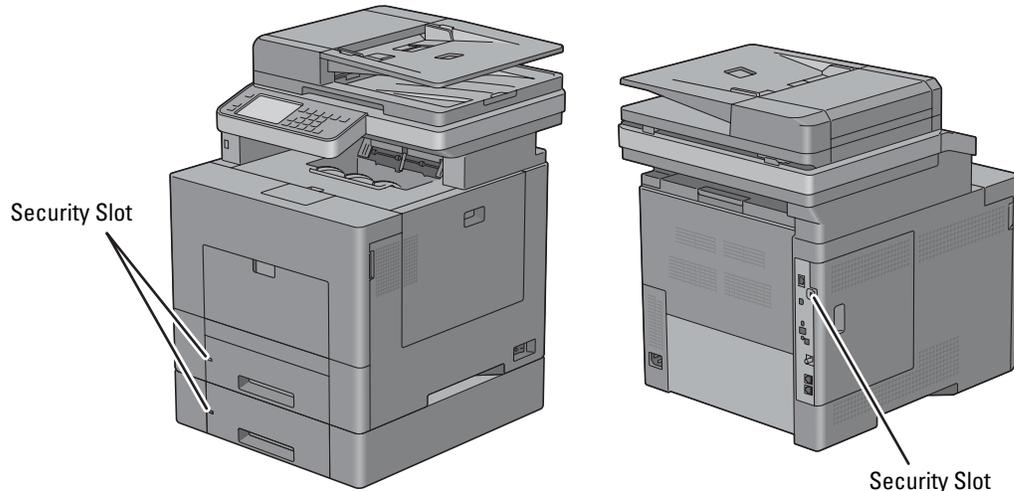
For details, see the operating instructions supplied with the Kensington lock.

Ordering Supplies

You can order consumables from Dell online when using a networked printer. Enter the IP address of your printer in your web browser, launch the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**, and click the web address under **Order Supplies at:** to order toner or supplies for your printer.

You can also order replacement toner cartridges or supplies from Dell by using the **Dell Supplies Management System**:

> ✎ **NOTE:** For Macintosh, start the Status Monitor Widget, and then select **Order Supplies** button to open **Order** window.

1 Double-click the icon on your desktop.

If you cannot find the icon on your desktop:

a Right-click **DLRMM.EXE** under `x:\abc\Dell Printers\Additional Color Laser Software\Reorder`, where `x:\abc` is the location where the printer software is installed.

b Choose **Send To** from the drop-down menu, and then click **Desktop (create shortcut)** on the submenu.

The **Dell Supplies Management System** window appears.

You can also launch the Dell Supplies Management System by clicking **Start** → **All Programs** → **Dell Printers** → **Additional Color Laser Software** → **Dell Supplies Management System**.

2 Click the **Visit Dell printer supplies ordering web site** link (**www.dell.com/supplies**), or order Dell printer supplies by phone.

To ensure that you get the best service, have your Dell printer's Service Tag ready.

For information regarding locating your Service Tag, see "Express Service Code and Service Tag."

Setting up the Printer (Printer Setup)

Preparing Printer Hardware

Removing Tape

📝 **NOTE:** The *Software and Documentation* disc also contains video instructions. On **Dell Printer Setup**, click **Installation Video**.

1 Remove tapes and the protective sheet from the printer.

6
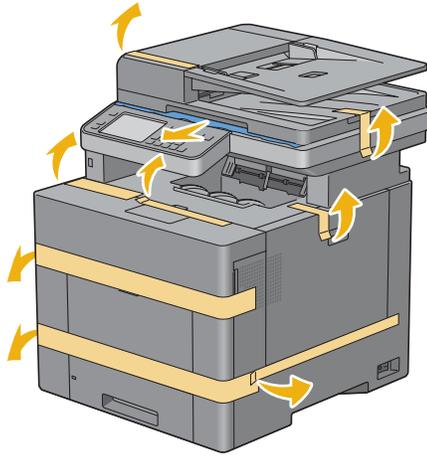
Installing Optional Accessories

You can make the printer more functional by installing the optional accessories. This chapter describes how to install the printer's options such as the optional 550-sheet feeder (tray2) and wireless adapter.

Installing the Optional 550-Sheet Feeder

⚠ **WARNING: If you install the optional 550-sheet feeder after setting up the printer, be sure to turn off the printer, unplug the power cable, and disconnect all cables from the back of the printer before starting this task.**

📝 **NOTE:** The *Software and Documentation* disc also contains video instructions. On **Dell Printer Setup**, click **Installation Video**.

1 Ensure that the printer is turned off, and then disconnect all cables from the back of the printer.

2 Remove the tape and the bag holding the screws.

   📝 **NOTE:** Save the screws as you will need them later.

3 Place the optional 550-sheet feeder in the same location that the printer is located.

4 Pull tray1 out of the printer about 200 mm.
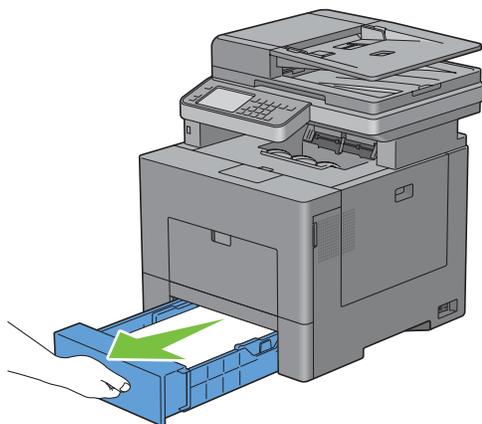
5 Hold tray1 with both hands, and remove it from the printer.
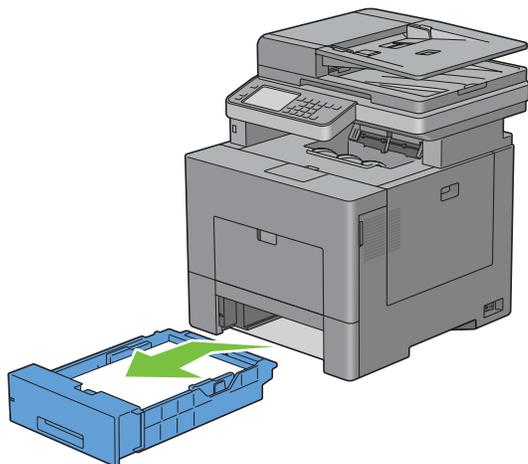
6 Lift the printer and align the five guide pins of the optional 550-sheet feeder with the holes at the bottom of the printer. Gently lower the printer onto the optional 550-sheet feeder.

⚠ **WARNING: Two people are required to lift the printer.**

⚠ **WARNING: Be careful not to pinch your fingers when lowering the printer onto the optional 550-sheet feeder.**
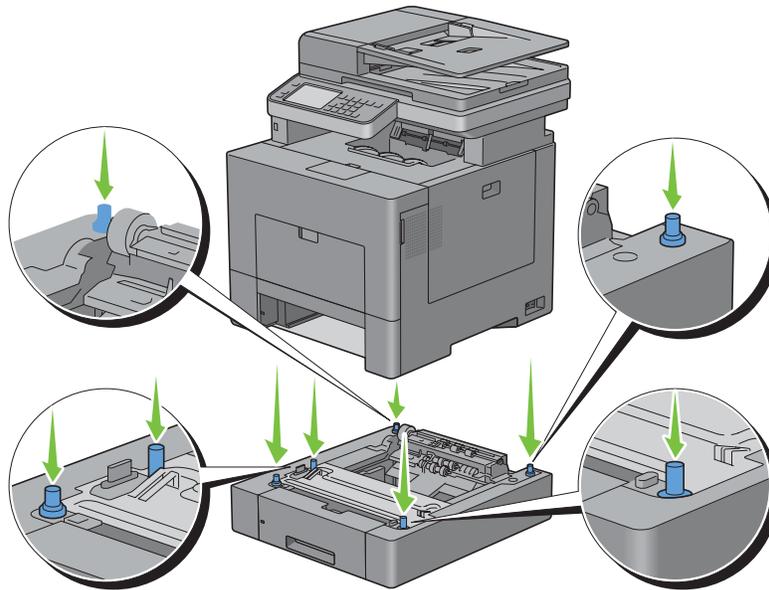
7 Secure the optional 550-sheet feeder to the printer by tightening the two screws provided with the feeder, using a coin or similar object.
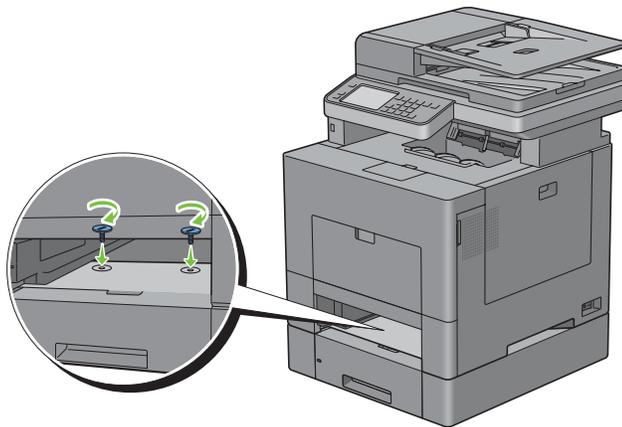
8 Insert tray1 into the printer, and push until it stops.
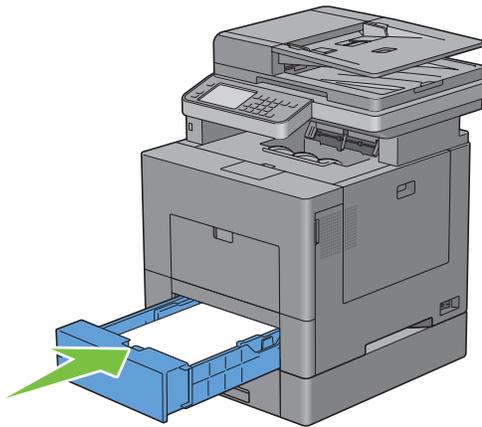
9 Re-connect all cables into the back of the printer, and turn on the printer.

> 📝 **NOTE:** The printer will automatically detect the attached tray but will not detect the paper type.

10 Print the system settings report to confirm that the optional 550-sheet feeder is installed correctly.

For details about how to print a system settings report, see "Report / List."

11 Confirm **Tray2 (550 Sheet Feeder)** is listed in the system settings report under **Printer Options**.

If the feeder is not listed, turn off the printer, unplug the power cable, and re-install the optional 550-sheet feeder.

12 After loading paper in the optional 550-sheet feeder, specify the paper type from the printer touch panel.

a Press the ⓘ (**Information**) button.

b Tap the `Tools` tab, and then tap `Tray Management`.

c Tap `Tray Settings`.

d Tap `Tray2`.

e Tap `Type`.

f Tap ▾ until the desired paper type appears, and then tap the desired paper type.

g Tap `OK`.

13 If you installed the optional 550-sheet feeder after installing the printer driver, update your driver by following the instructions for each operating system. If the printer is on a network, update the driver for each client.

Updating Your Driver to Detect 550-Sheet Feeder

When Using PCL Driver

Windows 8/ Windows 8 x64/ Windows Server 2012	**1** Under Desktop mode, right-click the bottom left corner of the screen, and then click **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** (**Hardware** for Windows Server 2012) → **Devices and Printers**. **2** Right-click the printer icon of the Dell C2665dnf Color Laser Multifunction Printer, and then select **Printer properties**. **3** Click the **Configuration** tab, and then select **Bi-Directional Setup**. **4** Select **Get Information from Printer** and then click **OK**. **5** Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**. **6** Close the **Devices and Printers** dialog box.

Windows 7/ 7 x64/ Server 2008 R2 x64	**1** Click **Start** → **Devices and Printers**. **2** Right-click the printer icon of the Dell C2665dnf Color Laser Multifunction Printer, and then select **Printer properties**. **3** Click the **Configuration** tab, and then select **Bi-Directional Setup**. **4** Select **Get Information from Printer** and then click **OK**. **5** Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**. **6** Close the **Devices and Printers** dialog box.
Windows Vista/Vista x64	**1** Click **Start** → **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** → **Printers**. **2** Right-click the printer icon of the Dell C2665dnf Color Laser Multifunction Printer, and then select **Properties**. **3** Click the **Configuration** tab, and then select **Bi-Directional Setup**. **4** Select **Get Information from Printer** and then click **OK**. **5** Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**. **6** Close the **Printers** dialog box.
Windows Server 2008/ Server 2008 x64	**1** Click **Start** → **Control Panel** → **Printers**. **2** Right-click the printer icon of the Dell C2665dnf Color Laser Multifunction Printer, and then select **Properties**. **3** Click the **Configuration** tab, and then select **Bi-Directional Setup**. **4** Select **Get Information from Printer** and then click **OK**. **5** Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**. **6** Close the **Printers** dialog box.
Windows XP/XP x64/ Server 2003/ Server 2003 x64	**1** Click **start** → **Printers and Faxes**. **2** Right-click the printer icon of the Dell C2665dnf Color Laser Multifunction Printer, and then select **Properties**. **3** Click the **Configuration** tab, and then select **Bi-Directional Setup**. **4** Select **Get Information from Printer** and then click **OK**. **5** Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**. **6** Close the **Printers and Faxes** dialog box.

If the printer information is not updated automatically after clicking **Get Information from Printer**, follow these steps:

1 Click the **Options** tab, and then select **Paper Tray Configuration** in the **Items** list box.

2 Select **Tray2** in the **Paper Tray Configuration** drop-down menu in **Change Setting for**.

3 Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.

4 Close the **Printers and Faxes**(**Printers**, or **Devices and Printers**) dialog box.

When Using PS Driver

Windows 8/ Windows 8 x64/ Windows Server 2012	**1** Under Desktop mode, right-click the bottom left corner of the screen, and then click **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** (**Hardware** for Windows Server 2012) → **Devices and Printers**. **2** Right-click the printer icon of the Dell C2665dnf Color Laser Multifunction Printer, and then select **Printer properties**. **3** Click the **Configuration** tab, and then select **Bi-Directional Setup**. **4** Select **Get Information from Printer** and then click **OK**. **5** Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**. **6** Close the **Devices and Printers** dialog box.

Windows 7/ 7 x64/ Server 2008 R2 x64	**1** Click **Start → Devices and Printers**.
	2 Right-click the printer icon of the Dell C2665dnf Color Laser Multifunction Printer, and then select **Printer properties**.
	3 Click the **Configuration** tab, and then select **Bi-Directional Setup**.
	4 Select **Get Information from Printer** and then click **OK**.
	5 Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.
	6 Close the **Devices and Printers** dialog box.
Windows Vista/Vista x64	**1** Click **Start → Control Panel → Hardware and Sound → Printers**.
	2 Right-click the printer icon of the Dell C2665dnf Color Laser Multifunction Printer, and then select **Properties**.
	3 Click the **Configuration** tab, and then select **Bi-Directional Setup**.
	4 Select **Get Information from Printer** and then click **OK**.
	5 Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.
	6 Close the **Printers** dialog box.
Windows Server 2008/ Server 2008 x64	**1** Click **Start → Control Panel → Printers**.
	2 Right-click the printer icon of the Dell C2665dnf Color Laser Multifunction Printer, and then select **Properties**.
	3 Click the **Configuration** tab, and then select **Bi-Directional Setup**.
	4 Select **Get Information from Printer** and then click **OK**.
	5 Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.
	6 Close the **Printers** dialog box.
Windows XP/XP x64/ Server 2003/ Server 2003 x64	**1** Click **Start → Printers and Faxes**.
	2 Right-click the printer icon of the Dell C2665dnf Color Laser Multifunction Printer, and then select **Properties**.
	3 Click the **Configuration** tab, and then select **Bi-Directional Setup**.
	4 Select **Get Information from Printer** and then click **OK**.
	5 Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.
	6 Close the **Printers and Faxes** dialog box.

If the printer information is not updated automatically after clicking **Get Information from Printer**, follow these steps:

1 Click the **Configuration** tab, and then select **Installable Options**.

2 Select **Paper Tray Configuration** in the **Items** list box.

3 Select **Tray2** in the **Paper Tray Configuration** drop-down menu in **Setting for**.

4 Click **OK**.

5 Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.

6 Close the **Printers and Faxes** (**Printers**, or **Devices and Printers**) dialog box.

Mac OS X 10.7.x/10.8.x	**1** Select the **Print & Scan** in **System Preferences**.
	2 Select the printer in **Printers** list, and click **Options & Supplies**.
	3 Select **Driver**, select the options that have been installed on the printers, and then click **OK**.
Mac OS X 10.5.x/10.6.x	**1** Select the **Print & Fax** in **System Preferences**.
	2 Select the printer in **Printers** list, and click **Options & Supplies**.
	3 Select **Driver**, select the options that have been installed on the printers, and then click **OK**.

When Using XML Paper Specification (XPS) Driver

📝 **NOTE:** The XPS driver does not support Windows XP, XP x64, Windows Server 2003, and Server 2003 x64.

Windows 8/ Windows 8 x64/ Windows Server 2012	**1** Under Desktop mode, right-click the bottom left corner of the screen, and then click **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** (**Hardware** for Windows Server 2012) → **Devices and Printers**.
	2 Right-click the printer icon of the Dell C2665dnf Color Laser Multifunction Printer, and then select **Printer properties**.
	3 Click the **Device Setting** tab, and then select **Available** in **Tray2** drop-down menu.
	4 Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.
	5 Close the **Devices and Printers** dialog box.
Windows 7/ 7 x64/ Server 2008 R2 x64	**1** Click **Start** → **Devices and Printers**.
	2 Right-click the printer icon of the Dell C2665dnf Color Laser Multifunction Printer, and then select **Printer properties**.
	3 Click the **Device Setting** tab, and then select **Available** in **Tray2** drop-down menu.
	4 Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.
	5 Close the **Devices and Printers** dialog box.
Windows Vista/Vista x64	**1** Click **Start** → **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** → **Printers**.
	2 Right-click the printer icon of the Dell C2665dnf Color Laser Multifunction Printer, and then select **Properties**.
	3 Click the **Device Setting** tab, and then select **Available** in **Tray2** drop-down menu.
	4 Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.
	5 Close the **Printers** dialog box.
Windows Server 2008/ Server 2008 x64	**1** Click **Start** → **Control Panel** → **Printers**.
	2 Right-click the printer icon of the Dell C2665dnf Color Laser Multifunction Printer, and then select **Properties**.
	3 Click the **Device Setting** tab, and then select **Available** in **Tray2** drop-down menu.
	4 Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.
	5 Close the **Printers** dialog box.

Installing the Optional Wireless Adapter

The wireless adapter allows you to use the printer with wireless network connection.

The specifications of the wireless adapter are described below.

Item	Specification
Connectivity Technology	Wireless
Compliant Standards	IEEE 802.11b, 802.11g, and 802.11n
Bandwidth	2.4 GHz
Data Transfer Rate	IEEE 802.11n: 65 Mbps IEEE 802.11g: 54, 48, 36, 24, 18, 12, 9, and 6 Mbps IEEE 802.11b: 11, 5.5, 2, and 1 Mbps
Security	64 (40-bit key)/128 (104-bit key) WEP, WPA- PSK (TKIP, AES), WPA2-PSK (AES), WPA-Enterprise (TKIP, AES)[*1], WPA2-Enterprise (AES)[*1]
Wi-Fi Protected Setup® (WPS)[*2]	Push-Button Configuration (PBC), Personal Identification Number (PIN)

[*1] EAP method supports PEAPv0, EAP-TLS, EAP-TTLS PAP, and EAP-TTLS CHAP.

[*2] WPS 2.0 compliant. WPS 2.0 works on access points with the following encryption types: Mixed mode PSK, WPA-PSK AES, WPA2-PSK AES, WPA-PSK TKIP, Open (No Security)

> **NOTE:** When the wireless adapter is installed, you cannot use IEEE 802.1x authentication and/or the Ethernet port for a wired connection.

Verifying the Contents of the Box

Installing the Optional Wireless Adapter

Wireless Adapter
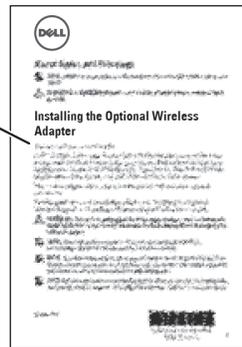
> **NOTE:** To complete wireless installation, you require the corresponding *Software and Documentation* disc that comes with your printer, which can also be downloaded from **dell.com/support**.

Installing the Optional Wireless Adapter

> **NOTE:** The *Software and Documentation* disc also contains video instructions. On **Dell Printer Setup**, click **Installation Video**.

1 Ensure that the printer is turned off.

2 Align the connector and the three protrusions of the wireless adapter with the four holes and insert the adapter.
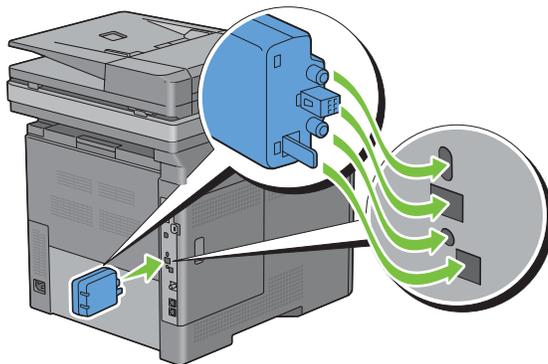
> **NOTE:** Ensure that the adapter is fully inserted and secured.

3 Turn on the printer.

> **NOTE:** If a message displays telling you to make initial setup on the touch panel, always do as instructed.

4 Print the system settings report to confirm that the wireless adapter is installed correctly.

For details about how to print a system settings report, see "Report / List."

5 Confirm that the **Network (Wireless)** section exists.
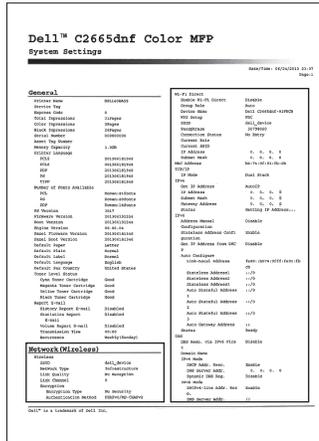
6 Configure the wireless adapter to connect to a wireless network. For details, see "Configuring the Optional Wireless Adapter."

Determining the Wireless Network Settings

You need to know the settings for the wireless network to set up the wireless printer. For details of the settings, contact your network administrator.

Wireless Settings	SSID	Specifies the name that identifies the wireless network with up to 32 alphanumeric characters.
	Network Mode	Specifies the network mode from Ad-hoc or Infrastructure.
Security Settings	Security	Selects the encryption type from No Security, Mixed mode PSK[*], WPA-PSK-TKIP, WPA2-PSK-AES, and WEP.
	Transmit Key	Specifies the transmit key from the list.
	WEP Key	Specifies the WEP key used through the wireless network only when WEP is selected as the encryption type.
	Pass Phrase	Specifies the pass phrase of alphanumeric characters from 8 to 63 bytes long only when Mixed mode PSK[*], WPA-PSK-TKIP, or WPA2-PSK-AES is selected as the encryption type.

[*] Mixed mode PSK automatically selects an available encryption type from WPA-PSK-TKIP, WPA-PSK-AES, or WPA2-PSK-AES.

Configuring the Optional Wireless Adapter

This section describes how to configure a wireless adapter.

You can select a method to configure a wireless adapter from the following:

Wizard Setup through USB Cable (recommended)		
	WPS-PBC[*1][*3]	
	WPS-PIN[*2][*3]	
Advanced Setup through	Operator Panel	
	Ethernet Cable	
	Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool	

*1 WPS-PBC (Wi-Fi Protected Setup-Push Button Configuration) is a method to authenticate and register devices required for wireless configuration, by pressing the button provided on the access point via wireless routers, and then performing WPS-PBC setting on the operator panel. This setting is available only when the access point supports WPS.

*2 WPS-PIN (Wi-Fi Protected Setup-Personal Identification Number) is a method to authenticate and register devices required for wireless configuration, by entering PIN assignments in the printer and computer. This setting, performed through access point, is available only when the access points of your wireless router supports WPS.

*3 WPS 2.0 compliant. WPS 2.0 works on access points with the following encryption types: Mixed mode PSK, WPA-PSK AES, WPA2-PSK AES, WPA-PSK TKIP, Open (No Security)

📝 **NOTE:** The optional wireless adapter must be installed on the printer. For information on how to install a wireless adapter, see "Installing the Optional Wireless Adapter."

📝 **NOTE:** If the `Panel Lock Control` is set to `Enable`, you need to enter the four digit password to enter the `Admin Settings` menu.

📝 **NOTE:** For details about using WPA-Enterprise-AES, WPA2-Enterprise-AES, or WPA-Enterprise-TKIP, see "Using Digital Certificates."

Configuring the Wireless Adapter Using Dell Printer Setup

1 Insert the *Software and Documentation* disc provided with the printer on your computer. The **Dell Printer Setup** program launches automatically.

2 Click **Setup**.
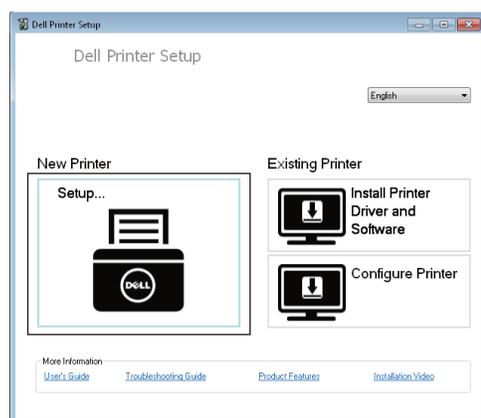
3 Click **Wireless**.

Follow the on-screen instructions, and configure the wireless setting of the printer.

For **WPS-PIN**, **WPS-PBC**, **Operator Panel**, and **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**, see the following instructions.

Configuring the Wireless Adapter Without Using Dell Printer Setup

WPS-PIN

The PIN code of WPS-PIN can only be configured from the operator panel.

> ✍ **NOTE:** WPS-PIN (Wi-Fi Protected Setup-Personal Identification Number) is a method to authenticate and register devices required for wireless configuration by entering PIN assignments to a printer and computer. This setting, performed through an access point, is available only when the access points of your wireless router support WPS.

1 Press the ⓘ (**Information**) button.
2 Tap the `Tools` tab, and then tap `Admin Settings`.
3 Tap `Network`.
4 Tap `Wireless`.
5 Tap `WPS Setup`.
6 Tap `PIN Code`.
7 Write down the displayed 8-digit PIN code or tap `Print PIN Code`. The PIN code is printed.
8 Tap `Start Configuration`.
9 Ensure that the message `Operate Wireless Router` is displayed, and enter the PIN code displayed on step 7 into the wireless LAN access point (Registrar).

> ✍ **NOTE:** For WPS operation on the wireless LAN access point, refer to the manual supplied with the wireless LAN access point.

10 When the WPS operation is successful and the printer is rebooted, wireless LAN connection setting is completed.

WPS-PBC

You can start Push Button Control only from the operator panel.

> ✍ **NOTE:** WPS-PBC (Wi-Fi Protected Setup-Push Button Configuration) is a method to authenticate and register devices required for wireless configuration by pressing the button provided on the access point via wireless routers, and then performing WPS-PBC setting on the operator panel. This setting is available only when the access point supports WPS.

> ✍ **NOTE:** Before starting WPS-PBC, confirm the position of the WPS button (button name may vary) on the wireless LAN access point. For information about WPS operation on the wireless LAN access point, refer to the manual supplied with the wireless LAN access point.

1 Press the ⓘ (**Information**) button.
2 Tap the `Tools` tab, and then tap `Admin Settings`.
3 Tap `Network`.
4 Tap `Wireless`.
5 Tap `WPS Setup`.
6 Tap `Push Button Control`.
7 Tap `Start Configuration`.

Ensure that the message `Push WPS Button on router` is displayed, and start the WPS-PBC on the wireless LAN access point (Registrar) within two minutes.

8 When the WPS operation is successful and the printer is rebooted, wireless LAN connection setting is completed.

Operator Panel

Auto SSID Setup

1 Press the ⓘ (**Information**) button.

2 Tap the `Tools` tab, and then tap `Admin Settings`.

3 Tap `Network`.

4 Tap `Wireless`.

5 Tap `Wireless Setup Wizard`.

The printer automatically searches the access points on wireless network.

6 Tap ▼ until the desired access point appears, and then select the access point.

If the desired access point does not appear, go to "Manual SSID Setup."

✐ **NOTE:** Some hidden SSID may not be displayed. If the SSID is not detected turn on SSID broadcast from the router.

7 Tap `Next`.

8 Enter the WEP key or pass phrase.

When the encryption type of the selected access point is WEP in step 6:

   a Tap the `WEP Key` text box, and then enter the WEP key.

   b Tap `OK`.

When the encryption type of the selected access point is WPA, WPA2 or Mixed in step 6:

   a Tap the `Pass Phrase` text box, and then enter the pass phrase.

   b Tap `OK`.

9 The **Restart System** screen appears.

10 Turn off the printer, and turn it on again to apply the settings.

Wireless LAN connection setting is complete.

Manual SSID Setup

1 Press the ⓘ (**Information**) button.

2 Tap the `Tools` tab, and then tap `Admin Settings`.

3 Tap `Network`.

4 Tap `Wireless`.

5 Tap `Wireless Setup Wizard`.

6 Tap the `Manual SSID Setup` check box, and then tap `Next`.

7 Enter the SSID, and then tap `Next`.

8 Select the network mode from `Infrastructure` and `Ad-hoc` depending on your environment, and then tap `Next`.

If you select `Infrastructure`, proceed to step 9.

If you select `Ad-hoc`, proceed to step 10.

9 Select the encryption type from `No Security`, `Mixed mode PSK`, `WPA-PSK-TKIP`, `WPA2-PSK-AES`, or `WEP`.

If you do not set security for your wireless network:

a Tap $\boxed{\blacktriangledown}$ until `No Security` appears, and then tap `No Security`.

b Tap `OK`.

To use Mixed mode PSK, WPA-PSK-TKIP, or WPA2-PSK-AES encryption:

a Tap $\boxed{\blacktriangledown}$ until `Mixed mode PSK`, `WPA-PSK-TKIP`, or `WPA2-PSK-AES` appears, and then tap the desired encryption type.

b Tap the `Pass Phrase` text box, and then enter the pass phrase.

c Tap `OK`.

To use WEP encryption:

a Tap $\boxed{\blacktriangledown}$ until `WEP` appears, and then tap `WEP`.

b Tap the `WEP Key` text box, and then enter the WEP key.

c Tap `Transmit Key`, and then select the desired transmit key from `Auto` or `WEP Key 1` to `WEP Key 4`.

d Tap `OK`.

Proceed to step 11.

10 Select the encryption type from `No Security` or `WEP`.

If you do not set security for your wireless network:

a Tap $\boxed{\blacktriangledown}$ until `No Security` appears, and then tap `No Security`.

b Tap `OK`.

To use WEP encryption:

a Tap $\boxed{\blacktriangledown}$ until `WEP` appears, and then tap `WEP`.

b Tap the `WEP Key` text box, and then enter the WEP key.

c Tap `Transmit Key`, and then select the desired transmit key from `Auto` or `WEP Key 1` to `WEP Key 4`.

d Tap `OK`.

11 The **Restart System** screen appears.

12 Turn off the printer, and turn it on again to apply the settings.

Wireless LAN connection setting is complete.

Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool

NOTE: For details about using WPA-Enterprise-AES, WPA2-Enterprise-AES, or WPA-Enterprise-TKIP, see "Using Digital Certificates."

1 Ensure that the printer is turned off and the wireless adapter is connected to the printer.

2 Connect the printer to the network with an Ethernet cable.

For details about how to connect the Ethernet cable, see "Connecting Printer to Computer or Network."

3 Turn on the printer.

4 Launch the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** by entering the IP address of the printer in your web browser.

5 Click **Print Server Settings**.

6 Click **Print Server Settings** tab.

7 Click **Wireless LAN**.

8 Enter the SSID in the **SSID** text box.

9 Select **Ad-Hoc** or **Infrastructure** in the **Network Type** drop-down list box.

10 Select the encryption type from **No Security, WEP, WPA-PSK-TKIP, WPA-PSK-AES/WEP2-PSK AES**, and **Mixed Mode PSK** in the **Encryption** drop-down list box, and then set each item for the encryption type selected.

> **NOTE:** For details on each item, see "Dell™ Printer Configuration Web Tool."

11 Click **Apply New Settings** to apply the settings.

12 Turn off the printer, disconnect the Ethernet cable and turn it on again.

Wireless LAN connection setting is complete.

Reconfiguring the Wireless Setting

To change the wireless setting from your computer, perform the following.

> **NOTE:** To change the wireless setting through wireless connection, ensure that the wireless connection setting is completed in "Configuring the Optional Wireless Adapter."

Reconfiguring the Wireless Setting Using Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool

> **NOTE:** The following settings are available when the network mode is set to infrastructure in "Configuring the Optional Wireless Adapter."

1 Check the IP address of the printer.

a Press the ⓘ (**Information**) button.

b Tap `About This MFP`.

c Tap the `Network` tab.

d Tap ▼ button until `IP(v4) Address` appears, and then check the IP address displayed in the `IP(v4) Address`.

2 Launch the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** by entering the IP address of the printer in your web browser.
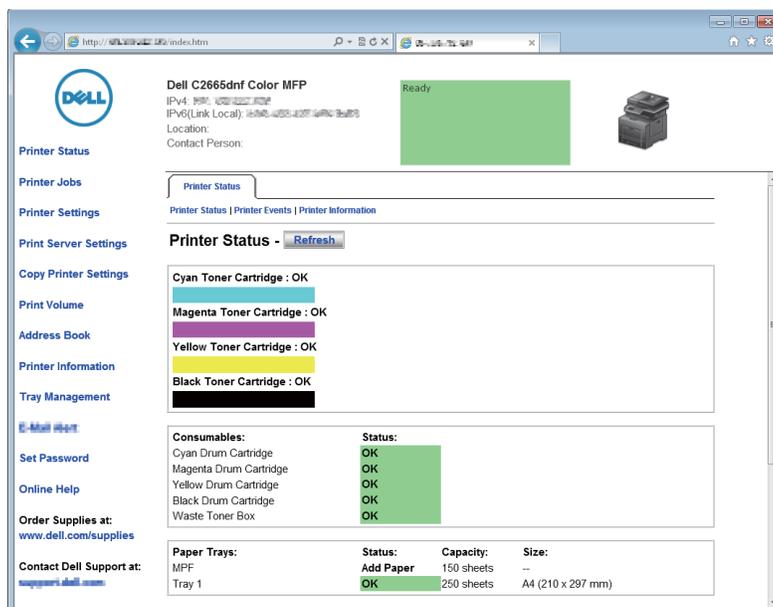
3 Click **Print Server Settings**.

4 Click **Print Server Settings** tab.

5 Click **Wireless LAN**.

6 Change the wireless setting of the printer.

7 Reboot the printer.

8 Change the wireless settings on your computer or access point accordingly.

> ✎ **NOTE:** To change the wireless settings on your computer, refer to the manuals provided with the wireless adapter or if your computer provides a wireless adapter tool, change the wireless settings using that tool.

Reconfiguring the Wireless Setting Using Dell Printer Setup

1 Insert the *Software and Documentation* disc provided with the printer in your computer. The **Dell Printer Setup** program launches automatically.

2 Click **Configure Printer**.

3 Click **Wireless Configuration**.

4 Follow the on-screen instructions, and change the wireless setting of the printer.

7

Connecting Your Printer

To connect your Dell™ C2665dnf Color Laser Multifunction Printer to a computer or device, the following specification must be met for each of the connection type:

Connection type	Connection specifications
Ethernet	10 Base-T/100 Base-TX/1000 Base-T
USB	USB 2.0
Wireless (optional)	IEEE 802.11b/802.11g/802.11n
Phone connector	RJ11
Wall jack connector	RJ11
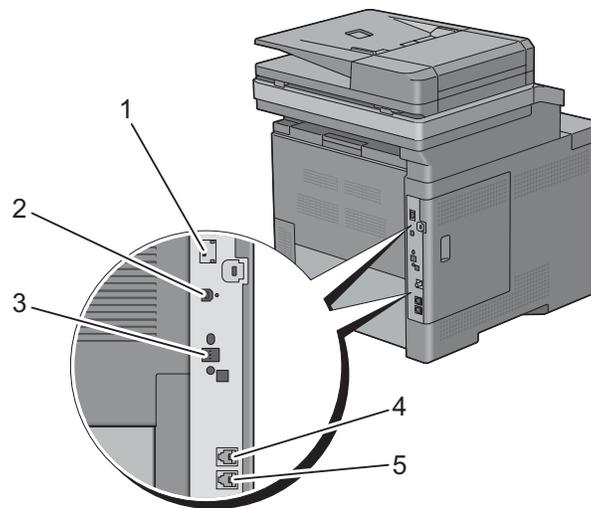
1	Ethernet port	
2	USB port	
3	Wireless adapter socket	
4	Phone connector	PHONE
5	Wall jack connector	LINE

Connecting Printer to Computer or Network

✍ **NOTE:** The *Software and Documentation* disc also contains video instructions. On **Dell Printer Setup**, click **Installation Video**.

Direct Connection

A local printer is a printer which is directly connected to your computer using the USB cable. If your printer is connected to a network instead of your computer, skip this section and go to "Network Connection."

To connect the printer to a computer:

1 Connect the smaller USB connector into the USB port at the back of the printer.

---
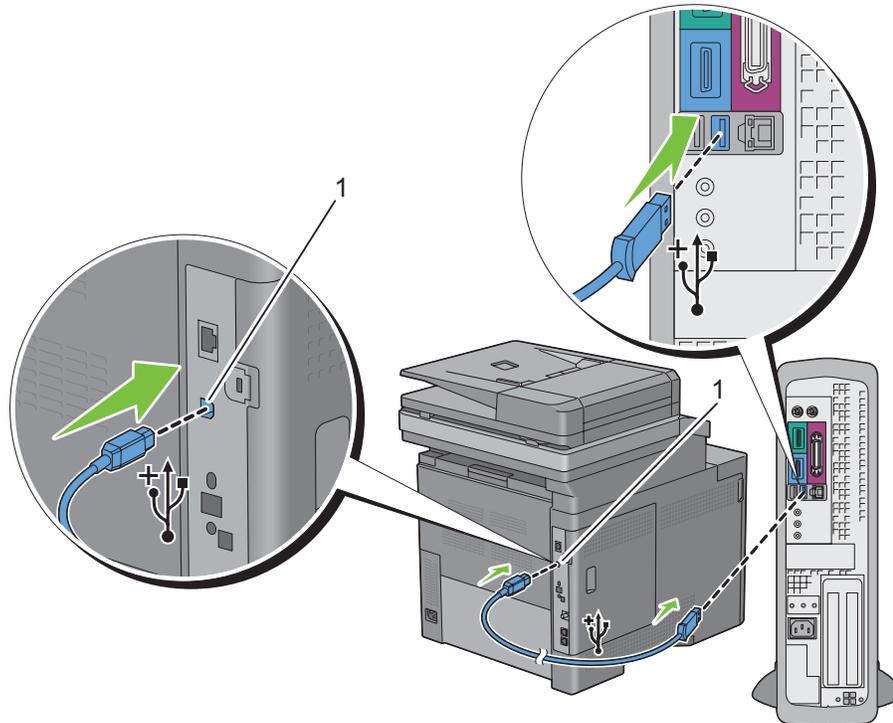
1   USB port

✍ **NOTE:** Ensure that you match the USB symbol on the cable to the USB symbol on the printer.

2 Connect the other end of the cable into a USB port of the computer.

⚠ **CAUTION: Do not connect the printer USB cable to the USB port available on the keyboard.**

Network Connection

To connect the printer to a network:

  1 Connect the Ethernet cable.
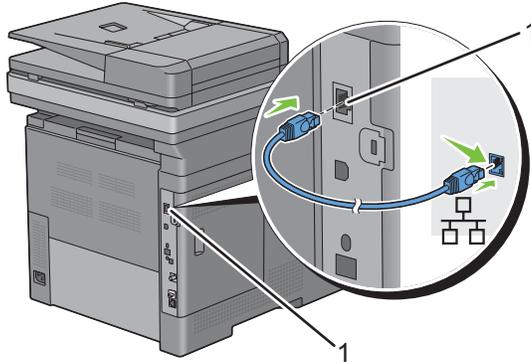
1	Ethernet port

To connect the printer to the network, connect one end of an Ethernet cable into the Ethernet port on the rear of the printer, and the other end to a LAN drop or hub. To setup a wireless connection, insert the wireless adapter into the wireless adapter socket on the back of the printer.

For a wireless connection, see "Installing the Optional Wireless Adapter."

✐ **NOTE:** To use the wireless adapter, be sure to disconnect the Ethernet cable.

Connecting the Telephone Line

⚠ **CAUTION: Do not connect your printer directly to a Digital Subscriber Line (DSL). This may damage the printer. To use a DSL, you will need to use an appropriate DSL filter. Contact your service provider for the DSL filter.**

✐ **NOTE:** The *Software and Documentation* disc also contains video instructions. On **Dell Printer Setup**, click **Installation Video**.

  1 Connect one end of a telephone line cord into the wall jack connector and the other end into an active wall jack.
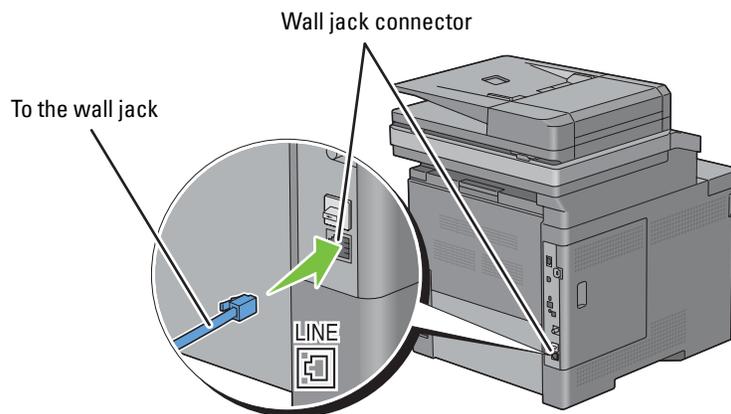
2 Remove the "Blue" plug from the phone connector.

"Blue" plug   Phone connector
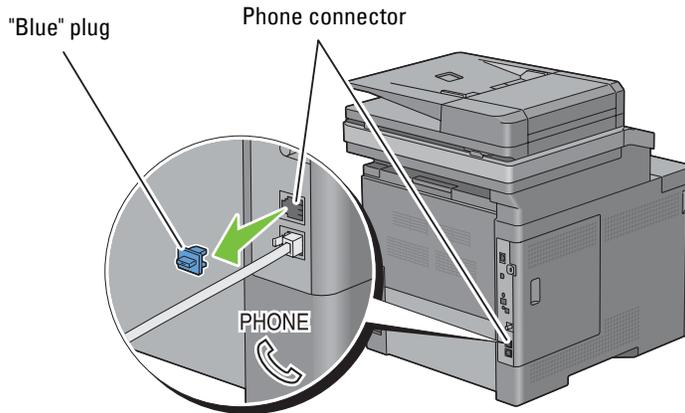
3 To connect a telephone and/or answering machine to your printer, connect the telephone or answering machine line cord into the phone connector (PHONE).

Phone connector

To an external telephone or answering machine
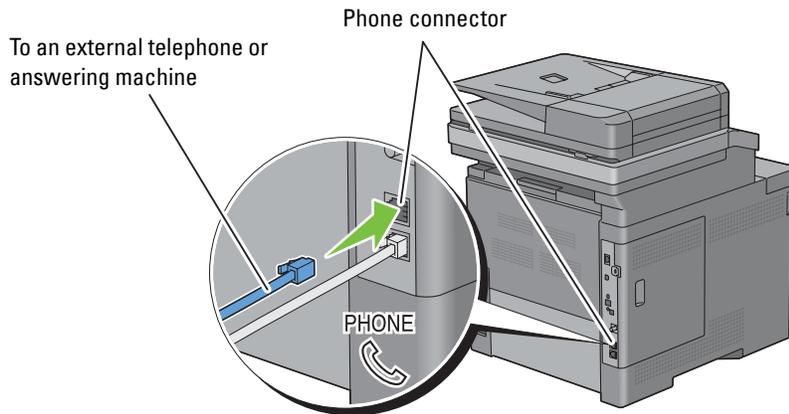
If the phone communication is serial in your country (such as Germany, Sweden, Denmark, Austria, Belgium, Italy, France and Switzerland), and that you are supplied with a "Yellow" terminator, insert the "Yellow" terminator into the phone connector (PHONE).

Phone connector

"Yellow" terminator
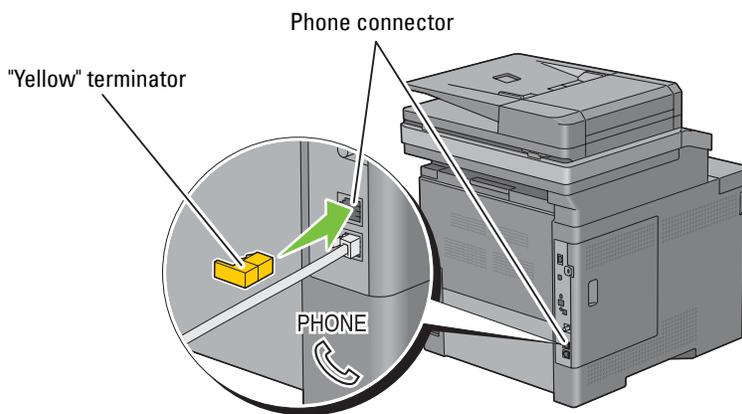
Turning on the Printer

⚠ **WARNING: Do not use extension cords or power strips.**

⚠ **WARNING: The printer should not be connected to an Uninterruptible Power Supply (UPS) system.**

✎ **NOTE:** The *Software and Documentation* disc also contains video instructions. On **Dell Printer Setup**, click **Installation Video**.

1 Connect the power cable to the power connector on the rear of the printer, and then to a power source.
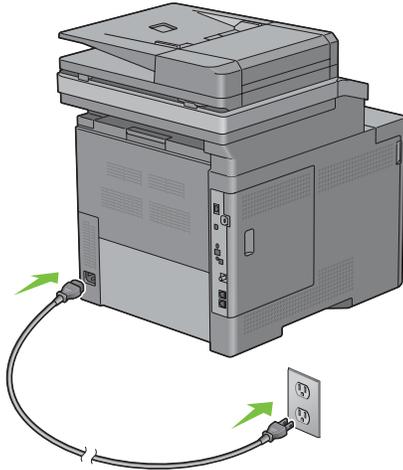
2 Turn on the printer. When the printer is connected via a USB cable, the USB driver is automatically installed.

Setting Initial Settings on the Operator Panel

You need to set the printer language, country, clock date, time, and fax settings when you turn on printer for the first time.

When you turn the printer on, the wizard screen to perform the initial setup appears on the touch panel. Follow the steps below to set the initial settings.

✎ **NOTE:** If you do not start configuring the initial settings, the printer automatically restarts in three minutes, and the **Home** screen appears on the touch panel. After that, you can set the following initial setup by enabling `Power on Wizard` on the touch panel or **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** if needed.

For more information on operator panel, see "Operator Panel."

For more information on **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**, see "Dell™ Printer Configuration Web Tool."

1 The **Select Your Language** screen appears.

   a Tap ▼ until desired language appears, and then tap the desired language.

English
Français
Italiano
Deutsch
Español
Dansk
Nederlands

Norsk	
Svenska	

b Tap Next.

2 The **Date & Time** screen appears.

a Tap Time Zone.

b Tap ▾ until the desired geographic region appears, and then tap the desired geographic region.

c Tap ▾ until the desired time zone appears, and then tap the desired time zone.

Geographic Region	Time Zone
Africa	(UTC) Accra, Bamako, Dakar, Nouakchott
	(UTC) Casablanca
	(UTC +01:00) Algiers, Douala, Libreville, Luanda
	(UTC +01:00) Tunis
	(UTC +01:00) Windhoek
	(UTC +02:00) Cairo
	(UTC +02:00) Harare, Johannesburg, Kinshasa, Tripoli
	(UTC +03:00) Addis Ababa, Khartoum, Mogadishu, Nairobi
Americas	(UTC -10:00) Adak
	(UTC -09:00) Alaska
	(UTC -08:00) Pacific Time (US & Canada)
	(UTC -08:00) Tijuana
	(UTC -07:00) Arizona, Dawson Creek, Sonora
	(UTC -07:00) Chihuahua, Mazatlan
	(UTC -07:00) Mountain Time (US & Canada)
	(UTC -06:00) Cancun, Mexico City, Monterrey
	(UTC -06:00) Central America
	(UTC -06:00) Central Time (US & Canada)
	(UTC -06:00) Saskatchewan
	(UTC -05:00) Atikokan, Resolute
	(UTC -05:00) Bogota, Lima, Panama, Quito
	(UTC -05:00) Cayman Islands, Jamaica, Port-au-Prince
	(UTC -05:00) Eastern Time (US & Canada)
	(UTC -05:00) Grand Turk
	(UTC -05:00) Havana
	(UTC -04:30) Caracas
	(UTC -04:00) Asuncion
	(UTC -04:00) Atlantic Time (Canada)
	(UTC -04:00) Blanc-Sablon
	(UTC -04:00) Caribbean Islands
	(UTC -04:00) Cuiaba

Geographic Region	Time Zone
Americas	(UTC -04:00) Georgetown, La Paz, Manaus
	(UTC -04:00) Thule
	(UTC -03:30) St. John's
	(UTC -03:00) Brasilia, Cayenne, Paramaribo
	(UTC -03:00) Buenos Aires
	(UTC -03:00) Greenland
	(UTC -03:00) Miquelon
	(UTC -03:00) Montevideo
	(UTC -02:00) Noronha
Antarctica	(UTC -04:00) Palmer Archipelago, Santiago
	(UTC -03:00) Rothera
	(UTC +03:00) Syowa
	(UTC +06:00) Mawson, Vostok
	(UTC +07:00) Davis
	(UTC +08:00) Casey
	(UTC +10:00) Dumont d'Urville
	(UTC +12:00) McMurdo
Asia	(UTC +02:00) Amman
	(UTC +02:00) Beirut
	(UTC +02:00) Damascus
	(UTC +02:00) Jerusalem
	(UTC +02:00) Nicosia
	(UTC +02:00) Palestine
	(UTC +03:00) Aden, Baghdad, Qatar, Riyadh
	(UTC +03:30) Tehran
	(UTC +04:00) Baku
	(UTC +04:00) Dubai, Muscat, Tbilisi
	(UTC +04:00) Yerevan
	(UTC +04:30) Kabul
	(UTC +05:00) Aqtau, Aqtobe, Ashgabat, Samarkand
	(UTC +05:00) Ekaterinburg
	(UTC +05:00) Karachi
	(UTC +05:30) Colombo, Kolkata
	(UTC +05:45) Kathmandu
	(UTC +06:00) Almaty, Bishkek, Dhaka, Thimphu
	(UTC +06:00) Novosibirsk, Omsk
	(UTC +06:30) Yangon (Rangoon)
	(UTC +07:00) Bangkok, Ho Chi Minh, Hovd, Jakarta
	(UTC +07:00) Krasnoyarsk
	(UTC +08:00) Chongqing, Hong Kong, Shanghai
	(UTC +08:00) Irkutsk

Geographic Region	Time Zone
Asia	(UTC +08:00) Kuala Lumpur, Makassar, Manila, Singapore
	(UTC +08:00) Taipei
	(UTC +08:00) Ulaan Baatar
	(UTC +09:00) Dili, Jayapura
	(UTC +09:00) Pyongyang
	(UTC +09:00) Seoul
	(UTC +09:00) Tokyo
	(UTC +09:00) Yakutsk
	(UTC +10:00) Sakhalin, Vladivostok
	(UTC +11:00) Magadan
	(UTC +12:00) Anadyr, Kamchatka
Atlantic Ocean	(UTC -04:00) Bermuda
	(UTC -04:00) Stanley
	(UTC -02:00) South Georgia Island
	(UTC -01:00) Azores, Scoresbysund
	(UTC -01:00) Cape Verde
	(UTC) Reykjavik
Australia	(UTC +08:00) Perth
	(UTC +08:45) Eucla
	(UTC +09:30) Adelaide
	(UTC +09:30) Darwin
	(UTC +10:00) Brisbane, Lindeman
	(UTC +10:00) Hobart, Melbourne, Sydney
	(UTC +10:30) Lord Howe Island
Europe	(UTC) Dublin, Edinburgh, Lisbon, London
	(UTC +01:00) Amsterdam, Berlin, Rome, Stockholm, Vienna
	(UTC +01:00) Belgrade, Bratislava, Budapest, Prague
	(UTC +01:00) Brussels, Copenhagen, Madrid, Paris
	(UTC +01:00) Sarajevo, Skopje, Warsaw, Zagreb
	(UTC +02:00) Athens, Bucharest, Istanbul
	(UTC +02:00) Helsinki, Kiev, Riga, Sofia
	(UTC +02:00) Kaliningrad, Minsk
	(UTC +03:00) Moscow
	(UTC +04:00) Samara
Indian Ocean	(UTC +03:00) Antananarivo, Comoro Islands, Mayotte
	(UTC +04:00) Mahe, Reunion
	(UTC +04:00) Mauritius
	(UTC +05:00) Kerguelen, Maldives
	(UTC +06:00) Chagos
	(UTC +06:30) Cocos Islands
	(UTC +07:00) Christmas Island

Geographic Region	Time Zone
Pacific Ocean	(UTC -11:00) Midway Island, Niue, Samoa
	(UTC -10:00) Cook Islands, Hawaii, Tahiti
	(UTC -09:30) Marquesas Islands
	(UTC -09:00) Gambier Islands
	(UTC -08:00) Pitcairn Islands
	(UTC -06:00) Easter Island
	(UTC -06:00) Galapagos Islands
	(UTC +09:00) Palau
	(UTC +10:00) Guam, Port Moresby, Saipan
	(UTC +11:00) Efate, Guadalcanal, Kosrae
	(UTC +11:30) Norfolk Island
	(UTC +12:00) Auckland
	(UTC +12:00) Fiji, Marshall Islands
	(UTC +12:45) Chatham
	(UTC +13:00) Tongatapu
	(UTC +14:00) Kiritimati

d Tap `OK`.

e Tap `Date`.

f Select a date format from the menu displayed by selecting `Format`.

YYYY/MM/DD
DD/MM/YYYY
MM/DD/YYYY

g After tapping the box under `Year`, tap - or +, or use the number pad to enter the desired value. Repeat this step to enter the desired value for `Month` and `Day`.

h Tap `OK`.

i Tap `Time`.

j Select the time format from `12 Hour` or `24 Hour`. If you select `12 Hour`, select `AM` or `PM`.

k After tapping the box under `Hour`, use the number pad to enter the desired value. Repeat this step to enter the desired value for `Minute`.

l Tap `OK`.

m Tap `Next`.

3 The **Fax (Do you want to setup Fax Now?)** screen appears.

To set Fax settings, select `Yes, Setup FAX` and follow the procedure below. To end the settings, select `No, I'll Do It Later` and proceed to Step 4.

a Enter the fax number of the printer using the number pad.

b Tap `Country`.

c Tap ▾ until the desired country appears, and then tap the desired country.

The default paper size is automatically set when you select a country.

Algeria	A4
Australia	A4
Austria	A4
Belgium	A4
Bulgaria	A4
Canada	Letter
Colombia	Letter
Costa Rica	Letter
Cyprus	A4
Czech Republic	A4
Denmark	A4
Dominican Republic	Letter
Egypt	A4
Estonia	A4
Finland	A4
France	A4
Germany	A4
Greece	A4
Guatemala	Letter
Hungary	A4
Iceland	A4
Ireland	A4
Italy	A4
Jamaica	Letter
Jordan	A4
Latvia	A4
Liechtenstein	A4
Lithuania	A4
Luxembourg	A4
Malaysia	A4
Malta	A4
Mexico	Letter
Netherlands	A4
New Zealand	A4
Nicaragua	Letter
Norway	A4
Panama	Letter
Poland	A4
Portugal	A4
Puerto Rico	Letter
Romania	A4

Russia	A4
Saudi Arabia	A4
Singapore	A4
Slovakia	A4
Slovenia	A4
South Africa	A4
Spain	A4
Sweden	A4
Switzerland	A4
Thailand	A4
Tunisia	A4
Turkey	A4
U.A.E.	A4
United Kingdom	A4
United States	Letter
Unknown	Letter

   d Tap `Next`.

4 The **Setup Complete (Congratulations, setup is complete.)** screen appears.

5 Tap `OK`.

   The printer automatically restarts after tapping `OK`.

Setting the IP Address

Assigning an IP Address

An IP address is a unique number that consists of four sections that are delimited by a period and can include up to three digits in each section, for example, 111.222.33.44.

You can select the IP mode from Dual Stack, IPv4, and IPv6. If your network supports both IPv4 and IPv6, select Dual Stack.

Select the IP mode of your environment, and then set IP address, subnet mask (for IPv4 only), and gateway address.

⚠️ **CAUTION: Assigning an IP address that is already in use can cause network performance issues.**

📝 **NOTE:** Assigning an IP address is considered as an advanced function and is normally done by a system administrator.

📝 **NOTE:** When you assign an IP address manually in IPv6 mode, use the **Dell™ Printer Configuration Web Tool**. To display the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**, use the link-local address. To confirm the link-local address, print a system settings report and check the **Link-Local Address** under **Network (Wired)** or **Network (Wireless)**.
For details about how to print a system settings report, see "Report / List."

📝 **NOTE:** If the Panel Lock Control is set to Enable, you need to enter the four digit password to enter the Admin Settings menu.

When Using the Dell Printer Setup

1   Insert the *Software and Documentation* disc provided with the printer in your computer. The **Dell Printer Setup** file launches automatically.

2   Click **Configure Printer** on the **Dell Printer Setup** window.
The **Configure Printer** window opens.
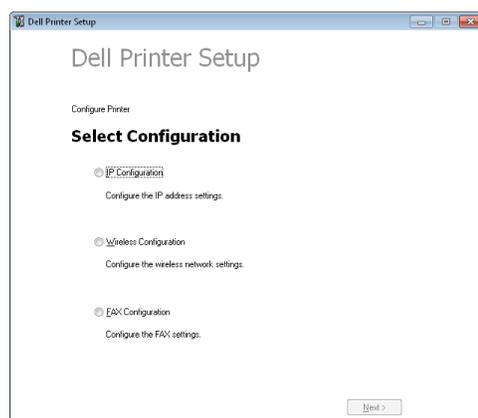
3   Click **IP Configuration**.

4   Follow the instructions displayed on the screen.

When Using the Operator Panel

For more information on using the operator panel, see "Operator Panel."

1   Press the ⓘ (**Information**) button.

2   Tap the Tools tab, and then tap Admin Settings.

3   Tap Network.

4 Do either of the following:

When connecting to network with the Ethernet cable:

Tap `Ethernet`.

When connecting to network with the wireless adapter:

Tap `Wireless`.

5 Tap `IP Mode`.

6 Tap `IPv4 Mode`, and then tap `OK`.

7 Tap ▼ until `TCP / IP` appears, and then tap `TCP / IP`.

8 Tap `Get IP Address`.

9 Tap `Panel`, and then tap `OK`.

10 Tap `IP Address`.

The cursor is located at the first octet of the IP address.

11 Use the number pad to enter the first octet of the IP address, and then tap ▶ .

The cursor moves to the next digit.

> **NOTE:** You can only enter one octet at a time and must tap ▶ after entering each octet.

12 Enter the rest of the octets, and then tap `OK`.

13 Tap `Subnet Mask`.

14 Repeat steps 11 and 12 to set Subnet Mask.

15 Tap `Gateway Address`.

16 Repeat steps 11 and 12 to set Gateway Address.

17 Turn off the printer, and then turn it on again.

When Using the Tool Box

1 Click **Start**→ **All Programs**→ **Dell Printers**→ **Dell C2665dnf Color Laser Multifunction Printer**→ **Tool Box**.

> **NOTE:** For details about starting the **Tool Box**, see "Starting the Tool Box."

The **Tool Box** opens.

2 Click the **Printer Maintenance** tab.

3 Select **TCP/IP Settings** from the list at the left side of the page.

The **TCP/IP Settings** page appears.

4 Select the mode from **IP Address Mode**, and then enter the values in IP Address, Subnet Mask, and Gateway Address.

5 Click **Apply New Settings** to take effect.

You can also assign the IP address to the printer when installing the printer drivers with the installer. When you use the **Network Installation** feature, and the `Get IP Address` is set to `AutoIP` or `DHCP` on the printer, you can set the IP address from 0.0.0.0 to the desired IP address on the printer selection window.

Verifying the IP Settings

You can confirm the settings by using the operator panel, printing the system settings report, or using the ping command.

Verifying the Settings Using Operator Panel

1 Press the (i) (**Information**) button.

2 Tap `About This MFP`.

3 Tap the `Network` tab.

4 Verify the IP address displayed in `IP(v4) Address`.

Verifying the Settings Using System Settings Report

1 Print the system settings report.

For details about how to print a system settings report, see "Report / List."

2 Verify the correct IP address, subnet mask, and gateway address are listed in the system settings report under **Network (Wired)** or **Network (Wireless)**.

If the IP address shows `0.0.0.0` (the factory default), an IP address has not been assigned. To assign one for your printer, see "Assigning an IP Address."

Verifying the Settings Using Ping Command

Ping the printer and verify that it responds. For example, at a command prompt on a network computer, type ping followed by the new IP address (for example, 192.168.0.11):

`ping 192.168.0.11`

If the printer is active on the network, you will receive a reply.

9

Loading Paper

📝 **NOTE:** To avoid paper jams, do not remove the tray while printing is in progress.

📝 **NOTE:** The *Software and Documentation* disc also contains video instructions. On **Dell Printer Setup**, click **Installation Video**.

1 Pull the tray out of the printer about 200 mm.
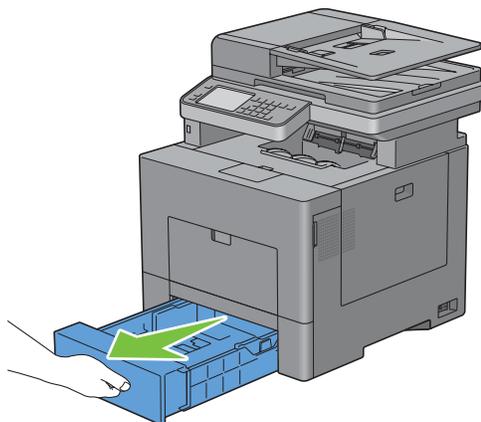
2 Hold the tray with both hands, and remove it from the printer.
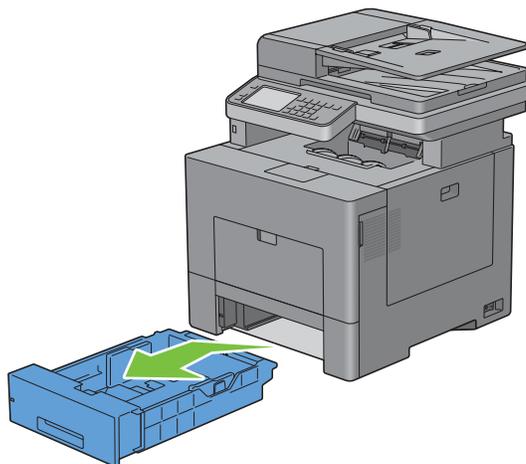
3 Adjust the paper guides.
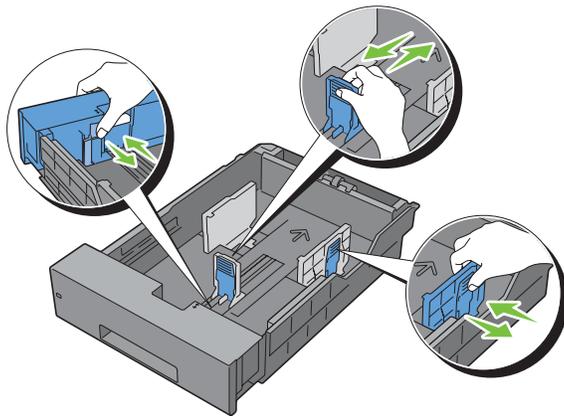
> ✍ **NOTE:** Extend the front side of the tray when you load Legal-size paper.

4 Before loading the print media, flex the sheets and fan them. Straighten the edges of the stack on a level surface.
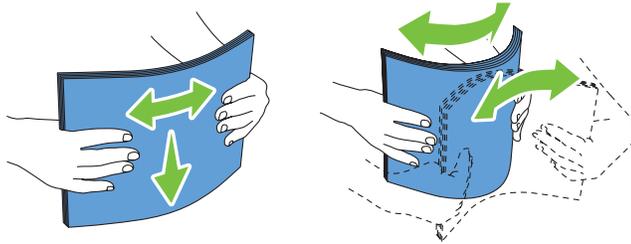
5 Load the print media into the tray with the recommended print side facing up.

> ✍ **NOTE:** Do not exceed the maximum fill line in the tray. Overfilling the tray may cause paper jams.

6 Align the width guides against the edges of the paper.
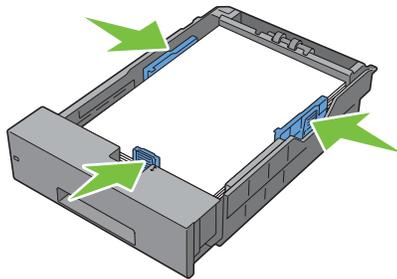
> ✍ **NOTE:** When loading user-specified print media, adjust the width guides and slide the extendable part of the tray by pinching the length guide and sliding it until it rests lightly against the edge of the paper.

7 After confirming that the guides are securely adjusted, insert the tray into the printer.
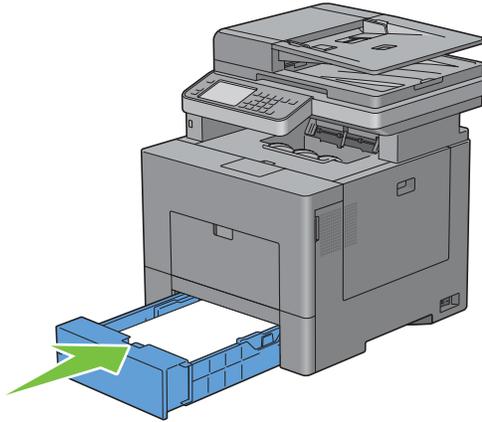
 NOTE: If the front side of the tray is extended, the tray protrudes when it is inserted into the printer.
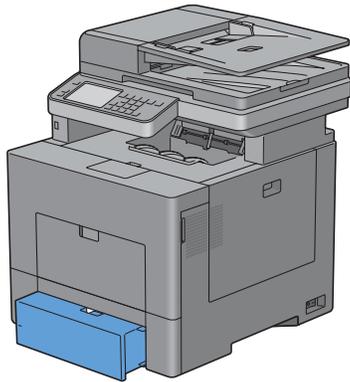
8 On the touch panel, tap `Size`.

 NOTE: Set the same paper size and type as the actual paper being loaded. An error may occur if the paper size or type setting is different from the loaded paper.

9 Select ⏷ until the desired paper size appears, and then select the desired paper size.

10 Tap `Type`.

11 Select ⏷ until the desired paper type appears, and then select the desired paper size.

12 Select `OK`.

10

Installing Printer Drivers on Windows® Computers

Identifying Printer Driver Pre-install Status

Before installing the printer driver on your computer, check the IP address of your printer by performing one of the procedures in "Verifying the IP Settings."

Changing the firewall settings before installing your printer

If you are running one of the following operating systems, you must change the firewall settings before installing the Dell printer software:

- Microsoft® Windows XP
- Windows Vista®
- Windows 7
- Windows 8
- Windows Server® 2008
- Windows Server 2008 R2
- Windows Server 2012

NOTE: For Windows XP, Service Pack 2 or 3 must be installed.

The following procedure uses Windows 7 as an example.

1 Insert the *Software and Documentation* disc into your computer.
2 Click **Start → Control Panel**.
3 Select **System and Security**.
4 Click **Allow a program through Windows Firewall**.
5 Click **Change settings → Allow another program**.
6 Check **Browse**.
7 `D:\setup_assist.exe` (where D is the drive letter of the optical drive) in the **File name** text box, and then click **Open**.
8 Click **Add**, and then click **OK**.

Inserting the Software and Documentation Disc

1 Insert the *Software and Documentation* disc into your computer and click **setup_assist.exe** to start **Dell Printer Setup**.

   NOTE: If the *Software and Documentation* disc does not launch automatically, follow the procedure below.

   For Windows XP, Windows Server 2008, and Windows Server 2008 R2

   Click **start→ Run**, enter `D:\setup_assist.exe` (where D is the drive letter of the optical drive) in the Run dialog box, and then click **OK**.

   For Windows Vista and Windows 7

   Click **Start → All Programs → Accessories → Run**, enter `D:\setup_assist.exe` (where D is the drive letter of the optical drive) in the Run dialog box, and then click **OK**.

For Windows 8 and Windows Server 2012

Point to the top or bottom right corner of the screen, and then click **Search** → Type Run in the search box, click **Apps**, and then click **Run** → Type D:\setup_assist.exe (where D is the drive letter of the optical drive), and then click **OK**.

Direct Connection Setup

For installing PCL, PS and Fax printer driver

1 In the **Dell Printer Setup** window, click **Install Printer Driver and Software** to launch the installation software.

2 Select **Personal Installation**, and then click **Next**.

3 Follow the on-screen instructions to connect the computer and the printer with a USB cable, and then turn the printer on.

The Plug and Play installation starts and the installation software proceeds to the next page automatically.

> **NOTE:** If the installation software does not automatically proceed to the next page, click **Install**.

4 Select either **Typical Installation (recommended)** or **Custom Installation** from the installation wizard, and then click **Install**. If you select **Custom Installation**, you can select the specific software you want to install.

5 If you agree to the terms of the **Environmental Information Notice**, select **Use duplex printing** check box, and click **Install** to continue the installation.

6 Click **Finish** to exit the wizard when the **Ready to Print!** screen appears.

If you want to verify installation, click **Print Test Page** before clicking **Finish**.

Personal Installation

A personal printer is a printer connected to your computer or a print server using a USB. If your printer is connected to a network and not your computer, see "Network Connection Setup."

For installing XML Paper Specification (XPS) printer driver

> ✍ **NOTE:** XPS driver is supported on the following operating systems: Windows Vista, Windows Vista 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows 7, Windows 7 64-bit Edition, Windows 8, Windows 8 64-bit Edition, and Windows Server 2012.

> ✍ **NOTE:** If you are using Windows Vista or Windows Server 2008, you need to install Service Pack 2 or later, and then the Windows Platform Update (KB971644). The update (KB971644) is available for download from Windows Update.

Windows Vista or Windows Vista 64-bit Edition

1 Extract the following zip file to your desired location.

   `D:\Drivers\XPS\Win_7Vista\XPS-V3_C2665.zip` (where D is the drive letter of the optical drive)

2 Click **Start→ Control Panel→ Hardware and Sound→ Printers**.

3 Click **Add a printer**.

4 Click **Add a local printer**.

5 Select the port connected to this product, and then click **Next**.

6 Click **Have Disk** to display the **Install From Disk** dialog box.

7 Click **Browse**, and then select the extracted folder in step 1.

8 Click **OK**.

9 Select your printer name and click **Next**.

10 To change the printer name, enter the printer name in the **Printer name** box, and then click **Next**. To use this printer as the default printer, select the check box displayed under the **Printer name**, and then click **Next**.

   Installation starts.

   If the **User Account Control** dialog box appears, click **Continue**.

   > ✍ **NOTE:** If you are an administrator on the computer, click **Continue**; otherwise, contact your administrator to continue the desired action.

11 As the driver installation is completed, click **Print a test page** to print a test page.

12 Click **Finish**.

Windows Server 2008 or Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition

> ✍ **NOTE:** You must log in as an administrator.

1 Extract the following zip file to your desired location.

   `D:\Drivers\XPS\Win_7Vista\XPS-V3_C2665.zip` (where D is the drive letter of the optical drive)

2 Click **Start→ Control Panel→ Hardware and Sound→ Printers**.

3 Click **Add a printer**.

4 Click **Add a local printer**.

5 Select the port connected to this product, and then click **Next**.

6 Click **Have Disk** to display the **Install From Disk** dialog box.

7 Click **Browse**, and then select the extracted folder in step 1.

8 Click **OK**.

9 Select your printer name and click **Next**.

10 To change the printer name, enter the printer name in the **Printer name** box, and then click **Next**.

   To use this printer as the default printer, select the **Set as the default printer** check box, and then click **Next**.

11 If you do not share your printer, select **Do not share this printer**. If you share your printer, select **Share this printer so that others on your network can find and use it**.

12 Click **Next**.

Installation starts.

13 As the driver installation is completed, click **Print a test page** to print a test page.

14 Click **Finish**.

Windows 7, Windows 7 64-bit Edition, or Windows Server 2008 R2

1 Extract the following zip file to your desired location.

`D:\Drivers\XPS\Win_7Vista\XPS-V3_C2665.zip` (where D is the drive letter of the optical drive)

2 Click **Start**→ **Devices and Printers**.

3 Click **Add a printer**.

When you use Windows Server 2008 R2, click **Add a local or network printer as an administrator**.

If the **User Account Control** dialog box appears, click **Yes**.

   NOTE: If you are an administrator on the computer, click **Yes**; otherwise, contact your administrator to continue the desired action.

4 Click **Add a local printer**.

5 Select the port connected to this product, and then click **Next**.

6 Click **Have Disk** to display the **Install From Disk** dialog box.

7 Click **Browse**, and then select the extracted folder in step 1.

8 Click **OK**.

9 Select your printer name and click **Next**.

10 To change the printer name, enter the printer name in the **Printer name** box, and then click **Next**.

To use this printer as the default printer, select the **Set as the default printer** check box, and then click **Next**.

11 If you do not share your printer, select **Do not share this printer**. If you share your printer, select **Share this printer so that others on your network can find and use it**.

12 Click **Next**.

Installation starts.

13 As the driver installation is completed, click **Print a test page** to print a test page.

14 Click **Finish**.

Windows 8, Windows 8 64-bit Edition, or Windows Server 2012

1 Extract the zip file you downloaded to your desired location.

`D:\Drivers\XPS\Win_8\XPS-V4_C2665.zip` (where D is the drive letter of the optical drive)

2 Under Desktop mode, right-click the bottom left corner of the screen, and then click **Control Panel**.

3 Click **Hardware and Sound** (**Hardware** for Windows Server 2012) → **Devices and Printers** → **Add a printer**.

4 Click **Have Disk** to display the **Install From Disk** dialog box.

5 Click **Browse**, and then select the extracted folder in step 1.

6 Click **OK**.

7 Select your printer name and click **Next**.

8 To change the printer name, enter the printer name in the **Printer name** box, and then click **Next**. Installation starts.

9 If you do not share your printer, select **Do not share this printer**. If you share your printer, select **Share this printer so that others on your network can find and use it**. Click **Next**.

10 As the driver installation is completed, click **Print a test page** to print a test page. To use this printer as the default printer, select the **Set as the default printer** check box.

11 Click **Finish**.

Network Connection Setup

📝 **NOTE:** To use this printer in a Linux environment, you need to install a Linux driver. For more information on how to install and use these, see "Installing Printer Drivers on Linux Computers (CUPS)."

Network Printer Setup on a Local Network

For installing PCL, PS and Fax printer driver

1 In the **Dell Printer Setup** window, click **Install Printer Driver and Software** to launch the installation software.

2 Select **Network Installation**, and then click **Next**.

3 Select **Local Installation**, and then click **Next**.

4 Select the printer you want to install from the printer list, and then click **Next**. If the target printer is not displayed on the list, click **Refresh** to refresh the list or click **Add Printer** to add a printer to the list manually. You may specify the IP address and port name at this point.

If you have installed this printer on the server computer, select the **I am setting up this printer on a server** check box.

📝 **NOTE:** When using AutoIP, 0.0.0.0 is displayed in the installer. Before you can continue, you must enter a valid IP address.

📝 **NOTE:** In some cases, Windows Security Alert is displayed in this step when you use Windows Vista, Windows Vista 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows 7, Windows 7 64-bit Edition, Windows 8, Windows 8 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2012. In this case, select Unblock (Allow access for Windows Server 2008 R2 and Windows 7), and then continue the procedure.

5 Specify the printer settings, and then click **Next**.

   a Enter the printer name.

   b If you want to set the printer as the default printer, select the **Set this printer as default** check box.

   c If you want to install the Fax Driver, select the **FAX Driver** check box.

      If you want to install the PostScript Level3 Compatible printer driver, select the **PostScript Level3 Compatible Driver** check box.

   d If you want other users on the network to access the printer, click **Advanced** check box and select **Share this printer with other computers on the network**, and then enter a share name that users can identify.

   e If you want to restrict color printing, select the appropriate **Dell™ ColorTrack** option. Enter the password when **Color-Password Enabled** is selected for **Dell ColorTrack**.

6 Select the software and documentation you want to install, and then click **Install**. If you want to change the installation destination, click **Browse** and specify a new location.

7 If you agree to the terms of the **Environmental Information Notice**, select **Use duplex printing** check box, and click **Install** to continue the installation.

8 Click **Finish** to exit the wizard when the **Ready to Print!** screen appears.

If you want to verify installation, click **Print Test Page** before clicking **Finish**.

For installing XML Paper Specification (XPS) printer driver

📓 **NOTE:** XPS driver is supported on the following operating systems: Windows Vista, Windows Vista 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows 7, Windows 7 64-bit Edition, Windows 8, Windows 8 64-bit Edition, and Windows Server 2012.

Windows Vista or Windows Vista 64-bit Edition

1 Extract the following zip file to your desired location.

`D:\Drivers\XPS\Win_7Vista\XPS-V3_C2665.zip` (where D is the drive letter of the optical drive)

2 Click **Start→ Control Panel→ Hardware and Sound→ Printers**.

3 Click **Add a printer**.

4 Click **Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer**.

5 Select printer or click **The printer that I want isn't listed**.

6 Select **Add a printer using a TCP/IP address or host name**, and then click **Next**.

7 Select **TCP/IP Device** from **Device type**, and enter the IP address for **Hostname or IP address**, and then click **Next**.

If the **User Account Control** dialog box appears, click **Continue**.

📓 **NOTE:** If you are an administrator on the computer, click **Continue**; otherwise, contact your administrator to continue the desired action.

8 Click **Have Disk** to display the **Install From Disk** dialog box.

9 Click **Browse**, and then select the extracted folder in step 1.

10 Click **OK**.

11 Select your printer name and click **Next**.

12 To change the printer name, enter the printer name in the **Printer name** box, and then click **Next**.

To use this printer as the default printer, select the **Set as the default printer** check box, and then click **Next**.

Installation starts.

13 As the driver installation is completed, click **Print a test page** to print a test page.

14 Click **Finish**.

Windows Server 2008 or Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition

📓 **NOTE:** You must log in as an administrator.

1 Extract the following zip file to your desired location.

`D:\Drivers\XPS\Win_7Vista\XPS-V3_C2665.zip` (where D is the drive letter of the optical drive)

2 Click **Start→ Control Panel→ Hardware and Sound→ Printers**.

3 Click **Add a printer**.

4 Click **Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer**.

5 Select printer or click **The printer that I want isn't listed**.

When you select your printer, go to step 8.

When you click **The printer that I want isn't listed**, go to step 6.

6 Select **Add a printer using a TCP/IP address or host name**, and then click **Next**.

7 Select **TCP/IP Device** from **Device type**, and enter the IP address for **Hostname or IP address**, and then click **Next**.

If the **User Account Control** dialog box appears, click **Continue**.

> ✐ **NOTE:** If you are an administrator on the computer, click **Continue**; otherwise, contact your administrator to continue the desired action.

8 Click **Have Disk** to display the **Install From Disk** dialog box.

9 Click **Browse**, and then select the extracted folder in step 1.

10 Click **OK**.

11 Select your printer name and click **Next**.

12 To change the printer name, enter the printer name in the **Printer name** box, and then click **Next**.

To use this printer as the default printer, select the **Set as the default printer** check box, and then click **Next**.

13 If you do not share your printer, select **Do not share this printer**. If you share your printer, select **Share this printer so that others on your network can find and use it**.

14 Click **Next**.

Installation starts.

15 As the driver installation is completed, click **Print a test page** to print a test page.

16 Click **Finish**.

Windows Server 2008 R2

1 Extract the following zip file to your desired location.

`D:\Drivers\XPS\Win_7Vista\XPS-V3_C2665.zip` (where D is the drive letter of the optical drive)

2 Click **Start→ Devices and Printers**.

3 Click **Add a printer**.

4 Click **Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer**.

5 Select printer or click **The printer that I want isn't listed**.

> ✐ **NOTE:** When you click **The printer that I want isn't listed**, **Find a printer by name or TCP/IP address** screen appears. Find your printer on the screen.

If the **User Account Control** dialog box appears, click **Continue**.

> ✐ **NOTE:** If you are an administrator on the computer, click **Continue**; otherwise, contact your administrator to continue the desired action.

6 Click **Have Disk** to display the **Install From Disk** dialog box.

7 Click **Browse**, and then select the extracted folder in step 1.

8 Click **OK**.

9 Select your printer name and click **Next**.

10 To change the printer name, enter the printer name in the **Printer name** box, and then click **Next**.

To use this printer as the default printer, select the **Set as the default printer** check box, and then click **Next**.

11 If you do not share your printer, select **Do not share this printer**. If you share your printer, select **Share this printer so that others on your network can find and use it**.

12 Click **Next**.

Installation starts.

13 As the driver installation is completed, click **Print a test page** to print a test page.

14 Click **Finish**.

Windows 7 or Windows 7 64-bit Edition

1   Extract the following zip file to your desired location.

    `D:\Drivers\XPS\Win_7Vista\XPS-V3_C2665.zip` (where D is the drive letter of the optical drive)

2   Click **Start**→ **Devices and Printers**.

3   Click **Add a printer**.

4   Click **Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer**.

5   Select printer or click **The printer that I want isn't listed**.

    When you select your printer, go to step 8.

    When you click **The printer that I want isn't listed**, go to step 6.

6   Select **Add a printer using a TCP/IP address or host name**, and then click **Next**.

7   Select **TCP/IP Device** from **Device type**, and enter the IP address for **Hostname or IP address**, and then click **Next**.

    If the **User Account Control** dialog box appears, click **Yes**.

    > **NOTE:** If you are an administrator on the computer, click **Yes**; otherwise, contact your administrator to continue the desired action.

8   Click **Have Disk** to display the **Install From Disk** dialog box.

9   Click **Browse**, and then select the extracted folder in step 1.

10 Click **OK**.

11 Select your printer name and click **Next**.

12 To change the printer name, enter the printer name in the **Printer name** box, and then click **Next**.

    To use this printer as the default printer, select the **Set as the default printer** check box, and then click **Next**.

13 If you do not share your printer, select **Do not share this printer**. If you share your printer, select **Share this printer so that others on your network can find and use it**.

14 Click **Next**.

    Installation starts.

15 As the driver installation is completed, click **Print a test page** to print a test page.

16 Click **Finish**.

Windows 8, Windows 8 64-bit Edition, or Windows Server 2012

1   Extract the zip file you downloaded to your desired location.

    `D:\Drivers\XPS\Win_8\XPS-V4_C2665.zip` (where D is the drive letter of the optical drive)

2   Under Desktop mode, right-click the bottom left corner of the screen, and then click **Control Panel**.

3   Click **Hardware and Sound** (**Hardware** for Windows Server 2012) → **Devices and Printers** → **Add a printer**.

4   Click **Have Disk** to display the **Install From Disk** dialog box.

5   Click **Browse**, and then select the extracted folder in step 1.

6   Click **OK**.

7   Select your printer name and click **Next**.

8   To change the printer name, enter the printer name in the **Printer name** box, and then click **Next**. Installation starts.

9   If you do not share your printer, select **Do not share this printer**. If you share your printer, select **Share this printer so that others on your network can find and use it**. Click **Next**.

10 As the driver installation is completed, click **Print a test page** to print a test page. To use this printer as the default printer, select the **Set as the default printer** check box.

11 Click **Finish**.

Use the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** to monitor the status of your network printer without leaving your desk. You can view and/or change the printer settings, monitor toner level, and acknowledge the timing of ordering replacement consumables. You can click the Dell supplies link for ordering supplies.

> 🖉 **NOTE:** The **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** is not available when the printer is directly connected to a computer or a print server.

To launch the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**, type the printer's IP address in your web browser. The printer configuration appears on the screen.

You can set up the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** to send you an e-mail when the printer needs supplies or intervention.

To set up e-mail alerts:

1 Launch the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**.

2 Click **E-Mail Server Settings Overview** link.

3 Under **E-Mail Server Settings**, enter the **Primary SMTP Gateway**, **Reply Address**, and your or key operator's e-mail address in the e-mail list box.

4 Click **Apply New Settings**.

> 🖉 **NOTE: Connection pending until printer sends an alert** is displayed on the SMTP server until an error occurs.

Setting Up for Shared Printing

You can share your new printer on the network using the *Software and Documentation* disc that comes with your printer, or using Microsoft® point-and-print or peer-to-peer method. However, if you use one of the Microsoft methods, some features, such as the status monitor and other printer utilities, installed with the *Software and Documentation* disc, may not be available.

If you want to use the printer on a network, share the printer and install its drivers on all the computers on the network.

> **NOTE:** You need to purchase an Ethernet cable for shared printing.

Specifying the Shared Settings of the Printer

Windows XP, Windows XP 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2003, or Windows Server 2003 x64 Edition

1 Click **start**→ **Printers and Faxes**.
2 Right-click the printer icon and select **Properties**.
3 On the **Sharing** tab, select the **Share this printer** check box, and then type a name in the **Share name** text box.
4 Click **Additional Drivers** and select the operating systems of all network clients that print to the printer.
5 Click **OK**.

   If you are missing files, you are prompted to insert the server operating system CD.

Windows Vista or Windows Vista 64-bit Edition

1 Click **Start**→ **Control Panel**→ **Hardware and Sound**→ **Printers**.
2 Right-click the printer icon and select **Sharing**.
3 Click **Change sharing options**.

   The message **Windows needs your permission to continue** appears.

4 Click **Continue**.
5 Select the **Share this printer** check box, and then type a name in the **Share name** text box.
6 Click **Additional Drivers** and select the operating systems of all network clients that print to the printer.
7 Click **OK**.

Windows Server 2008 or Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition

1 Click **Start**→ **Control Panel**→ **Printers**.
2 Right-click the printer icon and select **Sharing**.
3 Click **Change Sharing Options** if exists.
4 Select the **Share this printer** check box, and then type a name in the **Share name** text box.
5 Click **Additional Drivers** and select the operating systems of all network clients that print to the printer.
6 Click **OK**.

Windows 7, Windows 7 64-bit Edition, or Windows Server 2008 R2

1 Click **Start**→ **Devices and Printers**.
2 Right-click the printer icon and select **Printer properties**.
3 On the **Sharing** tab, click **Change Sharing Options** if exists.

   Select the **Share this printer** check box, and then type a name in the **Share name** text box.

4 Click **Additional Drivers** and select the operating systems of all network clients that print to the printer.

5 Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.

Windows 8, Windows 8 64-bit Edition, or Windows Server 2012

1 Under Desktop mode, right-click the bottom left corner of the screen, and then click **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** (**Hardware** for Windows Server 2012) → **Devices and Printers**.

2 Right-click the printer icon and select **Printer properties**.

3 On the **Sharing** tab, click **Change Sharing Options** if exists.

4 Select the **Share this printer** check box, and then type a name in the **Share name** text box.

5 Click **Additional Drivers** and select the operating systems of all network clients using this printer.

6 Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.

To confirm that the printer is properly shared:

- Ensure that the printer object in the **Printers**, **Printers and Faxes**, or **Devices and Printers** folder is shared. The shared icon is shown under the printer icon.

- Browse **Network** or **My Network Places**. Find the host name of the server and the shared name you assigned to the printer.

Now that the printer is shared, you can install the printer on network clients using the point and print method or the peer-to-peer method.

> **NOTE:** If the OS bit editions (32/64 bit edition) differ between a print server and a client computer, you need to manually add the printer driver for the client computer edition on the server. Otherwise, the printer driver cannot be installed on the client computer using the point and print or peer-to-peer method. For example, if the print server runs on Windows XP 32-bit edition, while the client computer runs on Windows 7 64-bit edition, follow the procedures below to additionally install the printer driver for 64-bit client on the 32-bit server.
>
> **a** Click **Additional Drivers** on the screen for sharing printers.
>
>   For details about how to display this screen, see "Specifying the Shared Settings of the Printer."
>
> **b** Select the **x64** check box, and then click **OK**.
>
> **c** Insert the *Software and Documentation* disc into your computer.
>
> **d** Click **Browse** to specify the folder that contains the 64-bit OS driver, and then click **OK**.
>
>   Installation starts.

Point and Print

Point and Print is a Microsoft Windows technology that allows you to connect to a remote printer. This feature automatically downloads and installs the printer driver.

Windows XP, Windows XP 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2003, or Windows Server 2003 x64 Edition

1 On the Windows desktop of the client computer, double-click **My Network Places**.

2 Locate the host name of the server computer, and then double-click the host name.

3 Right-click the shared printer name, and then click **Connect**.
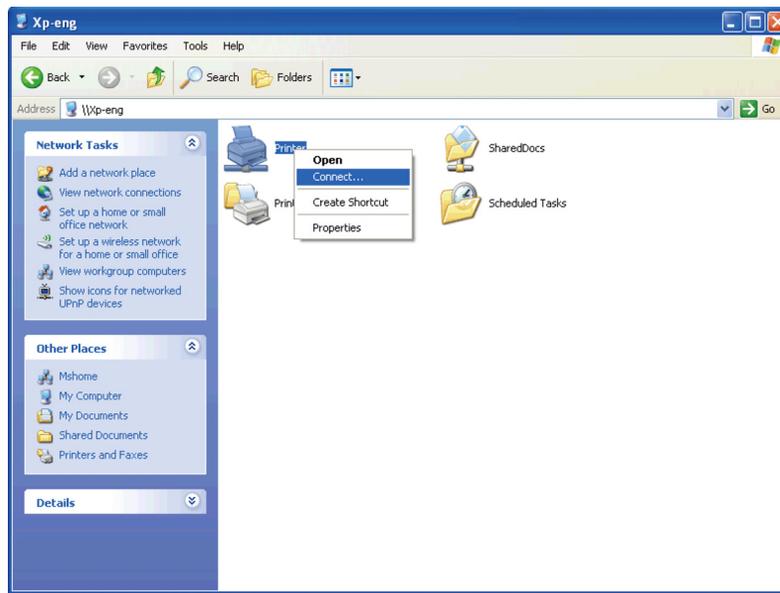
Wait for the driver information to be copied from the server computer to the client computer, and for a new printer object to be added to the **Printers and Faxes** folder. The copy time varies, based on network traffic and other factors.

4 Close **My Network Places**.

5 Print a test page to verify installation.

    a Click **start**→ **Printers and Faxes**.

    b Select the printer you just created.

    c Click **File**→ **Properties**.

    d On the **General** tab, click **Print Test Page**.

       When a test page prints successfully, installation is complete.

Windows Vista or Windows Vista 64-bit Edition

1 On the Windows desktop of the client computer, click **Start**→ **Network**.

2 Locate the host name of the server computer, and then double-click the host name.

3 Right-click the shared printer name, and then click **Connect**.

4 Click **Install driver**.

5 Click **Continue** in the **User Account Control** dialog box.

6 Wait for the driver information to be copied from the server computer to the client computer, and for a new printer object to be added to the Printers folder. The time this takes varies, based on network traffic and other factors.

7 Print a test page to verify installation.

    a Click **Start**→ **Control Panel**→ **Hardware and Sound**.

    b Select **Printers**.

    c Right-click the printer you just created and click **Properties**.

    d On the **General** tab, click **Print Test Page**.

       When a test page prints successfully, installation is complete.

Windows Server 2008 or Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition

1 On the Windows desktop of the client computer, click **Start→ Network**.

2 Locate the host name of the server computer, and then double-click the host name.

3 Right-click the shared printer name, and then click **Connect**.

4 Click **Install driver**.

5 Wait for the driver information to be copied from the server computer to the client computer, and for a new printer object to be added to the **Printers** folder. The time this takes varies, based on network traffic and other factors.

6 Print a test page to verify installation.

   a Click **Start→ Control Panel**.

   b Select **Printers**.

   c Right-click the printer you just created and select **Properties**.

   d On the **General** tab, click **Print Test Page**.

   When a test page prints successfully, installation is complete.

Windows 7, Windows 7 64-bit Edition, or Windows Server 2008 R2

1 On the Windows desktop of the client computer, click **Start→** your user name**→ Network** (**Start→ Network** for Windows Server 2008 R2).

2 Locate the host name of the server computer, and then double-click the host name.

3 Right-click the shared printer name, and then click **Connect**.

4 Click **Install driver**.

5 Wait for the driver information to be copied from the server computer to the client computer, and for a new printer object to be added to the **Devices and Printers** folder. The time this takes varies, based on network traffic and other factors.

6 Print a test page to verify installation.

   a Click **Start→ Devices and Printers**.

   b Right-click the printer you just created and select **Printer properties**.

   c On the **General** tab, click **Print Test Page**.

   When a test page prints successfully, installation is complete.

Windows 8, Windows 8 64-bit Edition, or Windows Server 2012

1 Point to the top or bottom right corner of the screen, and then click **Search** → Type `Network` in the search box, click **Apps**, and then click **Network**.

2 Locate the host name of the server computer, and then double-click the host name.

3 Right-click the shared printer name, and then click **Connect**.

4 Click **Install driver**.

5 Wait for the driver information to be copied from the server computer to the client computer, and for a new printer object to be added to the **Devices and Printers** folder. The time this takes varies, based on network traffic and other factors.

6 Print a test page to verify installation.

   a Under Desktop mode, right-click the bottom left corner of the screen, and then click **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** (**Hardware** for Windows Server 2012) → **Devices and Printers**.

   b Right-click the printer you just created and select **Printer properties**.

    c   On the **General** tab, click **Print Test Page**.

        When a test page is printed successfully, installation is complete.

Peer-to-Peer

If you use the peer-to-peer method, the printer driver is fully installed on each client computer. Network clients retain control of driver modifications. The client computer handles the print job processing.

Windows XP, Windows XP 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2003, or Windows Server 2003 x64 Edition

1 Click **start**→ **Printers and Faxes**.

2 Click **Add a Printer**.

3 Click **Next**.

4 Select **A network printer, or a printer attached to another computer**, and then click **Next**. If the printer is not listed, type the path to the printer in the text box.
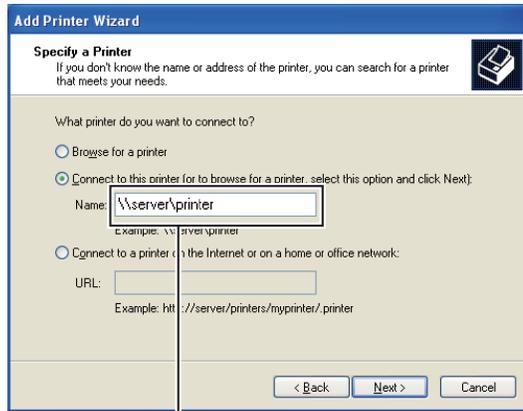
For example:\\<server host name>\<shared printer name>

The server host name is the name of the server computer that identifies it on the network. The shared printer name is the name assigned during the server installation process.

5 Click **Browse for a printer**, and then click **Next**.

If this is a new printer, you may be prompted to install a printer driver. If no system driver is available, you need to specify the path to available drivers.

6 Select **Yes** if you want this printer to be set as the default printer, and then click **Next**.

If you want to verify installation, click **Yes** to print a test page.

7 Click **Finish**.

When a test page prints successfully, installation is complete.

Windows Vista or Windows Vista 64-bit Edition

1   Click **Start**→ **Control Panel**→ **Hardware and Sound**→ **Printers**.

2   Click **Add a Printer** to launch the **Add Printer** wizard.

3   Select **Add a network**, **wireless or Bluetooth printer**, and then click **Next**. If the printer is listed, select the printer and click **Next**, or select **The printer that I want isn't listed** and type in the path of the printer in the **Select a shared printer by name** text box and click **Next**.

For example:\\\<server host name>\\<shared printer name>

The server host name is the name of the server computer that identifies it on the network. The shared printer name is the name assigned during the server installation process.

If this is a new printer, you may be prompted to install a printer driver. If no system driver is available, you need to specify the path to available drivers.

4   Select **Yes** if you want this printer to be set as the default printer, and then click **Next**.

5   If you want to verify installation, click **Print a test page**.

6   Click **Finish**.

When a test page prints successfully, installation is complete.

Windows Server 2008 or Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition

1   Click **Start**→ **Control Panel**→ **Printers**.

2   Click **Add a Printer**.

3   Select **Add a network**, **wireless or Bluetooth printer**, and then click **Next**. If the printer is listed, select the printer and click **Next**, or select **The printer that I want isn't listed** and type the path to the printer in the **Select a shared printer by name** text box and click **Next**.

For example: \\\<server host name>\\<shared printer name>

The server host name is the name of the server computer that identifies it on the network. The shared printer name is the name assigned during the server installation process.

If this is a new printer, you may be prompted to install a printer driver. If no system driver is available, then you will need to provide a path to available drivers.

4   Select **Yes** if you want this printer to be set as the default printer, and then click **Next**.

5   Click **Print a test page** if you want to verify installation.

6   Click **Finish**.

When a test page prints successfully, installation is complete.

Windows 7, Windows 7 64-bit Edition, or Windows Server 2008 R2

1 Click **Start** → **Devices and Printers**.

2 Click **Add a Printer**.

3 Select **Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer**. If the printer is listed, select the printer and click **Next**, or select **The printer that I want isn't listed**. Click **Select a shared printer by name** and type in the path of the printer in the text box, and then click **Next**.

For example: `\\<server host name>\<shared printer name>`

The server host name is the name of the server computer that identifies it to the network. The shared printer name is the name assigned during the server installation process.

If this is a new printer, you may be prompted to install a printer driver. If no system driver is available, then you will need to provide the path to the available driver.

4 Confirm the printer name, and then click **Next**.

5 Select **Yes** if you want this printer to be set as the default printer, and then click **Next**.

6 Click **Print a test page** if you want to verify installation.

7 Click **Finish**.

When a test page prints successfully, installation is complete.

Windows 8, Windows 8 64-bit Edition, or Windows Server 2012

1 Under Desktop mode, right-click the bottom left corner of the screen, and then click **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** (**Hardware** for Windows Server 2012) → **Devices and Printers**.

2 Click **Add a Printer** to launch the **Add Printer** wizard.

3 If the printer is listed, select the printer and click **Next**, or select **The printer that I want isn't listed**. Click **Select a shared printer by name** and type in the path of the printer in the text box, and then click **Next**.

For example: `\\<server host name>\<shared printer name>`

The server host name is the name of the server computer that identifies it to the network. The shared printer name is the name assigned during the server installation process.

If this is a new printer, you may be prompted to install a printer driver. If no system driver is available, then you will need to provide the path to the available driver.

4 Confirm the printer name, and then click **Next**.

5 Select **Yes** if you want this printer to be set as the default printer, and then click **Next**.

6 Click **Print a test page** if you want to verify installation.

7 Click **Finish**.

When a test page is printed successfully, installation is complete.

Installing Printer Drivers on Macintosh Computers

Installing the Drivers and Software

1 Run the *Software and Documentation* disc on the Macintosh computer.

2 Double-click the **Dell C2665 Installer** icon, and then click **Continue**.

3 When the popup dialog box prompts you for confirming the program included in the installation package, click **Continue**.

4 Click **Continue** on the **Important Information** screen.

5 Select a language for the Software License Agreement.

6 After reading the Software License Agreement, click **Continue**.

7 If you agree to the terms of the Software License Agreement, click **Agree** to continue the installation process.

8 Confirm the installation location.

9 Click **Install** to perform the standard installation.

If you want to select a custom installation, click **Customize** to select items that you want to install.

- Dell C2665dnf Printer Driver
- Dell C2665dnf Fax Driver
- Dell C2665dnf Scan Driver
- Dell Printer Status Monitor

10 Type the administrator's name and password, and then click **Install Software**.

11 Click **Continue Installation** to continue the installation.

12 When the message **The installation was successful.** appears, click **Log Out** to complete installation.

Adding a Printer on Mac OS X 10.5, 10.6, 10.7, or 10.8

When Using a USB connection

1 Turn on the printer.

2 Connect the USB cable between the printer and the Macintosh computer.

The printer is automatically added to your Macintosh computer.

When Using IP Printing

1 Turn on the printer.

2 Ensure that Macintosh computer and the printer are connected.

If you use wired connection, connect the LAN cable between the printer and the network.

If you use wireless connection, ensure that wireless connection is configured properly on your Macintosh computer and the printer.

3 Open the **System Preferences,** and click **Print & Fax** (**Print & Scan** for Mac OS X 10.7 and Mac OS X 10.8).

4 Click the Plus (+) sign, and click **IP**.

5 Select **Line Printer Daemon - LPD** for **Protocol**.

6 Type the IP address for the printer in the **Address** area.

7 Select **Dell C2665dnf Color MFP** for **Print Using** (**Use** for Mac OS X 10.8).

> ✎ **NOTE:** When printing is set up using IP printing, the queue name is displayed as blank. You do not need to specify it.

8 Click **Add**.

9 Specify the options that have been installed on the printer, and then click **Continue**.

10 Confirm that the printer is displayed in the **Print & Fax** (**Print & Scan** for Mac OS X 10.7 and Mac OS X 10.8) dialog box.

When Using Bonjour

1 Turn on the printer.

2 Ensure that Macintosh computer and the printer are connected.

If you use wired connection, connect the LAN cable between the printer and the network.

If you use wireless connection, ensure that wireless connection is configured properly on your Macintosh computer and the printer.

3 Open the **System Preferences,** and click **Print & Fax** (**Print & Scan** for Mac OS X 10.7 and Mac OS X 10.8).

4 Click the Plus (+) sign, and click **Default**.

5 Select the printer connected via Bonjour from the **Printer Name** list.

6 **Name** and **Print Using** (**Use** for Mac OS X 10.8) are automatically entered.

> ✎ **NOTE:** If "AirPrint Printer" is automatically selected for **Print Using**, select "Dell C2665dnf Color MFP" manually.

7 Click **Add**.

8 Specify the options that have been installed on the printer, and then click **Continue**.

9 Confirm that the printer is displayed in the **Print & Fax** (**Print & Scan** for Mac OS X 10.7 and Mac OS X 10.8) dialog box.

Configuring Settings

All the optional accessories are verified as installed.

1 Open the **System Preferences,** and click **Print & Fax** (**Print & Scan** for Mac OS X 10.7 and Mac OS X 10.8).

2 Select the printer in the printers list, and click **Options & Supplies**.

3 Select **Driver,** and select the options that have been installed in the printer, and then click **OK**.

12

Installing Printer Drivers on Linux Computers (CUPS)

This section provides information for installing or setting up the printer driver with CUPS (Common UNIX Printing System) on Red Hat® Enterprise Linux® 5/6 Desktop or SUSE® Linux Enterprise Desktop 10/11.

Operation on Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5/6 Desktop

Setup Overview

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5/6 Desktop:

1   Install the printer driver.

2   Set up the print queue.

3   Specify the default queue.

4   Specify the printing options.

Installing the Printer Driver

⚠ **CAUTION: Before you install the printer driver on Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5, confirm that Update 6 or higher is applied to your operating system. Consult your Linux distributor for the upgrade of your system.**

1   Select **Applications**→ **System Tools** (**Accessories** for Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Desktop)→ **Terminal**.

2   Type the following command in the terminal window.

```
su

(Type the administrator password)
rpm -ivh (Type the file path)/Dell-C2665-Color-
MFP-x.x-x.noarch.rpm
```

The printer driver is installed.

Setting Up the Queue

To execute printing, you must set up the print queue on your workstation.

For Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Desktop:

1   Open the URL "**http://localhost:631**" using a web browser.

2   Click **Administration**.

3   Click **Add Printer.**

Type the name of the printer in the **Name** box in the **Add New Printer** window, and click **Continue**.

You can optionally specify the location and description of the printer for further information.

For network connections:

a   Select **LPD/LPR Host or Printer** from the **Device** menu, and click **Continue**.

b   Type the IP address of the printer in **Device URI**, and click **Continue**.

Format: `lpd://xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx` (the IP address of the printer)

For USB connections:

    a   Select **Dell C2665dnf Color MFP USB #1** or **Dell C2665dnf Color MFP** from the **Device** menu, and click **Continue**.

4   Select **Dell C2665dnf Color MFP PS vx.x (en)** from the **Model** menu, and click **Add Printer**.

5   Type **root** as the user name, type the administrator password, and click **OK**.

    The message **Printer xxx has been added successfully.** appears.

    The setup is complete.

For Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 Desktop:

1   Open the URL "**http://localhost:631**" using a web browser.

2   Click **Administration**.

3   Click **Add Printer**.

4   Type **root** as the user name, type the administrator password, and click **OK**.

    For network connections:

    a   Select **LPD/LPR Host or Printer** from the **Other Network Printers** menu, and click **Continue**.

    b   Type the IP address of the printer in **Connection**, and click **Continue**.

        Format: `lpd://xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx` (the IP address of the printer)

    For USB connections:

    a   Select **Dell C2665dnf Color MFP** from the **Local Printers** menu, and click **Continue**.

5   Type the name of the printer in the **Name** box in the **Add Printer** window, and click **Continue**.

    You can optionally specify the location and description of the printer for further information.

6   Select **Dell C2665dnf Color MFP PS vx.x (en)** from the **Model** menu, and click **Add Printer**.

    The setup is complete.

Printing From the Applications

When you have finished setting up the queue, you can print jobs from the applications. Start the print job from the application, and specify the queue in the print dialog box.

However, sometimes you can print only from the default queue depending on the application (for example Mozilla). In these cases, before you start printing, set queue you want to print to as the default queue. For information on specifying the default queue, see "Setting the Default Queue."

Setting the Default Queue

1   Select **Applications**→ **System Tools** (**Accessories** for Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Desktop)→ **Terminal**.

2   Type the following command in the terminal window.

```
su
(Type the administrator password)
lpadmin -d (Type the queue name)
```

Specifying the Printing Options

You can specify the printing options such as color mode.

For Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Desktop:

1 Open the URL "**http://localhost:631**" using a web browser.

2 Click **Administration**.

3 Click **Manage Printers**.

4 Click **Set Printer Options** of the printer for which you want to specify the printing options.

5 Specify the required settings, and click **Set Printer Options**.

6 Type **root** as the user name, and type the administrator password.

The message **Printer xxx has been configured successfully.** appears.

The setting is complete.

For Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 Desktop:

1 Open the URL "**http://localhost:631**" using a web browser.

2 Click **Administration**.

3 Click **Manage Printers**.

4 Click the queue name for which you want to specify the printing options.

5 Select **Set Default Options** from the **Administration** menu.

6 Click the desired setting item, specify the required settings, and click **Set Default Options**.

The message **Printer xxx default options have been set successfully.** appears.

The setting is complete.

Uninstalling the Printer Driver

1 Select **Applications**→ **System Tools** (**Accessories** for Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Desktop)→ **Terminal**.

2 Type the following command in the terminal window to delete the print queue.

```
su
(Type the administrator password)
/usr/sbin/lpadmin -x (Type the print queue name)
```

3 Repeat the command above for all queues for the same model.

4 Type the following command in the terminal window.

```
su
(Type the administrator password)
rpm -e Dell-C2665-Color-MFP
```

The printer driver is uninstalled.

Operation on SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 10

Setup Overview

SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 10:

1 Install the printer driver.

2 Set up the print queue.

3 Specify the default queue.

4 Specify the printing options.

Installing the Printer Driver

1 Select **Computer**→ **More Applications...** and select **Gnome Terminal** on the Application Browser.

2 Type the following command in the terminal window.

```
su
(Type the administrator password)
rpm -ivh (Type the file path)/Dell-C2665-Color-
MFP-x.x-x.noarch.rpm
```

The printer driver is installed.

Setting Up the Queue

To execute printing, you must set up the print queue on your workstation.

1 Select **Computer**→ **More Applications...** and select **YaST** on the Application Browser.

2 Type the administrator password, and click **Continue**.

YaST Control Center is activated.

3 Select **Hardware** on **YaST Control Center**, and select **Printer**.

The **Printer Configuration** dialog box appears.

For network connections:

a Click **Add**.

b Select **Network Printers** as **Printer Type**, and click **Next**.

c Select **Print via LPD-Style Network Server** as **Network Printers**, and click **Next**.

d Type the IP address of the printer in **Hostname of the Print Server**.

e Type the name of the printer queue in **Print Queue Name**, and click **Next**.

f Type the printer name in **Name for Printing**.

> NOTE: **Printer Description** and **Printer Location** do not have to be specified.

g Select the **Do Local Filtering** check box, and click **Next**.

h Select DELL as **Manufacturer**. Select **C2665dnf Color MFP** as **Model**, and click **Next**.

i Confirm the settings in **Configuration**, and click **OK**.

For USB connections:

a Select **Dell C2665dnf Color MFP on USB (//Dell/C2665dnf%20Color%20MFP or /dev/usblp*)** as **Available are**, and click **Configure…**.

b Confirm the settings in **Edit configuration**, and click **OK**.

4 Click **Finish**.

Printing From the Applications

When you have finished setting up the queue you can print jobs from the applications. Start the print job from the application, and specify the queue in the print dialog box.

However, sometimes you can print only from the default queue depending on the application (for example Mozilla). In these cases, before you start printing, set queue you want to print to as the default queue. For information on specifying the default queue, see "Setting the Default Queue."

Setting the Default Queue

1 To activate the **Printer setup: Autodetected printers**, do the following.

a Select **Computer→ More Applications…** and select **YaST** on the Application Browser.

b Type the administrator password, and click **Continue**.

YaST Control Center is activated.

c Select **Hardware** on **YaST Control Center**, and select **Printer**.

2 Select the printer you want to set to default on the **Printer Configuration**, and select **Set Default** in the **Other** button menu.

3 Click **Finish**.

Specifying the Printing Options

You can specify the printing options such as color mode.

1 Open a web browser.

2 Type **http://localhost:631/admin** in **Location**, and press **<Enter>**.

3 Type **root** as the user name, and type the administrator password.

The **CUPS** window appears.

📝 **NOTE:** Set the password for authority as the printer administrator before setting the printer queue. If you have not set it, go to "Setting the Password for Authority as the Printer Administrator."

4 Click **Manage Printers**.

5 Specify the required settings, and click **Continue**.

The message **Printer xxx has been configured successfully.** appears.

The setting is complete. Execute printing from the application.

Setting the Password for Authority as the Printer Administrator

You must set the password for authority as the printer administrator to do operations as the printer administrator.

1 Select **Computer**→ **More Applications...** and select **Gnome Terminal** on the Application Browser.

2 Type the following command in the terminal window.

```
su
```
(Type the administrator password)
```
lppasswd -g sys -a root
```
(Type the password for authority as the printer administrator after the Enter password prompt.)

(Retype the password for authority as the printer administrator after the Enter password again prompt.)

Uninstalling the Printer Driver

1 Select **Computer**→ **More Applications...** and select **Gnome Terminal** on the Application Browser.

2 Type the following command in the terminal window to delete the print queue.

```
su
```
(Type the administrator password)
```
/usr/sbin/lpadmin -x  (Type the printer queue name)
```

3 Repeat the command above for all queues for the same model.

4 Type the following command in the terminal window.

```
su
```
(Type the administrator password)
```
rpm -e Dell-C2665-Color-MFP
```

The printer driver is uninstalled.

Operation on SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 11

Setup Overview

SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 11:

1 Install the printer driver.

2 Set up the print queue.

3 Specify the default queue.

4 Specify the printing options.

Installing the Printer Driver

1 Select **Computer→ More Applications...** and select **GNOME Terminal** on the Application Browser.

2 Type the following command in the terminal window.

```
su
(Type the administrator password)
rpm -ivh (Type the file path)/Dell-C2665-Color-
MFP-x.x-x.noarch.rpm
```

The printer driver is installed.

Setting Up the Queue

To execute printing, you must set up the print queue on your workstation.

1 Select **Computer→ More Applications...**, and select **YaST** on the Application Browser.

2 Type the administrator password, and click **Continue**.

YaST Control Center is activated.

3 Select **Hardware** on **YaST Control Center**, and select **Printer**.

The **Printer Configurations** dialog box opens.

For network connections:

a Click **Add**.

The **Add New Printer Configuration** dialog box opens.

b Click **Connection Wizard**.

The **Connection Wizard** dialog box opens.

c Select **Line Printer Daemon (LPD) Protocol** from **Access Network Printer or Printserver Box via**.

d Type the IP address of the printer in **IP Address or Host Name:**.

e Select **Dell** in the **Select the printer manufacturer:** drop-down menu.

f Click **OK**.

The **Add New Printer Configuration** dialog box appears.

g Select **Dell C2665dnf Color MFP PS vx.x [Dell/Dell_C2665dnf_Color_MFP.ppd.gz]** from the **Assign Driver** list.

> **NOTE:** You can specify the printer name in **Set Name:**.

h Confirm the settings, and click **OK**.

For USB connections:

a Click **Add**.

The **Add New Printer Configuration** dialog box opens.

The printer name is displayed in the **Determine Connection** list.

b Select **Dell C2665dnf Color MFP PS vx.x. [Dell/Dell_C2665dnf_Color_MFP.ppd.gz]** from the **Assign Driver** list.

> **NOTE:** You can specify the printer name in **Set Name:**.

c Confirm the settings, and click **OK**.

Printing From the Applications

When you have finished setting up the queue you can print jobs from the applications. Start the print job from the application, and specify the queue in the print dialog box.

However, sometimes you can print only from the default queue depending on the application (for example Mozilla). In these cases, before you start printing, set queue you want to print to as the default queue. For information on specifying the default queue, see "Setting the Default Queue."

Setting the Default Queue

You can set the default queue when you add the printer.

1   Select **Computer→ More Applications...**, and select **YaST** on the Application Browser.

2   Type the administrator password, and click **Continue**.

   YaST Control Center is activated.

3   Select **Hardware** on **YaST Control Center**, and select **Printer**.

   The **Printer Configurations** dialog box opens.

4   Click **Edit**.

   A dialog box to modify the specified queue opens.

5   Confirm that the printer you want to set is selected in the **Connection** list.

6   Select the **Default Printer** check box.

7   Confirm the settings, and click **OK**.

Specifying the Printing Options

You can specify the printing options such as color mode.

1   Open a web browser.

2   Type **http://localhost:631/admin** in **Location**, and press <Enter>.

3   Click **Manage Printers**.

4   Click **Set Printer Options** of the printer for which you want to specify the printing options.

5   Specify the required settings, and click **Set Printer Options**.

6   Type **root** as the user name, type the administrator password, and click **OK**.

   NOTE: Set the password for authority as the printer administrator before setting the printer queue. If you have not set it, go to "Setting the Password for Authority as the Printer Administrator."

   The message **Printer xxx has been configured successfully.** appears.

   The setting is complete. Execute printing from the application.

Setting the Password for Authority as the Printer Administrator

You must set the password for authority as the printer administrator to do operations as the printer administrator.

1   Select **Computer**→ **More Applications...** and select **GNOME Terminal** on the Application Browser.

2   Type the following command in the terminal window.

```
su
```
(Type the administrator password)
```
lppasswd -g sys -a root
```
(Type the password for authority as the printer administrator after the Enter password prompt.)

(Retype the password for authority as the printer administrator after the Enter password again prompt.)

Uninstalling the Printer Driver

1   Select **Computer**→ **More Applications...** and select **GNOME Terminal** on the Application Browser.

2   Type the following command in the terminal window to delete the print queue.

```
su
```
(Type the administrator password)
```
/usr/sbin/lpadmin -x  (Type the printer queue name)
```

3   Repeat the command above for all queues for the same model.

4   Type the following command in the terminal window.

```
su
```
(Type the administrator password)
```
rpm -e Dell-C2665-Color-MFP
```

The printer driver is uninstalled.

Using Your Printer

13

Operator Panel

About the Operator Panel

The operator panel has a touch panel, a status LED, control buttons, and a number pad, which allows you to control the printer.
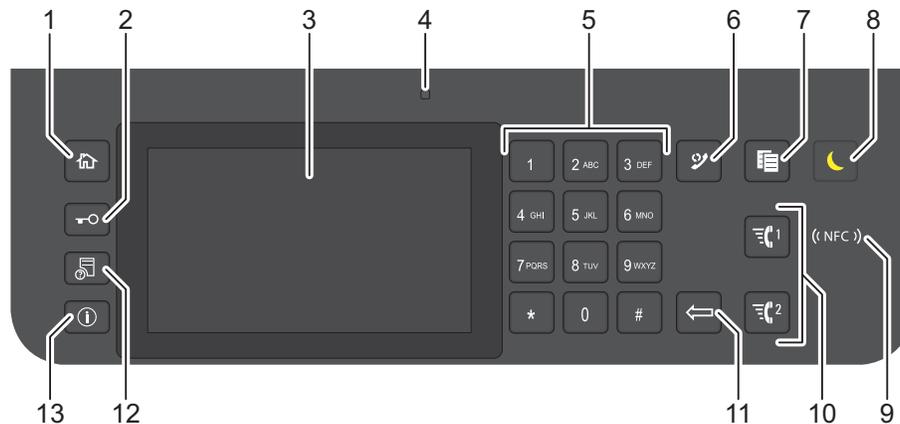
1 ⌂ (**Home**) button

- Moves to the **Home** screen.

2 ⌐O (**Login/Logout**) button

- Logs out if pressed while the user is logged in.

3 Touch Panel

- Specifies the settings by directly tapping the screen.
- Displays various settings, instructions, and error messages.

4 Status LED (Ready / Error)

- Shows a green light when the printer is ready and a blinking green light when data is being received.
- Shows an amber light when an error occurs and a blinking amber light when an unrecoverable print error occurs.

5 Number Pad

- Enters numbers and characters.

6 ♒ (**Redial / Pause**) button

- Re-dials a telephone number.
- Inserts a pause into a telephone number.

7 🗐 (**Copy**) button

- Starts copying the document. Effective only from the **Home** screen while you are logged in to the printer.

8 ☾ (**Power Saver**) button

- Enters or exits the Power Saver mode. When the printer is not used for a while, it enters the Power Saver mode to reduce power consumption. When the Power Saver mode is active, the ☾ (Power Saver) button blinks.

9 ((NFC)) (**NFC**) reader

- Starts communication between the card and the printer when an NFC card is waved over the reader.

10 ⊒("1 / ⊒("2 (**Quick Dial 1 / Quick Dial 2**) button

- Starts faxing the document to the number registered as "001" and "002" respectively of the FAX Speed Dial. Effective only when the **Home** screen is displayed.

11 ⇦ (**Delete**) button

- Deletes numbers and characters.

12 ⊟ (**Job Status**) button

- Moves to the **Job Status** screen. From this screen, you can check or cancel active jobs.

13 ⅰ (**Information**) button

- Moves to the **Information** screen. You can access various information and settings menu, check consumable levels and network status, and print various types of reports and lists.

📝 **NOTE:** Moving to a different menu or returning to a previous screen cancels the current entry or setting. Make sure to select OK to save the current entry or setting.

Basic Operations on the Touch Panel

You can operate the touch panel as with a smart phone or a tablet.

To Select the Item on the Screen

Tap the item.

To Scroll the Screen or the Listed Items

Swipe the screen by dragging your finger on the screen.
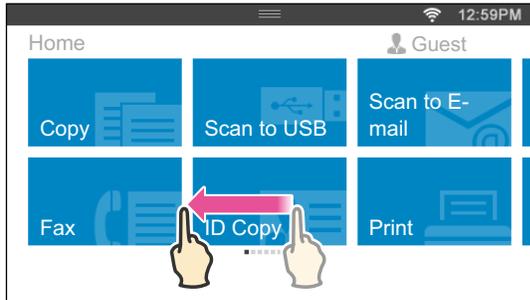
To scroll faster, flick the screen.
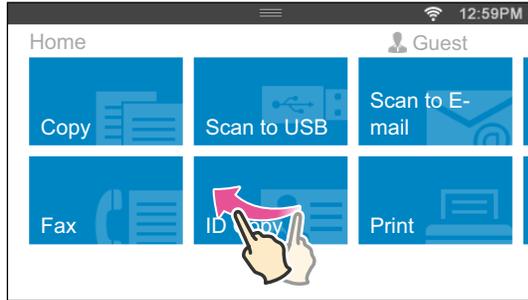
> ![NOTE icon] **NOTE:** You cannot swipe or flick on some screens depending on the screen design and specifications. In this case, operate by tapping the buttons shown on the screen.

About the Home Screen

This section describes the fields and buttons on the **Home** screen which is displayed by pressing the ⌂ **(Home)** button while the user is logged in to the printer. The **Home** screen is the default screen that appears when the printer is turned on.

> ![NOTE icon] **NOTE:** To display the Home screen, the user must be registered beforehand and log in to the printer. For more information, see "User Authentication."
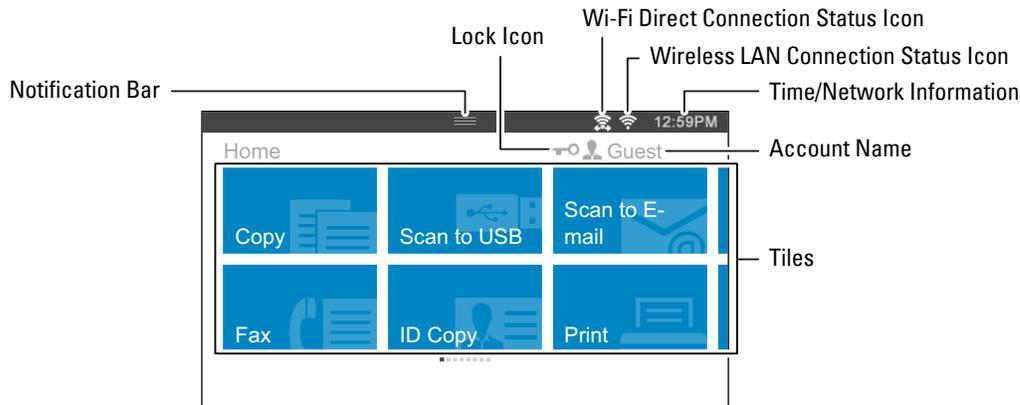
Notification Bar

Displays the status of the printer when the handle ☰ is dragged down. To close, drag up the handle.

You can adjust the screen brightness, see the toner information, or monitor the jobs currently progressing. Warnings are displayed in this area, too.

To adjust the screen brightness, drag the slider in **Screen Brightness**.

To see the **Toner Information**, tap **Supplies**.

The information of the toner is displayed with one toner at a time.

To see the information of other toners, swipe the screen.

Lock Icon

Shows that any of the functions controlled by the `Function Enabled` setting has been enabled. While the Lock icon is displayed on the left to the account name, you can access the password-locked functions without entering the password.

Wi-Fi Direct Connection Status Icon

Displays the Wi-Fi Direct connection status. This icon is displayed only when Wi-Fi Direct is enabled.

Wireless LAN Connection Status Icon

Displays the intensity of wireless signal when the wireless adapter is connected to the printer.

Time/Network Information

Displays the current time or the network information (IPv4 address or host name).

Account Name

Displays the name of the user currently logging in to the printer.

Tiles

Displays the tiles of the functions you can select from.

When the tile color is pale and disabled, you cannot select the function.

When the Lock icon is displayed on the tile, the function is controlled by the `Function Enabled` setting and you will need to enter the password to enable the function.

For more information about `Function Enabled`, see "Function Enabled."

Moving, Adding or Deleting the Tiles

To Move the Tiles

Tap and hold the tile you want to move, and drag it to the desired place.

The short orange bar appears between the tiles to show the nearest drop point when you are dragging the tile.

You can move the tile between pages as well.
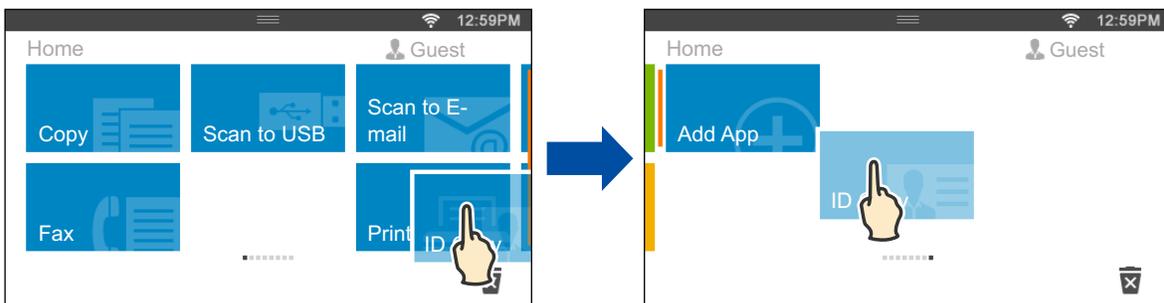
To Add the Tiles

Find the `Add App` tile in the last page of the **Home** screen, and tap it.

The **Apps List** screen appears.

Tap the tile you want to add to the **Home** screen.

To Delete the Tiles

Tap and hold the tile you want to delete.

 appears. Drag the tile to the icon.
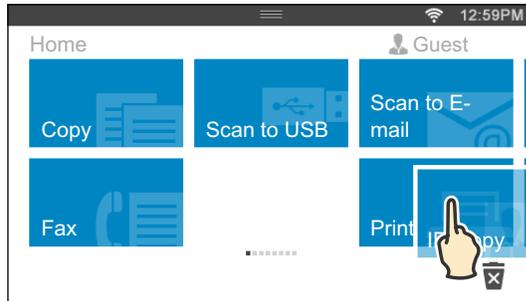
The confirmation screen is displayed.

Tap `OK` to delete the tile.

Using the Keyboard Displayed on the Touch Panel

During operations, a keyboard for entering text sometimes appears. The following describes how to enter text.

| QWERTY | AZERTY | QWERTZ |

You can enter the following characters: numbers, alphabets, and symbols.

Item	Description
Entering alphabets	To enter uppercase letters, tap . To return to the lowercase letters, tap again. To lock to the uppercase letters, double-tap .
Entering numbers and symbols	Tap ?123 .
Entering a space	Tap .
Deleting characters	Tap to delete one character at a time.

To Change the Keyboard Layout

1 Press the ⓘ (Information) button.

2 Tap the `Tools` tab, and then tap `Language Settings`.

3 Tap `Keyboard Layout`.

4 Tap the desired keyboard layout.

5 Tap `OK`.

Using the Number Pad

As you perform various tasks, you may need to enter numbers. For example, when you enter fax number directly.

Number Pad Numbers

1	
2	
3	
4	
5	
6	
7	
8	
9	
0	
*	
#	

Changing Numbers or Names

If you make a mistake while entering a number, press the ⬅ **(Delete)** button to delete the last digit or character. Then enter the correct number or character.

Inserting a Pause

For some telephone systems, it is necessary to dial an access code and listen for a second dial tone. A pause must be entered in order for the access code to function. For example, enter the access code 9 and then press the 📞 **(Redial/Pause)** button before entering the telephone number. "-" appears on the display to indicate when a pause is entered.

Printing a Panel Settings Report

The panel settings report shows current settings for the printer menus. For details about how to print a panel settings report, see "Report / List."

Changing the Language

To change the language used on the touch panel:

When Using the Operator Panel

1 Press the (i) (**Information**) button.
2 Tap the `Tools` tab, and then tap `Language Settings`.
3 Tap `Panel Language`.
4 Tap ▼ until the desired language appears, and then tap the desired language.
5 Tap `OK`.

When Using the Tool Box

1 Click **Start→ All Programs→ Dell Printers→ Dell C2665dnf Color Laser Multifunction Printer→ Tool Box**.

   ✍ **NOTE:** For details about starting the Tool Box, see "Starting the Tool Box."

   The **Tool Box** opens.

2 Click the **Printer Maintenance** tab.
3 Select **Panel Language** from the list at the left side of the page.

   The **Panel Language** page appears.

4 Select the desired language from **Panel Language**, and then click **Apply New Settings**.

Setting the Power Saver Timer Option

You can set the power saver timer for the printer. The printer enters the power saver mode when the printer is not used for a certain period of time.

✍ **NOTE:** If `Panel Lock Control` is set to `Enable`, you need to enter the four digit password to enter the `Admin Settings` menu.

To set the power saver timer:

1 Press the (i) (**Information**) button.
2 Tap the `Tools` tab, and then tap `Admin Settings`.
3 Tap `System Settings`.
4 Tap `General`.
5 Tap `Power Saver Timer`.
6 Tap `Sleep` or `Deep Sleep`.
7 Tap – or +, or use the number pad to enter the desired value.

   You can specify from 1 to 30 minutes for `Sleep` or 1 to 30 minutes for `Deep Sleep`.

8 Tap `OK`.

About the Concurrent Jobs Feature

This feature enables you to start a concurrent job while a fax job is running. This is done by temporarily displaying the **Home** screen and switching to a different function that can be run concurrently such as copy or scan.

1   While the printer is sending or receiving a fax, press the 🏠 (**Home**) button.

2   Tap Copy or Scan.

3   After setting the copy or scan settings, tap OK.

    For details about Copy or Scan, see "Copying" or "Scanning."

Dell™ Printer Configuration Web Tool

Overview

✎ **NOTE:** This web tool is available only when the printer is connected to a network using an Ethernet cable or the wireless printer adapter.

One of the features of the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** is E-Mail Alert Setup, which sends e-mail to you or the key operator when the printer needs supplies or intervention.

To fill out printer inventory reports requiring the asset tag number of all the printers in your area, use the **Printer Information** feature in the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**. Enter the IP address of each printer on the network to display the asset tag number.

The **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** feature also allows you to change the printer settings and keep track of printing trends. If you are a network administrator, you can copy the printer settings to one or all printers on the network using your web browser.

Setting Up the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool

Ensure that you activate JavaScript in your browser before using the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**.

Follow the procedures below to configure both the environment settings of your web browser and the operator panel before using the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**.

> **NOTE:** The **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** pages may be displayed unreadable if the pages were configured by the language different from the language of your web browser.

Setting Up From Web Browser

For Internet Explorer®

Setting Up the Display Language

1 Select **Internet Options** from **Tools** on the menu bar.
2 Select **Languages** in the **General** tab.
3 Specify the display language in order of preference in the **Language** list.

For example:

- Italian (**Italy**) [**it-IT**]
- Spanish (**Traditional Sort**) [**es-ES tradnl**]
- German (**Germany**) [**de-DE**]
- French (**France**) [**fr-FR**]
- English (**United States**) [**en-US**]
- Danish [**da-DK**]
- Dutch (**Netherlands**) [**nl-NL**]
- Norwegian (**Bokmal**) [**no**]
- Swedish [**sv-SE**]

Setting the IP Address of the Printer to Non-Proxy

1 Select **Internet Options** from the **Tools** menu.
2 Click **LAN Settings** under **Local Area Network (LAN) Settings** in the **Connections** tab.
3 Do either of the following:
- Clear the **Use a proxy server for your LAN** check box under **Proxy server**.
- Click **Advanced**, and then specify the IP address of the printer in the **Do not use proxy server for addresses beginning with** field under **Exceptions**.

For Firefox®

Setting Up the Display Language

1 Select **Options** from the **Tools** menu.
2 Click **Choose** in the **Content** tab.

3 Specify the display language in order of preference in the **Languages in order of preference** list.

For example:

- **English** [en] or **English/United States** [en-us]
- **Italian** [it]
- **Spanish** [es]
- **German** [de]
- **French** [fr]
- **Dutch** [nl]
- **Norwegian** [no]
- **Swedish** [sv]
- **Danish** [da]

Setting the IP Address of the Printer to Non-Proxy

1 Select **Options** from the **Tools** menu.

2 Click **Advanced** tab.

3 Click **Network** on the **Options** dialog box.

4 Click **Connection → Settings**.

5 You can configure the LAN settings in one of the following ways:

- Select the **No Proxy** check box, if you do not want to use a proxy.
- Select the **Auto-detect proxy settings for this network** check box.
- Select the **Manual proxy configuration:** check box, and then enter a hostname and a port number if you have a list of one or more proxy servers. If you have an IP address that does not use a proxy, enter the IP address of your printer in the **No Proxy for:** edit box.
- Select the **Automatic proxy configuration URL:** check box.

After setting the language and proxy, enter <http://nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn/> (the IP address of your printer) in the URL entry field of the browser to activate the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**.

Setting Up From Operator Panel

You can launch the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** only when the operator panel setting is set to **Enable**. Confirm the operator panel setting if you cannot launch the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**. For more information, see "Understanding the Printer Menus."

Starting the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool

To launch the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**, enter the IP address of your printer in your web browser.
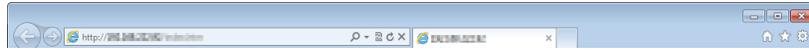
If you do not know the IP address of your printer, print the system settings report or display the **TCP/IP Settings** page, which lists the IP address. For details about how to find your printer's IP address, see "Verifying the IP Settings."

Overview of the Menu Items

The **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** consists of the following menus:

- Printer Status
- Printer Jobs
- Printer Settings
- Print Server Settings
- Copy Printer Settings
- Print Volume
- Address Book
- Printer Information
- Tray Management
- E-Mail Server Settings Overview
- Set Password
- Online Help
- Order Supplies at:
- Contact Dell Support at:

Printer Status

Use the **Printer Status** menu to get immediate feedback on the printer supply status. When a toner cartridge is running low, click the order supplies link on the first screen to order a new toner cartridge.

Printer Jobs

Use the **Printer Jobs** menu to contain information on the **Job List** page and **Completed Jobs** page.

These pages show the details of the status regarding each protocol or job.

Printer Settings

Use the **Printer Settings** menu to change the printer settings and to view the settings in the operator panel remotely.

Print Server Settings

Use the **Print Server Settings** menu to change the type of printer interface and the necessary conditions for communications.

Copy Printer Settings

Use the **Copy Printer Settings** menu to copy the printer settings to another printer or printers on the network by typing the IP address of each printer.

> **NOTE:** You must log in as an administrator to use this feature.

Print Volume

Use the **Print Volume** menu to check the history of printing, such as paper usage, the types of jobs being printed, limit to which users can use the color mode, and the maximum number of pages they can print.

Address Book

Use the **Address Book** menu to view or edit the e-mail address, server address, and fax number entries in the Address Book, or to register new entries.

> **NOTE:** You must log in as an administrator to use this feature.

Printer Information

Use the **Printer Information** menu to get information on service calls, inventory reports, or the status of current memory and engine code levels.

Tray Management

Use the **Tray Management** menu to get information about the paper type and size for each tray.

E-Mail Server Settings Overview

Use the **E-Mail Server Settings Overview** menu to configure **E-Mail Server** settings for Scan to E-mail, e-mail alert and forwarding fax to email features. Job history reports, job statistics reports, and print volume reports can also be received by e-mail. To receive alerts or reports, specify your e-mail address or the e-mail address of the key operator in the **E-Mail Server** menu.

Set Password

Use the **Set Password** menu to lock the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** with a password so that other users do not inadvertently change the printer settings that you have selected.

> **NOTE:** You must log in as an administrator to use this feature.

Online Help

Click **Online Help** to visit the Dell Support website.

Order Supplies at:

www.dell.com/supplies

Contact Dell Support at:

dell.com/support

Page Display Format

The layout of the page is divided into three sections listed below:

- Top Frame
- Left Frame
- Right Frame

Top Frame

The top frame is located at the top of all pages. When the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** is activated, the current status and specifications of the printer are displayed in the top frame on every page.

The following items are displayed in the top frame.
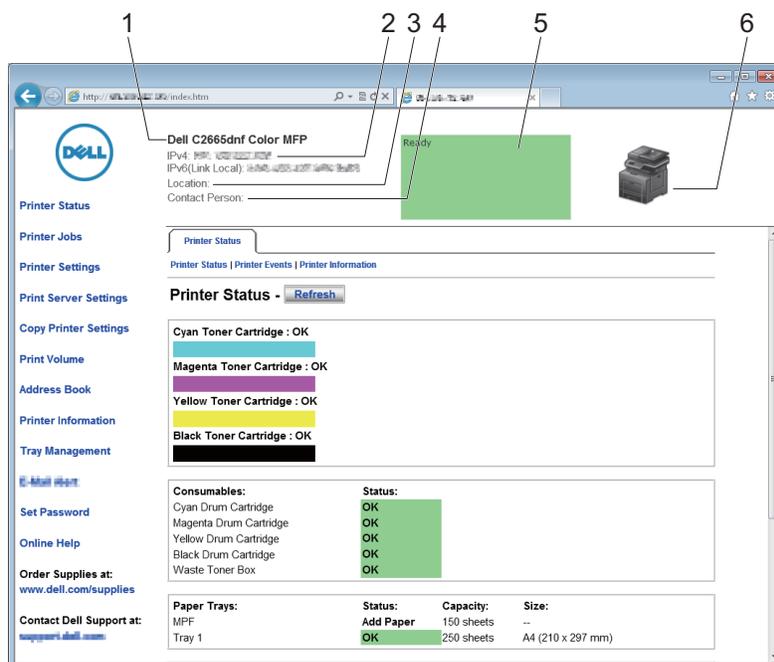
1	Dell C2665dnf Color MFP	Displays the product name of the printer.
2	IPv4 / IPv6	Displays the IP address of the printer.
3	Location	Displays location of the printer. The location can be changed in the **Basic Information** section on the **Print Server Settings** page.
4	Contact Person	Displays the name of the printer administrator. The name can be changed in the **Basic Information** section on the **Print Server Settings** page.
5	Event Panel	Displays the indicator for the condition of the printer.
6	Machine image	Shows the bitmap image of the printer. The **Printer Status** menu appears in the right frame when you click on the image.

Left Frame

The left frame is located on the left side of all the pages. The menu titles displayed in the left frame are linked to corresponding menus and pages. You can go to the corresponding page by clicking their characters.

The following menus are displayed in the left frame.
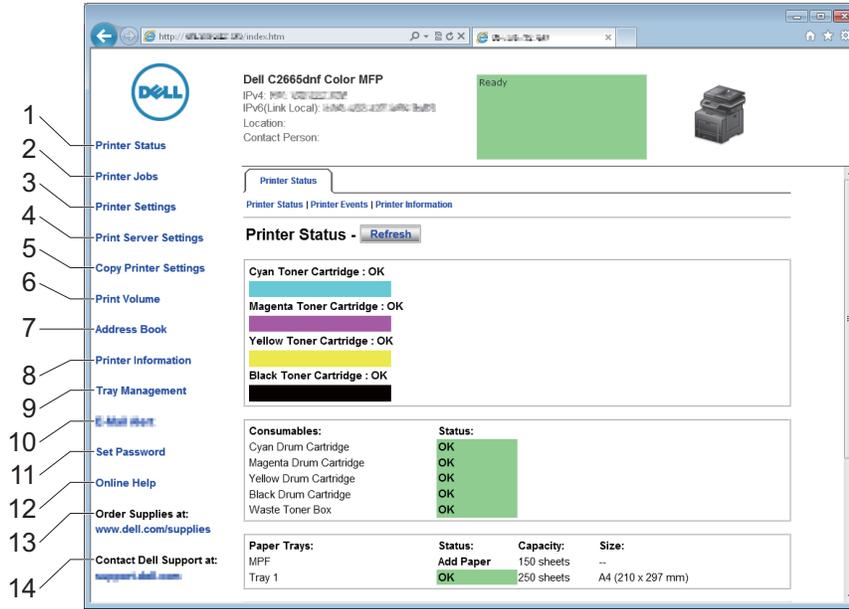
1	Printer Status	Links to the **Printer Status** menu.
2	Printer Jobs	Links to the **Printer Jobs** menu.
3	Printer Settings	Links to the **Printer Settings Report** menu.
4	Print Server Settings	Links to the **Print Server Reports** menu.
5	Copy Printer Settings	Links to the **Copy Printer Settings** menu.
6	Print Volume	Links to the **Print Volume** menu.
7	Address Book	Links to the **E-Mail Address** menu.
8	Printer Information	Links to the **Printer Status** menu.
9	Tray Management	Links to the **Tray Management** menu.
10	E-Mail Server Settings Overview	Links to the **Print Server Settings** menu.
11	Set Password	Links to the **Security** menu.
12	Online Help	Links to the Dell Support website.
13	Order Supplies at:	Links to the Dell web page.
14	Contact Dell Support at:	Links to the Dell Support website.

Right Frame

The right frame is located on the right side of all the pages. The contents of the right frame correspond to the menu that you select in the left frame. For details on the items displayed in the right frame, see "Details of the Menu Items."

Buttons in the Right Frame
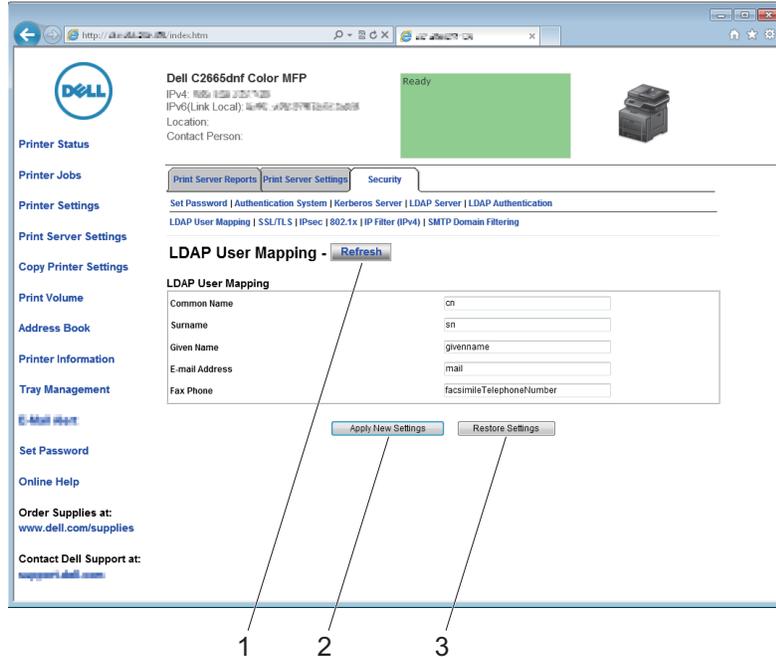
1	**Refresh** Button	Receives the current printer configuration and updates the latest information in the right frame.
2	**Apply New Settings** Button	Submits new settings made on the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** to the printer. The new settings replace the old settings of the printer.
3	**Restore Settings** Button	Restores the old settings that existed before any changes were made. New settings will not be submitted to the printer.

Changing the Settings of the Menu Items

Some menus allow you to change the printer settings through the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**. When you access these menus, the authentication window appears on the screen. Type a user name and password for the printer administrator by following the prompts displayed in the dialog box.

The default user name is **admin**, and the default password is left blank (NULL). You can change only the password in the **Set Password** page in the **Security** menu. The user name cannot be changed. See "Set Password" for more information.

Details of the Menu Items

"Printer Status"	"Printer Status"	"Printer Status"
		"Printer Events"
		"Printer Information"
"Printer Jobs"	"Printer Jobs"	"Job List"
		"Completed Jobs"

"Printer Settings"	"Printer Settings Report"	"Menu Settings"
		"Reports"
	"Printer Settings"	"System Settings"
		"Network Settings"
		"USB Settings"
		"PCL Settings"
		"PS Settings"
		"PDF Settings"
		"Secure Settings"
		"Copy Defaults"
		"Copy Color Balance"
		"Copy Settings"
		"Fax Defaults"
		"Fax Settings"
		"Scan Defaults"
		"USB Direct Print Defaults"
		"MIFARE Customized Card"
	"Printer Maintenance"	"Paper Density"
		"Adjust Transfer Belt Unit"
		"Adjust 2nd BTR"
		"Adjust Fusing Unit"
		"Auto Registration Adjustment"
		"Color Registration Adjustments"
		"Reset Defaults"
		"Initialize PrintMeter"
		"Storage"[*1]
		"Non-Dell Toner"
		"Adjust Altitude"
		"Clock Settings"
		"Web Link Customization"

"Print Server Settings"	"Print Server Reports"	"Print Server Setup Page"
		"E-Mail Server Setup Page"
	"Print Server Settings"	"Basic Information"
		"Port Settings"
		"TCP/IP"
		"SMB"
		"E-Mail Server"
		"Bonjour (mDNS)"
		"SNMP"
		"Scan to PC"
		"SNTP"
		"AirPrint"
		"Google Cloud Print"
		"Dell Document Hub"
		"Proxy Server"
		"Wireless LAN"*2
		"Wi-Fi Direct"
		"Reset Print Server"
"Print Server Settings"	"Security"	"Set Password"
		"Authentication System"
		"Kerberos Server"
		"LDAP Server"
		"LDAP Authentication"
		"LDAP User Mapping"
		"SSL/TLS"
		"IPsec"
		"802.1x"*3
		"IP Filter (IPv4)"
		"SMTP Domain Filtering"
"Copy Printer Settings"	"Copy Printer Settings"	"Copy Printer Settings"
		"Copy Printer Settings Report"
"Print Volume"	"Print Volume"	"Print Volume"
		"Dell ColorTrack"
"Address Book"	"E-Mail Address"	"E-Mail Address"
		"E-Mail Group"
		"Default Setup"
	"Server Address"	"Server Address"
	"Phone Book"	"FAX Speed Dial"
		"FAX Group"
"Tray Management"	"Tray Management"	

*1 This item is available only when **RAM Disk** is enabled.

*2 This item is available only when the printer is connected using the wireless network.

*3 This item is available only when the printer is connected using an Ethernet cable.

Printer Status

Use the **Printer Status** menu to check the status of consumables, hardware, and specifications of the printer.

The following pages are displayed in the **Printer Status** menu.

Printer Status

Purpose:

To check the status of the consumables, trays, and covers.

Values:

Cyan Toner Cartridge		OK	Indicates that there is enough amount of toner for use.
Magenta Toner Cartridge		Replace Soon	Indicates that the toner needs to be replaced soon.
Yellow Toner Cartridge		Replace Now	Indicates that the toner needs to be replaced now.
Black Toner Cartridge			
Consumables	Status	OK	Indicates that the status of the drum cartridge and/or waste toner box is OK for use.
		Replace Soon	Indicates that the drum cartridge and/or waste toner box needs to be replaced soon.
		Replace Now	Indicates that the drum cartridge and/or waste toner box needs to be replaced now.
Paper Trays	Status	OK	Indicates that there is some paper in the tray but the quantity is unknown.
		Add Paper	Indicates that there is no paper in the tray.
	Capacity		Displays the maximum capacity of the paper tray.
	Size		Displays the size of paper in the tray.
Output Tray	Status	OK	Indicates that the tray is available.
	Capacity		Displays the maximum capacity of the paper tray.
Cover	Status	Closed	Indicates that the cover is closed.
		Open	Indicates that the cover is open.
Printer Type			Displays the type of the printer. **Color Laser** is displayed normally.
Printing Speed			Displays the printing speed.

Printer Events

Purpose:

When faults occur, such as *Out of Paper* or *Cover is open*, the details of all alerts or indications of faults are displayed in the **Printer Events** page.

Values:

Location	Displays the location where a fault occurred.
Details	Displays the details of the fault.

Printer Information

Purpose:

To verify the printer details such as the hardware configuration and software version. This page can also be displayed by clicking on the **Printer Information** tab in the left frame.

Values:

Dell Service Tag Number		Displays Dell service tag number.
Express Service Code		Displays Dell express service code.
Asset Tag Number		Displays the asset tag number of the printer.
Printer Serial Number		Displays the serial number of the printer.
Memory Capacity		Displays the memory capacity.
Processor Speed		Displays the processing speed.
Printer Revision Levels	**Firmware Version**	Displays the revision date (revision level).

Printer Jobs

The **Printer Jobs** menu contains information on the **Job List** and **Completed Jobs** pages. These pages show the details of the status regarding each protocol or job.

Job List

Purpose:

To confirm the jobs that are being processed. Click the **Refresh** button to update the screen.

Values:

ID	Displays the job ID.
Job Name	Displays the file name of the job being processed.
Owner	Displays the name of the job owner.
Host Name	Displays the name of the host computer.
Job Status	Displays the status of the job being processed.
Job Type	Displays the type of the job.
Host I/F	Displays the status of the host interface.
Job Submitted Time	Displays the date when the job was submitted.

Completed Jobs

Purpose:

To check the completed jobs. Up to the last 20 jobs are displayed. Click the **Refresh** button to update the screen.

Values:

ID	Displays the job ID.
Job Name	Displays the file name of the completed job.
Owner	Displays the name of the job owner.
Host Name	Displays the name of the host computer.
Output Result	Displays the status of the completed job.
Job Type	Displays the type of the job.
Impression Number	Displays the total number of pages for the job.
No. of Sheets	Displays the total number of sheets for the job.
Host I/F	Displays the status of the host interface.
Job Submitted Time	Displays the date when the job was submitted.

Printer Settings

Use the **Printer Settings** menu to display the **Printer Settings Report**, **Printer Settings**, and **Printer Maintenance** tabs and to configure the printer settings.

The following tabbed pages are displayed at the top of the right frame.

Printer Settings Report

The **Printer Settings Report** tab includes the **Menu Settings** and **Reports** pages.

Menu Settings

Purpose:

To display the current settings of the printer menus.

Values:

System Settings	Power Saver Time - Sleep	Displays the time taken by the printer to enter Sleep mode after it finishes a job.
	Power Saver Time - Deep Sleep	Displays the time taken by the printer to enter Deep Sleep mode after it has entered Sleep mode.
	mm / inch	Displays the measurement unit that is used on the touch panel.
	Display Brightness	Displays the brightness level of the touch panel screen.
	Control Panel Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when the operator panel input is correct. **Off** indicates that the tone is disabled.
	Invalid Key Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when the operator panel input is incorrect. **Off** indicates that the tone is disabled.
	Machine Ready Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when the printer becomes ready. **Off** indicates that the tone is disabled.
	Copy Completed Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when a copy job is complete. **Off** indicates that the tone is disabled.
	Job Completed Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when a job other than a copy job is complete. **Off** indicates that the tone is disabled.

Fault Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when a job ends abnormally. **Off** indicates that the tone is disabled.
Alert Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when a problem occurs. **Off** indicates that the tone is disabled.
Out of Paper Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when the printer runs out of paper. **Off** indicates that the tone is disabled.
Low Toner Alert Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when the toner is low. **Off** indicates that the tone is disabled.
Auto Clear Alert Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted 5 seconds before the printer performs auto clear. **Off** indicates that the tone is disabled.
NFC Authentication Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when an NFC card is placed on the NFC reader for authentication. **Off** indicates that the tone is disabled.
All Tones	Displays the volume of all the alert tones. **Off** indicates that all the tones are disabled.
Low Toner Alert Message	Displays whether to show the alert message when the toner is low.
OffHook Wake Up	Displays whether to wake up from Sleep or Deep Sleep mode when you pick up the handset of the external telephone.
Auto Log Print	Displays whether to automatically print a job history report after every 20 jobs.
RAM Disk	Displays whether to allocate RAM for the file system for the Secure Print, Proof Print, Private Mail Box Print, and Public Mail Box Print features.
Panel Language	Displays the language used on the touch panel.
Max E-mail Size	Displays the maximum size of e-mail that can be sent.
Auto Reset	Displays the amount of time before the printer automatically resets its settings to the defaults when no additional settings are made.
Fault Time-out	Displays the amount of time the printer waits before canceling a job that stops abnormally.
Default Paper Size	Displays the default print paper size.
Print ID	Displays where to print a user ID on the output paper.
Print Text	Displays whether the printer outputs PDL (Page Description Language) data (which is not supported by the printer) as text when the printer receives it.
Banner Sheet Insert Position	Displays where to insert a banner sheet in the output paper.
Banner Sheet Specify Tray	Displays the tray to feed a banner sheet.
Substitute Tray	Displays if paper of another size has to be used when the paper that is loaded in the specified tray does not match the paper size setting for the current job.
Letterhead 2 Sided	Displays whether to print both sides on letterhead.
A4<>Letter Switch	Displays whether to print A4 size jobs on Letter size paper if A4 is not available in the paper trays and vice versa (Letter size job on A4 size paper).
Report 2 Sided Print	Displays whether to print reports on both sides a sheet of paper.
Use Another Tray	Displays whether to show a message to select another tray when the specified paper is not available in the paper tray.

Network Settings	PS Data Format	Displays PostScript Level3 Compatible communication protocol for each interface.
USB Settings	USB Port	Displays whether to enable the USB interface.
	PS Data Format	Displays PostScript Level3 Compatible communication protocol for each interface.
	Job Time-out	Displays the amount of time the printer waits for data to arrive from the computer.
PCL Settings	Paper Tray	Displays the paper input tray.
	Paper Size	Displays the paper size setting.
	Custom Paper Size - Y	Displays the length of custom size paper.
	Custom Paper Size - X	Displays the width of custom size paper.
	Orientation	Displays how text and graphics are oriented on the page.
	2 Sided Print	Displays whether to print on both sides of a sheet of paper.
	Font	Displays the selected font from the list of registered fonts.
	Symbol Set	Displays a symbol set for the specified font.
	Font Size	Displays the font size for scalable typographic fonts.
	Font Pitch	Displays the font pitch for scalable mono spaced fonts.
	Form Line	Displays the number of lines in a page.
	Quantity	Displays the number of copies to print.
	Image Enhance	Displays whether to enable the Image Enhancement feature.
	Hex Dump	Displays whether to enable the Hex Dump feature.
	Draft Mode	Displays whether to print in the draft mode.
	Line Termination	Displays whether to set the line termination.
	Default Color	Displays the color mode setting.
	Ignore Form Feed	Displays whether to ignore blank pages that only contain Form Feed control codes.
PS Settings	PS Error Report	Displays whether the contents of the errors concerning PostScript Level3 Compatible page description language are printed.
	PS Job Time-out	Displays the execution time for one PostScript Level3 Compatible job.
	Paper Select Mode	Displays the tray that is selected in the PostScript Level3 Compatible printing.
	Default Color	Displays the color mode setting.
PDF Settings	Quantity	Displays the number of copies to print.
	2 Sided Print	Displays whether to print on both sides of a sheet of paper.
	Print Mode	Displays the print mode setting.
	Collation	Displays whether to sort a job.
	Output Size	Displays the output paper size.
	Layout	Displays the output layout.
	Default Color	Displays the color mode setting.
Secure Settings	Panel Lock Control	Displays whether to lock Admin Settings with a password.
	Copy	Displays whether to lock the Copy function with a password.
	Scan to E-mail	Displays whether to lock the Scan to E-mail function with a password.
	Fax	Displays whether to lock the Fax function with a password.

	Fax Driver	Displays whether to enable the Fax Driver function.
	Scan to Network	Displays whether to lock the Scan to Network function with a password.
	Scan to PC	Displays whether to lock the Scan to PC function with a password.
	PC Scan	Displays whether to lock the PC Scan function with a password.
	Scan to USB	Displays whether to lock the Scan to USB function with a password.
	USB Direct Print	Displays whether to lock the USB Direct Print function with a password.
	ID Copy	Displays whether to enable the ID Copy function.
	USB Services - Show When Inserted	Displays whether to show a **USB Drive Detected** screen when a USB memory is inserted into the printer.
	Secure Receive Set	Displays whether a password is required to receive faxes.
	Edit E-mail From Fields	Displays whether to enable editing of the transmission source when you use the Scan to E-mail function.
	Reconfirm Recipients	Displays whether to reconfirm before sending fax or scan jobs.
	Software Download	Displays whether to enable download of firmware updates.
	Display of Network Information	Displays whether to show network information in the message field of the **Home** screen.
	Login Error	Displays how many times an administrator can attempt to log in to **Panel Lock**, **Function Enabled**, and **Secure Receive**.
	NFC Authentication	Displays whether to enable the authentication using the NFC authentication card.
	Expiration Mode[1]	Displays whether to set the date to delete the files stored as Secure Print in the RAM disk.
	Expiration Time[1]	Displays the time to delete the files stored as Secure Print in the RAM disk.
	Recurrence[1]	Displays the period to repeat the setting.
	Weekly Settings[1]	Displays the day of the week to repeat the setting.
	Monthly Settings[1]	Displays the day of the month to repeat the setting.
Secure Settings - Copy/Scan/Fax/Print	Set Available Time	Displays whether to set the available time period for the Print, Copy, Fax, and Scan functions, respectively.
	Start Time	Displays the start time of the available time period for the Print, Copy, Fax, and Scan functions, respectively.
	End Time	Displays the end time of the available time period for the Print, Copy, Fax, and Scan functions, respectively.
	Recurrence	Displays the day of the week to repeat the setting.
Copy Defaults	Output Color	Displays whether to make copies in color or in black and white.
	Select Tray	Displays the default input tray.
	Collation	Displays whether to sort a copy job.
	Reduce/Enlarge	Displays the default copy reduction/enlargement ratio.
	Original Size	Displays the paper size of the original.
	Original Type	Displays the type of the original.
	Darken/Lighten	Displays the default copy density.
	Sharpness	Displays the default sharpness level.
	Color Saturation	Displays the default color saturation level.

	Auto Exposure	Displays whether to suppress the background of the original to enhance text on the copy.
	Auto Exposure Level	Displays the background suppression level.
Copy Color Balance	Yellow Low Density	Displays the color balance level of low density yellow.
	Yellow Medium Density	Displays the color balance level of medium density yellow.
	Yellow High Density	Displays the color balance level of high density yellow.
	Magenta Low Density	Displays the color balance level of low density magenta.
	Magenta Medium Density	Displays the color balance level of medium density magenta.
	Magenta High Density	Displays the color balance level of high density magenta.
	Cyan Low Density	Displays the color balance level of low density cyan.
	Cyan Medium Density	Displays the color balance level of medium density cyan.
	Cyan High Density	Displays the color balance level of high density cyan.
	Black Low Density	Displays the color balance level of low density black.
	Black Medium Density	Displays the color balance level of medium density black.
	Black High Density	Displays the color balance level of high density black.
Copy Settings	2 Sided Copying	Displays whether to print on both sides of a sheet of paper.
	Binding of Original	Displays the binding position for the 2-sided copying.
	2-Up	Displays whether the Multiple-Up feature is enabled.
	Margin Top/Bottom	Displays the value of the top and bottom margins.
	Margin Left/Right	Displays the value of the left and right margins.
	Margin Middle	Displays the value of the middle margin.
Fax Defaults	Resolution	Displays the resolution level to be used for fax transmission.
	2 Sided Scanning	Displays whether to scan both sides of a document.
	Binding of Original	Displays the binding position for the 2-sided scanning.
	Darken/Lighten	Displays the density level to be used for fax transmission.
	Delayed Send	Displays the fax transmission start time.
Fax Settings	Fax Number	Displays the fax number of the printer, which will be printed on the header of faxes.
	Country	Displays the country where the printer is used.
	Fax Header Name	Displays the name of the sender that will be printed on the header of faxes.
	Line Type	Displays the line type; PSTN or PBX.
	Line Monitor	Displays the volume of the line monitor, which audibly monitors a transmission through the internal speaker until a connection is made.
	DRPD Pattern	Displays the Distinctive Ring Pattern Detection (DRPD) setting.
	Receive Mode	Displays the fax receiving mode.
	Ring Tone Volume	Displays the volume of the ring tone, which indicates that an incoming call is a telephone call through the internal speaker when **Receive Mode** is set to **Telephone/Fax**.
	Auto Receive Fax	Displays the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after receiving an incoming call.
	Auto Receive Tel/Fax	Displays the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after the external telephone receives an incoming call.

Auto Receive Answer/Fax	Displays the interval at which the printer goes into the fax mode after the external answering machine receives an incoming call.
Junk Fax Setup	Displays whether to reject faxes sent from unwanted stations.
2 Sided Printing	Displays whether to print on both sides of a sheet of paper.
Remote Receive	Displays whether to receive faxes by pressing a remote receive code on the external telephone.
Remote Receive Tone	Displays the 2-digit remote receive code when **Remote Receive** is **On**.
Discard Size	Displays whether to delete text or images at the bottom of a fax page when the entire page does not fit onto the output paper.
Sent Fax Forward	Displays whether to forward incoming faxes to a specified destination.
Forwarding Number	Displays the fax number of the destination to which incoming faxes are to be forwarded.
Forwarding E-mail Address 1	Displays the e-mail address to which incoming faxes are to be forwarded.
Forwarding E-mail Address 2	Displays the e-mail address to which incoming faxes are to be forwarded.
Forwarding E-mail Address 3	Displays the e-mail address to which incoming faxes are to be forwarded.
Forwarding E-mail Address 4	Displays the e-mail address to which incoming faxes are to be forwarded.
Forwarding E-mail Address 5	Displays the e-mail address to which incoming faxes are to be forwarded.
Server Type	Displays the server type.
Server Address	Displays the server address registered under the server ID.
Server Port Number	Displays the assigned server port number.
Share Name	Displays the assigned shared name.
Server Path	Displays the assigned server path.
Redial Attempts	Displays the number of redial attempts to make if the destination fax number is busy.
Interval of Redial	Displays the interval between redial attempts.
Resend Delay	Displays the interval between re-send attempts.
Tone/Pulse	Displays whether to use tone or pulse dialing.
Prefix Dial	Displays whether to set a prefix dial number.
Prefix Dial Number	Displays a prefix dial number. This number dials before any auto dial number is started. It is useful for accessing the Private Automatic Branch Exchange (PABX).
Fax Cover Page	Displays whether to attach a cover page to faxes.
Fax Header	Displays whether to print the information of the sender on the header of faxes.
ECM	Displays whether the Error Correction Mode (ECM) is enabled.
Modem Speed	Displays the modem speed.
Display Manual Fax Recipients	Displays whether to show the fax number of the recipient on the **Sending Fax** screen when manually sending a fax.
Fax Activity	Displays whether to automatically print a fax activity report after every 50 incoming and outgoing fax communications.
Fax Transmit	Displays whether to print a transmission result after a fax transmission.

	Fax Broadcast	Displays whether to print a transmission result after a fax transmission to multiple locations.
	Fax Protocol	Displays whether to print the protocol monitor report after a fax transmission to monitor fax protocol problems.
Scan Defaults	File Format	Displays the file format in which scanned documents are to be saved.
	Output Color	Displays whether to scan in color or in black and white.
	Resolution	Displays the default scan resolution.
	Original Size	Displays the paper size of the original.
	2 Sided Scanning	Displays whether to scan both sides of a document.
	Binding of Original	Displays the binding position for the 2-sided scanning.
	Darken/Lighten	Displays the default scan density level.
	Sharpness	Displays the default sharpness level.
	Contrast	Displays the default contrast level.
	Auto Exposure	Displays whether to suppress the background of the original to enhance text on the scan.
	Auto Exposure Level	Displays the background suppression level.
	Margin Top/Bottom	Displays the value of the top and bottom margins.
	Margin Left/Right	Displays the value of the left and right margins.
	Margin Middle	Displays the value of the middle margin.
	TIFF File Format	Displays the selected TIFF file format; TIFF V6 or TTN2.
	Image Compression	Displays the image compression level.
	File Naming Mode	Displays the mode used to name scanned documents.
	Prefix/Suffix String	Displays the text string that will be added to the file name.
	Create Folder	Displays the folder to which scanned documents are to be saved.
USB Direct Print Defaults	Output Color	Displays whether to print in color or in black and white.
	Select Tray	Displays the default input tray.
	2 Sided Printing	Displays whether to print on both sides of a sheet of paper.
	Layout	Displays the default paper layout when **Layout** is selected.
	Image Types	Displays the mode used to set the print image quality of documents.
	Collation	Displays whether to sort a job.
MIFARE Customized Card	User ID Block 1	Allows you to register the MIFARE Customized Card.
	User ID Block 2	Allows you to register the MIFARE Customized Card.
	User ID Block 3	Allows you to register the MIFARE Customized Card.
Paper Density	Plain	Displays the paper density of plain paper.
	Label	Displays the paper density of labels.
Adjust Transfer Belt Unit	K Offset	Displays the value for black ghost image.
	YMC Offset	Displays the value for color ghost image.
Adjust 2nd BTR	Plain	Displays the voltage setting of the transfer roller (-5 to 10) for plain paper.
	Plain Thick[*2]	Displays the voltage setting of the transfer roller (-5 to 10) for thick plain paper.
	Covers (106-163g/m^2)	Displays the voltage setting of the transfer roller (-5 to 10) for cover paper.

	Covers Thick[*2] **(164-216g/m^2)**	Displays the voltage setting of the transfer roller (-5 to 10) for thick cover paper.
	Coated (106-163g/m^2)	Displays the voltage setting of the transfer roller (-5 to 10) for coated paper.
	Coated Thick[*2] **(164-216g/m^2)**	Displays the voltage setting of the transfer roller (-5 to 10) for thick coated paper.
	Label	Displays the voltage setting of the transfer roller (-5 to 10) for labels.
	Envelope	Displays the voltage setting of the transfer roller (-5 to 10) for envelopes.
	Recycled	Displays the voltage setting of the transfer roller (-5 to 10) for recycled paper.
Adjust Fusing Unit	**Plain**	Displays the temperature setting of the fusing unit (-3 to 3) for plain paper.
	Plain Thick[*2]	Displays the temperature setting of the fusing unit (-3 to 3) for thick plain paper.
	Covers (106-163g/m^2)	Displays the temperature setting of the fusing unit (-3 to 3) for cover paper.
	Covers Thick[*2] **(164-216g/m^2)**	Displays the temperature setting of the fusing unit (-3 to 3) for thick cover paper.
	Coated (106-163g/m^2)	Displays the temperature setting of the fusing unit (-3 to 3) for coated paper.
	Coated Thick[*2] **(164-216g/m^2)**	Displays the temperature setting of the fusing unit (-3 to 3) for thick coated paper.
	Label	Displays the temperature setting of the fusing unit (-3 to 3) for labels.
	Envelope	Displays the temperature setting of the fusing unit (-3 to 3) for envelopes.
	Recycled	Displays the temperature setting of the fusing unit (-3 to 3) for recycled paper.
Auto Registration Adjustment		Displays whether to automatically perform color registration adjustment.
Adjust Altitude		Displays the altitude of the location where the printer is installed.
Non-Dell Toner		Displays whether to use toner cartridge of another manufacturer.
Clock Settings	**Date Format**	Displays the default date format.
	Time Format	Displays the default time format; 24H or 12H.
	Time Zone	Displays the default time zone.
	Set Date	Displays the date setting.
	Set Time	Displays the time setting.
Web Link Customization	**Select Reorder URL**	Displays a link used for ordering consumables, which can be accessed from **Order Supplies at:** in the left frame.
	Regular	Displays the regular URL (**http://accessories.us.dell.com/sna**) that can be linked to **Order Supplies at:**.
	Premier	Displays the premier URL (**http://premier.dell.com**) that can be linked to **Order Supplies at:**.

Dell ColorTrack	ColorTrack Mode	Displays whether to enable the ColorTrack.
	Non Registered User	Displays whether to permit the printing of data without authentication information.
	Auto Color To Mono Print	Displays whether to print all print jobs in black and white even when color print is specified.
	ColorTrack Error Report	Displays whether to print the error report on the ColorTrack mode.
Tray Management	MPF Use Driver Settings for Print Job	Displays whether to use the printer driver settings for the size and type of paper loaded in the multipurpose feeder (MPF).
	MPF Paper Size[*3]	Displays the paper size setting of the MPF.
	MPF Paper Type[*3]	Displays the paper type setting of the MPF.
	MPF Custom Paper Size - Y[*3]	Displays the length of custom size paper loaded in the MPF.
	MPF Custom Paper Size - X[*3]	Displays the width of custom size paper loaded in the MPF.
	MPF Display Tray Prompt[*3]	Displays whether to show a popup menu that prompts the user to set the paper size and type when the paper is loaded in the MPF.
	Tray 1 Paper Size	Displays the paper size setting of tray1.
	Tray 1 Paper Type	Displays the paper type setting of tray1.
	Tray 1 Custom Paper Size - Y	Displays the length of custom size paper loaded in tray1.
	Tray 1 Custom Paper Size - X	Displays the width of custom size paper loaded in tray1.
	Tray 1 Display Prompt	Displays whether to show a popup menu that prompts the user to set the paper size and type when the paper is loaded in tray1.
	Tray 2 Paper Size[*4]	Displays the paper size setting of the optional 550-sheet feeder (tray2).
	Tray 2 Paper Type[*4]	Displays the paper type setting of the optional 550-sheet feeder.
	Tray 2 Custom Paper Size - Y[*4]	Displays the length of custom size paper loaded in the optional 550-sheet feeder.
	Tray 2 Custom Paper Size - X[*4]	Displays the width of custom size paper loaded in the optional 550-sheet feeder.
	Tray 2 Display Prompt[*4]	Displays whether to show a popup menu that prompts the user to set the paper size and type when the paper is loaded in the optional 550-sheet feeder.
	1st Priority	Displays the paper source to be used as the first priority.
	2nd Priority	Displays the paper source to be used as the second priority.
	3rd Priority[*4]	Displays the paper source to be used as the third priority.

[*1] This item is available only when **RAM Disk** is enabled.

[*2] For paper weight specifications, see "Paper Type Specifications."

[*3] This item is available only when **Off** in **MPF Use Driver Settings for Print Job** is selected.

[*4] This item is available only when the optional 550-sheet feeder is installed.

Reports

Purpose:

To print various types of reports and lists.

Values:

System Settings	Click **Start** to print the System Settings page.
Panel Settings	Click **Start** to print the Panel Settings page.
PCL Fonts List	Click **Start** to print the PCL (Hewlett-Packard Printer Control Language) Fonts List.
PCL Macros List	Click **Start** to print the PCL Macro List.
PS Fonts List	Click **Start** to print the PS Fonts List.
PDF Fonts List	Click **Start** to print the PDF Fonts List.
Job History	Click **Start** to print the Job History report.
Error History	Click **Start** to print the Error History report.
Print Meter	Click **Start** to print the Print Meter report.
Color Test Page	Click **Start** to print the Color Test Page.
Protocol Monitor	Click **Start** to print the Protocol Monitor report.
Speed Dial	Click **Start** to print the Speed Dial report.
Address Book	Click **Start** to print the Address Book report.
Server Address	Click **Start** to print the Server Address report.
Fax Activity	Click **Start** to print the Fax Activity report.
Fax Pending	Click **Start** to print the Fax Pending report.
Stored Documents[*1]	Click **Start** to print the Stored Documents list.

[*1] This item is available only when **RAM Disk** is enabled.

Printer Settings

The **Printer Settings** tab includes **System Settings, Network Settings, USB Settings, PCL Settings, PS Settings, PDF Settings, Secure Settings, Copy Defaults, Copy Color Balance, Copy Settings, Fax Defaults, Fax Settings, Scan Defaults, USB Direct Print Defaults**, and **MIFARE Customized Card** pages.

System Settings

Purpose:

To configure the basic printer settings.

Values:

Power Saver Time - Sleep	Sets the time taken by the printer to enter Sleep mode after it finishes a job.
Power Saver Time - Deep Sleep	Sets the time taken by the printer to enter Deep Sleep mode after it has entered Sleep mode.
mm / inch	Sets the measurement unit to be used on the touch panel as either mm or inches.
Display Brightness	Sets the brightness level of the touch panel screen.
Control Panel Tone	Sets the volume of the tone that is emitted when the operator panel input is correct, or disables the tone.
Invalid Key Tone	Sets the volume of the tone that is emitted when the operator panel input is incorrect, or disables the tone.

Machine Ready Tone	Sets the volume of the tone that is emitted when the printer becomes ready, or disables the tone.
Copy Completed Tone	Sets the volume of the tone that is emitted when a copy job is complete, or disables the tone.
Job Completed Tone	Sets the volume of the tone that is emitted when a job other than a copy job is complete, or disables the tone.
Fault Tone	Sets the volume of the tone that is emitted when a job ends abnormally, or disables the tone.
Alert Tone	Sets the volume of the tone that is emitted when a problem occurs, or disables the tone.
Out of Paper Tone	Sets the volume of the tone that is emitted when the printer runs out of paper, or disables the tone.
Low Toner Alert Tone	Sets the volume of the tone that is emitted when the toner is low, or disables the tone.
Auto Clear Alert Tone	Sets the volume of the tone that is emitted 5 seconds before the printer performs auto clear, or disables the tone.
NFC Authentication Tone	Sets the volume of the tone that is emitted when an NFC card is placed on the NFC reader for authentication, or disables the tone.
All Tones	Sets the volume of all the alert tones, or disables all the tones.
Low Toner Alert Message	Alerts you if the toner is low.
OffHook Wake Up	Sets whether to wake up from Sleep or Deep Sleep mode when you pick up the handset of the external telephone.
Auto Log Print	Sets if a job history needs to be printed after every 20 jobs.
RAM Disk	Sets whether to allocate RAM for the file system for the Secure Print, Proof Print, Private Mail Box Print, and Public Mail Box Print features.
Panel Language	Used to set the language on the touch panel.
Max E-mail Size	Sets the maximum size of e-mail that can be sent. The available range is from 50 to 16384 (KB) (Default: 2048).
Auto Reset	Sets the amount of time before the printer automatically resets its settings to the defaults when no additional settings are made.
Fault Time-out	Sets the amount of time the printer waits before canceling a job that stops abnormally.
Default Paper Size	Sets the default print paper size.
Print ID	Sets where to print the user ID on the output paper.
Print Text	Sets whether the printer outputs PDL data (which is not supported by the printer) as text when the printer receives it.
Banner Sheet Insert Position	Sets where to insert a banner sheet in the output.
Banner Sheet Specify Tray	Sets from which tray a banner sheet is fed.
Substitute Tray	Sets whether to use another size paper when the paper that is loaded in the specified tray does not match the paper size settings for the current job.
Letterhead 2 Sided	Sets whether to print on both sides of letterhead.
A4<>Letter Switch	Sets whether to print A4 size jobs on Letter size paper if A4 is not available in the paper trays and vice versa (Letter size job on A4 size paper).
Report 2 Sided Print	Sets whether to print reports on both sides a sheet of paper.
Use Another Tray	Sets whether to show a message to select another tray when the specified paper is not available in the paper tray.

Network Settings

Purpose:

To Specify the PostScript Level3 Compatible communication protocol for this printer.

Values:

PS Data Format	Sets PostScript Level3 Compatible communication protocol for each interface.

USB Settings

Purpose:

To change USB settings on your printer.

Values:

USB Port	Enables the USB interface on your printer.
PS Data Format	Sets PostScript Level3 Compatible communication protocol for each interface.
Job Time-out	Sets the amount of time the printer waits for data to arrive from the computer.

PCL Settings

Purpose:

To change the PCL settings.

Values:

Paper Tray	Sets the paper input tray.
Paper Size	Sets the paper size.
Custom Paper Size - Y	Sets the length of custom size paper. The available range is from 127 mm (5.0 inch) to 355 mm (14.0 inch).
Custom Paper Size - X	Sets the width of custom size paper. The available range is from 77 mm (3.0 inch) to 215 mm (8.5 inch).
Orientation	Sets how text and graphics are oriented on the page.
2 Sided Print	Sets duplexing as the default for all print jobs.
Font	Sets the font from the list of registered fonts.
Symbol Set	Sets a symbol set for the specified font.
Font Size	Sets the font size for scalable typographic fonts.
Font Pitch	Sets the font pitch for scalable mono spaced fonts.
Form Line	Sets the number of lines in a page.
Quantity	Sets the number of copies to print.
Image Enhance	Sets whether to enable the Image Enhancement feature.
Hex Dump	Sets whether to help isolate the source of a print job problem. With Hex Dump selected, all data sent to the printer is printed in hexadecimal and character representation. Control codes are not executed.
Draft Mode	Sets whether to print in the draft mode.
Line Termination	Sets how to handle line terminations.
Default Color	Sets the print color mode as **Color** or **Black**. This setting is used for print jobs without a specified color print mode.
Ignore Form Feed	Sets whether to ignore blank pages that only contain Form Feed control codes.

PS Settings

Purpose:

To change printer settings that only affect jobs using the PostScript Level3 Compatible emulation printer language.

Values:

PS Error Report	Sets whether the contents of the errors concerning PostScript Level3 Compatible page description language are printed.
PS Job Time-out	Sets the execution time for one PostScript Level3 Compatible job.
Paper Select Mode	Sets the way to select the tray for the PostScript Level3 Compatible mode.
Default Color	Sets the default color mode for the PostScript Level3 Compatible mode.

PDF Settings

Purpose:

To change the PDF settings.

Values:

Quantity	Sets the number of copies.
2 Sided Print	Sets whether to print on both sides of a sheet of paper.
Print Mode	Sets a print mode.
PDF Password	Sets a password.
Re-enter PDF Password	Confirms the set password.
Collation	Sets whether to sort the output.
Output Size	Sets the output paper size.
Layout	Sets the output layout.
Default Color	Sets the output color.

Secure Settings

Panel Lock

Purpose:

To set a limited access to `Admin Settings` with a password, and to set or change the password.

Values:

Panel Lock Control[*1]	Enables/Disables password protection for the Admin Settings.
New Password	Sets a password that is required to access the Admin Settings.
Re-enter Password	Confirms the set password.

[*1] Some setting items in the Secure Settings are displayed only when this setting item is enabled.

📝 **NOTE:** You can set the password for the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** from **Set Password** in **Print Server Settings**.

Function Enabled

Purpose:

To specify whether to lock the Copy, Scan, Fax, and Print functions with a password, and to set or change the password.

Values:

Copy	Sets whether to lock the Copy function with a password.
Scan to E-mail	Sets whether to lock the Scan to E-mail function with a password.
Fax	Sets whether to lock the Fax function with a password.
Fax Driver	Sets whether to enable or disable the Fax Driver function.
Scan to Network	Sets whether to lock the Scan to Network function with a password.
Scan to PC	Sets whether to lock the Scan to PC function with a password.
PC Scan	Sets whether to lock the PC Scan function with a password.
Scan to USB	Sets whether to lock the Scan to USB function with a password.
USB Direct Print	Sets whether to lock the USB Direct Print function with a password.
ID Copy	Sets whether to enable or disable the ID Copy function.
USB Services - Show When Inserted	Sets whether to show a **USB Drive Detected** screen when a USB memory is inserted into the printer.
New Password	Sets a password that is required to access the Copy, Scan, Fax, and Print functions.
Re-enter Password	Confirms the set password.

NOTE: You can set the password for the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** from **Set Password** in **Print Server Settings**.

Secure Receive

Purpose:

Allows you to password protect all the incoming faxes. When the Secure Receive feature is enabled, the printer stores incoming faxes and prints them when the correct password is entered on the operator panel.

Values:

Secure Receive Set	Enables/Disables password protection for all incoming faxes.
New Password	Sets a password for incoming faxes.
Re-enter Password	Confirms the set password.

NOTE: You can set the password for the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** from **Set Password** in **Print Server Settings**.

Edit E-mail From Fields

Purpose:

To set whether to enable editing of the transmission source when you use the Scan to E-mail function.

Reconfirm Recipients

Purpose:

To set whether to reconfirm before sending fax or scan jobs.

Software Download

Purpose:

To set whether to enable download of firmware updates.

Display of Network Information

Purpose:

To set whether to show network information in the message field of the **Home** screen.

Login Error

Purpose:

To specify how many times an administrator can attempt to log in to **Panel Lock**, **Function Enabled**, and **Secure Receive**.

Values:

Login Error	Displays how many times an administrator can attempt to log in to **Panel Lock**, **Function Enabled**, and **Secure Receive**.

NFC Authentication

Purpose:

To set whether to enable the authentication using the NFC authentication card.

Set Available Time - Copy/Scan/Fax/Print

Purpose:

To specify the time to enable the secure setting for the Copy, Scan, Fax, and Print functions.

Values:

Set Available Time	Allows you to set the available time period for the Copy, Scan, Fax, and Print functions.
Start Time	Sets the start time of the available time period for the Copy, Scan, Fax, and Print functions.
End Time	Sets the end time of the available time period for the Copy, Scan, Fax, and Print functions.
Recurrence	Sets the day of the week to repeat the setting.

Secure Job Expiration

> **NOTE:** Secure Job Expiration feature is available only when **RAM Disk** is enabled.

Purpose:

To specify the date and time to delete the files stored as Secure Print in the RAM disk.

Values:

Expiration Mode	Allows you to set the date to delete the files stored as Secure Print in the RAM disk.
Expiration Time	Sets the time to delete the files stored as Secure Print in the RAM disk.
Recurrence	Sets the period to repeat the setting.
Weekly Settings	Sets the day of the week to repeat the setting.
Monthly Settings	Sets the day of the month to repeat the setting.

Copy Defaults

Purpose:

To create your own default Copy settings.

Values:

Output Color	Sets whether to print in color or in black and white.
Select Tray	Sets the default input tray.
Collation	Sets whether to sort a copy job.
Reduce/Enlarge	Sets the default reduction/enlargement ratio.
Custom Reduce/Enlarge	Sets the custom reduction/enlargement ratio.
Original Size	Sets the paper size of the original.
Original Type	Sets the type of the original.
Darken/Lighten	Sets the default copy density.
Sharpness	Sets the default sharpness level.
Color Saturation	Adjusts the saturation of colors to make the colors lighter or darker than the original.
Auto Exposure	Sets whether to suppress the background of the original to enhance text on the copy.
Auto Exposure Level	Sets the background suppression level.

Copy Color Balance

Purpose:

To specify the copy color balance.

Values:

Yellow Low Density	Sets the color balance level of low density yellow.
Yellow Medium Density	Sets the color balance level of medium density yellow.
Yellow High Density	Sets the color balance level of high density yellow.
Magenta Low Density	Sets the color balance level of low density magenta.
Magenta Medium Density	Sets the color balance level of medium density magenta.
Magenta High Density	Sets the color balance level of high density magenta.
Cyan Low Density	Sets the color balance level of low density cyan.
Cyan Medium Density	Sets the color balance level of medium density cyan.
Cyan High Density	Sets the color balance level of high density cyan.
Black Low Density	Sets the color balance level of low density black.
Black Medium Density	Sets the color balance level of medium density black.
Black High Density	Sets the color balance level of high density black.

Copy Settings

Purpose:

To configure the Copy settings.

> **NOTE:** Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Values:

2 Sided Copying	Sets whether to print on both sides of a sheet of paper.	
Binding of Original	Sets the binding position for the 2-sided copying.	
2-Up	**Off***	Does not perform multiple-up printing.
	Auto	Automatically reduces the original pages to fit onto one sheet of paper.
	Manual	Prints the original pages onto one sheet of paper in the size specified for **Reduce/Enlarge**.
Margin Top/Bottom	Sets the value of the top and bottom margins within the range of 0 mm (0.0 inch) to 50 mm (2.0 inch).	
Margin Left/Right	Sets the value of the left and right margins within the range of 0 mm (0.0 inch) to 50 mm (2.0 inch).	
Margin Middle	Sets the value of the middle margin within the range of 0 mm (0.0 inch) to 50 mm (2.0 inch).	

Fax Defaults

Purpose:

To create your own default Fax settings.

> **NOTE:** Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Values:

Resolution	**Standard***	Suitable for documents with normal sized characters.
	Fine	Suitable for documents containing small characters or thin lines or documents printed using a dot-matrix printer.
	Super Fine	Suitable for documents containing extremely fine detail. The super fine mode is enabled only if the remote machine also supports the Super Fine resolution.
	Photo	Suitable for documents containing photographic images.
2 Sided Scanning	Sets whether to scan both sides of a document.	
Binding of Original	Sets the binding position for the 2-sided scanning.	
Darken/Lighten	Sets the default density to fax your documents lighter or darker.	
Delayed Send	Sets the fax transmission start time when sending a fax at a specified time.	

Fax Settings

Purpose:

To configure the Fax settings.

> **NOTE:** You cannot set up the items on the **Fax Settings** page unless you set up the country code under **Country**.

> **NOTE:** Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Values:

Fax Number	Allows you to enter the fax number of the printer, which will be printed on the header of faxes.
Country	Sets the country where the printer is used.

Fax Header Name	Allows you to enter a name that will be printed on the header of faxes.	
Line Type	Sets the default line type; PSTN or PBX.	
Line Monitor	Sets the volume of the line monitor, which audibly monitors a transmission through the internal speaker until a connection is made.	
DRPD Pattern	Sets the Distinctive Ring Pattern Detection (DRPD) setting from **Pattern1** to **Pattern7**.	
	DRPD is a service provided by some telephone companies.	
Receive Mode	**Telephone**	Automatic fax reception is turned off. You can receive a fax by picking up the handset of the external telephone and then pressing a remote receive code, or by tapping `Manual Receive` in `On Hook` and then tapping `Receive`. For details about `Manual Receive`, see "Receiving a Fax Manually in the Telephone Mode."
	Fax[*]	Automatically receives faxes.
	Telephone/Fax	When the printer receives an incoming fax, the external telephone rings for the time specified in **Auto Receive Tel/Fax**, and then the printer automatically receives a fax. If an incoming call is not a fax, the printer beeps from the internal speaker indicating that the call is a telephone call.
	Ans Machine/Fax	The printer can share a telephone line with an answering machine. In this mode, the printer will monitor the fax signal and pick up the line if there are fax tones. If the telephone communication in your country is serial, this mode is not supported.
	DRPD	Before using the Distinctive Ring Pattern Detection (DRPD) option, a distinctive ring service must be installed on your telephone line by the telephone company. After the telephone company has provided a separate number for faxing with a distinctive ring pattern, configure the fax setup to monitor for that specific ring pattern.
Ring Tone Volume	Sets the volume of the ring tone, which indicates that an incoming call is a telephone call through the internal speaker when **Receive Mode** is set to **Telephone/Fax**.	
Auto Receive Fax	Sets the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after answering an incoming call.	
Auto Receive Tel/Fax	Sets the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after the external telephone receives an incoming call.	
Auto Receive Answer/Fax	Sets the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after the external answering machine receives an incoming call.	
Junk Fax Setup	Sets whether to reject unwanted faxes by accepting only the faxes from the numbers registered in the Phone Book	
2 Sided Printing	Sets whether to print on both sides of a sheet of paper.	
Remote Receive	Sets whether to receive a fax by pressing a remote receive code on the external telephone.	
Remote Receive Tone	Sets a 2-digit remote receive code when **Remote Receive** is **On**.	
Discard Size	Sets whether to delete text or images at the bottom of a fax page when the entire page does not fit onto the output paper. Selecting **Auto Reduction** automatically reduces the fax page to fit it onto the output paper, and does not discard any images or text at the bottom of the page.	
Sent Fax Forward	Sets whether to forward incoming faxes to a specified destination.	
Forwarding Number	Allows you to enter the fax number of the destination to which incoming faxes will be forwarded.	
Forwarding E-mail Address 1	Allows you to enter the e-mail address to which incoming faxes are to be forwarded.	
Forwarding E-mail Address 2	Allows you to enter the e-mail address to which incoming faxes are to be forwarded.	
Forwarding E-mail Address 3	Allows you to enter the e-mail address to which incoming faxes are to be forwarded.	

Forwarding E-mail Address 4	Allows you to enter the e-mail address to which incoming faxes are to be forwarded.
Forwarding E-mail Address 5	Allows you to enter the e-mail address to which incoming faxes are to be forwarded.
Server Type	Sets the server type.
Server Address	Sets the server address registered under the server ID.
Server Port Number	Sets the server port number.
Login Name	Sets the login name.
Login Password	Sets the login password.
Re-enter Password	Enter the password again to confirm it.
Share Name	Sets the shared name.
Server Path	Sets the server path.
Redial Attempts	Sets the number of redial attempts (0–13) to make if the destination fax number is busy. If you enter 0, the printer will not redial.
Interval of Redial	Sets the interval (1–15 minutes) between redial attempts.
Resend Delay	Sets the interval (3–255 seconds) between re-send attempts.
Tone/Pulse	Sets whether to use tone or pulse dialing.
Prefix Dial	Sets whether to set a prefix dial number.
Prefix Dial Number	Sets a prefix dial number of up to five digits. This number dials before any auto dial number is started. It is useful for accessing the Private Automatic Branch Exchange (PABX).
Fax Cover Page	Sets whether to attach a cover page to faxes.
Fax Header	Sets whether to print the information of the sender on the header of faxes.
ECM	Sets whether to enable the Error Correction Mode (ECM). To use the ECM, the remote machines must also support the ECM.
Modem Speed	Allows you to adjust the fax modem speed when a fax transmission or reception error occurs.
Display Manual Fax Recipients	Sets whether to show the fax number of the recipient on the **Sending Fax** screen when manually sending a fax.
Fax Activity	Sets whether to automatically print a fax activity report after every 50 incoming and outgoing fax communications.
Fax Transmit	Sets whether to print a transmission report after every fax transmission or only when an error occurs.
Fax Broadcast	Sets whether to print a transmission report after every fax transmission to multiple destinations or only when an error occurs.
Fax Protocol	Sets whether to print the protocol monitor report after every fax transmission or only when an error occurs.

Scan Defaults

Purpose:

To create your own default Scan settings.

Values:

File Format	Sets the file format in which scanned documents are to be saved.
Output Color	Sets whether to scan in color or in black and white.
Resolution	Sets the default scan resolution.
Original Size	Sets the paper size of the original.

2 Sided Scanning	Sets whether to scan both sides of a document.
Binding of Original	Sets the binding position for the 2-sided scanning.
Darken/Lighten	Sets the default scan density.
Sharpness	Sets the default sharpness level.
Contrast	Sets the default contrast level.
Auto Exposure	Sets whether to suppress the background of the original to enhance text on the copy.
Auto Exposure Level	Sets the default background suppression level.
Margin Top/Bottom	Sets the value of the top and bottom margins within the range of 0 mm (0.0 inch) to 50 mm (2.0 inch).
Margin Left/Right	Sets the value of the left and right margins within the range of 0 mm (0.0 inch) to 50 mm (2.0 inch).
Margin Middle	Sets the value of the middle margin within the range of 0 mm (0.0 inch) to 50 mm (2.0 inch).
TIFF File Format	Sets the TIFF file format to TIFF V6 or TTN2.
Image Compression	Sets the image compression level.
File Naming Mode	Sets the detailed settings of **File Naming Mode** to **Auto**, **Add Prefix** or **Add Suffix**.
Prefix/Suffix String	Sets the texts that are added when **Add Prefix** or **Add Suffix** are selected.
Create Folder	Sets whether to create a folder when saving scanned documents.

USB Direct Print Defaults

Purpose:

To create your own **USB Direct Print Defaults** setting.

Values:

Output Color	Sets whether to print in color or in black and white.
Select Tray	Sets the default input tray.
2 Sided Printing	Sets whether to print on both sides of a sheet of paper.
Layout	Sets Displays the default paper layout when **Layout** is selected.
Image Types	Sets the print image quality when printing documents.
Collation	Sets whether to sort the output.
PDF Password	Sets a password.
Re-enter PDF Password	Confirms the set password.

MIFARE Customized Card

Purpose:

To register **SSFC** formatted **NFC ID** cards.

Values:

User ID Block 1	Allows you to register the MIFARE Customized Card.
User ID Block 2	Allows you to register the MIFARE Customized Card.
User ID Block 3	Allows you to register the MIFARE Customized Card.

Printer Maintenance

The **Printer Maintenance** tab includes the **Paper Density**, **Adjust Transfer Belt Unit**, **Adjust 2nd BTR**, **Adjust Fusing Unit**, **Auto Registration Adjustment**, **Color Registration Adjustments**, **Reset Defaults**, **Initialize PrintMeter**, **Storage**, **Non-Dell Toner**, **Adjust Altitude**, **Clock Settings**, and **Web Link Customization** pages.

Paper Density

Purpose:

To specify the paper density.

Values:

Plain	Sets the density of plain paper to **Light** or **Normal**.
Label	Sets the density of labels to **Light** or **Normal**.

Adjust Transfer Belt Unit

Purpose:

To adjust the transfer bias when ghosting occur. (The ghost image may be the image of the previous page, or a part of the page currently printing.)

Values:

K Offset	If faint black colored ghosts appear, try to decrease the value.
YMC Offset	If faint ghosts in color (yellow, magenta, or cyan) appear, try to decrease the value.

Adjust 2nd BTR

Purpose:

To specify the optimum voltage settings for printing for the 2nd Belt Transfer Roller (2nd BTR). To lower the voltage, set negative values. To increase, set positive values.

The default settings may not give the best output on all paper types. If you see mottles on the print output, try to increase the voltage. If you see white spots on the print output, try to decrease the voltage.

⚠ **CAUTION: The print quality changes depending on the setting values you select for this item.**

Values:

Plain	Sets the reference voltage setting for the transfer roller for plain paper within the range of -5 to 10.
Plain Thick	Sets the reference voltage setting for the transfer roller for thick plain paper within the range of -5 to 10.
Covers	Sets the reference voltage setting for the transfer roller for cover paper within the range of -5 to 10.
Covers Thick	Sets the reference voltage setting for the transfer roller for thick cover paper within the range of -5 to 10.
Coated	Sets the reference voltage setting for the transfer roller for coated paper within the range of -5 to 10.
Coated Thick	Sets the reference voltage setting for the transfer roller for thick coated paper within the range of -5 to 10.
Label	Sets the reference voltage setting for the transfer roller for labels within the range of -5 to 10.
Envelope	Sets the reference voltage setting for the transfer roller for envelopes within the range of -5 to 10.
Recycled	Sets the reference voltage setting for the transfer roller for recycled paper within the range of -5 to 10.

Adjust Fusing Unit

Purpose:

To specify the optimum temperature settings for printing for the fusing unit. To lower the temperature, set negative values. To increase, set positive values.

The default settings may not give the best output on all paper types. When the printed paper has curled, try to lower the temperature. When the toner does not fuse on the paper properly, try to increase the temperature.

> **NOTE:** The print quality changes depending on the setting values you select for this item.

Values:

Plain	Sets the temperature settings for the fusing unit for plain paper within the range of -3 to 3.
Plain Thick	Sets the temperature settings for the fusing unit for thick plain paper within the range of -3 to 3.
Covers	Sets the temperature settings for the fusing unit for cover paper within the range of -3 to 3.
Covers Thick	Sets the temperature settings for the fusing unit for thick cover paper within the range of -3 to 3.
Coated	Sets the temperature settings for the fusing unit for coated paper within the range of -3 to 3.
Coated Thick	Sets the temperature settings for the fusing unit for thick coated paper within the range of -3 to 3.
Label	Sets the temperature settings for the fusing unit for labels within the range of -3 to 3.
Envelope	Sets the temperature settings for the fusing unit for envelopes within the range of -3 to 3.
Recycled	Sets the temperature settings for the fusing unit for recycled paper within the range of -3 to 3.

Auto Registration Adjustment

Purpose:

To specify whether to automatically perform color registration adjustment.

Color Registration Adjustments

Purpose:

To specify whether to manually perform color registration adjustment.

Manual Color Registration Adjustments are required such as when the printer is initially installed and after the printer is moved.

> **NOTE:** The **Color Registration Adjustments** feature can be configured when **Auto Registration Adjustment** is set to **Off**.

Values:

Auto Correct	Click **Start** to automatically perform color registration correction.
Color Regi Chart	Click **Start** to print a color registration chart. The color registration chart prints a lattice pattern of yellow, magenta, and cyan lines. On the chart, look at the values on the right side that are next to the line that is perfectly straight for each of the three colors. If the value for this line is 0, color registration adjustment is not required. If the value for this line is any value other than 0, specify the adjustment values under **Color Registration Adjustments**.
Color Registration Adjustments	Sets lateral (perpendicular to paper feed direction) and process (paper feed direction) color adjustment values individually for Yellow, Magenta, and Cyan within the range of -9 to 9.

Reset Defaults

Purpose:

To initialize the non-volatile (NV) memory. After executing this function and rebooting the printer, all the menu parameters are reset to their default values.

Reset Defaults	Reset Defaults User Fax Section and restart printer.	Click **Start** to reset the fax number entries in the Address Book.
	Reset Defaults User Scan Section and restart printer.	Click **Start** to reset the e-mail and server address entries in the Address Book.
	Reset Defaults User Account Section and restart printer.	Click **Start** to reset the user account entries.
	Reset Defaults System Section and restart printer.	Click **Start** to reset the system parameters.
Power On Wizard	Power On Wizard	Click **Start** to perform the initial setup for the printer.

Initialize PrintMeter

Purpose:

To initialize the print meter of the printer. When the print meter is initialized, the meter count is reset to 0.

Storage

> 📝 **NOTE:** Storage feature is available only when **RAM Disk** is enabled.

Purpose:

To clear all files stored in the RAM disk.

Values:

Clear Storage[1]	All Clear	Click **Start** to clear all files stored as Secure Print, Proof Print, Private Mail Box Print, and Public Mail Box Print in the RAM disk.
	Secure Document	Click **Start** to clear all files stored as Secure Print, Proof Print, Private Mail Box Print, and Public Mail Box Print in the RAM disk.
	Stored Document	Click **Start** to clear all files stored in the RAM disk.

[1] This item is available only when **RAM Disk** is enabled.

Non-Dell Toner

Purpose:

To use toner cartridge of another manufacturer.

> ⚠ **WARNING: Using a non-Dell toner cartridge may severely damage your printer. The warranty does not cover damages caused by using non-Dell toner cartridges.**

Adjust Altitude

Purpose:

To specify the altitude of the location where the printer is installed.

The discharge phenomenon for charging the photo conductor varies with barometric pressure. Adjustments are performed by specifying the altitude of the location where the printer is being used.

Clock Settings

Purpose:

To specify the clock settings.

Values:

Date Format	Sets the date format; YYYY/MM/DD, MM/DD/YYYY, or DD/MM/YYYY.
Time Format	Sets the time format; 24 Hour Clock or 12 Hour Clock.
Time Zone	Sets the time zone.
Set Date	Sets the current date.
Set Time	Sets the current time.

Web Link Customization

Purpose:

To specify a link used for ordering consumables, which can be accessed from **Order Supplies at:** in the left frame.

Values:

Select Reorder URL	Sets a URL to be linked to **Order Supplies at:**
Regular	Displays the regular URL (**http://accessories.us.dell.com/sna**) that can be linked to **Order Supplies at:**.
Premier	Displays the premier URL (**http://premier.dell.com**) that can be linked to **Order Supplies at:**.

Print Server Settings

Use the **Print Server Settings** menu to set the type of printer interface and the necessary conditions for communication.

The following tabbed pages are displayed in the top of the right frame.

Print Server Reports

The **Print Server Reports** tab includes the **Print Server Setup Page** and the **E-Mail Server Setup Page**.

Print Server Setup Page

Purpose:

To verify the current settings of TCP/IP (Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol) protocol and printing ports. On this page, you can only verify the settings of items. If you want to change the settings, go to the pages in the **Print Server Settings** tab.

Values:

Ethernet[1]		
	Ethernet Settings	Displays the current settings of Ethernet transmission rate and the duplex settings.
	Current Ethernet Settings	Displays the current Ethernet settings.
	MAC Address	Displays the Media Access Control (MAC) address of the printer.

Wireless Settings[*2]	**SSID**	Displays the name that identifies the network.	
	Network Type	Displays the network type from either the Ad-Hoc or Infrastructure mode.	
	MAC Address	Displays the MAC address of the wireless adapter.	
	Link Channel	Displays the channel number of the connection.	
	Link Quality	Displays the quality of the connection.	
Wi-Fi Direct[*2]	**Wi-Fi Direct**	Displays whether to enable the Wi-Fi Direct connection.	
	Group Role	Displays the group role setting.	
	Device Name	Displays the printer name. Confirm it when selecting the printer name on your Wi-Fi mobile device.	
	WPS Setup	Displays the WPS setup method.	
	Group Owner	**SSID**	Displays the name that identifies the Wi-Fi Direct network.
		Passphrase	Displays the pass phrase. Confirm it when entering the pass phrase into your Wi-Fi mobile device.
		IP Address	Displays the IP address of the Wi-Fi Direct adapter.
		Subnet Mask	Displays the subnet mask.
	Status	**Paired Device**	Displays the mobile name currently connected.
		Current Role	Displays the current group role of the printer.
		Current SSID	Displays the current SSID. Confirm it selecting the Wi-Fi Direct network name on your Wi-Fi mobile device.
TCP/IP Settings	**IP Mode**	Displays the IP mode.	
	Host Name	Displays the host name.	
	LAN1[*9]	**IP Address Mode**	Displays the IP address mode.
	IPv4[*3]	**IP Address**	Displays the IP address.
		Subnet Mask	Displays the subnet mask.
		Gateway Address	Displays the gateway address.
	IPv6[*4]	**Enable Stateless Address**	Displays whether to enable the stateless address.
		Use Manual Address	Displays whether to set the IP address manually.
		Get IP Address from DHCP	Displays whether to automatically set the IP address via DHCP.
		Manual Address[*5]	Displays the IP address.
		Stateless Address 1-3[*6]	Displays the stateless addresses.
		Stateful Address 1-3	Displays the stateful addresses.
		Link Local Address[*6]	Displays the link local address.
		Manual Gateway Address[*5]	Displays the gateway address.
		Auto Configure Gateway Address[*6]	Displays the gateway address.

LAN2[*10] **IPv4**	**IP Address**	Displays the IP address when **Group Role** of **Wi-Fi Direct** is set to **Group Owner**.	
	Subnet Mask	Displays the subnet mask when **Group Role** of **Wi-Fi Direct** is set to **Group Owner**.	
	Gateway Address	Displays the gateway address when **Group Role** of **Wi-Fi Direct** is set to **Group Owner**.	
DNS	**IPv4**[*3]	**Get DNS Server Address from DHCP**	Displays whether to automatically set the DNS server address via DHCP.
		Current DNS Server Address	Displays the current DNS server address.
	IPv6[*4]	**Get DNS Server Address from DHCPv6-lite**	Displays if the printer receives the DNS server address automatically from the DHCPv6-lite server.
		Current DNS Server Address	Displays the current DNS server address.
		DNS Dynamic Update (IPv4)	Displays the status of the DNS Dynamic Update feature.
		DNS Dynamic Update (IPv6)	Displays the status of the DNS Dynamic Update feature.
		Auto Generate Search List	Displays whether to automatically generate a search list.
		Search Domain Name	Displays the search domain name.
		Time-out	Displays the time-out period.
		Priority to IPv6 DNS Name Resolution[*7]	Displays whether to use the DNS Name Resolution feature.
WINS[*3]	**WINS Mode**	Displays whether to automatically set the primary and secondary WINS server addresses via DHCP.	
	WINS Primary Server	Displays the primary WINS server address.	
	WINS Secondary Server	Displays the secondary WINS server address.	
LPD	**Port Status**	Displays the port status of the Line Printer Daemon (LPD) protocol.	
	Connection Time-Out	Displays the connection time-out period.	
Port9100	**Port Status**	Displays the port status.	
	Port Number	Displays the port number.	
	Connection Time-Out	Displays the connection time-out period.	
IPP	**Port Status**	Displays the port status.	
	Printer URI	Displays the printer URI.	
	Connection Time-Out	Displays the connection time-out period.	
	Port Number	Displays the port number.	
	Maximum Sessions	Displays the maximum number of connections received simultaneously by the client.	
WSD	**Scan to WSD**	Displays whether to use Web Services on Devices (WSD) for scanning.	
	WSD Print	Displays whether to use WSD for printing.	
	Port Number	Displays the WSD port number.	
	Receive Time-Out	Displays the receive time-out period.	
	Notification Time-Out	Displays the notification time-out period.	

	Maximum Number of TTL	Displays the maximum number of TTLs.	
	Maximum Number of Notification	Displays the maximum number of notifications.	
Network TWAIN	Port Status	Displays the port status.	
	Connection Time-Out	Displays the connection time-out period.	
FTP	Port Status	Displays the port status.	
	Connection Time-Out	Displays the connection time-out period.	
HTTP	Port Status	Displays the port status.	
	Port Number	Displays the port number.	
	Simultaneous Connections	Displays the maximum number of simultaneous connections.	
	Connection Time-Out	Displays the connection time-out period.	
SMB	Port Status	Displays the port status.	
	Host Name	Displays the host name.	
	Workgroup	Displays the workgroup.	
	Maximum Sessions	Displays the maximum number of sessions.	
	Unicode Support	Displays whether to notify the host name and workgroup name in Unicode characters during SMB transmission.	
	Auto Master Mode	Displays whether to enable the Auto Master Mode.	
	Encrypt Password	Displays whether to encrypt the password during SMB transmission.	
	Job Time-Out	Displays the job time-out period.	
	Connection Time-Out	Displays the connection time-out period.	
Bonjour (mDNS)	Port Status	Displays the port status.	
	LAN1/LAN2[*9]	Host Name	Displays the host name.
		Printer Name	Displays the printer name.
	Wide-Area Bonjour	Displays the status of the Wide-Area Bonjour feature.	
Telnet	Port Status	Displays the port status.	
	Connection Time-Out	Displays the connection time-out period.	
SNMP	Port Status	Displays the port status.	
	Enable SNMP v1/v2c Protocol	Displays the status of the **SNMP v1/v2c** feature.	
	Enable SNMP v3 Protocol	Displays the status of the **SNMP v3** feature.	
Update Address Book	Port Status	Displays the port status.	
	Connection Time-Out	Displays the connection time-out period.	
FTP Client	Connection Time-Out	Displays the connection time-out period.	
	FTP Passive	Displays whether to enable the FTP Passive mode.	
SMB Client	Connection Time-Out	Displays the connection time-out period.	

SNTP	Port Status		Displays the port status.
	IP Address / Host Name		Displays the IP address or the host name of the SNTP server.
	Connection Time-Out		Displays the connection time-out period.
	Time Synchronization Interval		Displays the interval for performing time synchronization using SNTP.
AirPrint	Port Status		Displays the port status.
	LAN1/LAN2[*9]	Name	Displays the host name.
	Location		Displays the location of the printer.
	Geo-Location		Displays the physical location of the printer.
Google Cloud Print	Port Status		Displays the port status.
	Registration state		Displays the registration state.
Dell Document Hub	Print from Dell Document Hub		Displays whether to enable Print from Dell Document Hub.
	Scan to Dell Document Hub		Displays whether to enable Scan to Dell Document Hub.
	Connection Time-Out		Displays the time duration until the connection becomes time-out.
	Polling Interval		Displays the interval time for polling.
Proxy Server	Use Proxy Server		Displays the status of proxy server.
	Address to Bypass Proxy Server		Displays the address of the bypass proxy server.
	Server Name		Displays the server name.
	Port Number		Displays the port number.
	Authentication		Displays the status of authentication feature.
Authentication System	Authentication System Settings (for Server Address/Phone Book)		Displays the authentication method.
SSL/TLS	HTTP - SSL/TLS Communication		Displays the status of the HTTP - SSL/TLS Communication.
	HTTP - SSL/TLS Communication Port Number		Displays HTTP - SSL/TLS Communication Port Number.
	LDAP - SSL/TLS Communication		Displays the status of the LDAP - SSL/TLS Communication.
	SMTP - SSL/TLS Communication		Displays the status of the SMTP - SSL/TLS Communication.
IPsec Settings	Protocol		Displays the protocol status.
802.1x[*1]	Enable IEEE 802.1x		Displays the status of IEEE 802.1x.
	Authentication Method		Displays the setting of authentication method for IEEE 802.1x.
IP Filter (IPv4)[*8]	Access List		Displays the list of IP addresses that are permitted or denied access to the printer.
SMTP Domain Filtering	Domain Filtering		Displays whether to enable Domain Filtering.
	Allow Domain List		Displays the domains allowed for sending e-mails.

*1 This item is available only when the printer is connected using an Ethernet cable.

*2 This item is available only when the printer is connected using the wireless network.

*3 This item is displayed when **IPv4 Mode** or **Dual Stack** in **IP Mode** is selected.

*4 This item is displayed when **IPv6 Mode** or **Dual Stack** in **IP Mode** is selected.

*5 This item is displayed only when **Use Manual Address** is set to **Enable**.

*6 This item is displayed only when an IP address has been assigned.

*7 This item is available only when using IPv6 dual mode.

*8 This item is available only for **LPD** or **Port9100**.

*9 The menu title is displayed only when **Wi-Fi Direct** is set to **Enable**.

*10 This item is displayed only when **Wi-Fi Direct** is set to **Enable**.

E-Mail Server Setup Page

Purpose:

To verify the current settings of SMTP/POP (Simple Mail Transfer Protocol/Post Office Protocol) used for the Scan to E-mail feature, forwarding fax to e-mail feature, E-Mail Alert feature, and E-Mail Report feature. In this page, you can only verify the settings of items. If you want to change the settings, go to the pages in the **Print Server Settings** tab.

Values:

E-Mail Server Settings	**Port Status**	Displays the port status.	
	Primary SMTP Gateway	Displays the primary SMTP (Simple Mail Transfer Protocol) gateway.	
	SMTP Port Number	Displays the SMTP port number.	
	E-Mail Send Authentication	Displays the authentication method for outgoing e-mail.	
	POP3 Server Address	Displays the POP3 (Post Office Protocol 3) server address.	
	POP3 Port Number	Displays the POP3 port number.	
	Reply Address	Displays the IP address of servers connected with SMTP protocol when data is incoming.	
	SMTP Server Connection	Displays the status of the SMTP server connection.	
E-Mail Alert Settings	**E-Mail List 1**		Displays the acceptable e-mail addresses for the E-Mail Alert feature specified in **E-Mail List 1**.
	Select Alerts for List 1	**Supplies Alerts**	Displays the e-mail alert receive status for consumables.
		Paper Handling Alerts	Displays the e-mail alert receive status for paper handling.
		Service Call	Displays the e-mail alert receive status for service calls.
	E-Mail List 2		Displays the acceptable e-mail addresses for the E-Mail Alert feature specified in **E-Mail List 2**.
	Select Alerts for List 2	**Supplies Alerts**	Displays the e-mail alert receive status for consumables.
		Paper Handling Alerts	Displays the e-mail alert receive status for paper handling.
		Service Call	Displays the e-mail alert receive status for service calls.

E-Mail Report Settings	History Report	Displays whether job history report feature is enabled.
	Statistics Report	Displays whether the statistic report feature is enabled.
	Volume Report	Displays whether the volume report feature is enabled.
	Transmission Time	Displays what time the reports are sent.
	Recurrence	Displays at what recurrence the reports are sent.
	Weekly Settings (for Weekly only)	Displays the day of the week the reports are sent.
	Monthly Settings (for Monthly only)	Displays the day of the month the reports are sent.
	Destination E-Mail Address 1	Displays the e-mail address to which the reports are sent to.
	Destination E-Mail Address 2	Displays the e-mail address to which the reports are sent to.

Print Server Settings

The **Print Server Settings** tab includes the **Basic Information**, **Port Settings**, **TCP/IP**, **SMB**, **E-Mail Server**, **Bonjour (mDNS)**, **SNMP**, **Scan to PC**, **SNTP**, **AirPrint**, **Google Cloud Print**, **Dell Document Hub**, **Proxy Server**, **Wireless LAN**, **Wi-Fi Direct**, and **Reset Print Server** pages.

Basic Information

Purpose:

To configure basic information of the printer.

Values:

System Settings	Printer Name	Sets the name of the printer.
	Location	Sets the location of the printer.
	Contact Person	Sets the contact name, number, and other information of the printer administrator and service center.
	Administrator E-Mail Address	Sets the contact address of the printer administrator and service center.
	Asset Tag Number	Enters the asset tag number for the printer.
Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool Settings	Auto Refresh	Automatically refreshes the contents of the status display pages.
	Auto Refresh Interval	Sets the time interval for refreshing the contents of the status display pages automatically from 15 to 600 seconds.

NOTE: The **Auto Refresh** feature is effective for the contents of the top frame, **Printer Status** page, **Job List** page, and **Completed Jobs** page.

Port Settings

Purpose:

To enable or disable printing ports and management protocol features.

Values:

Ethernet[*1]	Ethernet Settings	Auto	Detects the Ethernet transmission rate and the duplex settings automatically.
		10Base-T Half-Duplex	Selects 10Base-T Half-Duplex as the default value.
		10Base-T Full-Duplex	Selects 10Base-T Full-Duplex as the default value.
		100Base-TX Half-Duplex	Selects 100Base-TX Half-Duplex as the default value.
		100Base-TX Full-Duplex	Selects 100Base-TX Full-Duplex as the default value.
		1000Base-T Full-Duplex	Selects 1000Base-T Full-Duplex as the default value.
	Current Ethernet Settings		Displays the current settings of the Ethernet.
	MAC Address		Displays the MAC address of the printer.
Port Status	LPD	Sets whether to enable LPD.	
	Port9100	Sets whether to enable Port9100.	
	IPP	Sets whether to enable IPP.	
	WSD Print	Sets whether to enable WSD Print.	
	Scan to WSD	Sets whether to enable Scan to WSD.	
	Network TWAIN	Sets whether to enable Network TWAIN	
	FTP	Sets whether to enable FTP.	
	SMB	Sets whether to enable SMB.	
	Bonjour (mDNS)	Sets whether to enable Bonjour (mDNS).	
	E-Mail Alert	Sets whether to enable E-Mail Alert.	
	Telnet	Sets whether to enable Telnet.	
	SNMP	Sets whether to enable SNMP.	
	Update Address Book	Sets whether to enable Update Address Book.	
	SNTP	Sets whether to enable SNTP.	
	Google Cloud Print	Sets whether to enable Google Cloud Print.	
	Print from Dell Document Hub	Sets whether to enable Print from Dell Document Hub.	
	Scan to Dell Document Hub	Sets whether to enable Scan to Dell Document Hub.	

[*1] This item is available only when the printer is connected using an Ethernet cable.

NOTE: The settings in the **Port Settings** page will be valid only when the printer is rebooted. When you change or configure the settings, click the **Apply New Settings** button to apply the new settings.

TCP/IP

Purpose:

To configure the IP address, subnet mask, and gateway address of the printer.

Values:

TCP/IP Settings	IP Mode		Sets the IP mode.
	Host Name		Sets the host name.
	IPv4	IP Address Mode	Sets the method for acquiring the IP address.
		Manual IP Address	When an IP address is being set manually, the IP is allocated to the printer using the format nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn. Each octet that makes up nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn is a value in the range of 0 to 254. 127 and any value in the range of 224 to 254 cannot be specified for the first octet of a gateway address.
		Manual Subnet Mask	When an IP address is being set manually, the subnet mask is specified using the format nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn. Each octet that makes up nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn is a value in the range of 0 to 255. 255.255.255.255 cannot be specified as the subnet mask.
		Manual Gateway Address	When an IP address is being set manually, the gateway address is specified using the format nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn. Each octet that makes up nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn is a value in the range of 0 to 254. 127 and any value in the range of 224 to 254 cannot be specified for the first octet of a gateway address.
	IPv6	Enable Stateless Address	Select the check box to enable the stateless address.
		Use Manual Address	Select the check box to set the IP address manually.
		Get IP Address from DHCP	Allows you to enable or disable the automatic setting of the IP address via DHCP.
		Manual Address	Sets the IP address. To specify an IPv6 address, enter the address followed by a slash (/) and then "64". For details, consult your system administrator.
		Manual Gateway Address	Sets the gateway address.
DNS	DNS Domain Name		Sets the DNS domain name.
	IPv4	Get DNS Server Address from DHCP	Allows you to enable or disable the automatic setting of the DNS server address via DHCP.
		Manual DNS Server Address	Manually sets the DNS server address in xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx format when **Get DNS Server Address from DHCP** is not selected.
	IPv6	Get DNS Server Address from DHCPv6-lite	Select the check box to get the DNS server address automatically from the DHCPv6-lite server.
		Manual DNS Server Address	Sets the DNS server address.
		DNS Dynamic Update (IPv4)	Select the check box to enable dynamic updates to DNS.
		DNS Dynamic Update (IPv6)	Select the check box to enable dynamic updates to DNS.

		Auto Generate Search List	Select the check box to automatically generate the search list.
		Search Domain Name	Sets the search domain name. Up to 255 alphanumeric characters, periods, and hyphens can be used. If you need to specify more than one domain name, separate them using a comma or semicolon.
		Time-out	Sets the time-out period between 1 and 60 seconds.
		Priority to IPv6 DNS Name Resolution	Select the check box to enable the DNS Name Resolution feature.
WINS	WINS Mode		Allows you to enable or disable the automatic setting of the primary and secondary WINS server addresses via DHCP.
	WINS Primary Server		Manually sets the primary WINS server address in xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx format when **WINS Mode** is not selected.
	WINS Secondary Server		Manually sets the secondary (backup) WINS server address in xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx format when **WINS Mode** is not selected.
LPD	Connection Time-Out		Sets the connection time-out period from 1 to 3,600 seconds.
	IP Filter (IPv4)		Click **IP Filter (IPv4)** to set the IP Filter settings on the **IP Filter (IPv4)** page.
Port9100	Port Number		Sets the port number from 9,000 to 9,999.
	Connection Time-Out		Sets the connection time-out period between 1 and 1,000 seconds.
	IP Filter (IPv4)		Click **IP Filter (IPv4)** to set the IP filter settings on the **IP Filter (IPv4)** page.
IPP	Printer URI		Displays the printer URI.
	Connection Time-Out		Sets the connection time-out period from 1 to 1,000 seconds.
	Port Number		Displays the port number for receiving requests from the client.
	Maximum Sessions		Displays the maximum number of connections received simultaneously by the client.
WSD	Port Number		Sets the port number to 80 or from 8,000 to 9,999.
	Receive Time-Out		Sets the receive time-out period from 1 to 65,535 seconds.
	Notification Time-Out		Sets the notification time-out period from 1 to 60 seconds.
	Maximum Number of TTL		Sets the maximum number of TTL from 1 to 10.
	Maximum Number of Notification		Sets the maximum number of notifications from 10 to 20.
Network TWAIN	Connection Time-Out		Sets the connection time-out period between 1 and 65,535 seconds.
FTP	Password		Sets the password for FTP.
	Re-enter Password		Enter the password again to confirm it.
	Connection Time-Out		Sets the connection time-out period from 1 to 1000 seconds.
HTTP	Port Number		Sets the port number to 80 or from 8,000 to 9,999.
	Simultaneous Connections		Displays the maximum number of simultaneous connections.
	Connection Time-Out		Sets the connection time-out period from 1 to 255 seconds.

Telnet	Password	Sets the password for Telnet.
	Re-enter Password	Confirms the set password.
	Connection Time-Out	Sets the connection time-out period from 1 to 1,000 seconds.
Update Address Book	Connection Time-Out	Sets the connection time-out period from 1 to 65,535 seconds.

To configure the IP Filter feature, enter an IP address to be filtered in the Address field and the subnet mask in the Address Mask field. Enter a numeric value between 0 and 255 in each field. "*" is appended to the current value.

IP Filter Setup Procedure

You can set up to a maximum of five items and the first item set takes priority. When setting multiple filters, enter the shortest address first followed by a slightly longer address, a longer address and so on.

Enabling Printing From a Specified User

The following describes the procedure to enable printing only from the "192.168.100.10" IP address.

1 Click the first column of the **Access List** row 1.

2 Enter "192.168.100.10" in the **Address** field and "255.255.255.255" in the **Address Mask** field.

3 Select **Accept**.

4 Click **Apply New Settings**.

Disabling Printing From a Specified User

The following describes the procedure to disable printing only from the "192.168.100.10" IP address.

1 Click the first column of the **Access List** row 1.

2 Enter "192.168.100.10" in the **Address** field and "255.255.255.255" in the **Address Mask** field.

3 Select **Reject**.

4 Click the first column of the **Access List** row 2.

5 Enter "0.0.0.0" in the **Address** field and "0.0.0.0" in the **Address Mask** field.

6 Select **Accept**.

7 Click **Apply New Settings**.

Enabling and Disabling Printing from Network Addresses

You can enable printing from the "192.168" network address and disable printing from the "192.168.200" network address.

The example below describes how to enable printing from the "192.168.200.10" IP address.

1 Click the first column of the **Access List** row 1.

2 Enter "192.168.200.10" in the **Address** field and "255.255.255.255" in the **Address Mask** field.

3 Select **Accept**.

4 Click the first column of the **Access List** row 2.

5 Enter "192.168.200.0" in the **Address** field and "255.255.255.0" in the **Address Mask** field.

6 Select **Reject**.

7 Click the first column of the **Access List** row 3.

8 Enter "192.168.0.0" in the **Address** field and "255.255.0.0" in the **Address Mask** field.

9 Select **Accept**.

10 Click **Apply New Settings**.

SMB

Purpose:

To specify the setting of the Server Message Block (SMB) protocol.

Values:

Host Name	Sets the host name of the server computer.
Workgroup	Sets the workgroup.
Maximum Sessions	Sets the maximum number of sessions.
Unicode Support	Sets whether to notify the host name and workgroup name in Unicode characters during SMB transmission.
Auto Master Mode	Sets whether to enable the Auto Master Mode.
Encrypt Password	Sets whether to encrypt the password.
Job Time-Out	Sets the job time-out period between 60 and 3,600 seconds.
Connection Time-Out	Sets the connection time-out period between 60 and 3,600 seconds.

E-Mail Server

Purpose:

To configure detailed settings of E-Mail Server, E-Mail Alert and E-Mail Report. This page can also be displayed by clicking **E-Mail Server Settings Overview** in the left frame.

Values:

E-Mail Server Settings	Primary SMTP Gateway	Sets the primary SMTP gateway.
	SMTP Port Number	Sets the SMTP port number. This must be 25, 587 or between 5,000 and 65,535.
	E-Mail Send Authentication	Sets the authentication method for outgoing e-mail.
	SMTP Login User	Sets the SMTP login user. Up to 63 alphanumeric characters, periods, hyphens, underscores, and at symbols (@) can be used. If specifying more than one address, separate them using commas.
	SMTP Login Password	Sets the SMTP account password using up to 31 alphanumeric characters.
	Re-enter SMTP Login Password	Confirms the set SMTP account password.
	POP3 Server Address[*1]	Sets the POP3 server address in IP address format of "aaa.bbb.ccc.ddd" or as a DNS host name using up to 63 characters.
	POP3 Port Number[*1]	Sets the POP3 server port number. This must be 110 or between 5,000 and 65,535.
	POP User Name[*1]	Sets the POP3 account user name. Up to 63 alphanumeric characters, periods, hyphens, underscores, and at symbols (@) can be used. If specifying more than one address, separate them using commas.
	POP User Password[*1]	Sets the POP3 account password using up to 31 alphanumeric characters.
	Re-enter POP User Password[*1]	Confirms the set password.
	Reply Address	Designates the reply e-mail address sent with each E-mail Alert.
	SMTP Server Connection	Displays the status of the SMTP server connection.

E-Mail Alert Settings	E-Mail List 1		Sets acceptable e-mail addresses for the E-Mail Alert feature using up to 255 alphanumeric characters.
	Select Alerts for List 1	Supplies Alerts	Select the check box to receive an E-Mail Alert for consumables.
		Paper Handling Alerts	Select the check box to receive an E-Mail Alert for paper handling.
		Service Call	Select the check box to receive an E-Mail Alert for Service Calls.
	E-Mail List 2		Sets acceptable e-mail addresses for the E-Mail Alert feature using up to 255 alphanumeric characters.
	Select Alerts for List 2	Supplies Alerts	Select the check box to receive an E-Mail Alert for consumables.
		Paper Handling Alerts	Select the check box to receive an E-Mail Alert for paper handling.
		Service Call	Select the check box to receive an E-Mail Alert for Service Calls.
E-Mail Report Settings	History Report		Sets whether to receive the job history report by e-mail after every 20 print, copy, scan, and fax jobs.
	Statistics Report		Sets whether to receive the statistic report by e-mail on the use of print, copy, scan, and fax.
	Volume Report		Sets whether to receive the print volume report by e-mail.
	Transmission Time		Sets what time the reports are sent.
	Recurrence		Sets at what recurrence the reports are sent.
	Weekly Settings (for Weekly only)		Sets the day of the week the reports are sent.
	Monthly Settings (for Monthly only)		Sets the day of the month the reports are sent.
	Destination E-Mail Address 1		Allows you to enter the e-mail address to which the reports are sent to.
	Destination E-Mail Address 2		Allows you to enter the e-mail address to which the reports are sent to.

[*1] This item is available only when **POP before SMTP (Plain)** or **POP before SMTP (APOP)** for **E-Mail Send Authentication** is selected.

Bonjour (mDNS)

Purpose:

To configure the detailed settings of Bonjour.

Values:

Host Name	Sets the host name up to 63 alphanumeric characters and "-" (dash). The original setting will remain valid if no input is made.
Printer Name	Sets the printer name up to 63 alphanumeric characters and symbol sets. The original setting will remain valid if no input is made.
Wide-Area Bonjour	Select the check box to enable the Wide-Area Bonjour protocol.

SNMP

Purpose:

To configure the detailed settings of SNMP.

Values:

SNMP Configuration	Enable SNMP v1/v2c Protocol	Select the check box to enable the SNMP v1/v2c protocol.
	Edit SNMP v1/v2c Properties	Click to display the **SNMP v1/v2c** page and to edit the setting of SNMP v1/v2c protocol from the page.
	Enable SNMP v3 Protocol	Select the check box to enable the SNMP v3 protocol.
	Edit SNMP v3 Properties	Click to display the **SNMP v3** page and to edit the setting of SNMP v3 protocol from the page.
		You can click this item only when SSL communication is enabled.

SNMP v1/v2c

Purpose:

To edit the detailed settings of SNMP v1/v2 protocol.

To enter this page, click **Edit SNMP v1/v2 Properties** in the **SNMP** page.

Values:

Community Name	Community Name (Read only)[*1]	Sets the community name to access (read only) data using up to 31 alphanumeric characters. The original setting will remain valid if no input is made. Characters entered for community name in the previous settings will not be displayed on the screen. The default Read Community is public.
	Re-enter Community Name (Read only)[*1]	Enters the community name to access (read only) data again to confirm it.
	Community Name (Read/Write)[*1]	Sets the community name to access (read and write) data using up to 31 alphanumeric characters. The original setting will remain valid if no input is made. Characters entered for community name in the previous settings will not be displayed on the screen. The default Read/Write Community is private.
	Re-enter Community Name (Read/Write)[*1]	Enters the community name to access (read and write) data again to confirm it.
	Community Name (Trap)[*1]	Sets the community name used for trap up to 31 alphanumeric characters. The original setting will remain valid if no input is made. Characters entered for Community Name (Trap) in the previous settings will not be displayed on the screen. The default Trap Community is " " (NULL).
	Re-enter Community Name (Trap)[*1]	Enters the community name used for trap again to confirm it.

| Trap Notification 1-4 | Trap Address Type
Trap Address
Port Number
Notify
Network^{*2} | Select the check boxes to notify trap occurrence. In this case, specify the IP address and IP socket in the following format:

IPv4

Specify the IP address and IP socket in the nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn:mmmmm format. Each section of "nnn" is a variable value between 0 and 255. Note that values 127 and 224-254 are not valid for the first three-digits only. IP socket mmmmm is a variable value between 0 and 65,535.

IPv6

Specify the IP address and IP socket in the xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:mmmmm format. Each section of "xxxx" is a hexadecimal variable value between 0 and ffff. IP socket mmmmm is a variable value between 0 and 65,535. |
| | Authenticate Error Trap | Select the check box to notify Authenticate Error Trap. |

*1 The default value can be changed by using **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**.

*2 This item is available only when **Wi-Fi Direct** is set to **Enable**.

SNMP v3

Purpose:

To edit the detailed settings of SNMP v3 protocol.

To enter this page, click **Edit SNMP v3 Properties** in the **SNMP** page.

Values:

Administrator Account	Account Enabled	Select the check box to enable the administrator account.
	User Name	Enters the user name of the administrator account.
	Authentication Password	Sets the authentication password of the administrator account using 8 to 32 alphanumeric characters.
	Re-enter Authentication Password	Confirms the set password.
	Privacy Password	Sets the privacy password of the administrator account using 8 to 32 alphanumeric characters.
	Re-enter Privacy Password	Confirms the set password.
Print Drivers / Remote Client Account	Account Enabled	Select the check box to enable the print drivers and remote client account.
	Reset to default Password	Click to reset the password for the print drivers and remote client account to default.

Scan to PC

Purpose:

To specify the client when scanning data.

Values:

FTP Client	Connection Time-Out	Sets the connection time-out period from 1 to 60 seconds.
	FTP Passive	Sets whether to enable the FTP Passive mode.
SMB Client	Connection Time-Out	Sets the connection time-out period from 1 to 60 seconds.

SNTP

Purpose:

To configure the SNTP server settings in order to perform time synchronization through SNTP.

Values:

SNTP	IP Address / Host Name	Sets the IP address or the host name of the SNTP server.
	Connection Time-Out	Sets the connection time-out period from 1 to 120 seconds.
	Time Synchronization Interval	Sets the interval for performing time synchronization using SNTP.
	Last Connection Time	Displays the last date and time when your printer was connected to the SNTP server.
	Connection Status	Displays the status of the connections between the SNTP server and your printer.

AirPrint

Purpose:

To configure the detailed setting of AirPrint.

Values:

AirPrint	LAN1[*1]	Enable	AirPrint Click to enable the printer for AirPrint.
		Name	Enters the name that is to be displayed as an AirPrint printer.
		Location	Sets the location of the printer.
		Geo-Location	Sets the physical location of the printer.
	LAN2[*2]	Name	Enters the name that is to be displayed as an AirPrint printer.
Supply Levels	Cyan Toner Cartridge	Displays the cyan toner level.	
	Magenta Toner Cartridge	Displays the magenta toner level.	
	Yellow Toner Cartridge	Displays the yellow toner level.	
	Black Toner Cartridge	Displays the black toner level.	

[*1] The menu title is displayed only when **Wi-Fi Direct** is set to **Enable**.

[*2] This item is displayed only when **Wi-Fi Direct** is set to **Enable**.

Google Cloud Print

Purpose:

To register the printer to Google Cloud Print.

Values:

Google Cloud Print[*1]	(Registration state)	Displays the Google Cloud Print registration state.
	Register This Device to Google Cloud Print	Click to register the printer to Google Cloud Print.

[*1] Google Cloud Print can only be used when the machine is using IPv4.

Dell Document Hub

Purpose:

To configure the connections to the Dell Document Hub Server.

Values:

Dell Document Hub	Connection Time-Out	Sets the time duration until the connection becomes time-out.
	Polling Interval	Sets the interval time for polling.

Proxy Server

Purpose:

To configure the Proxy Server settings.

Values:

Proxy Server	Use Proxy Server	Sets whether to enable the use of a proxy server.
	Address to Bypass Proxy Server	Sets the address to bypass proxy server.
	Server Name	Sets the name of the proxy server.
	Port Number	Sets the port number from 1 to 65535.
	Authentication	Sets whether to enable authentication.
	Login Name	Sets the login name for the proxy server.
	Password	Sets the login password for the proxy server.
	Retype Password	Confirms the set password.

Wireless LAN

NOTE: Wireless LAN feature is available only when the printer is connected using the wireless network.

Purpose:

To configure the detailed setting for the wireless network.

To use the wireless adapter, be sure to disconnect the Ethernet cable.

NOTE: Once wireless LAN is activated, wired LAN protocol will be disabled.

Values:

Wireless Settings	SSID	Sets the name that identifies the wireless network. Up to 32 alphanumeric characters can be entered.
	Network Type	Sets the network type from either **Ad-Hoc** or **Infrastructure**.
	MAC Address	Displays the MAC address of the wireless adapter for the printer.
	Link Channel	Displays the channel number of the wireless connection for the printer.
	Link Quality	Displays the quality of the wireless network connection for the printer.

Security Settings	Encryption		Select the encryption type from the list.
		No Security	Sets No Security to configure the wireless setting without specifying an encryption type from WEP, WPA-PSK, and WPA-Enterprise.
		WEP	Sets the WEP to use through the wireless network.
		WPA-PSK TKIP[*1, 2]	Sets the WPA-PSK TKIP to use through the wireless network.
		WPA-PSK AES/WPA2-PSK AES[*1, 2]	Sets the WPA-PSK AES/WPA2-PSK AES to use through the wireless network.
		WPA-Enterprise TKIP[*2, 3]	Sets the WPA-Enterprise TKIP to use through the wireless network.
		WPA-Enterprise AES/WPA2-Enterprise AES[*2, 3]	Sets the WPA-Enterprise AES/WPA2-Enterprise AES to use through the wireless network.
		Mixed Mode PSK[*1, 2]	Sets the Mixed Mode PSK to use through the wireless network. Mixed Mode PSK automatically selects the encryption type from either WPA-PSK TKIP, WPA-PSK AES, or WPA2-PSK AES.
		Mixed Mode Enterprise[*2, 3]	Sets the Mixed Mode Enterprise to use through the wireless network. Mixed Mode Enterprise automatically selects the encryption type from either WPA-Enterprise TKIP, WPA-Enterprise AES, or WPA2-Enterprise AES.
WEP	Encryption		Select the WEP key code from either Hex or Ascii.
	WEP Key 1		Sets the WEP key set used through the wireless network only when WEP 128bit or WEP 64bit is selected for Encryption.
	Re-enter WEP Key 1		Enters the WEP key 1 again to confirm it.
	WEP Key 2		Sets the WEP key set used through the wireless network only when WEP 128bit or WEP 64bit is selected for Encryption.
	Re-enter WEP Key 2		Enters the WEP key 2 again to confirm it.
	WEP Key 3		Sets the WEP key set used through the wireless network only when WEP 128bit or WEP 64bit is selected for Encryption.
	Re-enter WEP Key 3		Enters the WEP key 3 again to confirm it.
	WEP Key 4		Sets the WEP key set used through the wireless network only when WEP 128bit or WEP 64bit is selected for Encryption.
	Re-enter WEP Key 4		Enters the WEP key 4 again to confirm it.
	Transmit Key[*5]		Sets the transmit key type from the list.
WPA-PSK	Passphrase		Sets the passphrase.
	Re-enter Passphrase		Enters the passphrase again to confirm it.
WPA-Enterprise[*4]	EAP-Identity		Sets the EAP-Identity for the authentication.
	Authentication Method		Shows the authentication method.
	Login Name		Sets the login name for the authentication.
	Password		Sets the password.
	Re-enter Password		Enters the password again to confirm it.

*1 For encryption, AES or TKIP method is used.

*2 This item is available only when **Infrastructure** is selected for **Network Type**.

*3 For authentication and encryption by digital certificate, AES or TKIP method is used.

*4 To activate the setting, import a certificate which supports wireless LAN (server/client) on the **SSL/TLS** pages, and enable the relevant certificate in advance.

*5 When **Auto** is selected for **Transmit Key**, the key set specified for **WEP Key 1** is used.

Wi-Fi Direct

Purpose:

To configure the detailed setting of the Wi-Fi Direct connection.

Values:

Wi-Fi Direct	Wi-Fi Direct	Sets whether to enable the Wi-Fi Direct connection.
	Group Role	Sets the group role of the printer.
	Device Name	Specifies the printer name that identifies the Wi-Fi Direct network with up to 32 alphanumeric characters. Confirm it when selecting the printer name on your Wi-Fi mobile device.
	WPS Setup	Configures the Wi-Fi Direct network using WPS.
	SSID (Character string following "DIRECT-**")	Specifies a name to identify the Wi-Fi Direct network. Up to 32 alphanumeric characters can be entered. "DIRECT-" cannot be changed.
	Passphrase	Displays the passphrase. Confirm it when entering the passphrase into your Wi-Fi mobile device.
	IP Address	Displays the IP address of the Wi-Fi Direct adapter.
	Subnet Mask	Displays the subnet mask.
	Paired Device	Displays the mobile name currently connected.
	Current Role	Displays the current group role of the printer.
	Current SSID	Displays the current SSID. Confirm it selecting the Wi-Fi Direct network name on your Wi-Fi mobile device.

Reset Print Server

Purpose:

To initialize NVRAM (non-volatile RAM) for the network feature and reboot the printer. You can also initialize NVRAM of the printer from **Reset Defaults** in the **Printer Settings** menu.

Values:

Initialize NIC NVRAM Memory and restart printer.	Click **Start** to initialize NVRAM, revert network settings to the factory default settings, and reboot the network capability.
Restart Printer	Click **Start** to reboot the printer.

Security

The **Security** tab includes **Set Password, Authentication System, Kerberos Server, LDAP Server, LDAP Authentication, LDAP User Mapping, SSL/TLS, IPsec, 802.1x, IP Filter (IPv4)**, and **SMTP Domain Filtering**.

Set Password

Purpose:

To set or change the password that is required to access the setup parameters of the printer from the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**. This page can also be displayed by clicking **Set Password** in the left frame.

> **NOTE:** To restore the password to the default (NULL), initialize the non-volatile memory (NVM).

> **NOTE:** You can set the password for access to `Admin Settings` from **Panel Lock** in **Printer Settings**.

Values:

Administrator Password	Sets the password using up to 128 alphanumeric characters.
Re-enter Administrator Password	Confirms the set password.
Access denial by the authentication failure of the Administrator	Sets the amount of time the administrator should wait for the access to the printer setup from **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**. Sets the time period from 5 to 255 seconds. The access is denied if the time-out time is exceeded. If you set 0, this mode is disabled.

Authentication System

Purpose:

To specify the server authentication type, the server response time-out, or the search time-out.

Values:

Authentication Type (for Server Address/ Phone Book)	Authentication System Settings	Select the authentication system from the list.
Optional Information	Server Response Time-Out	Sets the amount of time the printer should wait for response from the server. Sets the time period from 1 to 75 seconds.
	Search Time-Out	Sets the amount of time the printer should wait for searching for the server. Sets the time period from 5 to 120 seconds.

Kerberos Server

Purpose:

To specify the settings for the Kerberos server.

Values:

Kerberos Server (for Server Address/Phone Book)	IP Address / Host Name & Port	Sets the IP address or host name, and the port address. The port address must be 88 or between 5,000 and 65,535.
	Domain Name	Enter the domain name.
	Login Name	Enter the login name.
	Password	Enter the login password.
	Re-enter Password	Enter the login password again to confirm it.

LDAP Server

Purpose:

To specify the settings of the LDAP server.

Values:

Server Information (for Server Address/Phone Book)	IP Address / Host Name & Port	Sets IP address or the host name, and the port address. The port address must be 389, 3268, or between 5,000 and 65,535.
	LDAP Server	Displays the current software information of the LDAP server.
Optional Information (for Server Address/Phone Book)	Search Directory Root	Enters the search directory root.
	Login Credentials to Access LDAP Server	Select credential used to access the LDAP server.
	Login Name	Enters the login name.
	Password	Enters the login password using 1 to 127 alphanumeric characters. If the password is left blank (NULL), you cannot log in to a server.
	Re-enter-Password	Enters the login password again to confirm it.
	Search Time-Out	Select **Wait LDAP Server Limit** to follow the time specified by the LDAP server. Select **Wait** to specify the time between 5 and 120 seconds.
	Search Name Order	Sets the search order.
	Server Address Book	Select the check box to enable the server address book.
	Server Phone Book	Select the check box to enable the server phone book.

NOTE: Server Address Book must be set to **On** before you can use the server address book for the Scan to E-mail feature.

NOTE: Server Phone Book must be set to **On** before you can use the server phone book for the Fax function.

LDAP Authentication

Purpose:

To specify the LDAP server authentication method.

Values:

LDAP Authentication (for Server Address/Phone Book)	Authentication Method	Shows the authentication method.
	Use Added Text String	Select whether to use the added text string from the list.
	Text String Added to User Name	Enter the added text string.

LDAP User Mapping

Purpose:

To specify the settings of the LDAP user mapping.

Values:

Common Name	Sets the attribute type of the common name set for the LDAP server.
Surname	Sets the attribute type of the surname set for the LDAP server.
Given Name	Sets the attribute type of the given name set for the LDAP server.
E-mail Address	Sets the attribute type of the e-mail address set for the LDAP server.
Fax Phone	Sets the attribute type of the fax phone number set for the LDAP server.

SSL/TLS

Purpose:

To specify the settings for the SSL encryption communication to the printer, and set/delete the certificate used for IPsec, LDAPS, or Wireless LAN.

Values:

HTTP-SSL/TLS Communication[*1]	Select the check box to enable the HTTP-SSL/TLS Communication.	
HTTP-SSL/TLS Communication Port Number	Sets the port number, which is not identical with that of HTTP for SSL/TLS. This must be 443 or between 8000 and 9999.	
LDAP-SSL/TLS Communication[*1]	Select the check box to enable the LDAP, and access is established using SSL/TLS communication.	
SMTP-SSL/TLS Communication	Sets the type of SSL/TLS used to communicate with the SMTP server.	
Generate Self-Signed Certificate[*2]	Click to display the **Generate Self-Signed Certificate** page and to create a security certification from the page. The Generate Self-Signed Certificate button is available only when the self-signed certificate is not generated.	
	Public Key Method	Select the public key method of the self-signed certificate.
	Size of Public Key	Select the size of public key.
	Issuer	Sets the issuer of SSL self-signed certificate.
	Validity	Enters the valid days from 1 to 9999 days.
	Generate Signed Certificate	Click to generate the SSL self-signed certificate.
Upload Signed Certificate[*2]	Click to display the **Upload Signed Certificate** page and to upload the certificate file to the device from the page.	
	Password	Enter the password to upload the certificate file.
	Re-enter Password	Enter the password again for confirmation.
	File Name	Click **Browse** to browse the file name to upload to the device.
	Import	Click **Import** to upload the certificate file to the device.
Certificate Management[*2]	Click to display the **Certificate Management** page and to manage a security certification from the page.	
	Category	Select the device to certificate.
	Certificate Purpose	Select the connection to certificate.
	Certificate Order	Select the order to certificate.
	Display the List	Click to display the **Certificate List** page.
Delete All Certificates	**Delete**	Click to delete all the certificates.
Certificate List[*2]	**Category**	Displays the device to certificate selected at the **Certificate Management** page.
	Certificate Purpose	Displays the connection to certificate selected at the **Certificate Management** page.
	Issued To	Displays the list of certificate order.
	Validity	Displays whether certificate is valid or not.
	Certificate Details	Click to display the **Certificate Details** page. The **SSL/TLS** page is displayed when no item in the **Issued To** column is selected.

Certificate Details[*2]	Category	Displays the device to certificate selected at the **Certificate Management** page or **SSL/TLS** page.
	Issued To	Displays the device to certificate.
	Issuer	Displays the issuer to certificate.
	Serial Number	Displays the serial number of the device.
	Public Key Method	Displays the public key method.
	Size of Public Key	Displays the size of public key.
	Valid From	Displays the time the certificate is valid.
	Valid Until	Displays the time the certificate is invalid.
	Status	Displays whether certificate is valid or not.
	Certificate Purpose	Displays the purpose of certificate.
	Certificate Selection Status	Displays the type of device certificate you selected.
	E-mail Address	Displayed only when an e-mail address is specified in the certificate.
	Use this certificate	Click to apply this certificate to the device.
	Delete	Click to delete this certificate.
	Export This Certificate	Click to export the certificate to the other device.

[*1] This item is available only when the self-signed certificate has been generated.

[*2] This item is effective only when connected via SSL/TLS (https). Only the administrator is allowed to display the pages.

IPsec

Purpose:

To specify the Security Architecture settings for Internet Protocol (IPsec) for encrypted communication to the printer.

Values:

IPsec Settings	Protocol	Select the check box to enable the protocol.
	Pre-Shared Key	Sets a shared key. Up to 255 alphanumeric characters, periods, and hyphens can be used.
	Re-enter Pre-Shared Key	Enters the shared key again to confirm it.
	Device Certificate	Displays the device certificate.
	IKE SA Lifetime	Sets the lifetime for IKE SA from 5 to 28,800 minutes.
	IPsec SA Lifetime	Sets the lifetime for IPsec SA from 5 to 2,880 minutes.
	DH Group	Sets the DH group.
	PFS	Select the check box to enable the PFS setting.
	Remote peers IPv4 address	Sets the IP address to connect to.
	Remote peers IPv6 address	Sets the IP address to connect to.
	Non IPsec communication policy	Allows communication with a device which does not support IPsec.

NOTE: If IPsec is enabled with incorrect settings, you must disable it using the **IPsec** menu on the operator panel.

802.1x

Purpose:

To specify the settings for IEEE 802.1x authentication for encrypted communication to the printer.

Values:

Configure 802.1x	Enable IEEE 802.1x	Select the check box to enable IEEE 802.1x authentication.	
	Authentication Method	EAP-MD5	Selects the authentication method to use for IEEE 802.1x authentication.
		EAP-MS-CHAPv2	
		PEAP/MS-CHAPv2	
	Login Name: (Device Name)	Sets the login name (device name) for IEEE 802.1x authentication using up to 128 alphanumeric characters.	
	Password	Sets the login password for IEEE 802.1x authentication using up to 128 alphanumeric characters.	
	Re-enter Password	Confirms the set login password.	
	Certificate Validation	Select the check box to enable Certificate Validation.	

IP Filter (IPv4)

Purpose:

To specify the IP address and subnet mask to be permitted or denied access to the printer.

Values:

Access List	Address	Sets the IP addresses that are permitted or denied access to the printer. Enter a numeric value between 0 and 255 in each field.	
	Address Mask	Sets the subnet mask that are permitted or denied access to the printer. Enter a numeric value between 0 and 255 in each field.	
	Active Mode	Reject	Rejects printing from specified network address.
		Accept	Permits printing from specified network address.
		Off	Disables the IP Filter feature for the specified IP address.

SMTP Domain Filtering

Purpose:

To specify whether to restrict sending e-mails to specific domains only.

NOTE: This feature does not restrict sending e-mails through the E-Mail Alert feature.

Values:

SMTP Domain Filtering	Domain Filtering	Select the check box to enable Domain Filtering.
	Allow Domain List	Allows you to register up to five domains allowed for sending e-mails.

Copy Printer Settings

The **Copy Printer Settings** menu includes the **Copy Printer Settings** and **Copy Printer Settings Report** pages.

Copy Printer Settings

Purpose:

To copy the printer settings to one or more of the same model of the printer.

To copy the settings to another printer, specify the IP address and password of the printer to which the settings are copied in the **IP Address** text box and **Password** text box. Then, click the **Copy the settings to the Host in the above list** button. Copying the settings is complete. The connection time-out period is 60 seconds. After that, you can check whether the settings were copied to this page. And you need to check the **Copy the settings to the Host in the above list and reboot the printer** menu of the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** in the destination printer to verify if the settings were actually copied or not.

If the settings can be copied but the printer configuration is different, the settings of only the same items are copied. Printer settings are simultaneously copied to printers of up to 10 IP addresses.

> **NOTE:** You cannot copy the Address Book when the destination printer has a fax job.

Copy Printer Settings Report

Purpose:

To verify whether the printer setting is copied to other printers successfully.

> **NOTE:** The history is cleared by turning off the printer.

Print Volume

The **Print Volume** menu includes the **Print Volume** and **Dell ColorTrack** pages.

Print Volume

Purpose:

To verify the number of printed pages. This page can also be displayed by clicking **Print Volume** in the left frame.

Values:

Printer Page Count	Displays the total number of pages printed since the printer was shipped from the factory.
Paper Used	Displays the number of pages printed for each paper size.

Dell ColorTrack

Purpose:

To specify which users have access to color printing and to limit print volume per user.

Values:

ColorTrack Mode	Off	Enables to print the data with no authentication information.
	On	Restricts printing based on the print user information registered in the internal server.
Non Registered User	Sets whether to permit the printing of data with no authentication information. To permit the printing for non-account user, select the check box.	
Auto Color To Mono Print	Sets whether to print all print jobs in black and white even when color print is specified.	
ColorTrack Error Report	Sets whether to automatically print error-related information if printing using ColorTrack results in an error.	

User Registration[*1]	Click **Edit User Registration** to display the **Edit Print User Registration** page.
	• To register a user, click **Create** to open the **Print User Settings** page.
	• To delete a user, click **Delete** to open the **Delete User** page. Clicking **Back** returns the screen to the status prior to deleting the user.
	• To confirm or change the registered user, click **Confirm / Change** to open the **Print User Settings** page.

	User Registration No.	Displays the user registration number. The **Delete User** button is displayed when the user is already registered.
	User Name	Sets the user name.
	Password	Sets the user password using 4 to 12 alphanumeric characters.
	Re-enter password	Enter the password again to confirm it.
	Color Mode Limitation	Sets whether to limit color printing.
	Upper Limit for Color Print	Sets the maximum number of pages allowed for color printing.
	Cumulative Color Page Count	Displays the cumulative number of pages printed for color printing.
	Upper Limit for Monochrome Print	Sets the maximum number of pages allowed for monochrome printing.
	Cumulative Monochrome Page Count	Displays the cumulative number of pages printed for monochrome printing.

[*1] This item is displayed only when **ColorTrack Mode** is **On**.

Address Book

The **Address Book** menu includes the **E-Mail Address**, **Server Address**, and **Phone Book** pages.

E-Mail Address	E-Mail Address	Allows you to view, edit, or create e-mail address entries.
	E-Mail Group	Allows you to view, edit, or create e-mail group entries.
	Default Setup	Allows you to view, edit, or set the default e-mail subject and message.
Server Address	Server Address	Allows you to view, edit, or create server address entries.
Phone Book	FAX Speed Dial	Allows you to view, edit, or create speed dial entries.
	FAX Group	Allows you to view, edit, or create fax group entries.

E-Mail Address

The **E-mail Address** page includes the following subpages.

E-Mail Address	Allows you to view, edit, or create e-mail address entries.
E-Mail Group	Allows you to view, edit, or create e-mail group entries.
Default Setup	Allows you to view, edit, or set the default e-mail subject and message.

E-Mail Address

Purpose:

To view the e-mail address entries registered on the **E-Mail Address** page.

Values:

Address List to:	Selecting each button displays a list of entries for the group of user IDs indicated on the button.
ID	Displays the user ID.
Name	Displays the user name. **(Not in Use)** is displayed when there is no registration.
Address	Displays the e-mail address of the user.
Delete	Deletes the entry for the selected user ID.
Confirm / Change	Displays a dialog box where you can edit the entry of the selected user ID.
Create	Displays a dialog box where you can create a new entry under the selected user ID.

E-Mail Address (Confirm/Change, Create)

Purpose:

To view or edit the e-mail address entries on the **E-Mail Address** page, or create a new entry. The following items are in the dialog box that appears when you click **Confirm / Change** or **Create** on the **E-Mail Address** top page.

Values:

ID	Displays the selected user ID.
Name	Allows you to view or edit the name of the user registered under the user ID, or enter a name for the new entry.
Address	Allows you to view or edit the e-mail address of the user, or enter an e-mail address for the new entry.
Delete[*1]	Click this button to delete the selected user.
Apply New Settings	Click this button to apply the new settings.
Restore Settings	Click this button to restore the previous settings.
Back	Click this button to return to the top page.

[*1] This item is available only when you click **Confirm / Change**.

E-Mail Address (Delete)

Purpose:

To delete the e-mail address entries registered on the **E-Mail Address** page. The following items are in the dialog box that appears when you click **Delete** on the **E-Mail Address** top page.

Values:

ID	Displays the selected user ID.
Name	Displays the name of the user registered under the selected user ID.
Address	Displays the e-mail address of the user.
Apply New Settings	Click this button to apply the new settings.
Back	Click this button to return to the top page.

E-Mail Group

Purpose:

To view the e-mail address entries registered on the **E-Mail Group** page.

Values:

GroupID	Displays the group ID.
Name	Displays the assigned group name. (**Not in Use**) is displayed when there is no registration.
Delete	Deletes the entry for the selected group ID.
Confirm / Change	Displays a dialog box where you can edit the entry for the selected group ID.
Create	Displays a dialog box where you can create a new entry under the selected group ID.

E-Mail Group (Confirm/Change, Create)

Purpose:

To view or edit the e-mail address group entries on the **E-Mail Group** page, or create a new entry. The following items are in the dialog box that appears when you click **Confirm / Change** or **Create** on the **E-Mail Group** top page.

Values:

E-Mail Group	ID	Displays the selected group ID.
	Name	Allows you to view or edit the name assigned for the group ID, or enter a new group name.
	Delete[*1]	Click this button to delete the current entry.
E-Mail Address	Address List to:	Selecting each button displays a list of entries for the group of IDs indicated on the button.
	ID	Displays the user ID.
		Select the check box on the left to create the group.
	Name	Displays the user name. (**Not in Use**) is displayed when there is no registration.
	Address	Allows you to view or edit the e-mail address of an entry registered under the selected user ID, or enter an e-mail address for the new entry.
	Apply New Settings	Click this button to apply the new settings.
	Restore Settings	Click this button to restore the previous settings.
	Back	Click this button to return to the top page.

[*1] This item is available only when you click **Confirm / Change**.

E-Mail Group (Delete)

Purpose:

To delete the e-mail group entries registered on the **E-Mail Group** page. The following items are in the dialog box that appears when you click **Delete** on the **E-Mail Group** top page.

Values:

ID	Displays the selected group ID.
Name	Displays the name assigned for the group ID.
Apply New Settings	Click this button to apply the new settings.
Back	Click this button to return to the top page.

Default Setup

Purpose:

To set the default e-mail subject and message.

Values:

Default Subject	Allows you to enter the default e-mail subject.
Body Text	Allows you to enter the default e-mail message.
Apply New Settings	Click this button to apply the new settings.
Restore Settings	Click this button to restore the previous settings.

Server Address

Server Address

Purpose:

To view the server address entries registered on the **Server Address** page.

Values:

Address List to:	Selecting each button displays a list of entries for the group of IDs indicated on the button.
ID	Displays the server ID.
Name	Displays the file directory name. (**Not in Use**) is displayed when there is no registration.
Server Address	Displays the address of the file directory.
Delete	Deletes the entry for the selected server ID.
Confirm / Change	Displays a dialog box where you can edit the entry for the selected server ID.
Create	Displays a dialog box where you can create a new entry under the selected server ID.

Server Address (Confirm/Change, Create)

Purpose:

To view or edit the server address entries on the **Server Address** page, or create a new entry. The following items are in the dialog box that appears when you click **Confirm / Change** or **Create** on the **Server Address** top page.

Values:

ID	Displays the selected server ID.	
Name	Allows you to view or change the server name assigned to the server ID, or enter a new server name.	
Server Type	Allows you to view the server type if you click **Confirm / Change**. Allows you to edit the server type if you click **Create**.	
	FTP[1]	Select this to store scanned documents on a server via the FTP protocol.
	SMB[1]	Select this to store scanned documents on a computer via the Server Message Block (SMB) protocol.
Server Address	Allows you to view or edit the server address registered under the server ID, or enter a new server address.	
Share Name[2]	Allows you to view or edit the assigned shared name, or enter a new shared name, when **Server Type** is set to **SMB**.	
Server Path	Allows you to view or edit the assigned server path, or enter a new path.	
Server Port Number	Allows you to view or edit the assigned server port number, or enter a new port number. If you leave the text box blank, the default port number (FTP: 21, SMB: 139) will be used.	

Login Name	Allows you to view or edit the login name that is required to access the selected protocol, or enter a new login name.
Login Password	Allows you to view or edit the password that is required to access the selected protocol, or enter a new password.
Re-enter Password	Confirms the set password.
Delete[*3]	Click this button to delete the current entry.
Apply New Settings	Click this button to apply the new settings.
Restore Settings	Click this button to restore the previous settings.
Back	Click this button to return to the top page.

   [*1] You can edit this item only when you click **Create**.

   [*2] This item is available only when **Server Type** is set to **SMB**.

   [*3] This item is available only when you click **Confirm / Change**.

Server Address (Delete)

Purpose:

To delete the server address entries registered on the **Server Address** page. The following items are in the dialog box that appears when you click **Delete** on the **Server Address** top page.

Values:

ID	Displays the selected server ID.
Name	Displays the name assigned for the server ID.
Server Address	Displays the server address registered under the server ID.
Apply New Settings	Click this button to apply the new settings.
Back	Click this button to return to the top page.

Phone Book

The **Phone Book** page includes the following subpages.

FAX Speed Dial	Allows you to view, edit, or create speed dial entries.
FAX Group	Allows you to view, edit, or create fax group entries.

FAX Speed Dial

Purpose:

To view the fax number entries registered on the **FAX Speed Dial** page.

Values:

Speed Dial List to:	Selecting each button displays a list of entries for the group of speed dial codes indicated on the button.
Speed Dial	Displays the speed dial ID.
Name	Displays the assigned name for a speed dial ID.
Phone Number	Displays the speed dial code. (**Not in Use**) is displayed when there is no registration.
Delete	Deletes the entry for the selected speed dial code.
Confirm / Change	Displays a dialog box where you can edit the entry for the selected speed dial code.
Create	Displays a dialog box where you can create a new entry under the selected speed dial code.

FAX Speed Dial (Confirm/Change, Create)

Purpose:

To view or edit the speed dial entries on the **FAX Speed Dial** page, or create a new entry. The following items are in the dialog box that appears when you click **Confirm** / **Change** or **Create** on the **FAX Speed Dial** top page.

Values:

Speed Dial	Displays the selected speed dial code.
Name	Allows you to view or edit the name of an entry registered under the speed dial code, or enter a name for the new entry.
Phone Number	Allows you to view or edit the fax number of an entry registered under the speed dial code, or enter a fax number for the new entry.
Delete[*1]	Click this button to delete the entry for the speed dial code. This button is available only on the dialog box for editing an existing entry.
Apply New Settings	Click this button to apply the new settings.
Restore Settings	Click this button to restore the previous settings.
Back	Click this button to return to the top page.
[*1] This item is available only when you click **Confirm / Change**.	

FAX Speed Dial (Delete)

Purpose:

To delete the speed dial entries registered on the **FAX Speed Dial** page. The following items are in the dialog box that appears when you click **Delete** on the **FAX Speed Dial** top page.

Values:

Speed Dial	Displays the selected speed dial code.
Name	Displays the name registered under the speed dial code.
Phone Number	Displays the fax number registered under the speed dial code.
Apply New Settings	Click this button to apply the new settings.
Back	Click this button to return to the top page.

FAX Group

Purpose:

To view the fax group entries registered on the **FAX Group** page.

Values:

ID	Displays a fax group ID.
Name	Displays the assigned group name. (**Not in Use**) is displayed when there is no registration.
Delete	Deletes the entry for the selected group ID.
Confirm / Change	Displays a dialog box where you can edit the entry for the selected group ID.
Create	Displays a dialog box where you can create a new entry under the selected group ID.

FAX Group (Confirm/Change, Create)

Purpose:

To view or edit the fax number group entries on the **FAX Group** page, or create a new entry. The following items are in the dialog box that appears when you click **Confirm / Change** or **Create** on the **FAX Group** top page.

Values:

FAX Group	ID	Displays the selected group ID.
	Name	Allows you to view or edit the name assigned for the group ID, or enter a new group name.
	Delete[*1]	Click this button to delete the current entry.
FAX Speed Dial	Speed Dial List to:	Selecting each button displays a list of entries for the group of speed dial codes indicated on the button.
	Speed Dial	Displays the speed dial code. Select the check box on the left to add the speed dial code in the group.
	Name	Displays the name registered for the speed dial code. **(Not in Use)** is displayed when there is no registration.
	Phone Number	Allows you to view or edit the fax number of an entry registered under the selected speed dial code, or enter a fax number for the new entry.
	Apply New Settings	Click this button to apply the new settings.
	Restore Settings	Click this button to restore the previous settings.
	Back	Click this button to return to the top page.

[*1] This item is available only when you click **Confirm / Change**.

FAX Group (Delete)

Purpose:

To delete the fax number group entries registered on the **FAX Group** page. The following items are in the dialog box that appears when you click **Delete** on the **FAX Group** top page.

Values:

ID	Displays the selected group ID.
Name	Displays the name assigned for the group ID.
Apply New Settings	Click this button to apply the new settings.
Back	Click this button to return to the top page.

Tray Management

Use the **Tray Management** menu to set the paper size and type of paper loaded in tray1 and the optional 550-sheet feeder.

Values:

MPF Use Driver Settings for Print Job	Sets whether to use the printer driver settings for the size and type of paper loaded in the MPF.
MPF Paper Size[*1]	Sets the size of paper loaded in the MPF.
MPF Paper Type[*1]	Sets the type of paper loaded in the MPF.
MPF Custom Paper Size - Y[*1]	Sets the length of custom size paper loaded in the MPF.

MPF Custom Paper Size - X[*1]	Sets the width of custom size paper loaded in the MPF.
MPF Display Tray Prompt[*1]	Sets whether to display a popup message that prompts the user to set the paper size and type when the paper is loaded in the MPF.
Tray 1 Paper Size	Sets the size of paper loaded in tray1.
Tray 1 Paper Type	Sets the type of paper loaded in tray1.
Tray 1 Custom Paper Size - Y	Sets the length of custom size paper loaded in tray1.
Tray 1 Custom Paper Size - X	Sets the width of custom size paper loaded in tray1.
Tray 1 Display Tray Prompt	Sets whether to display a popup message that prompts the user to set the paper size and type when the paper is loaded in tray1.
Tray 2 Paper Size[*2]	Sets the size of paper loaded in the optional 550-sheet feeder.
Tray 2 Paper Type[*2]	Sets the type of paper loaded in the optional 550-sheet feeder.
Tray 2 Custom Paper Size - Y[*2]	Sets the length of custom size paper loaded in the optional 550-sheet feeder.
Tray 2 Custom Paper Size - X[*2]	Sets the width of custom size paper loaded in the optional 550-sheet feeder.
Tray 2 Display Tray Prompt[*2]	Sets whether to display a popup message that prompts the user to set the paper size and type when the paper is loaded in the optional 550-sheet feeder.
1st Priority	Sets the paper source to be used as the first priority.
2nd Priority	Sets the paper source to be used as the second priority.
3rd Priority[*2]	Sets the paper source to be used as the third priority.

[*1] This item is available only when **Off** in **MPF Use Driver Settings for Print Job** is selected.

[*2] This item is available only when the optional 550-sheet feeder is installed.

15

Understanding the Tool Box Menus

The **Tool Box** allows you to view, specify, and diagnose the system settings.

> ✐ **NOTE:** A **Password** dialog box appears the first time you try to change settings on **Tool Box** when **Panel Lock** is set on the printer. In this case, input the password that you have already specified, and click **OK** to apply the settings.

Starting the Tool Box

1   Click **Start**→ **All Programs**→ **Dell Printers**→ **Dell C2665dnf Color Laser Multifunction Printer**→ **Tool Box**.

   The screen to select the printer appears.

2   Click **Network Connection** or **USB Connection**, and then select the printer listed in **Select From the Found Printers**.

> ✐ **NOTE:** If the printer is not listed in **Select From the Found Printers** when you click **Network Connection**, click **Directly Input IP Address/Host Name** and enter the IP address of the printer. For details about how to verify the IP address of the printer, see "Verifying the IP Settings."

> ✐ **NOTE:** On Microsoft® Windows® XP or Windows Server® 2003, printers using IPv6 addresses cannot be detected.

3   Click **OK**.

   The **Tool Box** opens.

   The **Tool Box** consists of the **Printer Setting Reports**, **Printer Maintenance**, and **Diagnosis** tabs.

Printer Setting Reports

The **Printer Setting Reports** tab includes the **Printer Information**, **Menu Settings**, **Reports**, **TCP/IP Settings**, **Tray Settings**, **Default Settings**, **Fax Settings**, and **Panel Language** pages.

Printer Information

Purpose:

To display the system information of the printer.

Values:

Dell Service Tag Number	Displays the service tag number of your printer.
Express Service Code	Displays the express service code number.
Printer Serial Number	Displays the serial number of your printer.
Printer Type	Displays the type of printing for the printer. **Color Laser** is displayed normally.
Asset Tag Number	Displays the asset tag number of your printer.
Memory Capacity	Displays the memory capacity.
Processor Speed	Displays the processing speed.
Firmware Version	Displays the version of the controller.
MCU Firmware Version	Displays the version of the Machine Control Unit (MCU) firmware.
Color Printing Speed	Displays the speed for color printing.
Monochrome Printing Speed	Displays the speed for monochrome printing.

Menu Settings

Purpose:

To display the menu settings of the printer.

Values:

System Settings - General	Power Saver Timer - Sleep	Displays the amount of transition time to the Sleep mode after the printer finishes a job.
	Power Saver Timer - Deep Sleep	Displays the amount of transition time between the Sleep mode and the Deep Sleep mode.
	Time Zone	Displays the selected time zone.
	Set Date	Displays the date setting.
	Set Time	Displays the time setting.
	Date Format	Displays the selected date format.
	Time Format	Displays the selected time format; **24 Hour** or **12 Hour**.
	mm / inch	Displays the measurement unit used on the operator panel.
	Low Toner Alert Message	Displays whether to show the alert message when the toner is low.
	OffHook Wake Up	Displays whether to wake up from Sleep or Deep Sleep mode when you pick up the handset of the external telephone.
	Auto Log Print	Displays whether to automatically print a job history report after every 20 jobs.
	RAM Disk	Displays whether to allocate RAM for the disk file system for the Secure Print, Private Mail Box Print, Public Mail Box Print, and Proof Print features.
	Fax Server Address Book	Displays whether to specify the fax numbers from the Address Book for the LDAP server.
	E-mail Server Address Book	Displays whether to specify the e-mail addresses from the Address Book for the LDAP server.
System Settings - Audio Tone	Control Panel Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when the operator panel input is correct. **Off** indicates that the tone is disabled.
	Invalid Key Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when the operator panel input is incorrect. **Off** indicates that the tone is disabled.
	Machine Ready Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when the printer becomes ready. **Off** indicates that the tone is disabled.
	Copy Completed Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when a copy job is complete. **Off** indicates that the tone is disabled.
	Job Completed Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when a job other than copying is complete. **Off** indicates that the tone is disabled.
	Fault Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when a job ends abnormally. **Off** indicates that the tone is disabled.

	Alert Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when a problem occurs. **Off** indicates that the tone is disabled.
	Out of Paper Alert Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when the printer runs out of paper. **Off** indicates that the tone is disabled.
	Low Toner Alert Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when the toner is low. **Off** indicates that the tone is disabled.
	Auto Clear Alert Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted 5 seconds before the printer performs auto clear. **Off** indicates that the tone is disabled.
	NFC Authentication Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when an NFC card is placed on the NFC reader for authentication. **Off** indicates that the tone is disabled.
System Settings - Timers	**Auto Reset**	Displays the amount of time before the printer automatically resets the settings on the operator panel to the defaults when no additional settings are made.
	Fault Time-out	Displays the amount of time the printer waits before canceling a job that stops abnormally.
	Job Time-out	Displays the amount of time the printer waits for data to arrive from the computer.
System Settings - Output Settings	**Default Paper Size**	Displays the default paper size.
	Print ID	Displays where to print a user ID on the output paper.
	Print Text	Displays whether the printer outputs PDL (Page Description Language) data (which is not supported by the printer) as text when the printer receives it.
	Banner Sheet Insert Position	Displays where to insert the banner sheet.
	Banner Sheet Specify Tray	Displays the banner sheet tray.
	Substitute Tray	Displays an indication to use paper of a different size when the paper that is loaded in the specified tray does not match the paper size settings for the current job.
	Letterhead 2 Sided	Displays whether to print on both sides of a sheet of letterhead paper.
	Enable A4<>Letter Switch	Displays whether to print A4 size jobs on Letter size paper if A4 is not available in the paper trays and vice versa (Letter size job on A4 size paper).
	Report 2 Sided Print	Displays whether to print reports on both sides of a sheet of paper.
	Use Another Tray	Displays whether to show a message to select another tray when the specified paper is not available in the paper tray.
Service Tools - Paper Density	**Plain**	Displays the plain paper density settings.
	Label	Displays the label paper density settings.
Service Tools - Auto Registration Adjustment	**Auto Registration Adjustment**	Displays whether to automatically adjust color registration.
Service Tools - Non-Dell Toner	**Non-Dell Toner**	Displays whether to use toner cartridge of another manufacturer.
Service Tools - Adjust Altitude	**Adjust Altitude**	Displays the altitude of the location where the printer is installed.

Reports

Purpose:

To print the settings and history information of the printer.

The reports are printed in the paper size specified in system settings.

Values:

System Settings	Click this button to print a detailed list of the system settings.
Panel Settings	Click this button to print a detailed list of the panel settings.
PCL Fonts List	Click this button to print a list of the PCL (Hewlett-Packard Printer Control Language) fonts.
PCL Macros List	Click this button to print a list of the PCL Macro.
PS Fonts List	Click this button to print a list of the PS fonts.
PDF Fonts List	Click this button to print a list of the PDF fonts.
Job History	Click this button to print the Completed Jobs history of the printer.
Error History	Click this button to print the error history of the printer.
Print Meter	Click this button to print the report for the total number of pages printed.
Color Test Page	Click this button to print a color test page.
Protocol Monitor	Click this button to print the Protocol Monitor report.
Speed Dial	Click this button to print a list of all the members stored as speed dial numbers.
Email Address Book	Click this button to print a list of all the addresses stored as address book information.
Server Address	Click this button to print a list of all the members stored as server address information.
Fax Activity	Click this button to print the report of faxes recently received or sent.
Fax Pending	Click this button to print a list of status of pending faxes.
Stored Documents[1]	Click this button to print a list of the Stored Documents.

> [1] You can print the list only when the RAM disk is enabled.

TCP/IP Settings

Purpose:

To display the current settings of TCP/IP (Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol).

Values:

IPv4	IP Address Mode	Displays the method for acquiring the IP address.
	IP Address	Displays the IP address of the printer.
	Subnet Mask	Displays the subnet mask.
	Gateway Address	Displays the gateway address.
IPv6	Use Manual Address	Displays whether to set the IP address manually.
	Manual Address	Displays the IP address of the printer.
	Link Local Address	Displays the link local address.

Tray Settings

Purpose:

To display the tray settings of the printer.

Values:

Tray Settings	MPF Display Tray Prompt	Displays a popup menu that prompts to set the paper size and type when paper is loaded in the multipurpose feeder (MPF).
	MPF Use Driver Settings for Print Job	Displays whether to use the printer driver settings for the size and type of paper loaded in the MPF.
	MPF Paper Size	Displays the paper size setting of the MPF.
	MPF Custom Size - Y	Displays the length of custom size paper loaded in the MPF.
	MPF Custom Size - X	Displays the width of custom size paper loaded in the MPF.
	MPF Paper Type	Displays the paper type setting of the MPF.
	Tray 1 Display Tray Prompt	Displays a popup menu that prompts to set the paper size and type when paper is loaded in tray1.
	Tray 1 Paper Size	Displays the paper size setting of tray1.
	Tray 1 Custom Size - Y	Displays the length of custom size paper loaded in tray1.
	Tray 1 Custom Size - X	Displays the width of custom size paper loaded in tray1.
	Tray 1 Paper Type	Displays the paper type setting of tray1.
	Tray 2 Display Tray Prompt[*1]	Displays a popup menu that prompts to set the paper size and type when paper is loaded in the optional 550-sheet feeder (tray2).
	Tray 2 Paper Size[*1]	Displays the paper size setting of the optional 550-sheet feeder.
	Tray 2 Custom Size - Y[*1]	Displays the length of custom size paper loaded in the optional 550-sheet feeder.
	Tray 2 Custom Size - X[*1]	Displays the width of custom size paper loaded in the optional 550-sheet feeder.
	Tray 2 Paper Type[*1]	Displays the paper type setting of the optional 550-sheet feeder.
Tray Priority	Tray Priority	Displays the priority order of the paper trays.

[*1] This item is available only when the optional 550-sheet feeder is installed.

Default Settings

Purpose:

To display the default settings for the Copy, Scan, Fax, and USB Direct Print functions of the printer.

Values:

Copy Defaults	Output Color	Displays whether to make copies in color or in black and white.
	Select Tray	Displays the input tray.
	Collation	Displays whether to sort the copy job.
	Reduce / Enlarge	Displays the default copy reduction/enlargement ratio.
	Original Size	Displays the paper size of the original document.
	Original Type	Displays the type of the original document.
	Darken / Lighten	Displays the default copy density level.
	Sharpness	Displays the default sharpness level.

	Color Saturation	Displays the default color saturation level.
	Auto Exposure	Displays whether to suppress the background of the original to enhance text on the copy.
	Auto Exposure Level	Displays the background suppression level.
	Color Balance (Yellow Low)	Displays the color balance level of low density yellow.
	Color Balance (Yellow Medium)	Displays the color balance level of medium density yellow.
	Color Balance (Yellow High)	Displays the color balance level of high density yellow.
	Color Balance (Magenta Low)	Displays the color balance level of low density magenta.
	Color Balance (Magenta Medium)	Displays the color balance level of medium density magenta.
	Color Balance (Magenta High)	Displays the color balance level of high density magenta.
	Color Balance (Cyan Low)	Displays the color balance level of low density cyan.
	Color Balance (Cyan Medium)	Displays the color balance level of medium density cyan.
	Color Balance (Cyan High)	Displays the color balance level of high density cyan.
	Color Balance (Black Low)	Displays the color balance level of low density black.
	Color Balance (Black Medium)	Displays the color balance level of medium density black.
	Color Balance (Black High)	Displays the color balance level of high density black.
	2 Sided Copying	Displays whether to print on both sides of a sheet of paper.
	2-Up	Displays whether the Multiple-Up feature is enabled.
	Margin Top / Bottom	Displays the value of the top and bottom margins.
	Margin Left / Right	Displays the value of the left and right margins.
	Margin Middle	Displays the value of the middle margin.
Scan Defaults	File Format	Displays the file format in which scanned documents are to be saved.
	Output Color	Displays whether to scan in color or in black and white.
	Resolution	Displays the default scan resolution.
	Original Size	Displays the paper size of the original document.
	2 Sided Scanning	Displays whether to scan both sides of a document.
	Darken / Lighten	Displays the default scan density level.
	Sharpness	Displays the default sharpness level.
	Contrast	Displays the default contrast level.
	Auto Exposure	Displays whether to suppress the background of the original to enhance text on the copy.
	Auto Exposure Level	Displays the background suppression level.
	Margin Top / Bottom	Displays the value of the top and bottom margins.

	Margin Left / Right	Displays the value of the left and right margins.
	Margin Middle	Displays the value of the middle margin.
	TIFF File Format	Displays the TIFF file format; **TIFF V6** or **TTN2**.
	Image Compression	Displays the image compression level.
	Max E-mail Size	Displays the maximum size of e-mail that can be sent.
	File Name	Displays the mode used to name scanned documents.
	Create Folder	Displays the folder to which scanned documents are to be saved.
Fax Defaults	Resolution	Displays the resolution level to be used for fax transmission.
	2 Sided Scanning	Displays whether to scan both sides of a document.
	Darken / Lighten	Displays the density level to be used for fax transmission.
	Delayed Send	Displays the fax transmission start time.
USB Direct Print Defaults	Output Color	Displays the default color mode.
	Select Tray	Displays the default tray.
	2 Sided Printing	Displays whether to print on both sides of a sheet of paper.
	Layout	Displays the default paper layout when **Layout** is selected.
	Collation	Displays whether to sort the print job.
	Image Types	Displays the mode used to set the print image quality of documents.

Fax Settings

Purpose:

To display the fax settings of the printer.

Values:

Fax Number	Displays the fax number of the printer, which will be printed on the header of faxes.
Country	Displays the country where the printer is used.
Fax Header Name	Displays the name of the sender that will be printed on the header of faxes.
Line Type	Displays the line type; **PSTN** or **PBX**.
Line Monitor	Displays the volume of the line monitor, which audibly monitors a transmission through the internal speaker until a connection is made.
DRPD Pattern	Displays the Distinctive Ring Pattern Detection (DRPD) setting.
Receive Mode	Displays the fax receiving mode.
Ring Tone Volume	Displays the volume of the ring tone, which indicates that an incoming call is a telephone call through the internal speaker when **Receive Mode** is set to **Telephone / Fax**.
Auto Receive Fax	Displays the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after receiving an incoming call.
Auto Receive Tel/Fax	Displays the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after the external telephone receives an incoming call.
Auto Receive Ans/Fax	Displays the interval at which the printer goes into the fax mode after the external answering machine receives an incoming call.
Junk Fax Setup	Displays whether to reject faxes sent from unwanted stations.
Sent Fax Forward	Displays whether to forward incoming faxes to a specified destination.

Fax Forwarding Number	Displays the fax number of the destination to which incoming faxes are to be forwarded.
2 Sided Printing	Displays whether to print the received fax on both sides of a sheet of paper.
Remote Receive	Displays whether to receive faxes by pressing a remote receive code on the external telephone.
Remote Receive Tone	Displays the tone to start **Remote Receive**.
Discard Size	Displays whether to delete text or images at the bottom of a fax page when the entire page does not fit onto the output paper.
Redial Attempts	Displays the number of redial attempts.
Interval of Redial	Displays the redial interval.
Resend Delay	Displays the interval between transmission attempts.
Tone / Pulse	Displays whether to use tone or pulse dialing.
Prefix Dial	Displays whether to set a prefix dial number.
Prefix Dial Number	Displays a prefix dial number. This number dials before any auto dial number is started. It is useful for accessing the Private Automatic Branch Exchange (PABX).
Fax Cover Page	Displays whether to attach a cover page to faxes.
Fax Header[1]	Displays whether to print the information of the sender on the header of faxes.
ECM	Displays whether the Error Correction Mode (ECM) is enabled.
Modem Speed	Displays the fax modem speed when a fax transmission or reception error occurs.
Display Manual Fax Recipients	Displays whether to show the fax number of the recipient on the **Sending Fax** screen when manually sending a fax.
Fax Activity	Displays whether to automatically print a fax activity report after every 50 incoming and outgoing fax communications.
Fax Transmit	Displays whether to print a transmission report after every fax transmission or only when an error occurs.
Fax Broadcast	Displays whether to print a transmission report after every fax transmission to multiple destinations or only when an error occurs.
Fax Protocol	Displays whether to automatically print a protocol monitor report after every fax transmission or only when an error occurs.

[1] This item is not available when **Country** is set to **United States**.

Panel Language

Purpose:

To display the panel language setting of the printer.

Values:

Panel Language	Displays the language that is used on the touch panel.

Printer Maintenance

The **Printer Maintenance** tab includes the **System Settings - General**, **System Settings - Timers**, **System Settings - Output Settings**, **Service Tools**, **Tray Management**, **Panel Language**, **TCP/IP Settings**, **Network Settings**, **Copy Defaults**, **Scan Defaults**, **Fax Defaults**, **USB Direct Print Defaults**, and **Fax Settings** pages.

System Settings - General

Purpose:

To configure the power management of the printer, date and time, mm/inch setting, alarm tones, job log auto print, and setting of the additional memory.

Values:

Power Saver Timer	**Sleep**[*1]	**Available Range: 1–30 minutes**	Sets the amount of transition time to the Sleep mode after the printer finishes a job.
	Deep Sleep[*1]	**Available Range: 1–30 minutes**	Sets the amount of transition time between the Sleep mode and the Deep Sleep mode.
Date & Time	**Time Zone Settings**		Click to display the **Time Zone Settings** dialog box. Select the geographic region and time zone, and then click **OK**.
	Time Zone		Displays the time zone selected on the **Time Zone Settings** dialog box.
	Set Date		Sets the date.
	Date Format		Sets the date format.
	Set Time		Sets the time. You can select **AM** or **PM** when **Time Format** is set to **12 Hour**.
	Time Format		Sets the time format in **24 Hour** or **12 Hour**.
mm / inch	**Millimeters(mm)**		Selects millimeter or inch as the default measurement unit.
	Inches(")		
Audio Tone	**Control Panel Tone**	Off	Does not emit a tone when the operator panel input is correct.
		Soft	Emits a tone at the specified volume when the operator panel input is correct.
		Normal	
		Loud	
	Invalid Key Tone	Off	Does not emit a tone when the operator panel input is incorrect.
		Soft	Emits a tone at the specified volume when the operator panel input is incorrect.
		Normal	
		Loud	
	Machine Ready Tone	Off	Does not emit a tone when the printer becomes ready.
		Soft	Emits a tone at the specified volume when the printer becomes ready.
		Normal	
		Loud	

	Copy Completed Tone	Off	Does not emit a tone when copying is complete.
		Soft	Emits a tone at the specified volume when copying is complete.
		Normal	
		Loud	
	Job Completed Tone	Off	Does not emit a tone when any other job except copying is complete.
		Soft	Emits a tone at the specified volume when any other job except copying is complete.
		Normal	
		Loud	
	Fault Tone	Off	Does not emit a tone when a job ends abnormally.
		Soft	Emits a tone at the specified volume when a job ends abnormally.
		Normal	
		Loud	
	Alert Tone	Off	Does not emit a tone when a problem occurs.
		Soft	Emits a tone at the specified volume when a problem occurs.
		Normal	
		Loud	
	Out of Paper Alert Tone	Off	Does not emit a tone when the printer runs out of paper.
		Soft	Emits a tone at the specified volume when the printer runs out of paper.
		Normal	
		Loud	
	Low Toner Alert Tone	Off	Does not emit a tone when the toner is low.
		Soft	Emits a tone at the specified volume when the toner is low.
		Normal	
		Loud	
	Auto Clear Alert Tone	Off	Does not emit a tone before the printer performs auto clear.
		Soft	Emits a tone at the specified volume 5 seconds before the printer performs auto clear.
		Normal	
		Loud	
	NFC Authentication Tone	Off	Does not emit a tone when an NFC card is placed on the NFC reader for authentication.
		Soft	Emits a tone at the specified volume when the NFC Authentication card input is correct or incorrect.
		Normal	
		Loud	
Low Toner Alert Message	On		Shows the alert message when the toner is low.
	Off		Does not show the alert message when the toner is low.
OffHook Wake Up	On		Wake up from Sleep or Deep Sleep mode when you pick up the handset of the external telephone.
	Off		Does not wake up from Sleep or Deep Sleep mode when you pick up the handset of the external telephone.

Auto Log Print	On	Automatically prints a job history report after every 20 jobs.
	Off	Does not automatically print a job history report after every 20 jobs.
RAM Disk	Off	Does not allocate RAM for the disk file system. Secure Print, Private Mail Box Print, Public Mail Box Print, and Proof Print jobs will abort and be recorded to the job log.
	Available Range: 50–300MBytes	Allocates RAM for the disk file system automatically. (in 50 MB increments)
Fax Server Address Book	On	Enables the server address book for fax numbers.
	Off	Disables the server address book for fax numbers.
E-mail Server Address Book	On	Enables the server address book for e-mail addresses.
	Off	Disables the server address book for e-mail addresses.
Apply New Settings		After you change the settings, click this button to apply the changes.
Restart printer to apply new settings		Click this button to apply the changes.

*1 When you specify 1 minute for **Sleep**, the printer enters power saver mode 1 minute after it finishes a job. This uses much less energy, but requires more warm-up time for the printer. Specify 1 minute if your printer shares an electrical circuit with room lighting and you notice lights flickering.
Select a high value if your printer is in constant use. Under most circumstances, this keeps the printer ready to operate with minimum warm-up time.
Select a value between 1 and 30 minutes for the power saver mode if you want a balance between energy consumption and a shorter warm-up period.
The printer automatically returns to the standby mode from the power saver mode when it receives data from the computer. You can also return the printer to the standby mode by pressing the ☾ **(Power Saver)** button on the operator panel.

System Settings - Timers

Purpose:

To configure the auto clear time and time-out time.

Values:

Auto Reset	45 seconds	Sets the amount of time before the printer automatically resets the settings on the operator panel to the defaults when no additional settings are made.
	1 minute	
	2 minutes	
	3 minutes	
	4 minutes	
Fault Time-out	0	Sets the amount of time the printer waits before canceling a job when the job stops abnormally.
	Available Range: 3–300 seconds	
Job Time-out	0	Sets the amount of time the printer waits for additional data from the computer before it cancels the job.
	Available Range: 5–300 seconds	
Apply New Settings		After you change the settings, click this button to apply the changes.
Restart printer to apply new settings		Click this button to apply the changes.

System Settings - Output Settings

Purpose:

To configure the setting of the print ID, substitute tray, and other settings.

Values:

Default Paper Size	A4 (210x297mm)	Sets the default paper size.
	Letter (8.5x11")	
Print ID	Off	Does not print the user ID.
	Top Left	Prints the user ID on the specified location.
	Top Right	
	Bottom Left	
	Bottom Right	
Print Text	On	Prints the received PDL data as text data.
	Off	Does not print the received PDL data as text data.
Banner Sheet Insert Position	Off	Does not insert the banner sheet.
	Front	Sets where to insert the banner sheet.
	Back	
	Front & Back	
Banner Sheet Specify Tray	MPF	Sets the tray for the banner sheet.
	Tray 1	
	Tray 2[*1]	
Substitute Tray	Off	No tray size substitute accepted.
	Larger Size	Substitutes paper of next largest size. When there is no larger paper size, the printer substitutes paper of nearest size.
	Nearest Size	Substitutes paper of nearest size.
	Use MPF	Substitutes paper from the MPF.
Letterhead 2 Sided	Disable	Does not print on both sides of a sheet of letterhead paper.
	Enable	Prints on both sides of a sheet of letterhead paper.
Enable A4<>Letter Switch	On	Prints A4 size jobs on Letter size paper if A4 is not available in the paper trays and vice versa (Letter size job on A4 size paper).
	Off	Does not print A4 size jobs on Letter size paper or Letter size jobs on A4 paper.
Report 2 Sided Print	1 Sided	Prints reports on one side of a sheet of paper.
	2 Sided	Prints reports on both sides of a sheet of paper.
Use Another Tray	On	Sets to show a message to select another tray when the specified paper is not available in the paper tray.
	Off	Does not print on other paper sizes in other paper trays if the paper size specified in the job is not available.
Apply New Settings		After you change the settings, click this button to apply the changes.
Restart printer to apply new settings		Click this button to apply the changes.

[*1] This item is available only when the optional 550-sheet feeder is installed.

Service Tools

⚠️ **CAUTION: Using a non-Dell™ toner cartridge may severely damage your printer. The warranty does not cover damages caused by using non-Dell toner cartridges.**

Purpose:

To configure the paper density, the color registration adjustments, the initialization of the printer, and other settings.

Values:

Paper Density	Plain	Light		Sets plain paper density.
		Normal		
	Label	Light		Sets label paper density.
		Normal		
Color Registration Adjustments	Auto Correct			Click **Start** to perform color registration automatically.
	Print Color Regi Chart			Click **Start** to print a color registration chart.
	Registration Adjustments	LY(Left Yellow)	Available Range: -9 to +9	Sets lateral (perpendicular to paper feed direction) and process (paper feed direction) color adjustment values that are found in the color registration chart individually for Yellow, Magenta, and Cyan.
		LM(Left Magenta)	Available Range: -9 to +9	
		LC(Left Cyan)	Available Range: -9 to +9	
		RY(Right Yellow)	Available Range: -9 to +9	
		RM(Right Magenta)	Available Range: -9 to +9	
		RC(Right Cyan)	Available Range: -9 to +9	
		PY(Process Yellow)	Available Range: -9 to +9	
		PM(Process Magenta)	Available Range: -9 to +9	
		PC(Process Cyan)	Available Range: -9 to +9	
Reset Defaults	User Fax Section			Initializes the fax number entries in the Address Book.
	User Scan Section			Initializes the e-mail and server address entries in the Address Book.
	System Section			Initializes the system parameters.
Initialize Print Meter				Click **Initialize Print Meter** to initialize the Print Meter.
Non-Dell Toner	On			Enables the use of another manufacturer's toner cartridge.
	Off			Disables the use of another manufacturer's toner cartridge.

Adjust Altitude	0 meter		Sets the altitude of the location where the printer is installed.
	1000 meters		
	2000 meters		
	3000 meters		
Apply New Settings			After you change the settings, click this button to apply the changes.
Restart printer to apply new settings			Click this button to apply the changes.

Tray Management

Purpose:

To specify the paper types and sizes, and the tray priority for the MPF, tray1, and the optional 550-sheet feeder respectively.

Values:

Tray Settings	MPF Display Tray Prompt	On	Displays a popup message that prompts the user to set Paper Type and Paper Size when the paper is loaded in the MPF.
		Off	
	MPF Use Driver Settings for Print Job	On	Sets whether to use the printer driver settings for the size and type of paper loaded in the MPF.
		Off	
	MPF Paper Size[*1]	A4 (210x297mm)	Sets the size of paper loaded in the MPF.
		A5 (148x210mm)	
		B5 (182x257mm)	
		Letter (8.5x11")	
		Folio (8.5x13")	
		Legal (8.5x14")	
		Executive (7.3x10.5")	
		Envelope #10 (4.1x9.5")	
		Monarch Env. (3.9x7.5")	
		DL Env. (110x220mm)	
		C5 Env. (162x229mm)	
		Custom Size	
	MPF Custom Size - Y[*1]	Available Range: 127–355 mm (5.0–14.0 inches)	Sets the length of custom size paper loaded in the MPF.
	MPF Custom Size - X[*1]	Available Range: 77–215 mm (3.0–8.5 inches)	Sets the width of custom size paper loaded in the MPF.
	MPF Paper Type[*1]	Plain	Sets the type of paper loaded in the MPF.
		Plain Thick	
		Covers(106–163g/m^2)	
		Covers Thick(164–216g/m^2)	
		Coated(106–163g/m^2)	
		Coated Thick(164–216g/m^2)	
		Label	
		Envelope	

	Recycled	
	Letterhead	
	Preprinted	
	Prepunched	
	Color	
	Plain - Side 2	
	Color - Side 2	
	Plain Thick - Side 2	
	Recycled - Side 2	
Tray 1 Display Tray Prompt	On	Displays a popup message that prompts the user to set Paper Type and Paper Size when the paper is loaded in tray1.
	Off	
Tray 1 Paper Size	A4 (210x297mm)	Sets the size of paper loaded in tray1.
	A5 (148x210mm)	
	B5 (182x257mm)	
	Letter (8.5x11")	
	Folio (8.5x13")	
	Legal (8.5x14")	
	Executive (7.3x10.5")	
	Custom Size	
Tray 1 Custom Size - Y	Available Range: 210–355 mm (8.3–14.0 inches)	Sets the length of custom size paper loaded in tray1.
Tray 1 Custom Size - X	Available Range: 148–215 mm (5.8–8.5 inches)	Sets the width of custom size paper loaded in tray1.
Tray 1 Paper Type	Plain	Sets the type of paper loaded in tray1.
	Plain Thick	
	Covers(106–163g/m^2)	
	Covers Thick(164–216g/m^2)	
	Coated(106–163g/m^2)	
	Coated Thick(164–216g/m^2)	
	Recycled	
	Letterhead	
	Preprinted	
	Prepunched	
	Color	
	Plain - Side 2	
	Color - Side 2	
	Plain Thick - Side 2	
	Recycled - Side 2	
Tray 2 Display Tray Prompt [*2]	On	Displays a popup message that prompts the user to set Paper Type and Paper Size when the paper is loaded in the optional 550-sheet feeder.
	Off	

Tray 2 Paper Size[*2]	Auto Sensed	Sets the size of paper loaded in the optional 550-sheet feeder.
	Custom Size	
Tray 2 Custom Size - Y[*2]	Available Range: 210–355 mm (8.3–14.0 inches)	Sets the length of custom size paper loaded in the optional 550-sheet feeder.
Tray 2 Custom Size - X[*2]	Available Range: 148–215 mm (5.8–8.5 inches)	Sets the width of custom size paper loaded in the optional 550-sheet feeder.
Tray 2 Paper Type[*2]	Plain	Sets the type of paper loaded in the optional 550-sheet feeder.
	Plain Thick	
	Covers($106–163g/m^2$)	
	Covers Thick($164–216g/m^2$)	
	Coated($106–163g/m^2$)	
	Coated Thick($164–216g/m^2$)	
	Recycled	
	Letterhead	
	Preprinted	
	Prepunched	
	Color	
	Plain - Side 2	
	Color - Side 2	
	Plain Thick - Side 2	
	Recycled - Side 2	
Tray Priority	MPF->Tray1	Sets the priority order of the paper trays.
	Tray1->MPF	
	MPF->Tray1->Tray2[*2]	
	MPF->Tray2[*2]->Tray1	
	Tray1->MPF->Tray2[*2]	
	Tray1->Tray2[*2]->MPF	
	Tray2[*2] ->MPF->Tray1	
	Tray2[*2] ->Tray1->MPF	
Apply New Settings		After you change the settings, click this button to apply the changes.
Restart printer to apply new settings		Click this button to restart the printer and apply the changes.

[*1] This item is available only when **MPF Use Driver Settings for Print Job** is set to **Off**.
[*2] This item is available only when the optional 550-sheet feeder is installed.

> **NOTE:** For details about the paper density for paper types, see "Paper Type Specifications."

Panel Language

Purpose:

To determine the language of the text on the touch panel.

Values:

Panel Language	English	Sets the language to be used on the touch panel.
	French	
	Italian	
	German	
	Spanish	
	Danish	
	Dutch	
	Norwegian	
	Swedish	
Apply New Settings		After you change the settings, click this button to apply the changes.
Restart printer to apply new settings		Click this button to apply the changes.

TCP/IP Settings

📝 **NOTE:** TCP/IP Settings is not available when `IP Mode` of the printer is set to `IPv6 Mode`.

Purpose:

To configure TCP/IP settings.

Values:

IP Address Mode	AutoIP	Automatically sets the IP address.
		A random value in the range of 169.254.1.0 to 169.254.254.255 that is not currently in use on the network is set as the IP address. The subnet mask is set as 255.255.0.0.
	BOOTP	Sets the IP address using BOOTP.
	RARP	Sets the IP address using RARP.
	DHCP	Sets the IP address using DHCP.
	Panel	Manually sets the IP address.
IP Address		Manually sets the IP address allocated to the printer.
		It is allocated to the printer using the format nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn. Each octet that makes up nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn is a value in the range of 0 to 254. 127 and any value in the range of 224 to 254 cannot be specified for the first octet of a gateway address.
Subnet Mask		Manually sets the subnet mask.
		It is specified using the format nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn. Each octet that makes up nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn is a value in the range of 0 to 255. 255.255.255.255 cannot be specified as the subnet mask.
Gateway Address		Manually sets the gateway address.
		It is specified using the format nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn. Each octet that makes up nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn is a value in the range of 0 to 254. 127 and any value in the range of 224 to 254 cannot be specified for the first octet of a gateway address.
Apply New Settings		After you change the settings, click this button to apply the changes.

Restart printer to apply new settings	Click this button to restart the printer and apply the changes.

Network Settings

📝 **NOTE:** Network Settings is not available when the printer is connected using a USB cable.

Purpose:

To configure the setup of the printer using your web browser.

Values:

Print Server Settings[1]	**Display**	Click to display the Print Server Setup page on the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**.
Display of Dell Configuration Web Tool	**On**	Displays the server settings for the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**.
	Off	Does not display the server settings for the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**.
Apply New Settings		After you change the settings, click this button to apply the changes.
Restart printer to apply new settings		Click this button to restart the printer and apply the changes.

[1] This item is available only when **Display of Dell Configuration Web Tool** is set to **On**.

Copy Defaults

Purpose:

To create your own copy settings.

Values:

Output Color	Full Color	Prints in color mode.
	Black & White	Prints in black and white mode.
Select Tray	MPF	The paper is fed from the MPF.
	Tray 1	The paper is fed from tray1.
	Tray 2[1]	The paper is fed from the optional 550-sheet feeder.
Collation	Auto	Automatically sorts the copy job.
	Collated	Sorts the copy job.
	Uncollated	Does not sort the copy job.
Reduce / Enlarge mm series	100%	Does not enlarge or reduce the size of a copied image.
	50%	Sets the default reduction ratio.
	A4->A5 (70%)	
	B5->A5 (81%)	
	A5->B5 (122%)	Sets the default enlargement ratio.
	A5->A4 (141%)	
	200%	
	Custom	Sets the default enlargement / reduction ratio to a custom ratio.
inch series	100%	Does not enlarge or reduce the size of a copied image.
	50%	Sets the default reduction ratio.
	Ledger->Letter (64 %)	
	Legal->Letter (78 %)	

	Statement->Letter (129 %)		Sets the default enlargement ratio.
	Statement->Legal (154 %)		
	200%		
	Custom		Sets the default enlargement / reduction ratio to a custom ratio.
Custom Reduce / Enlarge	Available Range: 25–400%		Sets the custom enlargement / reduction ratio when you set **Reduce / Enlarge** to **Custom**.
Original Size	Auto		Sets the document size automatically.
	A4 (210x297mm)		Sets the document size.
	A5 (148x210mm)		
	B5 (182x257mm)		
	Letter (8.5x11")		
	Folio (8.5x13")		
	Legal (8.5x14")		
	Executive (7.3x10.5")		
Original Type	Photo & Text		Improves the image quality of documents with both text and photos.
	Text		Improves the image quality of documents with text.
	Photo		Improves the image quality of documents with photos.
Darken / Lighten	Darken +3		Makes the copy darker than the original. Works well with light documents or faint pencil markings.
	Darken +2		
	Darken +1		
	Normal		Works well with standard typed or printed documents.
	Lighten +1		Makes the copy lighter than the original. Works well with dark documents.
	Lighten +2		
	Lighten +3		
Sharpness	Sharpen		Makes the copy sharper than the original.
	Normal		Does not make the copy sharper or softer than the original.
	Soften		Makes the copy softer than the original.
Color Saturation	High		Increases the color saturation to brighten the color of the copy.
	Normal		The color saturation is the same as the original.
	Low		Decreases the color saturation to lighten the color of the copy.
Auto Exposure	Off		Does not suppress the background.
	On		Suppresses the background of the original to enhance text on the copy.
Auto Exposure Level	Normal		Sets the background suppression level to **Normal**.
	High		Sets the background suppression level to **High**.
	Highest		Sets the background suppression level to **Highest**.
Color Balance	Yellow Low Density	Available Range: -3 to +3	Sets the color balance level of low density yellow.

	Yellow Medium Density	Available Range: -3 to +3	Sets the color balance level of medium density yellow.
	Yellow High Density	Available Range: -3 to +3	Sets the color balance level of high density yellow.
	Magenta Low Density	Available Range: -3 to +3	Sets the color balance level of low density magenta.
	Magenta Medium Density	Available Range: -3 to +3	Sets the color balance level of medium density magenta.
	Magenta High Density	Available Range: -3 to +3	Sets the color balance level of high density magenta.
	Cyan Low Density	Available Range: -3 to +3	Sets the color balance level of low density cyan.
	Cyan Medium Density	Available Range: -3 to +3	Sets the color balance level of medium density cyan.
	Cyan High Density	Available Range: -3 to +3	Sets the color balance level of high density cyan.
	Black Low Density	Available Range: -3 to +3	Sets the color balance level of low density black.
	Black Medium Density	Available Range: -3 to +3	Sets the color balance level of medium density black.
	Black High Density	Available Range: -3 to +3	Sets the color balance level of high density black.
2 Sided Copying	1 -> 1 Sided		Prints on one side of a sheet of paper.
	1 -> 2 Sided		Prints one sided originals on both sides of a sheet of paper.
	2 -> 1 Sided		Prints two sided originals on one side of a sheet of paper.
	2 -> 2 Sided		Prints two sided originals on both sides of a sheet of paper.
	Binding of Output[*2]	Long Edge Binding	Prints on both sides of a sheet of paper to be bound by long edge.
		Short Edge Binding	Prints on both sides of a sheet of paper to be bound by short edge.
	Binding of Original[*3]	Long Edge Binding	Scans both sides of a document bound by long edge.
		Short Edge Binding	Scans both sides of a document bound by short edge.
2-Up	Off		Does not perform multiple-up printing.
	Auto		Automatically reduces the original pages to fit onto one sheet of paper.
	Manual		Prints the original pages onto one sheet of paper in the size specified in **Reduce / Enlarge**.
Margin Top / Bottom	Available Range: 0–50 mm (0.0–2.0 inches)		Sets the value of the top and bottom margins.
Margin Left / Right	Available Range: 0–50 mm (0.0–2.0 inches)		Sets the value of the left and right margins.
Margin Middle	Available Range: 0–50 mm (0.0–2.0 inches)		Sets the value of the middle margin.
Apply New Settings			After you change the settings, click this button to apply the changes.
Restart printer to apply new settings			Click this button to restart the printer and apply the changes.

*1 This item is available only when the optional 550-sheet feeder is installed.

*2 This item is available only when **2 Sided Copying** is set to **1 -> 2 Sided** in the **Copy Defaults** page.

*3 This item is available only when **2 Sided Copying** is set to **2 -> 1 Sided** or **2 -> 2 Sided** in the **Copy Defaults** page.

Scan Defaults

Purpose:

To create your own scan settings.

Values:

File Format	PDF		Saves the scanned image in **PDF**.
	Multi-Page TIFF		Saves the scanned image in **Multi-Page TIFF**.
	TIFF (1File per Page)		Saves the scanned image in **TIFF (1File per Page)**.
	JPEG (1File per Page)		Saves the scanned image in **JPEG (1File per Page)**.
Output Color	Color		Scans in color mode.
	Black & White		Scans in black and white mode.
	Gray Scale		Scans in grayscale.
Resolution	200 dpi		Scans an image at 200 dpi.
	300 dpi		Scans an image at 300 dpi.
	400 dpi		Scans an image at 400 dpi.
	600 dpi		Scans an image at 600 dpi.
Original Size	A4 (210x297mm)		Sets the document size.
	A5 (148x210mm)		
	B5 (182x257mm)		
	Letter (8.5x11")		
	Folio (8.5x13")		
	Legal (8.5x14")		
	Executive (7.3x10.5")		
2 Sided Scanning	1 Sided		Scans one side of a document.
	2 Sided		Scans both sides of a document.
	Binding of Original	Long Edge Binding	Scans both sides of a document bound by long edge.
		Short Edge Binding	Scans both sides of a document bound by short edge.
Darken / Lighten	Darken +3		Makes the scanned image darker than the original. Works well with light documents or faint pencil markings.
	Darken +2		
	Darken +1		
	Normal		Works well with standard typed or printed documents.
	Lighten +1		Makes the scanned image lighter than the original. Works well with dark documents.
	Lighten +2		
	Lighten +3		
Sharpness	Sharpen		Makes the scanned image sharper than the original.
	Normal		Does not make the scanned image sharper or softer than the original.
	Soften		Makes the scanned image softer than the original.

Contrast	High	Adjusts the amount of colors to make the contrast of colors darker than the original.
	Medium	Does not adjust the amount of colors to make the contrast of colors darker or lighter than the original.
	Low	Adjusts the amount of colors to make the contrast of colors lighter than the original.
Auto Exposure	On	Suppresses the background of the original to enhance text on the copy.
	Off	Does not suppress the background.
Auto Exposure Level	Normal	Sets the background suppression level to **Normal**.
	High	Sets the background suppression level to **High**.
	Highest	Sets the background suppression level to **Highest**.
Margin Top / Bottom	Available Range: 0–50 mm (0.0–2.0 inches)	Sets the value of the top and bottom margins.
Margin Left / Right	Available Range: 0–50 mm (0.0–2.0 inches)	Sets the value of the left and right margins.
Margin Middle	Available Range: 0–50 mm (0.0–2.0 inches)	Sets the value of the middle margin.
TIFF File Format	TIFF V6	Sets the TIFF file format to **TIFF V6**.
	TTN2	Sets the TIFF file format to **TTN2**.
Image Compression	High	Sets the image compression level to **High**.
	Normal	Sets the image compression level to **Normal**.
	Low	Sets the image compression level to **Low**.
Max E-mail Size	Available Range: 50–16384 KBytes	Sets the maximum size of e-mail that can be sent within the range of 50 KB to 16384 KB.
File Name	Auto	Sets the default file name.
	Add Prefix	Adds a prefix to the file name.
	Add Suffix	Adds a suffix to the file name.
	Text String	Sets the texts that are added when **Add Prefix** or **Add Suffix** are selected.
Create Folder	On	Creates a folder when saving a scanned image.
	Off	Does not create a folder when saving a scanned image.
Apply New Settings		After you change the settings, click this button to apply the changes.
Restart printer to apply new settings		Click this button to restart the printer and apply the changes.

Fax Defaults

Purpose:

To create your own fax settings.

Values:

Resolution	Standard	Improves the output quality of the original. For documents with normal sized characters.
	Fine	Improves the output quality of the original. For documents containing small characters or thin lines or documents printed using a dot-matrix printer.

	Super Fine		Improves the output quality of the original. For documents containing extremely fine detail. The super fine mode is enabled only if the remote machine also supports the **Super Fine** resolution.
	Photo		Improves the output quality of the original. For documents containing photographic images.
2 Sided Scanning	1 Sided		Scans one side of a document.
	2 Sided		Scans both sides of a document.
	Binding of Original	Long Edge Binding	Scans both sides of a document bound by long edge.
		Short Edge Binding	Scans both sides of a document bound by short edge.
Darken / Lighten	Darken +3		Makes the documents darker than the original. Works well with light documents or faint pencil markings.
	Darken +2		
	Darken +1		
	Normal		Works well with standard typed or printed documents.
	Lighten +1		Makes the documents lighter than the original. Works well with dark documents.
	Lighten +2		
	Lighten +3		
Delayed Send	00:00–23:59[*1]		Sets the fax transmission start time in 24-hour format when sending a fax at a specified time.
	01:00–12:59[*2]	AM	Sets the fax transmission start time in 12-hour format when sending a fax at a specified time.
		PM	
Apply New Settings			After you change the settings, click this button to apply the changes.
Restart printer to apply new settings			Click this button to restart the printer and apply the changes.

[*1] This item is available only when **Time Format** is set to **24 Hour** in the **System Settings - General** page.

[*2] This item is available only when **Time Format** is set to **12 Hour** in the **System Settings - General** page.

USB Direct Print Defaults

Purpose:

To create your own settings for USB Direct Print Defaults.

Values:

Output Color	Full Color		Prints in color mode.
	Black & White		Prints in black and white mode.
Select Tray	MPF		The paper is fed from the MPF.
	Tray 1		The paper is fed from tray1.
	Tray 2[*1]		The paper is fed from the optional 550-sheet feeder.
2 Sided Printing	1 Sided		Prints on one side of a sheet of paper.
	2 Sided		Prints on both sides of a sheet of paper.
	Binding of Output	Long Edge Binding	Prints on both sides of a sheet of paper to be bound by long edge.
		Short Edge Binding	Prints on both sides of a sheet of paper to be bound by short edge.
Layout	Off		Prints without scaling.
	1-Up		Prints one page on one side of a sheet of paper.
	2-Up		Prints two pages on one side of a sheet of paper.

	4-Up	Prints four pages on one side of a sheet of paper.
Collation	Collated	Sorts the print job.
	Uncollated	Does not sort the print job.
Image Types	Auto	Prints files in the **Text** mode and in the **Photos (Standard Quality)** mode.
	Photos(Standard Quality)	Prints the photographic images at the standard quality.
	Photos(High Quality)	Prints the photographic images at the high quality.
	Text	Prints the text document at the standard quality.
Apply New Settings		After you change the settings, click this button to apply the changes.
Restart printer to apply new settings		Click this button to restart the printer and apply the changes.

*1 This item is available only when the optional 550-sheet feeder is installed.

Fax Settings

Purpose:

To specify the fax settings.

Values:

Fax Number		Sets the fax number of the printer, which will be printed on the header of faxes.
Country		Selects the country where the printer is used.
Fax Header Name		Sets the sender's name to be printed on the header on faxes.
Line Type	PSTN	Sets the default line type to **PSTN**.
	PBX	Sets the default line type to **PBX**.
Line Monitor	Off	Turns off the volume of the line monitor, which audibly monitors a transmission through the internal speaker until a connection is made.
	Low	Sets the volume of the line monitor.
	Medium	
	High	
DRPD Pattern	Pattern1–7	Provides a separate number for faxing with a distinctive ring pattern.
Receive Mode	Telephone	Sets the default fax receiving mode to **Telephone**.
	Fax	Sets the default fax receiving mode to **Fax**.
	Telephone / Fax	Sets the default fax receiving mode to **Telephone / Fax**.
	Ans Machine / Fax	Sets the default fax receiving mode to **Ans Machine / Fax**.
	DRPD	Sets the default fax receiving mode to **DRPD**.
Ring Tone Volume	Off	Turns the volume of the ring tone, which indicates that an incoming call is a telephone call through the internal speaker when **Receive Mode** is set to **Telephone / Fax**.
	Low	Sets the volume of the ring tone.
	Medium	
	High	
Auto Receive Fax	Available Range: 0–255 seconds	Sets the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after receiving an incoming call in 0 to 255 seconds.

Auto Receive Tel/Fax	Available Range: 0–255 seconds	Sets the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after the external telephone receives an incoming call in 0 to 255 seconds.
Auto Receive Ans/Fax	Available Range: 0–255 seconds	Sets the interval at which the printer goes into the fax mode after the external answering machine receives an incoming call in 0 to 255 seconds.
Junk Fax Setup	On	Rejects faxes sent from unwanted numbers by accepting faxes only from the fax numbers registered in the Phone Book.
	Off	Does not reject faxes sent from unwanted numbers.
Sent Fax Forward	Off	Does not forward any of the incoming faxes to a specified destination.
	Forward	Forwards the incoming faxes to a specified destination.
	Print and Forward	Prints the incoming fax and forwards it to a specified destination.
	Print and E-mail	Prints incoming faxes and also forward them to a specified e-mail address.
Fax Forwarding Number		Sets the destination to which incoming faxes will be forwarded.
2 Sided Printing	On	Prints the received fax on both sides of a sheet of paper.
	Off	Does not print the received fax on both sides of a sheet of paper.
Remote Receive	On	Receives a fax by pressing a remote receive code on the external telephone after picking up the handset of the telephone.
	Off	Does not receive a fax by pressing a remote receive code on the external telephone after picking up the handset of the telephone.
Remote Receive Tone	Available Range: 00–99	Sets the tone to start Remote Receive.
Discard Size	Off	Prints any excess at the bottom of a fax page without discarding it.
	On	Discards any excess at the bottom of the page.
	Auto Reduction	Automatically reduces a fax page to fit it onto the appropriate sized paper.
Redial Attempts	Available Range: 0–13	Sets the number of redial attempts to make when the destination fax number is busy, within the range of 0 to 13.
Interval of Redial	Available Range: 1–15 minutes	Sets the interval between redial attempts within the range of 1 to 15 minutes.
Resend Delay	Available Range: 3–255 seconds	Sets the interval between transmission attempts within the range of 3 to 255 seconds.
Tone / Pulse	Tone	Sets the dialing type to **Tone**.
	Pulse (10PPS)	Sets the dialing type to **Pulse (10PPS)**.
	Pulse (20PPS)	Sets the dialing type to **Pulse (20PPS)**.
Prefix Dial	On	Sets a prefix dial number.
	Off	Does not set a prefix dial number.
Prefix Dial Number		Sets a prefix dial number of up to five digits. This number dials before any auto dial number is started.
Fax Cover Page	On	Attaches a cover page to faxes.
	Off	Does not attach a cover page to faxes.
Fax Header[*1]	On	Prints the information of the sender on the header of faxes.
	Off	Does not print the information of the sender on the header of faxes.

ECM	On	Enables the ECM (Error Correction Mode). To use the ECM, the remote machines must also support the ECM.
	Off	Disables the ECM.
Modem Speed	2.4 kbps	Allows you to adjust the fax modem speed when a fax transmission or reception error occurs.
	4.8 kbps	
	9.6 kbps	
	14.4 kbps	
	33.6 kbps	
Display Manual Fax Recipients	On	Displays the fax number when manually sending a fax.
	Off	Does not display the fax number when manually sending a fax.
Fax Activity	Auto Print	Automatically prints a fax activity report after every 50 incoming and outgoing fax communications.
	No Auto Print	Does not print a fax activity report automatically.
Fax Transmit	Print Always	Prints a transmission report after every fax transmission.
	Print On Error	Prints a transmission report only when an error occurs.
	Print Disable	Does not print a transmission report after a fax transmission.
Fax Broadcast	Print Always	Prints a transmission report after every fax transmission.
	Print On Error	Prints a transmission report only when an error occurs.
	Print Disable	Does not print a transmission report after a fax transmission to multiple destinations.
Fax Protocol	Print Always	Prints a protocol monitor report after every fax transmission.
	Print On Error	Prints the protocol monitor report only when an error occurs.
	Print Disable	Does not print the protocol monitor report.
Apply New Settings		After you change the settings, click this button to apply the changes.
Restart printer to apply new settings		Click this button to restart the printer and apply the changes.

[*1] This item is not available when **Country** is set to **United States**. The setting is fixed to **On** and cannot be changed.

Diagnosis

The **Diagnosis** tab includes the **Chart Print** and **Environment Sensor Info** pages.

Chart Print

Purpose:

To print various charts that can be used for diagnosis of the printer. The chart is printed to A4 or letter size paper.

Values:

Pitch Configuration Chart	Prints full halftone pages for yellow, magenta, cyan, and black. Also prints pages to check the pitch. A total of five pages are output.
Ghost Configuration Chart	Prints a chart to check for ghost printing. One page is printed.
4 Colors Configuration Chart	Bands of yellow, magenta, cyan, and black are printed with varying density. One page is printed.
Banding Detection Chart	Prints charts to check which color the banding occurred and the distance between each band.
MQ Chart	Prints charts to check for the banding in A4 or Letter.

Alignment Chart	Prints a chart to check for proper alignment of the print image on the paper. One page is printed.

Environment Sensor Info

Purpose:

To print the internal environment sensor information of the printer to **Result**.

Values:

Get Environment Sensor Info	Click this button to confirm the internal environment sensor information of the printer such as temperature and humidity.

Resetting Defaults

After executing this function and rebooting the printer, the phone book, address book, or menu parameters are reset to their default values.

The following menu parameters are exceptions and are not reset.

- Network settings
- Panel Lock settings and password
- Function Enabled settings (Copy, Scan to E-mail, Fax, Scan to Network, Scan to PC, PC Scan, Scan to USB, USB Direct Print) and passwords
- Secure Receive settings and password
- Login Error settings
- Set Available Time settings
- Secure Job Expiration settings
- USB Port settings
- ColorTrack Mode settings
- ColorTrack Error Report settings
- Non Registered User settings

When Using the Tool Box

1 Click **Start**→ **All Programs**→ **Dell Printers**→ **Dell C2665dnf Color Laser Multifunction Printer**→ **Tool Box**.

   📝 **NOTE:** For details about starting the Tool Box, see "Starting the Tool Box."

   The **Tool Box** opens.

2 Click the **Printer Maintenance** tab.

3 Select **Service Tools** from the list at the left side of the page.

   The **Service Tools** page appears.

4 Click **User Fax Section**, **User Scan Section**, or **System Section**.

   The printer restarts automatically to apply the settings.

16

Understanding the Printer Menus

When your printer is connected to a network and available to a number of users, the access to the `Admin Settings` can be limited. This prevents other users from using the operator panel to inadvertently change a user default that has been set by the administrator.

However, you can use your printer driver to override user defaults and select settings for individual print jobs.

Report / List

Use the `Report/List` menu to print various types of reports and lists.

System Settings

Purpose:

To print a list of the current user default values, the installed options, the amount of installed print memory, and the status of printer supplies.

Panel Settings

Purpose:

To print a detailed list of all the settings of the printer menus.

PCL Fonts List

Purpose:

To print a sample of the available PCL fonts.

See also:

"Understanding Fonts"

PCL Macros List

Purpose:

To print the information on the downloaded PCL macro.

PS Fonts List

Purpose:

To print a sample of the available PS fonts.

See also:

"Understanding Fonts"

PDF Fonts List

Purpose:

To print a sample of the available PDF fonts.

Job History

Purpose:

To print a detailed list of the print, copy, fax, or scan jobs that have been processed. This list contains the last 20 jobs.

Error History

Purpose:

To print a detailed list of paper jams and fatal errors.

Print Meter

Purpose:

To print the reports for the total number of pages printed.

Color Test Page

Purpose:

To print a page for testing colors.

Protocol Monitor

Purpose:

To print a detailed list of monitored protocols.

Speed Dial

Purpose:

To print the list of all members stored as speed dial numbers.

Address Book

Purpose:

To print the list of all addresses stored as **Address Book** information.

Server Address

Purpose:

To print the list of all members stored as **Server Address** information.

Fax Activity

Purpose:

To print the report of faxes you recently received or sent.

Fax Pending

Purpose:

To print the list of status of pending faxes.

Stored Documents

> ✎ **NOTE:** Stored Documents feature is available only when `RAM Disk` under `System Settings` is enabled.

Purpose:

To print a list of all files stored for Secure Print, Private Mail Box Print, Public Mail Box Print, and Proof Print in the RAM disk.

Printing a Report/List Using the Operator Panel

1 Press the ⓘ (**Information**) button.

2 Tap `Report/List`.

3 Tap ▼ until the desired report or list appears, and then select that report or list.

4 Tap `Print`.

The selected report or list is printed.

Printing a Report/List Using the Tool Box

1 Click **Start**→ **All Programs**→ **Dell Printers**→ **Dell C2665dnf Color Laser Multifunction Printer**→ **Tool Box**.

   ✎ **NOTE:** For details about starting the **Tool Box**, see "Starting the Tool Box."

   The **Tool Box** opens.

2 Ensure that the **Printer Setting Reports** tab is open.

3 Select **Reports** from the list at the left side of the page.

   The **Reports** page appears.

4 Click the button for the desired report or list.

   The report or list is printed

Connection Status

Use the `Connection Status` menu to disconnect the device connected via Wi-Fi Direct™.

✎ **NOTE:** The `Connection Status` menu is displayed only when the printer is connected via Wi-Fi Direct.

Disconnecting the device connected via Wi-Fi Direct

1 Press the ⓘ (**Information**) button.

2 Tap `Connection Status`.

3 Tap the device name to disconnect.

4 Tap `Disconnect Now` or `Disconnect and Reset Passphrase`.

5 Tap `Yes`.

   The selected device is successfully disconnected.

Admin Settings

Use the `Admin Settings` menu to configure a variety of printer features.

Phone Book

Use the `Phone Book` menu to configure the speed dial and group dial settings.

Individuals

Purpose:

To store up to 200 frequently dialed numbers in speed dial locations.

Groups

Purpose:

To create a group of fax destinations and register it under a two-digit dial code. Up to six group dial codes can be registered.

PCL

Use the `PCL` menu to change printer settings that only affect jobs using the PCL emulation printer language.

> 📝 **NOTE:** Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Paper Tray

Purpose:

To specify the default paper tray.

Values:

Auto*
MPF
Tray1
Tray2*1

> *1 This item is available only when the optional 550-sheet feeder is installed.

Paper Size

Purpose:

To specify the default paper size.

Values:

mm series

A4 (210x297mm)*1
A5 (148x210mm)
B5 (182x257mm)
Letter (8.5x11")
Folio (8.5x13")
Legal (8.5x14")
Executive (7.3x10.5")
Envelope #10 (4.1x9.5")

Monarch Env.
(3.9x7.5")
DL Env.
(110x220mm)
C5 Env.
(162x229mm)
Custom Paper Size

*1 Denotes country-specific factory default value.

inch series

Letter
(8.5x11")[*1]
Folio
(8.5x13")
Legal
(8.5x14")
A4
(210x297mm)
A5
(148x210mm)
B5
(182x257mm)
Executive
(7.3x10.5")
Envelope #10
(4.1x9.5")
Monarch Env.
(3.9x7.5")
DL Env.
(110x220mm)
C5 Env.
(162x229mm)
Custom Paper Size

*1 Denotes country-specific factory default value.

NOTE: Selecting a custom size for the paper size prompts you to enter a custom length and width.

Orientation

Purpose:

To specify how text and graphics are oriented on the page.

Values:

Portrait*	Prints text and graphics parallel to the short edge of the paper.
Landscape	Prints text and graphics parallel to the long edge of the paper.

2 Sided Print

Purpose:

To specify whether to print on both sides of a sheet of paper.

Values:

1 Sided*		Does not print on both sides of a sheet of paper.
2 Sided	**Flip on Long Edge***	Prints on both sides of a sheet of paper to be bound by long edge.
	Flip on Short Edge	Prints on both sides of a sheet of paper to be bound by short edge.

Font

Purpose:

To specify the default font from the fonts registered in the printer.

Values:

CG Times	LetterGothic	CourierPS
CG Times It	LetterGothic It	CourierPS Ob
CG Times Bd	LetterGothic Bd	CourierPS Bd
CG Times BdIt	Albertus Md	CourierPS BdOb
Univers Md	Albertus XBd	SymbolPS
Univers MdIt	Clarendon Cd	Palatino Roman
Univers Bd	Coronet	Palatino It
Univers BdIt	Marigold	Palatino Bd
Univers MdCd	Arial	Palatino BdIt
Univers MdCdIt	Arial It	ITCBookman Lt
Univers BdCd	Arial Bd	ITCBookman LtIt
Univers BdCdIt	Arial BdIt	ITCBookmanDm
AntiqueOlv	Times New	ITCBookmanDm It
AntiqueOlv It	Times New It	HelveticaNr
AntiqueOlv Bd	Times New Bd	HelveticaNr Ob
CG Omega	Times New BdIt	HelveticaNr Bd
CG Omega It	Symbol	HelveticaNrBdOb
CG Omega Bd	Wingdings	N C Schbk Roman
CG Omega BdIt	Line Printer	N C Schbk It
GaramondAntiqua	Times Roman	N C Schbk Bd
Garamond Krsv	Times It	N C Schbk BdIt

Garamond Hlb	Times Bd	ITC A G Go Bk
GaramondKrsvHlb	Times BdIt	ITC A G Go BkOb
Courier[*]	Helvetica	ITC A G Go Dm
Courier It	Helvetica Ob	ITC A G Go DmOb
Courier Bd	Helvetica Bd	ZapfC MdIt
Courier BdIt	Helvetica BdOb	ZapfDingbats

Symbol Set

Purpose:

To specify a symbol set for a specified font.

Values:

DESKTOP	ISO L5	PC-8 TK
DNGBTSMS	ISO L6	PI FONT
ISO-11	LEGAL	PS MATH
ISO-15	MATH-8	PS TEXT
ISO-17	MC TEXT	ROMAN-8[*]
ISO-21	MS PUB	SYMBOL
ISO-4	PC-1004	WIN 3.0
ISO-6	PC-775	WINBALT
ISO-60	PC-8	WINGDINGS
ISO-69	PC-850	WIN L1
ISO L1	PC-852	WIN L2
ISO L2	PC-8 DN	WIN L5

Font Size

Purpose:

To specify the font size for scalable typographic fonts.

Values:

12.00[*]	Sets the values in increments of 0.25.
Available Range: 4.00 – 50.00	

Font size refers to the height of the characters in the font. One point equals approximately 1/72 of an inch.

> **NOTE:** The `Font Size` menu is only displayed for typographic fonts.

See also:

"Pitch and Point Size"

Font Pitch

Purpose:

To specify the font pitch for scalable mono spaced fonts.

Values:

10.00*	Sets the value in increments of 0.01.
Available Range: 6.00–24.00	

Font pitch refers to the number of fixed-space characters in a horizontal inch of type. For non-scalable mono spaced fonts, the pitch is displayed, but cannot be changed.

> **NOTE:** The `Font Pitch` menu is only displayed for fixed or mono spaced fonts.

See also:

"Pitch and Point Size"

Form Line

Purpose:

To set the number of lines in a page.

Values:

mm series

64 mm[*1]	Sets the value in increments of 1 mm.
Available Range: 5–128 mm	

   [*1] Denotes country-specific factory default values.

inch series

60 inches[*1]	Sets the value in increments of 1 inch.
Available Range: 5–128 inches	

   [*1] Denotes country-specific factory default values.

The printer sets the amount of space between each line (vertical line spacing) based on the `Form Line` and `Orientation` menu items. Select the correct `Form Line` and `Orientation` before changing `Form Line`.

See also:

"Orientation"

Quantity

Purpose:

To set the default print quantity. (Set the number of copies required for a specific job from the printer driver. Values selected from the printer driver always override values selected from the operator panel.)

Values:

1*	Sets the value in increments of 1.
Available Range: 1–999	

Image Enhance

Purpose:

To specify whether to enable the Image Enhance feature, which makes the boundary line between black and white smoother to decrease jagged edges and enhance the visual appearance.

Values:

Off	Disables the Image Enhance feature.
On[*]	Enables the Image Enhance feature.

Hex Dump

Purpose:

To help isolate the source of a print job problem. With Hex Dump selected, all data sent to the printer is printed in hexadecimal and character representation. Control codes are not executed.

Values:

Disable[*]	Disables the Hex Dump feature.
Enable	Enables the Hex Dump feature.

Draft Mode

Purpose:

To save toner by printing in the draft mode. The print quality is reduced when printing in the draft mode.

Values:

Disable[*]	Does not print in the draft mode.
Enable	Prints in the draft mode.

LineTermination

Purpose:

To add the line termination commands.

Values:

Off[*]	The line termination command is not added.
	CR=CR, LF=LF, FF=FF
Add-LF	The LF command is added.
	CR=CR-LF, LF=LF, FF=FF
Add-CR	The CR command is added.
	CR=CR, LF=CR-LF, FF=CR-FF
CR-XX	The CR and LF commands are added.
	CR=CR-LF, LF=CR-LF, FF=CR-FF

Default Color

Purpose:

To specify the color mode to `Color` or `Black`. This setting is used for a print job that does not specify a print mode.

Values:

Black*	Prints in the black and white mode.
Color	Prints in the color mode.

Ignore Form Feed

Purpose:

To specify whether to ignore blank pages that only contain Form Feed control codes.

Values:

Off*	Disables the Ignore Form Feed feature.
On	Enables the Ignore Form Feed feature.

PS

Use the `PS` menu to change printer settings that only affect jobs using the PostScript Level3 Compatible emulation printer language.

NOTE: Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

PS Error Report

Purpose:

To specify whether the contents of the errors concerning PostScript Level3 Compatible page description language are printed.

The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on again.

Values:

Off	Discards the print job without printing an error message.
On*	Prints an error message before it discards the job.

NOTE: Instructions from the PS driver override the settings specified on the operator panel.

PS Job Time-out

Purpose:

To specify the execution time for one PostScript Level3 Compatible job. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on again.

Values:

Off*		Job time-out does not occur.
On	1 minute*	An error concerning the PostScript Level3 Compatible page description language occurs if processing is not completed after the specified time.
	Available Range: 1-900 minutes	

Paper Select Mode

Purpose:

To specify the way to select the tray for PostScript Level3 Compatible mode. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on again.

Values:

Auto*	The tray is selected as the same setting as in the PCL mode.
Select From Tray	The tray is selected in a method compatible with regular PostScript Level3 Compatible printers.

Default Color

Purpose:

To specify the color mode to `Color` or `Black`. This setting is used for a print job which does not specify a print mode.

Values:

Color*	Prints in the color mode.
Black	Prints in the black and white mode.

PDF

Use the `PDF` menu to change printer settings that only affect the PDF jobs.

📝 **NOTE:** Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Quantity

Purpose:

To specify the number of copies to print.

Values:

1*	Sets the value in increments of 1.
Available Range: 1–999	

2 Sided Print

Purpose:

To specify whether to print on both sides of a sheet of paper.

Values:

1 Sided*		Does not print on both sides of a sheet of paper.
2 Sided	Flip on Long Edge*	Prints on both sides of a sheet of paper to be bound by long edge.
	Flip on Short Edge	Prints on both sides of a sheet of paper to be bound by short edge.

Print Mode

Purpose:

To specify the print mode.

Values:

Normal[*]	For documents with normal sized characters.
High Quality	For documents with small characters or thin lines, or documents printed using a dot-matrix printer.
High Speed	Prints with the higher speed than the Normal mode, but the quality is less.

PDF Password

Purpose:

To specify the password to print a PDF file secured with a document open password (password to open the PDF file).

Values:

Enter PDF Password	Enter the document open password to print the secure PDF.

Collation

Purpose:

To specify whether to sort the job.

Values:

Collated	Sorts the job.
Uncollated[*]	Does not sort the job.

Output Size

Purpose:

To specify the output paper size for PDF.

Values:

A4[*1]
Letter[*1]
Auto

    [*1] The default paper size is displayed.

Layout

Purpose:

To specify the output layout.

Values:

Auto %*
100% (No Zoom)
Booklet
2 Pages Up
4 Pages Up

Default Color

Purpose:

To specify the default output color.

Values:

Color (Auto)*
Black

Network

Use the `Network` menu to change the printer settings affecting jobs sent to the printer through the wired or wireless network.

> **NOTE:** Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Ethernet/Wireless

> **NOTE:** When using a wired network, `Ethernet` is displayed. When the optional wireless adapter is attached and the Ethernet cable is disconnected, `Wireless` is displayed.

Purpose:

To confirm or specify network settings.

Values:

Wireless Status

> **NOTE:** Wireless Status feature is available only when the printer is connected using the wireless network.

Purpose:

To confirm the wireless communication status.

Values:

Status	Good
	Acceptable
	Low
	No Reception
SSID	Displays the name that identifies the wireless network.
Encryption Type	Displays the encryption type.

Wireless Setup Wizard

NOTE: Wireless Setup Wizard is available only when the printer is connected using the wireless network.

Purpose:

To configure the wireless network interface.

Values:

Select access point			Select the access point from the list.
	WEP Key		When you select an access point using WEP as the encryption type, enter the WEP key.
	PassPhrase		When you select an access point using WPA, WPA2, or Mixed as the encryption type, enter the pass phrase.
Manual SSID Setup	Enter SSID		Specifies a name to identify the wireless network. Up to 32 alphanumeric characters can be entered.
	Infrastructure		Select when you configure the wireless setting through the access point such as a wireless router.
		No Security	Specifies No Security to configure the wireless setting without specifying an encryption type from WEP, WPA-PSK-TKIP, and WPA-PSK-AES.
		Mixed mode PSK*	Select to configure the wireless setting with the encryption type of Mixed mode PSK. Mixed mode PSK automatically selects the encryption type from either WPA-PSK-TKIP, WPA-PSK-AES, or WPA2-PSK-AES.
		Pass Phrase	Specifies the passphrase of alphanumeric characters from 8 to 63.
		WPA-PSK-TKIP	Select to configure the wireless setting with the encryption type of WPA-PSK-TKIP.
		Pass Phrase	Specifies the passphrase of alphanumeric characters from 8 to 63.
		WPA2-PSK-AES	Select to configure the wireless setting with the encryption type of WPA2-PSK-AES.
		Pass Phrase	Specifies the passphrase of alphanumeric characters from 8 to 63. (hex: 0-9, a-f, A-F, 16 to 64 characters)
		WEP	Specifies the WEP key to use through the wireless network. For 64bit keys, up to 10 hexadecimal characters can be entered. For 128bit keys, up to 26 hexadecimal characters can be entered.
		Transmit Key	Specifies the transmit key from **Auto***, **WEP Key 1**, **WEP Key 2**, **WEP Key 3**, and **WEP Key 4**.
	Ad-hoc		Select to configure the wireless setting without the access point such as a wireless router.
		No Security*	Select to configure the wireless setting without specifying the encryption type from WEP.
		WEP	Specifies the WEP key to use through the wireless network. For 64bit keys, up to 10 hexadecimal characters can be entered. For 128bit keys, up to 26 hexadecimal characters can be entered.

Transmit Key		Specifies the transmit key from **WEP Key 1**[*], **WEP Key 2**, **WEP Key 3**, and **WEP Key 4**.

WPS Setup

📝 **NOTE:** WPS Setup is available only when the printer is connected using the wireless network.

Purpose:

To configure the wireless network using WPS.

Values:

Push Button Control[*]	**Start Configuration**	Configures the wireless setting with WPS-PBC.
PIN Code	**Start Configuration**	Configures the wireless setting using the PIN code assigned automatically by the printer.
	Print PIN Code	Prints the PIN code. Confirm it when entering PIN assigned to the printer into your computer.

IP Mode

Purpose:

To configure the IP mode.

Values:

Dual Stack[*]	Uses both IPv4 and IPv6 to set the IP address.
IPv4 Mode	Uses IPv4 to set the IP address.
IPv6 Mode	Uses IPv6 to set the IP address.

TCP/IP

Purpose:

To configure TCP/IP settings.

Values:

Get IP Address	**AutoIP**[*]	Sets the IP address automatically. A random value in the range of 169.254.1.0 to 169.254.254.255 that is not currently in use on the network is set as the IP address. The subnet mask is set as 255.255.0.0.
	BOOTP	Sets the IP address using BOOTP.
	RARP	Sets the IP address using RARP.
	DHCP	Sets the IP address using DHCP.
	Panel	Use this option when you want to set the IP address manually on the operator panel.
IP Address		When an IP address is being set manually, the IP is allocated to the printer using the format nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn. Each octet that makes up nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn is a value in the range of 0 to 254. 127 and any value in the range of 224 to 254 cannot be specified for the first octet of a gateway address.
Subnet Mask		When an IP address is being set manually, the subnet mask is specified using the format nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn. Each octet that makes up nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn is a value in the range of 0 to 255.255.255.255.255 cannot be specified as the subnet mask.

Gateway Address	When an IP address is being set manually, the gateway address is specified using the format nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn. Each octet that makes up nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn is a value in the range of 0 to 254. 127 and any value in the range of 224 to 254 cannot be specified for the first octet of a gateway address.

IPsec

> **NOTE:** IPsec feature is available only when **IPsec** is enabled on the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**.

Purpose:

Disables IPsec.

Reset Wireless

> **NOTE:** Reset Wireless feature is available only when the printer is connected using the wireless network.

Purpose:

To initialize wireless network settings. After executing this function and rebooting the printer, all wireless network settings are reset to their default values.

Connection Speed

> **NOTE:** Connection Speed feature is available only when the printer is connected using the wired network.

Purpose:

To specify the communication speed and the duplex settings of Ethernet. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on again.

Values:

Auto*	Detects the Ethernet settings automatically.
10BASE-T Half	Uses 10BASE-T Half-duplex.
10BASE-T Full	Uses 10BASE-T Full-duplex.
100BASE-TX Half	Uses 100BASE-TX Half-duplex.
100BASE-TX Full	Uses 100BASE-TX Full-duplex.
1000BASE-T Full	Uses 1000BASE-T Full-duplex.

Wi-Fi Direct

> **NOTE:** When the optional wireless adapter is attached and the Ethernet cable is disconnected, `Wi-Fi Direct` is displayed.

Purpose:

To configure the Wi-Fi Direct network settings.

Values:

Wi-Fi Direct	Disable*	Disables the Wi-Fi Direct network.
	Enable	Enables the Wi-Fi Direct network.
Group Role	Auto	Automatically resolves the group role for Wi-Fi Direct.
	Group Owner*	Sets the printer as the Group Owner when using Wi-Fi Direct. Setting the printer to become the group owner makes it possible for devices to discover this printer. The SSID of the printer will be then displayed in the list of wireless networks on your Wi-Fi mobile device.

Device Name			Specifies the printer name that identifies the Wi-Fi Direct network with up to 32 alphanumeric characters. Confirm it when selecting the printer name on your Wi-Fi certified device.
Connection Status			Displays the status of the Wi-Fi Direct connection between the printer and your Wi-Fi mobile device.
	Disconnect now		Disconnects the Wi-Fi Direct connection.
	Disconnect and Reset Passphrase		Disconnects the Wi-Fi Direct connection and resets the passphrase.
SSID			Displays the name that identifies the Wi-Fi Direct network. You can also specify the name with up to 32 alphanumeric characters ("DIRECT-XX" cannot be changed). Confirm it when selecting the Wi-Fi Direct network name on your Wi-Fi mobile device.
Passphrase			Displays the pass phrase. Confirm it when entering the pass phrase into your Wi-Fi mobile device.
	Print Passphrase		Prints the pass phrase. Confirm it when entering the pass phrase into your Wi-Fi mobile device.
	Reset Passphrase		Resets the pass phrase.
WPS Setup			Configures the Wi-Fi Direct network using WPS.
	Push Button Configuration*		Configures the Wi-Fi Direct network with WPS-PBC.
	PIN Code		Configures the Wi-Fi Direct network using PIN code assigned automatically by the printer.
		Print PIN Code	Prints the PIN code. Confirm it when entering PIN assigned to the printer into your Wi-Fi mobile device.
		Reset Code	Resets the PIN code.

Protocols

Purpose:

To enable or disable each protocol. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on again.

Values:

LPD	Disable	Disables the LPD port.
	Enable*	Enables the Line Printer Daemon (LPD) port.
Port9100	Disable	Disables the Port9100 port.
	Enable*	Enables the Port9100 port.
FTP	Disable	Disables FTP port.
	Enable*	Enables FTP port.
IPP	Disable	Disables IPP port.
	Enable*	Enables IPP port.
SMB TCP/IP	Disable	Disables SMB TCP/IP port.
	Enable*	Enables SMB TCP/IP port.
WSD Print	Disable	Disables Web Services on Devices (WSD) print.
	Enable*	Enables WSD print.
WSD Scan	Disable	Disables WSD scan.
	Enable*	Enables WSD scan.

Network TWAIN	Disable	Disables Network TWAIN.
	Enable*	Enables Network TWAIN.
SNMP UDP	Disable	Disables the SNMP UDP port.
	Enable*	Enables the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) UDP port.
E-mail Alert	Disable	Disables the E-mail Alert feature.
	Enable*	Enables the E-mail Alert feature.
Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool	Disable	Disables an access to **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** embedded in the printer.
	Enable*	Enables an access to **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** embedded in the printer.
Bonjour(mDNS)	Disable	Disables Bonjour (mDNS).
	Enable*	Enables Bonjour (mDNS).
Telnet	Disable	Disables Telnet.
	Enable*	Enables Telnet.
Update Address Book	Disable	Disables Update Address Book.
	Enable*	Enables Update Address Book.
HTTP-SSL/TLS	Disable*	Disables HTTP-SSL/TLS.
	Enable	Enables HTTP-SSL/TLS.
Google Cloud Print	Disable*	Disables Google Cloud Print.
	Enable	Enables Google Cloud Print.
Print from Dell Document Hub	Disable	Disables **Print from Dell Document Hub**.
	Enable*	Enables **Print from Dell Document Hub**.
Scan to Dell Document Hub	Disable	Disables **Scan to Dell Document Hub**.
	Enable*	Enables **Scan to Dell Document Hub**.

Advanced Settings

Purpose:

To specify advanced network settings.

IP Filter

📝 **NOTE:** IP Filter feature is available only for LPD or Port9100.

Purpose:

To block data received from certain IP addresses through the wired or wireless network. You can set up to five IP addresses. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on again.

Values:

n (n is 1-5)	IP Address		Sets the IP address for Filter n.
	Subnet Mask		Sets the address mask for Filter n.
	Mode	Off*	Disables the IP Filter feature for Filter n.
		Accept	Accepts an access from the specified IP address.
		Reject	Rejects an access from the specified IP address.

IEEE 802.1x

NOTE: IEEE 802.1x feature is available only when the printer is connected using Ethernet cable and it is available only when the IEEE 802.1x authentication is enabled.

Purpose:

To disable IEEE 802.1x authentication. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on again.

PS Data Format

Purpose:

To specify PostScript Level3 Compatible communication protocol for a parallel interface, you can configure the `PS Data Format` settings for the wired network. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on again.

Values:

Auto[*]	Used when auto-detecting the PostScript Level3 Compatible communication protocol.
Standard	Used when the communication protocol is in ASCII interface.
BCP	Used when the communication protocol is in binary format.
TBCP	Used when the communication protocol supports both ASCII and binary data to switch between them according to the specified control code.
Binary	Used when no special processing is required for data.

Reset LAN

Purpose:

To initialize wired network data stored in non-volatile memory (NVM). After executing this function and rebooting the printer, all wired network settings are reset to their default values.

Delete All Certificates

Purpose:

To delete all certificates of the printer. After executing this function and rebooting the printer, all certificates are deleted.

Fax Settings

Use the `Fax Settings` menu to configure the basic fax settings.

NOTE: Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Fax Line Settings

Purpose:

To configure basic settings for the fax line.

Fax Number

Purpose:

To set the fax number of the printer, which will be printed on the header of a fax message.

NOTE: Ensure to specify `Fax Number` before using `Junk Fax Setup`.

Country

Purpose:

To select the country where the printer is used.

Values:

Algeria	Hungary	Portugal
Australia	Iceland	Puerto Rico
Austria	Ireland	Romania
Belgium	Italy	Russia
Bulgaria	Jamaica	Saudi Arabia
Canada	Jordan	Singapore
Colombia	Latvia	Slovakia
Costa Rica	Liechtenstein	Slovenia
Cyprus	Lithuania	South Africa
Czech Republic	Luxembourg	Spain
Denmark	Malaysia	Sweden
Dominican Republic	Malta	Switzerland
Egypt	Mexico	Thailand
Estonia	Netherlands	Tunisia
Finland	New Zealand	Turkey
France	Nicaragua	U.A.E.
Germany	Norway	United Kingdom
Greece	Panama	United States
Guatemala	Poland	Unknown[*]

Fax Header Name

Purpose:

To set the sender name to be printed on the header on faxes.

Line Type

Purpose:

To select the default line type.

Values:

PSTN[*]	Uses PSTN.
PBX	Uses PBX.

Line Monitor

Purpose:

To set the volume of the line monitor, which audibly monitors a transmission through the internal speaker until a connection is made.

Values:

Off	Turns off the volume of the line monitor.
Low	Sets the volume of the line monitor to Low.
Medium[*]	Sets the volume of the line monitor to Medium.
High	Sets the volume of the line monitor to High.

DRPD Pattern

Purpose:

To provide a separate number for faxing with a distinctive ring pattern.

Values:

Pattern1–7	DRPD is a service provided by some telephone companies. DRPD Patterns are specified by your telephone company. The patterns provided with your printer are shown below:
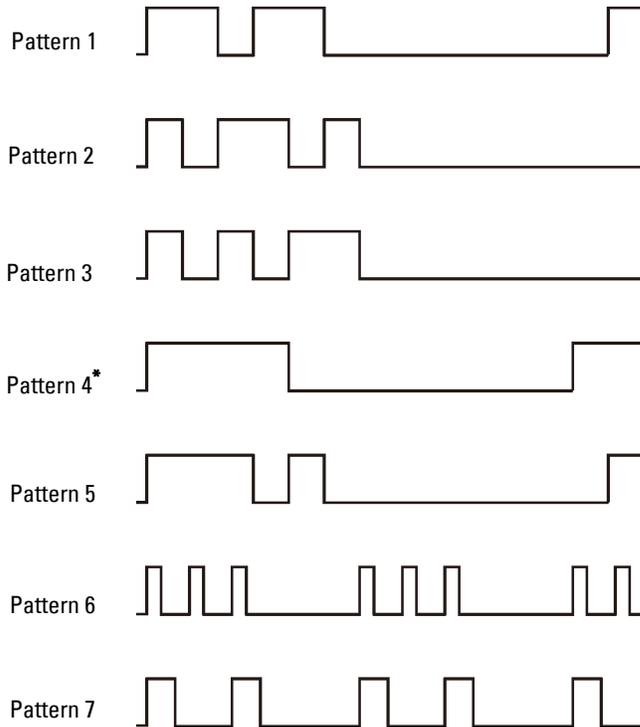
Ask your telephone company which pattern you need to select to use this service. For example, Pattern 7 is the New Zealand FaxAbility distinctive ringing pattern: rings for 400 ms, stops for 800 ms, rings for 400 ms and stops for 1400 ms. This pattern is repeated over and over again. This printer only responds to Distinctive Alert cadence(s) DA4 in New Zealand.

Incoming Defaults

Purpose:

To configure settings for incoming fax.

Receive Mode

Purpose:

To select the default fax receiving mode.

Values:

Telephone	Automatic fax reception is turned off. You can receive a fax by picking up the handset of the external telephone and then pressing the remote receive code, or by tapping `Manual Receive` in `On Hook` and then tapping `Receive`. For details about `Manual Receive`, see "Receiving a Fax Manually in the Telephone Mode."
Fax[*]	Automatically receives faxes.
Telephone / Fax	When the printer receives an incoming fax, the external telephone rings for the time specified in `Auto Receive Tel/Fax`, and then the printer automatically receives a fax. If an incoming call is not a fax, the printer beeps from the internal speaker indicating that the call is a telephone call.
Ans Machine/Fax	The printer can share a telephone line with an answering machine. In this mode, the printer will monitor the fax signal and pick up the line if there are fax tones. If the phone communication in your country is serial, this mode is not supported.
DRPD	Before using the Distinctive Ring Pattern Detection (DRPD) option, a distinctive ring service must be installed on your telephone line by the telephone company. After the telephone company has provided a separate number for faxing with a distinctive ring pattern, configure the fax setup to monitor for that specific ring pattern.

Ring Tone Volume

Purpose:

To set the volume of the ring tone, which indicates that an incoming call is a telephone call through the internal speaker when `Receive Mode` is set to `Telephone/Fax`.

Values:

Off	Turns off the volume of the ring tone.
Low	Sets the volume of the ring tone to Low.
Medium	Sets the volume of the ring tone to Medium.
High[*]	Sets the volume of the ring tone to High.

Auto Receive Setup

Purpose:

To configure settings for automatic fax reception.

Values:

Auto Receive Fax	0 seconds[*]	Sets the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after receiving an incoming call. The value is set in increments of 1 second.
	Available Range: 0-255 seconds	

Auto Receive Tel/Fax	6 seconds[*]	Sets the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after the external telephone receives an incoming call. The value is set in increments of 1 second.
	Available Range: 0-255 seconds	
Auto Receive Ans/Fax	21 seconds[*]	Sets the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after the external answering machine receives an incoming call. The value is set in increments of 1 second.
	Available Range: 0-255 seconds	

Junk Fax Setup

Purpose:

To reject unwanted faxes by accepting faxes only from the fax numbers registered in the Phone Book.

Values:

Off[*]	Does not reject faxes sent from unwanted numbers.
On	Rejects faxes sent from unwanted numbers.

Secure Receive

NOTE: Secure Receive feature is available only when `Panel Lock Control` is set to `Enable`.

Purpose:

To specify whether to require a password to receive faxes, and to set or change the password.

Values:

Secure Receive Set	Disable[*]	Does not require a password to receive faxes.
	Enable	Requires a password to receive faxes.
Change Password[*1]	0000–9999	Sets or changes the password required to receive faxes.

> [*1] This item is available only when `Secure Receive Set` is set to `Enable`.

Sent Fax Forward

NOTE: Print and E-mail feature is available only when `E-Mail Server` information and `Forwarding E-mail Address` are registered. For information on e-mail server settings, see "E-Mail Server" and on forwarding e-mail address information, see "Fax Settings."

Purpose:

To set whether to forward incoming faxes to a specified destination.

Values:

Off[*]		Does not forward incoming faxes.
Forward		Forwards incoming faxes to a specified destination. Prints incoming faxes if an error occurs during the transfer.
Print and Forward		Prints incoming faxes and also forwards them to a specified destination.
	Forwarding Number	Specifies the fax number of the destination to which incoming faxes will be forwarded.
Print and E-mail[*1, 2]		Prints incoming faxes and also forward them to a specified e-mail address.
Forward to Server		Forwards incoming faxes to a specified server address.

Print and Forward to Server	Prints incoming faxes and also forward them to a specified server address.

*1 This item is available only when the `E-Mail Server` information is registered.

*2 This item is available only when `Forwarding E-mail Address` is registered.

2 Sided Print

To set the duplex printing for fax.

Values:

Off[*]	Does not perform duplex printing.
On	Performs duplex printing.

Remote Receive

Purpose:

To receive a fax by pressing a remote receive code on the external telephone after picking up the handset of the telephone.

Values:

Off[*]		Does not receive a fax by pressing a remote receive code on the external telephone.
On		Receives a fax by pressing a remote receive code on the external telephone.
	Remote Receive Tone	Specifies the tone in two digits to start Remote Receive.

Discard Size

Purpose:

To set the printer to discard images or any text at the bottom of a fax page when the entire page does not fit the output paper.

Values:

Off[*]	Prints excess images or text at the bottom of a fax page without discarding it.
On	Discards any excess images or text.
Auto Reduction	Automatically reduces a fax page to fit it onto the appropriate paper size.

Transmission Defaults

Purpose:

To configure settings for transmitting fax.

Auto Redial Setup

Purpose:

To configure settings for automatic redial.

Values:

Redial Attempts	3[*]	Sets the number of redial attempts to make when the destination fax number is busy. If you enter 0, the printer will not redial. The value is set in increments of 1.
	Available Range: 0-13	
Interval of Redial	1 minute[*]	Sets the interval between redial attempts. The value is set in increments of 1 minute.
	Available Range: 1-15 minutes	
Resend Delay	8 seconds[*]	Sets the interval between re-send attempts. The value is set in increments of 1 second.
	Available Range: 3-255 seconds	

Tone / Pulse

Purpose:

To select the dialing type.

Values:

Tone[*]	Uses tone dialing.
Pulse(10PPS)	Sets "DP (10PPS)" (Dial Pulse, 10 Pulse Per Second) as the dial type.
Pulse(20PPS)	Sets "DP (20PPS)" (Dial Pulse, 20 Pulse Per Second) as the dial type.

Prefix Dial

Purpose:

To select whether to set a prefix dial number.

Values:

Off[*]		Does not set a prefix dial number.
On		Sets a prefix dial number.
	Prefix Dial Number	Sets a prefix dial number of up to five digits. This number dials before any auto dial number is started. It is useful for accessing the Private Automatic Branch Exchange (PABX).

Fax Cover Page

Purpose:

To set whether to attach a cover page to faxes.

Values:

Off[*]	Does not attach a cover page to faxes.
On	Attaches a cover page to faxes.

Fax Header

Purpose:

To print the information of the sender on the header of the faxes.

Values:

Off	Does not print the sender's information on the header of faxes.
On*	Prints the sender's information on the header of faxes.

> **NOTE:** If United States is selected for the setting of Country, this option does not appear on the menu. The setting is fixed to On and cannot be changed. For information on the country setting, see "Setting Your Country."

ECM

Purpose:

To set whether to enable or disable the Error Correction Mode (ECM). To use the ECM, the remote machines must also support the ECM.

Values:

Off	Disables the ECM.
On*	Enables the ECM.

Modem Speed

Purpose:

To adjust the fax modem speed when a fax transmission or reception error occurs.

Values:

2.4 Kbps
4.8 Kbps
9.6 Kbps
14.4 Kbps
33.6 Kbps*

Display Manual Fax Recipients

Purpose:

To set whether to display the fax number of the recipient on the **Sending Fax** screen when manually sending a fax.

Values:

Off	Does not display the fax number when manually sending a fax.
On*	Displays the fax number when manually sending a fax.

Fax Reports

Purpose:

To configure settings for fax reports.

Fax Activity

Purpose:

To set whether to automatically print a fax activity report after every 50 incoming and outgoing fax communications.

Values:

Auto Print[*]	Automatically prints a fax activity report after every 50 incoming and outgoing fax communications.
No Auto Print	Does not automatically print a fax activity report after every 50 incoming and outgoing fax communications.

Fax Transmit

Purpose:

To set whether to print a transmission result after a fax transmission.

Values:

Print Always	Prints a transmission report after every fax transmission.
Print On Error[*]	Prints a transmission report only when an error occurs.
Print Disable	Does not print a transmission report after a fax transmission.

Fax Broadcast

Purpose:

To set whether to print a transmission result after a fax transmission to multiple destinations.

Values:

Print Always[*]	Prints a transmission report after every fax transmission.
Print On Error	Prints a transmission report only when an error occurs.
Print Disable	Does not print a transmission report after a fax transmission to multiple destinations.

Fax Protocol

Purpose:

To set whether to print the protocol monitor report, which helps you identify the cause of a communication problem.

Values:

Print Always	Prints a protocol monitor report after every fax transmission.
Print On Error	Prints the protocol monitor report only when an error occurs.
Print Disable[*]	Does not print the protocol monitor report.

System Settings

Use System Settings to configure the power saving mode, warning tones, time-out duration, display language, and job log auto print settings.

NOTE: Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

General

Purpose:

To configure general settings for the printer.

Power Saver Timer

Purpose:

To specify the time for transition to power saver mode.

Values:

Sleep	10 minutes*	Specifies the time taken by the printer to enter Sleep mode after it finishes a job.
	Available Range: 1–30 minutes	
Deep Sleep	20 minutes*	Specifies the time taken by the printer to enter Deep Sleep mode after it has entered Sleep mode.
	Available Range: 1–30 minutes	

When you specify 1 minute for `Sleep`, the printer enters power saver mode 1 minute after it finishes a job. This uses much less energy, but requires more warm-up time for the printer. Specify 1 minute if your printer shares an electrical circuit with room lighting and you notice lights flickering.

Select a high value if your printer is in constant use. In most circumstances, this keeps the printer ready to operate with minimum warm-up time.

Select a value between 1 and 30 minutes for power saver mode if you want a balance between energy consumption and a shorter warm-up period.

The printer automatically returns to the standby mode from the power saver mode when it receives data from the computer or remote fax machine. You can also change the status of the printer to the standby mode by pressing any button on the operator panel.

Date & Time

Purpose:

To specify the date and time formats.

Values:

Time Zone			Sets the time zone.
Date			Sets the date depending on the `Format` settings.
	Format		Sets the date format.
Time			Sets the time.
	Format	12 Hour	Sets the time in 12-hour format.
		24 Hour	Sets the time in 24-hour format.

mm / inch

Purpose:

To specify the default measurement unit displayed after the numeric value on the operator panel.

Values:

Millimeters(mm)*	Selects millimeter as the default measurement unit.
Inches(")	Selects inch as the default measurement unit.

📝 **NOTE:** The default for `mm/inch` varies depending on other settings, such as `Country` and `Document Size`.

Display Brightness

Purpose:

To adjust the screen brightness of the touch panel.

Values:

5*	Sets the brightness in ten levels, with ten being the brightest.
Available Range: 1-10	

Audio Tone

Purpose:

To configure settings for tones emitted by the printer during operation or when a warning message appears.

Values:

Control Panel	Off*	Does not emit a tone when the operator panel input is correct.
	Soft	Emits a tone when the operator panel input is correct.
	Normal	
	Loud	
Invalid Key	Off*	Does not emit a tone when the operator panel input is incorrect.
	Soft	Emits a tone when the operator panel input is incorrect.
	Normal	
	Loud	
Machine Ready	Off	Does not emit a tone when the printer is ready to process a job.
	Soft	Emits a tone when the printer is ready to process a job.
	Normal*	
	Loud	
Copy Completed	Off	Does not emit a tone when a copy job is complete.
	Soft	Emits a tone when a copy job is complete.
	Normal*	
	Loud	
Job Completed	Off	Does not emit a tone when a job other than a copy job is complete.
	Soft	Emits a tone when a job other than a copy job is complete.
	Normal*	
	Loud	
Fault Tone	Off	Does not emit a tone when a job ends abnormally.
	Soft	Emits a tone when a job ends abnormally.
	Normal*	
	Loud	
Alert Tone	Off	Does not emit a tone when a problem occurs.
	Soft	Emits a tone when a problem occurs.
	Normal*	
	Loud	

Out of Paper	Off	Does not emit a tone when the printer runs out of paper.
	Soft	Emits a tone when the printer runs out of paper.
	Normal*	
	Loud	
Low Toner Alert	Off	Does not emit a tone when a toner is low.
	Soft	Emits a tone when a toner is low.
	Normal*	
	Loud	
Auto Clear Alert	Off*	Does not emit a tone 5 seconds before the printer performs auto clear.
	Soft	Emits a tone 5 seconds before the printer performs auto clear.
	Normal	
	Loud	
NFC Authentication Tone	Off	Does not emit a tone when an NFC card is placed on the NFC reader for authentication.
	Soft	Emits a tone when an NFC card is placed on the NFC reader for authentication.
	Normal*	
	Loud	
All Tones	Off	Disables all the alert tones.
	Soft	Sets the volume of all the alert tones at once.
	Normal*	
	Loud	

Low Toner Alert Message

Purpose:

To specify whether to show the alert message when the toner is low.

Values:

Off	Does not show the alert message when the toner is low.
On*	Shows the alert message when the toner is low.

OffHook Wake Up

Purpose:

To specify whether to wake up from Sleep or Deep Sleep mode when you pick up the handset of the external telephone.

Values:

Off*	Does not wake up from Sleep or Deep Sleep mode when you pick up the handset of the external telephone.
On	Wakes up from Sleep or Deep Sleep mode when you pick up the handset of the external telephone.

Auto Log Print

Purpose:

To automatically print a job history report after every 20 jobs.

Values:

Off*	Does not automatically print a job history report.
On	Automatically prints a job history report.

Print logs can also be printed using the `Report/List` menu.

RAM Disk

Purpose:

To allocate memory to the RAM disk file system for the Secure Print, Private Mail Box Print, Public Mail Box Print, and Proof Print features. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on again.

Values:

Off		Does not allocate memory to the RAM disk file system. Secure Print, Private Mail Box Print, Public Mail Box Print, and Proof Print jobs will abort and be recorded to the job log.
On*	100 MB	Sets the allocation of memory to the RAM disk file system in increments of 50 MB.
	Available Range: 50-300 MB	

📝 **NOTE:** Restart your printer when you change the settings for the `RAM Disk` menu.

Fax Server Phone Book

Purpose:

To specify whether to search the phone numbers from the Phone Book for the LDAP server.

Values:

Off*	Does not search the phone numbers from the Phone Book for the LDAP server.
On	Searches the phone numbers from the Phone Book for the LDAP server.

📝 **NOTE:** You can search the phone numbers only from the local Phone Book when `Fax Server Phone Book` is set to `Off`.

E-mail Server Address Book

Purpose:

To specify whether to search the e-mail addresses from the Address Book for the LDAP server.

Values:

Off*	Does not search the e-mail addresses from the Address Book for the LDAP server.
On	Searches the e-mail addresses from the Address Book for the LDAP server.

📝 **NOTE:** You can search the e-mail addresses only from the local Address Book when `E-mail Server Address Book` is set to `Off`.

Power On Wizard

Purpose:

To perform initial setup for the printer.

Max E-mail Size

Purpose:

To specify the maximum size of e-mail that can be sent.

Values:

2048 KB[*]	Sets the maximum size of e-mail that can be sent, in increments of 1 KB.
50-16384 KB	

Timers

Purpose:

To configure timer settings.

Auto Reset

Purpose:

To automatically reset the settings for Copy, Scan, Fax, E-mail, or Print to the default settings and return to the standby mode after you do not specify any settings for the specified time.

Values:

45sec[*]
1min
2min
3min
4min

Fault Time-out

Purpose:

To specify the amount of time the printer waits before canceling a job that stops abnormally. The print job is canceled if the time-out time is exceeded.

Values:

Off		Disables the fault time-out.
On[*]	60 seconds[*]	Sets the amount of time the printer waits before canceling a job that stops abnormally.
	Available Range: 3-300 seconds	

Output Settings

Purpose:

To configure settings concerning output from the printer.

Default Paper Size

Purpose:

To specify the default paper size.

Values:

mm series

A4 (210x297mm)[*1]	
Letter(8.5x11")	
[*1] Denotes country-specific factory default values.	

inch series

A4 (210x297mm)	
Letter(8.5x11")[*1]	
[*1] Denotes country-specific factory default values.	

Print ID

Purpose:

To specify a location where the user ID is printed.

Values:

Off[*]	Does not print the user ID.
Top Left	Prints the user ID on the top left of the page.
Top Right	Prints the user ID on the top right of the page.
Bottom Left	Prints the user ID on the bottom left of the page.
Bottom Right	Prints the user ID on the bottom right of the page.

NOTE: When printing on DL size paper, a part of the user ID may not be printed correctly.

Print Text

Purpose:

To specify whether the printer outputs PDL (Page Description Language) data, which is not supported by the printer, as text when the printer receives it. Text data is printed on A4 or Letter size paper.

Values:

Off	Does not print the received data.
On[*]	Prints the received data as text data.

Banner Sheet

Purpose:

To specify the position of banner sheet, and also specify the tray in which the banner sheet is loaded.

Values:

Insert Position	Off*	Does not print the banner sheet.
	Front	Inserted before the first page of every copy.
	Back	Inserted after the last page of every copy.
	Front & Back	Inserted before the first page of every copy and after the last page of every copy.
Specify Tray	MPF	The banner sheet is loaded in the MPF.
	Tray1*	The banner sheet is loaded in tray1.
	Tray2[*1]	The banner sheet is loaded in the optional 550-sheet feeder.

[*1] This item is available only when the optional 550-sheet feeder is installed.

Substitute Tray

Purpose:

Specifies whether to use paper of a different size when the paper that is loaded in the specified tray does not match the paper size settings for the current job.

Values:

Off	No tray size substitute accepted.
Larger Size	Substitutes paper of next largest size. When there is no larger paper size, the printer substitutes paper of nearest size.
Nearest Size*	Substitutes paper of nearest size.
Use MPF	Substitutes paper from the MPF.

Letterhead 2 Sided

Purpose:

To specify whether to print on both sides when using letterhead.

Values:

Disable*	Does not print on both sides of letterhead.
Enable	Prints on both sides of letterhead.

A4<>Letter Switch

Purpose:

To print A4 size jobs on Letter size paper if A4 size paper is not available or to print Letter size jobs on A4 size paper if Letter size paper is not available.

Values:

Off[*1]	Does not print A4 size jobs on Letter size paper or Letter size jobs on A4 paper.
On[*]	Prints A4 size jobs on Letter size paper if A4 is not available in the paper trays and vice versa (Letter size job on A4 size paper).

[*1] Depending on the printer setting, the printer will continue to print on existing media of a different size or prompt the user to select from the following:
  • Delete Job
  • Supply with correct media

Report 2 Sided Print

Purpose:

To specify to print reports on both sides a sheet of paper.

Values:

1 Sided[*]	Prints reports on one side of a sheet of paper.
2 Sided	Prints reports on both side of a sheet of paper.

Use Another Tray

Purpose:

To change to another paper tray when a paper size runs out in the specified paper tray.

📝 **NOTE:** If you select another paper tray with paper size smaller than the paper size specified in the job, the parts that do not fit are not printed (print size is not adjusted automatically).

Values:

Off	Does not print on other paper sizes in other paper trays if the paper size specified in the job runs out.
On[*]	Shows a message to select another tray when the specified paper runs out in the paper tray.

Set Available Time

Purpose:

Sets the available time for the Copy, Scan, Fax, and Print functions.

Values:

Copy, Scan, Fax, Print	Set Available Time	Off[*]	Does not set the time when function is available.
		On	Sets the time when function is available.
	Start Time		Sets the start time of the available time.
	End Time		Sets the end time of the available time.
	Recurrence		Sets the day of the week to repeat the setting.

📝 **NOTE:** `Set Available Time` can be configured when `Print`, `Copy`, `Scan`, or `Fax` is set to `On`.

Secure Job Expiration

📝 **NOTE:** Secure Job Expiration feature is available only when `RAM Disk` is set to `On`.

Purpose:

To specify the date and time to delete the files stored as Secure Print in the RAM disk.

Values:

Expiration Mode	**Off**[*]	Does not set the date and time to delete the files stored as Secure Print in the RAM disk.
	On	Sets the date and time to delete the files stored as Secure Print in the RAM disk.
Expiration Time		Sets the time to delete the files stored as Secure Print in the RAM disk.
Recurrence	**Daily**	Sets the recurrence to delete the files stored as Secure Print in the RAM disk daily.
	Weekly*	Sets the recurrence to delete the files stored as Secure Print in the RAM disk weekly.
	Monthly	Sets the recurrence to delete the files stored as Secure Print monthly.
Weekly Setting	**Monday**	Sets the day of the week to delete the files stored as Secure Print.
	Tuesday	
	Wednesday	
	Thursday	
	Friday	
	Saturday	
	Sunday[*]	
Monthly Setting	**1 Day**[*]	Sets the day of the month to delete the files stored as Secure Print in the RAM disk.
	Available Range: 1-28 days	

ColorTrack Mode

Purpose:

To specify who has access to color printing.

Values:

Off[*]	Does not limit access to color printing.
On	Limits access to color printing. Authentication is done using user information registered on the printer.

Non Registered User

Purpose:

To specify whether to permit the printing of data without authentication information.

Values:

Off*	Does not permit non-account user to print the data.
On*1	Permits non-account user to print the data.

*1 Set **Non Account User Password** using the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**.

Auto Color To Mono Print

📝 **NOTE:** Auto Color To Mono Print feature is available when Dell ColorTrack is disabled.

Purpose:

To specify whether to print all print jobs in black and white even when color print is specified.

Values:

Off*	Prints according to the specified color mode.
On	Prints all print jobs in black and white even when color print is specified.

ColorTrack Error Report

Purpose:

To specify whether to automatically print error-related information if printing with ColorTrack results in an error.

Values:

Off*	Does not print the error report when printing with ColorTrack results in an error.
On	Prints the error report when printing with ColorTrack results in an error.

Maintenance

Use the `Maintenance` menu to initialize the NV (non-volatile) memory, configure the plain paper quality adjustment settings, and configure the security settings.

📝 **NOTE:** Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Paper Density

Purpose:

To specify paper density settings.

Values:

Plain	Light
	Normal*
Label	Light
	Normal*

Adjust Transfer Belt Unit

Purpose:

To adjust the transfer bias when ghosting occur. (The ghost image may be the image of the previous page, or a part of the page currently printing)

Values:

K Offset	0*	If faint black colored ghosts appear, try to decrease the value.
	Available Range: -5 to +5	
YMC Offset	0*	If faint ghosts in color (yellow, magenta, or cyan) appear, try to decrease the value.
	Available Range: -5 to +5	

Adjust 2nd BTR

> ✎ **NOTE:** The print quality changes depending on the setting values you select for this item.

Purpose:

To specify the transfer roller voltage adjustment for each paper type.

Values:

Plain	0*	Sets the transfer roller voltage in increments of 1. The default settings may not give the best output on all paper types. If you see mottles on the print output, try to increase the voltage. If you see white spots on the print output, try to decrease the voltage.
	Available Range: -5 to +10	
Plain Thick	0*	
	Available Range: -5 to +10	
Covers (106-163g/m^2)	0*	
	Available Range: -5 to +10	
Covers Thick (164-216g/m^2)	0*	
	Available Range: -5 to +10	
Coated (106-163g/m^2)	0*	
	Available Range: -5 to +10	
Coated Thick (164-216g/m^2)	0*	
	Available Range: -5 to +10	
Label	0*	
	Available Range: -5 to +10	
Envelope	0*	
	Available Range: -5 to +10	
Recycled	0*	
	Available Range: -5 to +10	

Adjust Fusing Unit

✎ **NOTE:** The print quality changes depending on the setting values you select for this item.

Purpose:

To adjust the temperature setting of the fusing unit for each paper type.

Values:

Plain	0*	Sets the fusing unit temperature in increments of 1. The default settings may not give the best output on all paper types. When the printed paper has curled, try to lower the temperature. When the toner does not fuse on the paper properly, try to increase the temperature.
	Available Range: -3 to +3	
Plain Thick	0*	
	Available Range: -3 to +3	
Covers (106-163g/m^2)	0*	
	Available Range: -3 to +3	
Covers Thick (164-216g/m^2)	0*	
	Available Range: -3 to +3	
Coated (106-163g/m^2)	0*	
	Available Range: -3 to +3	
Coated Thick (164-216g/m^2)	0*	
	Available Range: -3 to +3	
Label	0*	
	Available Range: -3 to +3	
Envelope	0*	
	Available Range: -3 to +3	
Recycled	0*	
	Available Range: -3 to +3	

Auto Reg Adjust

Purpose:

To specify whether to automatically perform color registration adjustment.

Values:

Off	Does not automatically perform color registration adjustment.
On*	Automatically performs color registration adjustment.

Color Reg Adjust

Purpose:

To manually perform color registration adjustment.

Manual Color Registration Adjustments are required when the printer is initially installed and after the printer is moved.

✎ **NOTE:** The Color Reg Adjust feature can be configured when Auto Reg Adjust is set to Off.

Values:

Auto Correct	Start	Automatically performs color registration correction.

Color Regi Chart	Print		Prints a color registration chart. The color registration chart prints a lattice pattern of yellow, magenta, and cyan lines. On the chart, find the values on the right side that are next to the line that is perfectly straight for each of the three colors. If the value for this line is 0, color registration adjustment is not required. If the value for this line is any value other than 0, specify the adjustment values under lateral adjustment and process adjustment in `Enter Number`.
Enter Number	LY	**Available Range:** -9 to +9	Sets lateral (perpendicular to paper feed direction) and process (paper feed direction) color adjustment values individually for Yellow, Magenta, and Cyan. Enter a number in order of lateral adjustment (left), lateral adjustment (right), and process adjustment. Select `OK` to save all the settings.
	LM		
	LC		
	RY	**Available Range:** -9 to +9	
	RM		
	RC		
	PY	**Available Range:** -9 to +9	
	PM		
	PC		

✍ **NOTE:** Ensure that you remove the paper from the single sheet feeder before performing `Auto Correct`.

Reset Defaults

Purpose:

To initialize the non-volatile (NV) memory. After executing this function and rebooting the printer, all the menu parameters are reset to their default values.

Values:

User Fax Section	**Initialize**	Initializes the fax number entries in the Address Book.
User Scan Section	**Initialize**	Initializes the e-mail and server address entries in the Address Book.
User Account Section	**Initialize**	Initializes the user registration information.
System Section	**Initialize**	Initializes the system parameters.

Initialize Print Meter

Purpose:

To initialize the print meter of the printer. When the print meter is initialized, the meter count is reset to zero.

Reset Fusing Unit

Purpose:

To initialize the life counter of the fusing unit. After replacing the fusing unit, be sure to initialize its life counter.

Reset Transfer Belt Unit

Purpose:

To initialize the life counter of the transfer belt unit. After replacing the transfer belt unit, be sure to initialize its life counter.

Clear Storage

> **NOTE:** Clear Storage feature is available only when `RAM Disk` is set to `On`.

Purpose:

To clear all files stored as Secure Print, Private Mail Box Print, Public Mail box Print, Proof Print, and Stored Print in the RAM disk.

Values:

All	Clear	Deletes all files stored as Secure Print, Private Mail Box Print, Public Mail Box Print, and Proof Print in the RAM disk.
Secure Document	Clear	Deletes all files stored as Secure Print in the RAM disk.
Stored Document	Clear	Deletes all files stored as Stored Print in the RAM disk.

Non-Dell Toner

Purpose:

To use toner cartridge of another manufacturer.

> **CAUTION: Using a non-Dell™ toner cartridge may severely damage your printer. The warranty does not cover damages caused by using non-Dell toner cartridges.**

Values:

Off[*]	Does not use toner cartridge of another manufacturer.
On	Uses toner cartridge of another manufacturer.

Adjust Altitude

Purpose:

To specify the altitude of the location where the printer is installed.

The discharge phenomenon for charging the photo conductor varies with barometric pressure. Adjustments are performed by specifying the altitude of the location where the printer is being used.

> **NOTE:** An incorrect altitude adjustment setting leads to poor printing quality, incorrect indication of remaining toner, etc.

Values:

0m[*]	Sets the altitude of the location where the printer is installed.
1000m	
2000m	
3000m	

Clear Job History

Purpose:

To clear the job history of all finished jobs.

Fax Line Test

> **NOTE:** Fax Line Test feature is not available when the Fax function is disabled.

Purpose:

To test if the voltage supply from the fax line is sufficient.

Secure Settings

Use the `Secure Settings` menu to set a password to limit access to the menus. This prevents items from being changed accidentally.

> **NOTE:** Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

See also:

"Panel Lock"

Panel Lock

Purpose:

To set a limited access to `Admin Settings` with a password, and to set or change the password.

Values:

Panel Lock Control	Disable*	Disables password protection for `Admin Settings`.
	Enable	Enables password protection for `Admin Settings`.
Change Password[*1]	0000–9999	Sets or changes the password required to access `Admin Settings`.

> [*1] This item is available only when `Panel Lock Control` is set to `Enable`.

Function Enabled

> **NOTE:** Function Enabled feature is available only when `Panel Lock Control` is set to `Enable`.

Purpose:

To specify whether to enable or disable each of the printer functions, or to require a password to use the functions.

Values:

Copy	On*	Enables the Copy function.
	On (Password)	Enables the Copy function, but requires a password to use the function.
	On (Color Password)	Enables the Copy function with a color mode, but requires a password.
	Off	Disables the Copy function.
E-mail	On*	Enables the E-mail function.
	On (Password)	Enables the E-mail function, but requires a password.
	Off	Disables the E-mail function.
Fax	On*	Enables the Fax function.
	On (Password)	Enables the Fax function but requires a password to send faxes (does not require a password to receive incoming faxes).
	Off	Disables the Fax function (the printer will not send or receive faxes).
Fax Driver	Enable*	Enables the Fax Driver function.
	Disable	Disables the Fax Driver function (the printer will not send faxes).

Scan To Network	On[*]		Enables the Scan To Network function.
	On (Password)		Enables the Scan To Network function, but requires a password.
	Off		Disables the Scan To Network function.
Scan To Application	On[*]		Enables the Scan To Application and WSD Scan function.
	On (Password)		Enables the Scan To Application function, but requires a password. WSD Scan is disabled since `On (Password)` is not supported by WSD Scan.
	Off		Disables the Scan To Application and WSD Scan function.
PC Scan	On[*]		Enables the PC Scan function.
	On (Password)		Enables the PC Scan function, but requires a password.
	Off		Disables the PC Scan function.
Scan To USB	On[*]		Enables the Scan To USB function.
	On (Password)		Enables the Scan To USB function, but requires a password.
	Off		Disables the Scan To USB function.
USB Direct Print	On[*]		Enables the USB Direct Print function.
	On (Password)		Enables the USB Direct Print function, but requires a password.
	On (Color Password)		Enables the USB Direct Print function with a color mode, but requires a password.
	Off		Disables the USB Direct Print function.
ID Card Copy	Enable[*]		Enables the ID Card Copy function.
	Disable		Disables the ID Card Copy function.
USB Services	Show When Inserted	Enable[*]	Shows a **USB Drive Detected** screen when a USB memory is inserted in to the printer.
		Disable	Does not show a **USB Drive Detected** screen when a USB memory is inserted in to the printer.
Change Password^{*1}			Changes the password that is set under the `Function Enabled` menu.

^{*1} This item is available only when `On(Password)` or `On(Color Password)` is enabled.

Edit E-mail From Fields

Purpose:

To specify whether to enable editing of the transmission source when you use Scan to E-mail.

Values:

Disable	Disables editing of the transmission source.
Enable[*]	Enables editing of the transmission source.

Reconfirm Recipient

Purpose:

To specify whether to reconfirm the recipient before sending a fax or scan.

> ✎ **NOTE:** If the `Reconfirm Recipient` menu is set to `Reconfirm Recipient`, recipients can only be selected from the phone book or the address book. You cannot directly enter an address or fax number.

Values:

No Confirmation[*]	Does not display a screen to reconfirm the recipient before the job is actually sent.
Reconfirm Recipient	Displays a screen to reconfirm the recipient before the job is actually sent.

Domain Filtering

Purpose:

To specify whether to only send e-mails to specified domains.

> ✎ **NOTE:** Set the domains from **SMTP Domain Filtering** on the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**.

Values:

Off[*]	Disables Domain Filtering.
Allow Domains	Only allows e-mails to be sent to specified domains.

Software Download

Purpose:

To enable or disable download of firmware updates.

Values:

Disable	Disables firmware updates.
Enable[*]	Enables firmware updates.

Display of Network Information

Purpose:

To show or hide network information in the message field of the **Home** screen.

Values:

Show IPv4 Address[*]	Shows the IPv4 address of the printer on the **Home** screen.
Show Host Name	Shows the host name of the printer on the **Home** screen.
Hide Network Information	Does not show network information on the **Home** screen.

Login Error

> *NOTE: Login Error feature is available only when `Panel Lock Control` is set to `Enable`.*

Purpose:

To specify the number of error entry attempts allowed when you log in as an administrator in the `Admin Settings` and `Report/List` menu.

Values:

Off[*]		Does not allow an administrator to log in after one error entry attempt.
On	5[*]	Sets the number of error entry attempts allowed when an administrator logs in.
	Available Range: 1-10	

NFC Authentication

Purpose:

To specify whether to enable the authentication using the NFC authentication card.

Values:

Disable	Does not permit the authentication using the NFC authentication card.
Enable[*]	Permits the authentication using the NFC authentication card.

USB Settings

Use the `USB Settings` menu to change printer settings affecting a USB port.

USB Port

> *NOTE: USB Port feature is available only for the USB port on the rear of the printer.*

Purpose:

To specify whether to enable the USB port. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on again.

Values:

Disable	Disables the USB interface.
Enable[*]	Enables the USB interface.

PS Data Format

Purpose:

To specify PostScript Level3 Compatible communication protocol for a parallel interface. You can configure the PS Data Format settings for the wired network. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on again.

Values:

Auto	Used when auto-detecting the PostScript Level3 Compatible communication protocol.
Standard	Used when the communication protocol is in ASCII interface.
BCP	Used when the communication protocol is in binary format.
TBCP*	Used when the communication protocol supports both ASCII and binary data to switch between them according to the specified control code.

Binary	Used when no special processing is required for data.

Job Time-out

Purpose:

To specify the amount of time the printer waits for data to arrive from the computer. The print job is canceled if the time-out time is exceeded.

Values:

Off		Disables the job time-out.
On*	30 seconds*	Sets the time the printer waits for data to arrive from the computer.
	Available Range: 5–300 seconds	

Default Settings

Use `Default Settings` to modify the `Copy`, `Scan`, or `Fax` menu defaults.

Copy Defaults

Purpose:

To modify the `Copy` menu defaults.

`Copy Defaults` allows you to configure the following items in addition to the items under the `Copy` menu.

Auto Exposure Level

Purpose:

To specify the default background suppression level.

Values:

Normal*	Sets the background suppression level to Normal.
High	Sets the background suppression level to High.
Highest	Sets the background suppression level to Highest.

Color Balance

Purpose:

To specify the default color balance level within the range of -3 to +3.

Values:

Yellow	Low Density	0*	Sets the color balance level of low density yellow.
		Available Range: -3 to +3	
	Med. Density	0*	Sets the color balance level of medium density yellow.
		Available Range: -3 to +3	
	High Density	0*	Sets the color balance level of high density yellow.
		Available Range: -3 to +3	

Magenta	Low Density	0[*]	Sets the color balance level of low density magenta.
		Available Range: -3 to +3	
	Med. Density	0[*]	Sets the color balance level of medium density magenta.
		Available Range: -3 to +3	
	High Density	0[*]	Sets the color balance level of high density magenta.
		Available Range: -3 to +3	
Cyan	Low Density	0[*]	Sets the color balance level of low density cyan.
		Available Range: -3 to +3	
	Med. Density	0[*]	Sets the color balance level of medium density cyan.
		Available Range: -3 to +3	
	High Density	0[*]	Sets the color balance level of high density cyan.
		Available Range: -3 to +3	
Black	Low Density	0[*]	Sets the color balance level of low density black.
		Available Range: -3 to +3	
	Med. Density	0[*]	Sets the color balance level of medium density black.
		Available Range: -3 to +3	
	High Density	0[*]	Sets the color balance level of high density black.
		Available Range: -3 to +3	

Fax Defaults

Purpose:

To modify the `Fax` menu defaults. See "Fax" for more details.

Scan Defaults

Purpose:

To modify the `Scan` menu defaults.

`Scan Defaults` allows you to configure the following items in addition to the items under the `Scan` menu.

Auto Exposure Level

Purpose:

To specify the default background suppression level.

Values:

Normal[*]	Sets the background suppression level to Normal.
High	Sets the background suppression level to High.
Highest	Sets the background suppression level to Highest.

TIFF File Format

Purpose:

To specify the default TIFF file format.

Values:

TIFF V6[*]	Sets the default TIFF file format to TIFF V6.
TTN2	Sets the default TIFF file format to TTN2.

Image Compression

Purpose:

To specify the image compression level.

Values:

High	Sets the image compression level to High.
Normal[*]	Sets the image compression level to Normal.
Low	Sets the image compression level to Low.

USB Direct Print Defaults

Purpose:

To modify the defaults for the `USB Direct Print Defaults` menu. See "Print PDF/TIFF" for more details.

Tray Management

Use the `Tray Settings` menu to define the print media loaded in tray1 and the optional 550-sheet feeder.

> **NOTE:** Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Tray Settings

To configure tray settings.

MPF

Purpose:

To specify the paper loaded in the MPF.

Values:

Display Tray Prompt		Enter a check to display a popup message that prompts to set Paper Type and Paper Size when paper is loaded in the MPF. The factory default is on (check).
Use Driver Settings for Print Job		Enter a check to use the paper size and type set on the printer driver. The factory default is off (blank).
Size	**A4** (210x297mm)[*1]	
mm series	**A5** (148x210mm)	
	B5 (182x257mm)	

	Letter (8.5x11")	
	Folio (8.5x13")	
	Legal (8.5x14")	
	Executive (7.3x10.5")	
	Envelope #10 (4.1x9.5")	
	Monarch Env. (3.9x7.5")	
	DL Env. (110x220mm)	
	C5 Env. (162x229mm)	
	Custom	
inch series	Letter (8.5x11")[*1]	
	Folio (8.5x13")	
	Legal (8.5x14")	
	A4 (210x297mm)	
	A5 (148x210mm)	
	B5 (182x257mm)	
	Executive (7.3x10.5")	
	Envelope #10 (4.1x9.5")	
	Monarch Env. (3.9x7.5")	
	DL Env. (110x220mm)	
	C5 Env. (162x229mm)	
	Custom	
Type	Plain[*]	
	Plain Thick	

Covers (106-163g/m^2)	
Covers Thick (164-216g/m^2)	
Coated (106-163g/m^2)	
Coated Thick (164-216g/m^2)	
Label	
Envelope	
Recycled	
Letterhead	
Preprinted	
Prepunched	
Color	
Plain S2	
Color S2	
Plain Thick S2	
Recycled S2	

[1] Denotes country-specific factory default value.

Tray1

Purpose:

To specify the paper loaded in tray1.

Values:

Display Tray Prompt		Enter a check to display a popup message that prompts to set Paper Type and Paper Size when paper is loaded in tray1. The factory default is on (check).
Size	A4 (210x297mm)[1]	
mm series	A5 (148x210mm)	
	B5 (182x257mm)	
	Letter (8.5x11")	
	Folio (8.5x13")	
	Legal (8.5x14")	

	Executive (7.3x10.5")	
	Custom	
inch series	Letter (8.5x11")[1]	
	Folio (8.5x13")	
	Legal (8.5x14")	
	A4 (210x297mm)	
	A5 (148x210mm)	
	B5 (182x257mm)	
	Executive (7.3x10.5")	
	Custom	
Type	Plain	
	Plain Thick	
	Covers (106-163g/m^2)	
	Covers Thick (164-216g/m^2)	
	Coated (106-163g/m^2)	
	Coated Thick (164-216g/m^2)	
	Recycled	
	Letterhead	
	Preprinted	
	Prepunched	
	Color	
	Plain S2	
	Color S2	
	Plain Thick S2	
	Recycled S2	

[1] Denotes country-specific factory default value.

✏ **NOTE:** For more information on supported paper sizes, see "Supported Paper Sizes."

Tray2

 NOTE: Tray2 feature is available only when the optional 550-sheet feeder is installed.

Purpose:

To specify the paper loaded in the optional 550-sheet feeder.

Values:

Display Tray Prompt		Enter a check to display a popup message that prompts to set Paper Type and Paper Size when paper is loaded in the optional 550-sheet feeder. The factory default is on (check).
Size	Auto Sensed[*]	
	Custom	
Type	Plain	
	Plain Thick	
	Covers (106-163g/m^2)	
	Covers Thick (164-216g/m^2)	
	Coated (106-163g/m^2)	
	Coated Thick (164-216g/m^2)	
	Recycled	
	Letterhead	
	Preprinted	
	Prepunched	
	Color	
	Plain S2	
	Color S2	
	Plain Thick S2	
	Recycled S2	

Tray Priority

Purpose:

To set the priority order of the paper trays for automatic tray selection. If paper trays loaded with the same paper size and type exists, the paper tray is selected according to this priority order.

Values:

First	MPF[*1]	Sets the MPF as the first priority.
	Tray1[*]	Sets tray1 as the first priority.
	Tray2	Sets the optional 550-sheet feeder as the first priority.
Second	MPF[*]	Sets the MPF as the second priority.
	Tray1[*1]	Sets tray1 as the second priority.

	Tray2	Sets the optional 550-sheet feeder as the second priority.
Third	MPF	Sets the MPF as the third priority.
	Tray1	Sets tray1 as the third priority.
	Tray2[*1]	Sets the optional 550-sheet feeder as the third priority.

[*1] The factory default when the optional 550-sheet feeder is installed.

Language Settings

Use the `Language Settings` menu to configure `Panel Language`, or `Keyboard Layout`.

Panel Language

Purpose:

To determine the language of the text on the touch panel.

Values:

English[*]
Français
Italiano
Deutsch
Español
Dansk
Nederlands
Norsk
Svenska

Keyboard Layout

Purpose:

To select the keyboard layout on the touch panel.

Values:

QWERTY
AZERTY
QWERTZ

Print

Use the `Print` menus to print a job using the Secure Print, Private Mail Box Print, Public Mail Box Print, and Proof Print features.

NOTE: Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Private Mailbox

> 📝 **NOTE:** Private Mailbox feature is available only when `RAM Disk` is set to `On`.

Purpose:

To specify whether and how to print the job stored in the Private Mailbox.

Values:

Select User ID			Enter the password you specified on the printer driver.
	Select a Job		Selects a job to print.
	Select All		Selects all the documents stored for this User ID.
	Quantity	1*	Specifies the quantity of prints in increments of 1.
		Available Range: 1-999	
		Use Driver Settings	Sets the quantity of prints specified on the printer driver.
	Print		Prints the selected job.
		Print and Delete*	Deletes the document after it is printed.
	Delete		Deletes the specified document from print memory.

Public Mailbox

> 📝 **NOTE:** Public Mailbox feature is available only when `RAM Disk` is set to `On`.

Purpose:

To specify whether and how to print the job stored in the Public Mailbox.

Values:

Select User ID	Select a Job		Selects a job to print.
	Select All		Selects all the documents stored for this User ID.
	Quantity	1*	Specifies the quantity of prints in increments of 1.
		Available Range: 1-999	
		Use Driver Settings	Sets the quantity of prints specified on the printer driver.
	Print		Prints the selected job.
		Print and Delete	Deletes the document after it is printed.
	Delete		Deletes the specified document from print memory.

Proof Print

> 📝 **NOTE:** Proof Print feature is available only when `RAM Disk` is set to `On`.

Purpose:

To specify whether and how to print the job stored in the Proof Print. When the print job is sent from the printer driver on the computer, a single copy is printed for you to check the print result. If you do not have problems with the print result, you can choose to print more copies. This prevents a large number of misprinted copies from being printed at one time.

Values:

Select User ID	Select a Job	Selects a job to print.
	Select All	Selects all the documents stored for this User ID.

Quantity	1*	Specifies the quantity of prints in increments of 1.
	Available Range: 1-999	
	Use Driver Settings	Sets the quantity of prints specified on the printer driver.
Print		Prints the selected job.
	Print and Delete	Deletes the document after it is printed.
Delete		Deletes the specified document from print memory.

Secure Print

> ✎ **NOTE:** Secure Print feature is available only when `RAM Disk` is set to `On`.

Purpose:

To print confidential jobs. The printer can hold the job in memory until you arrive at the printer and type the password on the operator panel.

Values:

Select User ID			Enter the password you specified on the printer driver.
	Select a Job		Selects a job to print.
	Select All		Selects all the documents stored for this User ID.
	Print		Prints the selected job.
		Print and Delete*	Deletes the document after it is printed.
	Delete		Deletes the specified document from print memory.

Secure Fax Receive

Purpose:

To specify the password to receive faxes.

Values:

| *Enter Password* | Enter the password you specified in `Secure Receive`. |

Tile Settings

Use the tile settings to create and edit custom tile for the `Print` menus.

Copy

Use the `Copy` menus to configure a variety of copy features.

> ✎ **NOTE:** Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Quantity

Purpose:

To specify the number of copies from 1 to 99.

Darken / Lighten

Purpose:

To make the copy darker or lighter than the original.

Values:

Darken 3	Works well with light documents or faint pencil markings.
Darken 2	
Darken 1	
Normal*	Works well with standard typed or printed documents.
Lighten 1	Works well with dark documents.
Lighten 2	
Lighten 3	

Output Color

Purpose:

To select color or black and white copying.

Values:

Full Color*	Prints in color mode.
Black & White	Prints in black and white mode.

Select Tray

Purpose:

To specify the input tray.

Values:

MPF		The paper is fed from the MPF. When `Use Driver Settings for Print Job` is set in `MPF` of `Tray Settings`, `Any` is displayed for `Size` and `Type`. If you start the copy job with `Any` as the paper size and type, `A4` or `Letter` is selected as the paper size and `plain` is selected as the paper type. If you want to specify the size and type of paper in the MPF, select `MPF` and specify the paper size and type.
	Paper Size	A4
	mm series	(210x297mm)[*1]
		A5
		(148x210mm)
		B5
		(182x257mm)
		Letter
		(8.5x11")
		Folio
		(8.5x13")
		Legal
		(8.5x14")

	Executive	
	(7.3x10.5")	
	Envelope #10	
	(4.1x9.5")	
	Monarch Env.	
	(3.9x7.5")	
	DL Env.	
	(110x220mm)	
	C5 Env.	
	(162x229mm)	
	Custom	
inch series	Letter	
	(8.5x11")[1]	
	Folio	
	(8.5x13")	
	Legal	
	(8.5x14")	
	A4	
	(210x297mm)	
	A5	
	(148x210mm)	
	B5	
	(182x257mm)	
	Executive	
	(7.3x10.5")	
	Envelope #10	
	(4.1x9.5")	
	Monarch Env.	
	(3.9x7.5")	
	DL Env.	
	(110x220mm)	
	C5 Env.	
	(162x229mm)	
	Custom	
Paper Type	Plain	
	Plain Thick	
	Covers	
	(106-163g/m^2)	
	Covers Thick	
	(164-216g/m^2)	
	Coated	
	(106-163g/m^2)	

	Coated Thick (164-216g/m^2)
	Label
	Envelope
	Recycled
	Letterhead
	Preprinted
	Prepunched
	Color
	Plain S2
	Color S2
	Plain Thick S2
	Recycled S2
Tray1*	The paper is fed from tray1.
Tray2*2	The paper is fed from the optional 550-sheet feeder.

*1 Denotes country-specific factory default value.

*2 This item is available only when the optional 550-sheet feeder is installed.

2 Sided Copying

Purpose:

To specify whether to make duplex copy and select the binding position.

Values:

1 → 1 Sided*		Prints on one side of a sheet of paper.
1 → 2 Sided		Prints one sided originals on both sides of a sheet of paper.
	Long Edge Binding*	Prints on both sides of a sheet of paper to be bound by long edge.
	Short Edge Binding	Prints on both sides of a sheet of paper to be bound by short edge.
2 → 1 Sided		Prints two sided originals on one side of a sheet of paper.
	Long Edge Binding*	Scans both sides of a document bound by long edge.
	Short Edge Binding	Scans both sides of a document bound by short edge.
2 → 2 Sided		Prints two sided originals on both sides of a sheet of paper.
	Long Edge Binding*	Scans both sides of a document bound by long edge.
	Short Edge Binding	Scans both sides of a document bound by short edge.

Sharpness

Purpose:

To adjust the sharpness to make the copy sharper or softer than the original.

Values:

Sharpen	Makes the copy sharper than the original.
Normal*	Does not make the copy sharper or softer than the original.
Soften	Makes the copy softer than the original.

Reduce/Enlarge

Purpose:

To reduce or enlarge the size of a copied image.

Values:

Custom ratio	100*	Enter a custom ratio in increments of 1 percent.
	25-400 %	
mm series	100%*	
	50%	
	70%	
	A4→A5	
	81%	
	B5→A5	
	122%	
	A5→B5	
	141%	
	A5→A4	
	200%	
inch series	100%*	
	50%	
	64%	
	Ledger→Letter	
	78%	
	Legal→Letter	
	129%	
	Statement→Letter	
	154%	
	Statement→Legal	
	200%	

Original Size

Purpose:

To specify the default document size.

Values:

mm series

Auto*1
A4 (210x297mm)
A5 (148x210mm)
B5 (182x257mm)
Letter (8.5x11")
Folio (8.5x13")

Legal (8.5x14")
Executive (7.3x10.5")

inch series

Auto[1]
Letter (8.5x11")
Folio (8.5x13")
Legal (8.5x14")
A4 (210x297mm)
A5 (148x210mm)
B5 (182x257mm)
Executive (7.3x10.5")

[1] Denotes country-specific factory default values.

NOTE: When `Auto` is selected, the printer assumes that the document size is the size of the print media loaded in tray1 or the MPF.

Original Type

Purpose:

To improve the image quality by selecting the type of the original document.

Values:

Photo & Text[*]	Used for documents with both text and photos.
Text	Used for documents with text.
Photo	Used for documents with photos.

Collation

Purpose:

To sort the copy job. For example, if you make two copies of three page documents, one complete set of three page documents is printed one by one.

Values:

Auto[*]	Automatically sorts a copy job only when you use the DADF.
Collated	Sorts a copy job.
Uncollated	Does not sort a copy job.

2-Up

Purpose:

To print two original pages to fit onto one sheet of paper.

Values:

Off[*]	Does not perform 2-up printing.
Auto	Automatically reduces the original pages to fit onto one sheet of paper.
Manual	Prints the original pages onto the one sheet of paper in the size specified in `Reduce/Enlarge`.

Color Saturation

Purpose:

To adjust the amount of colors to make the colors darker or lighter than the original.

Values:

High	Increases the color saturation to brighten the color of the copy.
Normal[*]	The color saturation is the same as the original.
Low	Decreases the color saturation to lighten the color of the copy.

Margin

Purpose:

To specify the top, bottom, right, left, and middle margins of the copy.

Values:

Top/Bottom	0.2 inch[*] (4 mm[*])	Sets the value in increments of 0.1 inch (1 mm).
	Available Range: 0.0–2.0 inches (0–50 mm)	
Left/Right	0.2 inch[*] (4 mm[*])	Sets the value in increments of 0.1 inch (1 mm).
	Available Range: 0.0–2.0 inches (0–50 mm)	
Middle	0.0 inches[*] (0 mm[*])	Sets the value in increments of 0.1 inch (1 mm).
	Available Range: 0.0–2.0 inches (0–50 mm)	

Auto Exposure

Purpose:

To suppress the background of the original to enhance text on the copy.

Values:

Off	Does not suppress the background.
On[*]	Suppresses the background to enhance text.

Save Settings

Use the save settings to save a variety of copy features. And also use to create and edit custom tiles for copying.

ID Copy

Use the `ID Copy` menus to configure a variety of ID Copy features.

Values:

<u>Q</u>uantity	For details about each menu, see "Copy."
Darken / Lighten	
Output Color	
Select Tray	
Sharpness	
Color Saturation	
Auto Exposure	

Save Settings

Use the save settings to save a variety of ID Copy features. And also use to create and edit custom tiles for ID Copy.

Scan

Scan to E-mail

Purpose:

To use the e-mail to configure a variety of e-mail features. See "Scan Settings" for more details about the various scan options you can set for the scan.

Values:

Enter Recipient's Address		Enters the e-mail address of the recipient using the keyboard.
Address Book	Individuals	Selects an e-mail address from the local address book.
	Groups	Selects an e-mail group from the local address book.
	Network Address Book	Searches an e-mail address from the server address book.
Sender	Keyboard	Enters the e-mail address of the sender using the keyboard.
	Address Book	Selects an e-mail address of the sender from the local address book.
	Network Address Book	Searches an e-mail address of the sender from the server address book.

Scan to Network

Purpose:

To store the scanned image on a network server or a computer. See "Scan Settings" for more details about the various scan settings you can set for the scan.

Values:

Address Book	Selects a FTP address or Server Message Block (SMB) protocol address from the local address book.

Scan to PC

Purpose:

To save scanned data on a computer. The **Scan to PC** feature allows you to import scanned data from the printer to a computer connected via a USB cable. The computer must have **ScanButton Manager** installed to receive the data. See "Scan Settings" for more details about the various scan settings you can set for the scan.

Scan to USB

Purpose:

To save the scanned image to a USB memory attached to the printer. See "Scan Settings" for more details about the various scan settings you can set for the scan.

Values:

Folder Name	Selects which folder the scanned image is saved to.

Scan Settings

Use the scan settings to configure a variety of scanner features when scanning to a Scan to Network, Scan to PC, or Scan to USB.

📝 **NOTE:** Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Output Color

Purpose:

To select color or black and white scanning.

Values:

Color*	Scans in color mode. Works well with texts and photos.
Black & White	Scans in black and white mode. Works well with texts.
Gray Scale	Scans in grayscale mode. Works well with texts and photos.

Resolution

Purpose:

To specify the resolution of the scanned image.

Values:

200 dpi*
300 dpi
400 dpi
600 dpi

File Format

Purpose:

To specify the file format to save the scanned image.

Values:

PDF[*]
Multi-Page TIFF
TIFF (1 File per Page)
JPEG (1 File per Page)

2 Sided Scanning

Purpose:

To specify whether to scan both sides of a document.

Values:

1 Sided[*]		Scans one side of a document.
2 Sided	**Long Edge Binding**[*]	Scans both sides of a document bound by the long edge.
	Short Edge Binding	Scans both sides of a document bound by the short edge.

Darken / Lighten

Purpose:

To adjust the density to make the scanned image darker or lighter than the original.

Values:

Darken 3	Works well with light documents or faint pencil markings.
Darken 2	
Darken 1	
Normal[*]	Works well with standard typed or printed documents.
Lighten 1	Works well with dark documents.
Lighten 2	
Lighten 3	

Contrast

Purpose:

To adjust the amount of colors to make the contrast of colors darker or lighter than the original.

Values:

High	Adjusts the amount of colors to make the contrast of colors darker than the original.
Medium[*]	Does not adjust the amount of colors to make the contrast of colors darker or lighter than the original.
Low	Adjusts the amount of colors to make the contrast of colors lighter than the original.

Sharpness

Purpose:

To adjust the sharpness to make the scanned image sharper or softer than the original.

Values:

Sharpen	Makes the scanned image sharper than the original.
Normal*	Does not make the scanned image sharper or softer than the original.
Soften	Makes the scanned image softer than the original.

Auto Exposure

Purpose:

To suppress the background of the original to enhance text on the copy.

Values:

Off	Does not suppress the background.
On*	Suppresses the background to enhance text.

Original Size

Purpose:

To specify the default paper size.

Values:

mm series

A4 (210x297mm) *1
A5 (148x210mm)
B5 (182x257mm)
Letter (8.5x11")
Folio (8.5x13")
Legal (8.5x14")
Executive (7.3x10.5")
*1 Denotes country-specific factory default values.

inch series

Letter (8.5x11") *1
Folio (8.5x13")
Legal (8.5x14")
A4 (210x297mm)
A5 (148x210mm)
B5 (182x257mm)
Executive (7.3x10.5")
*1 Denotes country-specific factory default values.

Margin

Purpose:

To specify the top, bottom, right, left, and middle margins of the scanned image.

Values:

Top/Bottom	0.1 inch[*] (2 mm[*])	Sets the value in increments of 0.1 inch (1 mm).
	Available Range: 0.0–2.0 inches (0–50 mm)	
Left/Right	0.1 inch[*] (2 mm[*])	Sets the value in increments of 0.1 inch (1 mm).
	Available Range: 0.0–2.0 inches (0–50 mm)	
Middle	0.0 inches[*] (0 mm[*])	Sets the value in increments of 0.1 inch (1 mm).
	Available Range: 0.0–2.0 inches (0–50 mm)	

Create Folder

📝 **NOTE:** Create Folder feature is available only for Scan to USB or Scan to Network.

Purpose:

To specify whether to create a folder when saving scanned images.

Values:

Off	Does not create a folder when saving a scanned image.
On[*]	Creates a folder when saving a scanned image.

File Naming Mode

Purpose:

To specify the detailed setting of **File Naming Mode**.

Values:

Auto[*]		Sets the default file name.
Add Prefix		Adds texts in front of the file name.
	Prefix/Suffix String	Specifies the texts that are added when `Add Prefix` is selected.
Add Suffix		Adds texts after the file name.
	Prefix/Suffix String	Specifies the texts that are added when `Add Suffix` is selected.

Save Settings

Use the save settings to save a variety of scanner features when scanning to a Scan to E-mail, Scan to USB, Scan to Network, or Scan to PC. And also use to create and edit custom tiles for scanning.

Scan to WSD

Purpose:

To save scanned data on a computer using WSD.

> 📝 **NOTE:** Scan to WSD is available when the OS of the client computer is Windows Vista SP2 (or later), Windows 7, and Windows 8.

Values:

Computer Name		Selects which computer the scanned image is saved to. Up to 20 computers will be listed.
	Scan	Sends the scanned image to the computer according to the chosen event. Which application each event is associated with depends on the setting on the computer.
	ScanToPrint	
	ScanToEmail	
	ScanToFax	
	ScanToOCR	

Tile Settings

Use the tile settings to create and edit custom tiles for Scan to WSD.

Fax

Use the `Fax` menus to configure a variety of fax features.

> 📝 **NOTE:** The Fax function cannot be used unless you set up a country code under `Country`. If `Country` is not set up, a message `Set the Country Code` appears on the display.

> 📝 **NOTE:** Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Values:

Enter Number		Enters the fax number using the keyboard.
Speed Dial		Enters the speed dial number stored in the printer.
Phone Book	Individuals	Selects a fax number from the local address book.
	Groups	Selects a group dial number from the local address book.
	Network Phone Book	Searches a fax number from the server address book.
On Hook	Send*	Sends faxes manually.
	Receive	Receives faxes manually.
	Polling	Manually retrieves information from a remote machine.

Fax Settings

Use the fax settings to configure a variety of fax features.

Darken / Lighten

Purpose:

To adjust the density to make the copy darker or lighter than the original.

Values:

Darken 3	Works well with light documents or faint pencil markings.
Darken 2	
Darken 1	
Normal[*]	Works well with standard typed or printed documents.
Lighten 1	Works well with dark documents.
Lighten 2	
Lighten 3	

2 Sided Scanning

Purpose:

To specify whether to scan both sides of a document.

Values:

1 Sided[*]		Scans one side of a document.
2 Sided	**Long Edge Binding**[*]	Scans both sides of a document bound by the long edge.
	Short Edge Binding	Scans both sides of a document bound by the short edge.

Polling Receive

Purpose:

To receive faxes from the remote fax machine when you want to receive it.

Values:

Off[*]	Does not receive faxes using Polling Receive.
On	Receives faxes using Polling Receive.

Resolution

Purpose:

To specify the scan resolution to improve the output quality.

Values:

Standard[*]	Suitable for documents with normal sized characters.
Fine	Suitable for documents containing small characters or thin lines or documents printed using a dot-matrix printer.
Super Fine	Suitable for documents containing extremely fine detail. The Super Fine mode is enabled only if the remote machine also supports the Super Fine mode. See the notes below.
Photo	Suitable for documents containing photographic images.

NOTE: Faxes scanned in the Super Fine mode transmit at the highest resolution supported by the receiving device.

Fax Cover Page

Purpose:

To set whether to attach a cover page to faxes.

Values:

Off*	Does not attach a cover page to faxes.
On	Attaches a cover page to faxes.

Delayed Send

Purpose:

To send a fax at a later time.

Values:

Off*	Does not send a fax at a later time.
On	Sets the fax transmission start time when sending fax at a specified time.

NOTE: A maximum of 19 delayed fax jobs can be stored in the Dell C2665dnf Color Laser Multifunction Printer.

Save Settings

Use the save settings to save a variety of fax features. And also use to create and edit custom tiles for faxing.

NOTE: Up to 30 addresses can be stored on the printer. If you have the addresses of more than 31, you cannot save settings of fax features. In that case, please reduce to 30.

Print PDF/TIFF

NOTE: Print PDF/TIFF function is available only when a USB memory is inserted in the front USB port.

Purpose:

To specify the document stored in the root, file, or folder in a USB memory. See "Print Settings" for more details about the various print settings you can set for the print.

Print JPEG

NOTE: Print JPEG function is available only when a USB memory is inserted in the front USB port.

Purpose:

To specify the photos stored in the root, file, or folder in a USB memory. See "Print Settings" for more details about the various print settings you can set for the print.

Print Settings

Use the print settings to configure a variety of print features.

Quantity

Purpose:

To specify the number of copies from 1 to 99.

Output Color

Purpose:

To select color or black and white printing.

Values:

Full Color[*]	Prints in color mode.
Black & White	Prints in black and white mode.

Select Tray

Purpose:

To specify the input tray.

Values:

MPF		The paper is fed from the MPF. When `Use Driver Settings for Print Job` is set in `MPF` of `Tray Settings`, `Any` is displayed for `Size` and `Type`. If you start the print job with `Any` as the paper size and type, `A4` or `Letter` is selected as the paper size and `plain` is selected as the paper type. If you want to specify the size and type of paper in the MPF, select `MPF` and specify the paper size and type.
	Size **mm series**	A4 (210x297mm)[*1]
		A5 (148x210mm)
		B5 (182x257mm)
		Letter (8.5x11")
		Folio (8.5x13")
		Legal (8.5x14")
	inch series	Letter (8.5x11")[*1]
		Folio (8.5x13")
		Legal (8.5x14")
		A4 (210x297mm)
		A5 (148x210mm)

		B5 (182x257mm)	
	Type	Plain	
		Plain Thick	
		Covers (106-163g/m^2)	
		Covers Thick (164-216g/m^2)	
		Coated (106-163g/m^2)	
		Coated Thick (164-216g/m^2)	
		Envelope	
		Recycled	
		Letterhead	
		Prepunched	
		Color	
		Plain S2	
		Color S2	
		Plain Thick S2	
		Recycled S2	
Tray1[*]		The paper is fed from tray1.	
Tray2		The paper is fed from the optional 550-sheet feeder.	

[*1] Denotes country-specific factory default value.

2 Sided Printing

Purpose:

To print on both sides of a sheet of paper.

Values:

1 Sided[*]		Does not print on both sides of a sheet of paper.
2 Sided	**Long Edge Binding**[*]	Prints on both sides of a sheet of paper to be bound by the long edge.
	Short Edge Binding	Prints on both sides of a sheet of paper to be bound by the short edge.

Layout

Purpose:

To specify the output layout.

Values:

1-Up[*]	Prints one page on one side of a sheet of paper.
2-Up	Prints two pages on one side of a sheet of paper.
4-Up	Prints four pages on one side of a sheet of paper.
Off(No Scaling)	Prints without scaling.

Image Types

Purpose:

To set the print image quality.

Values:

Auto[*]	Prints PDF/TIFF files in the **Text** mode and JPEG files in the **Photos (Standard Quality)** mode.
Photos (Standard Quality)	Prints the photographic images at the standard quality.
Photos (High Quality)	Prints the photographic images at the high quality.
Text	Prints the text document at the standard quality.

Collation

Purpose:

To specify whether to sort the job.

Values:

Collated	Sorts a job.
Uncollated[*]	Does not sort a job.

PDF Password

Purpose:

To enter the password when you print a PDF file secured with a document open password (password to open the PDF file).

Values:

Enter PDF Password	Enter the document open password to print the secure PDF job.

Save Settings

Use the save settings to save a variety of USB Direct Print features. And also use to create and edit custom tiles for USB Direct Print.

Dell Document Hub

Use the Dell Document Hub menus to configure a variety of Dell Document Hub features.

Search for Files

Purpose:

To search the files saved in the cloud services, and print them from the printer.

Values:

Text Box	Enters the keywords, such as the words including the file name.
A↓Z	Sorts the searching results by selecting the sorting order.
⚙	Sets the settings of the Print Settings.
🖾	Displays the selected files. The first three pages of each file are displayed in the small previews.

Browse for Files

Purpose:

To browse and print the files saved in the selected cloud services.

Values:

Text Box	Enters the keywords, such as the words including the file name.
🔍	Searches for the files in the current location or the selected cloud services.
⚙	Sets the settings of the Print Settings.
🖾	Displays the selected files. The first three pages of each file are displayed in the small previews.
A↓Z	Sorts the searching results by selecting the sorting order.
💾	Saves the settings of the Print Settings as Favorite.

Scan

Purpose:

To scan the document and save the scanned file in the cloud service.

Values:

File Name	Enters the file name you want to use.
File Format	Selects the file format from the list to save the scanned image.
Tag	Enters the tag you want to use.
🔍	Searches for the location to save the scanned file. You can search for the location across the cloud services.
⚙	Sets the settings of the Scan Settings.
A↓Z	Sorts the searching results by selecting the sorting order.
💾	Saves the settings of the Scan Settings as Favorite.

PDF Password

Purpose:

To enter the password when you print a PDF file secured with a document open password (password to open the PDF file).

Values:

Enter PDF Password	Enters the document open password to print the secure PDF job.

File Name Option

Purpose:

To specify the way to name the scanned document.

Values:

Off		Adds no text in front of the file name or after the file name.
Add Prefix		Adds texts in front of the file name.
	Prefix/Suffix String	Specifies the texts that are added when Add Prefix is selected.
Add Suffix		Adds texts after the file name.
	Prefix/Suffix String	Specifies the texts that are added when Add Suffix is selected.

For more information on other settings, see "Scan Settings".

Smart OCR Scan

Purpose:

To scan the document using OCR and save it in the cloud service.

Values:

File Name	Enters the file name you want to use.
File Format	Selects the file format from the list to save the scanned image.
Tag	Enters the tag you want to use.
🔍	Searches for the location to save the scanned file. You can search for the location across the cloud services.
⚙	Sets the settings of the Scan Settings.
💾	Saves the settings of the Scan Settings as Favorite.

File Format

Purpose:

To specify the file format to save the scanned image.

Values:

PDF(Searchable)
TXT
RTF
DOC
DOCX
XLS
XLSX
PPTX
HTML

OCR Language

Purpose:

To specify the language for the OCR.

Values:

Auto
English
Français
Italiano
Deutsch
Español
Dansk
Nederlands
Norsk
Svenska

PDF Password

Purpose:

To enter the password when you print a PDF file secured with a document open password (password to open the PDF file).

Values:

Enter PDF Password	Enters the document open password to print the secure PDF job.

Remove Blank Page

Purpose:

To specify whether to remove the blank pages.

Values:

Off	Disables the Remove Blank Page feature.
On	Enables the Remove Blank Page feature.

File Name Option

Purpose:

To specify the way to name the scanned document.

Values:

Off		Adds no text in front of the file name or after the file name.
Add Prefix		Adds texts in front of the file name.
	Prefix/Suffix String	Specifies the texts that are added when Add Prefix is selected.

Add Suffix		Adds texts after the file name.
	Prefix/Suffix String	Specifies the texts that are added when Add Suffix is selected.

For more information on other settings, see "Scan Settings".

E-mail Me

Purpose:

To scan the document and send to you as an attached file of an e-mail.

Values:

File Format	Selects the file format from the list to save the scanned image.
Subject	Enters the subject you want to use.
⚙	Sets the settings of the Scan Settings.
💾	Saves the settings of the Scan Settings as Favorite.

File Format

Purpose:

To specify the file format to save the scanned image.

Values:

PDF
PDF (Searchable)
TXT
RTF
DOC
DOCX
XLS
XLSX
PPTX
HTML
Multi-Page TIFF
TIFF
JPEG

OCR Language

Purpose:

To specify the language for the OCR.

Values:

Auto
English
Français
Italiano
Deutsch
Español
Dansk
Nederlands
Norsk
Svenska

PDF Password

Purpose:

To enter the password when you print a PDF file secured with a document open password (password to open the PDF file).

Values:

Enter PDF Password	Enter the document open password to print the secure PDF job.

Remove Blank Page

Purpose:

To specify whether to remove the blank pages.

Values:

Off	Disables the Remove Blank Page feature.
On	Enables the Remove Blank Page feature.

For more information on other settings, see "Scan Settings".

Business Card Reader

Purpose:

To scan the business card and send to you as an attached file (vCard format) of an e-mail.

Values:

Subject	Enters the subject you want to use.
⚙	Sets the settings of the Scan Settings.
💾	Saves the settings of the Scan Settings as Favorite.

Add Apps

Use the `Add Apps` menus to add a variety of tiles on the **Home** screen.

Panel Lock

This feature prevents unauthorized personnel from changing the settings made by the administrator. For regular printing, items can be selected from the menu and printer settings remain unchanged. For regular printing, items can be configured using the printer driver.

> ✍ **NOTE:** Disabling the operator panel menus does not prevent access to the Stored Print and Tray Settings menus.

Enabling the Panel Lock

1 Press the ⓘ (**Information**) button.
2 Tap the `Tools` tab, and then tap `Admin Settings`.
3 Tap ▾ until `Secure Settings` appears, and then tap `Secure Settings`.
4 Tap `Panel Lock`.
5 Tap `Panel Lock Control`.
6 Tap `Enable`, and then tap `OK`.
7 Enter the new password, and then tap `OK`.

> ⚠ **CAUTION: Be sure to remember the password. The procedure described below allows you to reset the password, but the settings for Address Book and Phone Book are cleared.**

- Turn off the printer. Then, while holding the ⓘ (**Information**) button, turn on the printer. Perform steps 7 and 8.

8 Re-enter the password to confirm the password that you entered, and then tap `OK`.

The password has been changed.

To change the password while `Panel Lock` is `Enable`, perform steps 1 to 4 above, and then tap `Change Password`. Perform steps 7 and 8 above to change the password.

Disabling the Panel Lock

1 Press the ⓘ (**Information**) button.
2 Tap the `Tools` tab, and then tap `Admin Settings`.
3 Tap ▾ until `Secure Settings` appears, and then tap `Secure Settings`.
4 Tap `Panel Lock`.
5 Tap `Panel Lock Control`.
6 Tap `Disable`.
7 Enter the current password, and then tap `OK`.

The setting has been changed.

Resetting Defaults

After executing this function and rebooting the printer, the phone book, address book, or menu parameters are reset to their default values.

The following menu parameters are exceptions and are not reset.

- Network settings
- Panel Lock settings and password
- Function Enabled settings (Copy, Scan to E-mail, Fax, Scan to Network, Scan to PC, PC Scan, Scan to USB, USB Direct Print) and passwords
- Secure Receive settings and password
- Login Error settings
- Set Available Time settings
- Secure Job Expiration settings
- USB Port settings
- ColorTrack Mode settings
- ColorTrack Error Report settings
- Non Registered User settings

When Using the Operator Panel

1 Press the ⓘ (**Information**) button.
2 Tap the `Tools` tab, and then tap `Admin Settings`.
3 Tap `Maintenance`.
4 Tap ▼ until `Reset Defaults` appears, and then tap `Reset Defaults`.
5 Tap the desired setting, and then tap `Initialize`.

User Fax Section	Resets the phone book data.
User Scan Section	Resets the address book data.
User Account Section	Resets the user registration information.
System Section	Resets the system parameters.

6 Tap `Yes`, `Start`.

The printer is restarted automatically.

17

Print Media Guidelines

Print media refers to paper, labels, envelopes, and coated paper among others. Your printer provides high-quality printing on a variety of print media. Selecting the appropriate print media for your printer helps avoid printing troubles. This section describes selecting and caring for print media.

> **NOTE:** Use only laser print media. Do not use ink jet paper in your printer.

Paper

For the best print quality in color, use 75 g/m^2 (20 lb) xerographic, grain long paper. For the best print quality in black and white, use 90 g/m^2 (24 lb) xerographic, grain long paper. It is recommended that you try a sample first before buying large quantities of any print media.

When loading paper, identify the recommended print side on the paper package, and load the paper accordingly. See "Loading Print Media in Tray1 and the Optional 550-Sheet Feeder" and "Loading Print Media in the MPF" for detailed loading instructions.

Paper Characteristics

The following paper characteristics affect print quality and reliability. It is recommended that you follow these guidelines when evaluating new paper stock.

Weight

The tray automatically feeds paper weights from 60 g/m^2 to 216 g/m^2 (16 lb to 57.6 lb bond) grain long. The multipurpose feeder (MPF) automatically feeds paper weights from 60 g/m^2 to 216 g/m^2 (16 lb to 57.6 lb bond) grain long. Paper lighter than 60 g/m^2 (16 lb) may not feed properly, and could cause paper jams. For best performance, use 75 g/m^2 (20 lb bond) grain long paper.

Curl

Curl is the tendency of print media to curve at its edges. Excessive curl can cause paper feeding problems. Curl usually occurs after the paper passes through the printer, where it is exposed to high temperatures. Storing paper unwrapped, even in the paper tray, can contribute to paper curling prior to printing and cause feeding problems regardless of humidity. When printing on curled paper, straighten the paper and then insert it into the MPF.

Smoothness

The degree of paper smoothness directly affects the print quality. If the paper is too rough, the toner does not fuse on to the paper properly, resulting in poor print quality. If the paper is too smooth, it can cause paper feeding problems. Smoothness between 150 and 250 Sheffield points produces the best print quality.

Moisture Content

The amount of moisture in the paper affects both the print quality and the ability of the printer to feed the paper properly. Leave the paper in its original packaging until you are ready to use it. This limits the exposure of the paper to moisture changes that can degrade its performance.

Grain Direction

Grain refers to the alignment of the paper fibers in a sheet of paper. Grain is either grain long, running the length of the paper, or grain short, running the width of the paper. For 60 g/m^2 to 135 g/m^2 (16 lb to 36 lb bond) paper, grain long fibers are recommended. For paper heavier than 135 g/m^2 (36 lb bond), grain short is preferred.

Fiber Content

Most high-quality xerographic paper is made from 100 % chemically pulped wood. Paper containing fibers such as cotton may lead to degraded paper handling.

Recommended Paper

To ensure the best print quality and feed reliability, use 75 g/m^2 (20 lb) xerographic paper. Business paper designed for general business use also provides acceptable print quality. Only use paper able to withstand high temperatures without discoloring, bleeding, or releasing hazardous emissions. The laser printing process heats paper to high temperatures. Check with the manufacturer or vendor to determine whether the paper you have chosen is acceptable for laser printers.

It is recommended that you try a sample first before buying large quantities of any print media. When choosing any print media, you should consider the weight, fiber content, and color.

Unacceptable Paper

The following paper types are not recommended for use with the printer:

- Chemically treated paper used to make copies without carbon paper, also known as carbonless paper, carbonless copy paper (CCP), or no carbon required (NCR) paper.
- Preprinted paper with chemicals that may contaminate the printer.
- Preprinted paper that can be affected by the temperature in the fusing unit.
- Preprinted paper that requires a registration (the precise print location on the page) greater than ±0.09 inches, such as optical character recognition (OCR) forms.

  In some cases, you can adjust registration with your software program to successfully print on these forms.

- Coated paper (erasable bond), synthetic paper, and thermal paper.
- Rough-edged, rough or heavily textured surface paper, or curled paper.
- Recycled paper containing more than 25 % post-consumer waste that does not meet DIN 19 309.
- Multiple-part forms or documents.
- Print quality may deteriorate (blank spaces or blotches may appear in the text) when printing on talc or acid paper.

Selecting Paper

Proper paper selection helps prevent jams and ensures trouble-free printing.

To help avoid jams or poor print quality:

- Always use new, undamaged paper.
- Before loading the paper, identify the recommended print side of the paper. This information is usually indicated on the paper package.
- Do not use paper that you have cut or trimmed.
- Do not mix print media sizes, weights, or types in the same source. This may result in a paper jam.
- Do not remove the tray while printing is in progress.
- Ensure that the paper is properly loaded in the tray.
- Flex the paper back and forth, and then fan them. Straighten the edges of the stack on a level surface.
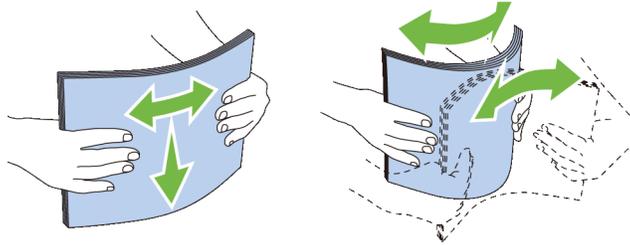
Selecting Pre-Printed Media and Letterheads

When selecting pre-printed and letterhead paper for the printer:

- Use grain long paper for best results.
- Use only forms and letterheads printed using an offset lithographic or engraved printing process.
- Select paper that absorb ink, but does not bleed.
- Avoid paper with rough or heavily textured surfaces.
- Use paper printed with heat-resistant inks designed for use in xerographic copying machines. The ink must withstand temperatures of 225 °C (437 °F) without melting or releasing hazardous emissions.
- Use inks that are not affected by the resin in the toner or the silicone in the fusing unit. Inks that are oxidation-set or oil-based should meet these requirements; latex inks might not. If you are in doubt, contact your paper supplier.

Selecting Pre-Punched Paper

When selecting pre-punched paper for the printer:

- Test paper from several manufacturers before ordering and using large quantities of pre-punched paper.
- Paper should be punched at the paper manufacturer and not drilled into paper already packaged in a ream. Drilled paper can cause jams when multiple sheets feed through the printer. This may result in a paper jam.
- Pre-punched paper can include more paper dust than standard paper. Your printer may require more frequent cleaning and feed reliability may not be as good as standard paper.
- Weight guidelines for pre-punched paper are the same as non-punched paper.

Envelopes

Depending on the envelopes, it is possible to expect variable levels of wrinkling. It is recommended that you try a sample first before buying large quantities of any print media. See "Loading an Envelope in the MPF" for instructions on loading an envelope.

When printing on envelopes:

- Use only high-quality envelopes that are designed for use in laser printers.
- Set the print media source to the MPF. Set the paper type to **Envelope**, and select the correct size of envelope from the printer driver.
- Use envelopes made from 75 g/m^2 (20 lb bond) paper. You can use up to 105 g/m^2 (28 lb bond) weight for the envelope feeder as long as the cotton content is 25 % or less. Envelopes with 100 % cotton content must not exceed 90 g/m^2 (24 lb bond) weight.
- Use only freshly unpackaged, undamaged envelopes.
- Use envelopes that can withstand temperatures of 205 °C (401 °F) without sealing, excessive curling, wrinkling, or releasing hazardous emissions. If you have any doubts about the envelopes you are considering, check with the envelope supplier.

- Adjust the guide to fit the width of the envelopes.

- To load an envelope into the MPF, insert the envelope with the flaps closed or open and the short-edge of the envelope facing into the printer. The print side must be facing up.

- See "Loading an Envelope in the MPF" for instructions on loading an envelope.

- Use one envelope size during a print job.

- Ensure that the humidity is low because high humidity (more than 60 %) and the high printing temperatures may seal the envelopes.

- For best performance, do not use envelopes that:
  – Have excessive curl or twist
  – Are stuck together or damaged in any way
  – Contain windows, holes, perforations, cutouts, or embossing
  – Use metal clasps, string ties, or metal folding bars
  – Have an interlocking design
  – Have postage stamps attached
  – Have any exposed adhesive when the flap is in the sealed or closed position
  – Have nicked edges or bent corners
  – Have rough, cockle, or laid finishes

Labels

Your printer can print on many labels designed only for use with laser printers.

When selecting labels:

- Label adhesives, face sheet (printable stock), and topcoats must be able to withstand temperatures of 205 °C (401 °F) and pressure of 25 pounds per square inch (psi).

- Use labels that can be without sealing, excessive curling, wrinkling, or releasing hazardous emissions.

- Do not use label sheets with a slick backing material.

⚠ **CAUTION: Before buying large quantities of any print media, it is recommended that you try a sample first.**

When printing on labels:

- Use labels that can withstand temperatures of 205 °C (401 °F) without sealing, excessive curling, wrinkling, or releasing hazardous emissions.

- Set the paper type to **Label** from the printer driver.

- Load labels in the MPF. Tray1 and the optional 550-sheet feeder do not support labels.

- Do not load labels together with paper in the MPF.

- Do not print within 1 mm (0.04 inches) of the die-cut.

- Do not print within 1 mm (0.04 inches) of the edge of the label, of the perforations, or between die-cuts of the label.

- Do not print a label through the printer more than once.

- Portrait orientation is preferred, especially when printing bar codes.

- Do not use labels that have exposed adhesive.

- Use full label sheets. Partial sheets may cause labels to peel off during printing, resulting in a jam.

- Do not use label sheets that have adhesive to the edge of the sheet. It is recommended that zone coating of the adhesive is done at least 1 mm (0.04 inches) away from edges. Adhesive material contaminates your printer and could void your warranty.

⚠ **WARNING: Otherwise a jam occurs in the printer and contaminate your printer and your cartridges with adhesive. As a result, could void your printer and cartridge warranties.**

Storing Print Media

For proper print media storage, the following guidelines will help to avoid media feeding problems and uneven print quality.

- Store print media in an environment where the temperature is approximately 21 °C (70 °F) and the relative humidity is 40 %.
- Store cartons of print media on a pallet or shelf, rather than directly on the floor.
- If you store individual packages of print media out of the original carton, ensure that they rest on a flat surface so that the edges do not buckle or curl.
- Do not place anything on top of the print media packages.

Identifying Print Media and Specifications

The following tables show print media information.

Supported Paper Sizes

Paper size	MPF	Tray1	Optional 550-sheet feeder	Duplex unit
A4 (210 x 297 mm)	Y	Y	Y	Y
B5 (182 x 257 mm)	Y	Y	Y	Y
A5 (148 x 210 mm)	Y	Y	Y	Y
Letter (8.5 x 11 in)	Y	Y	Y	Y
Folio (8.5 x 13 in)	Y	Y	Y	Y
Legal (8.5 x 14 in)	Y	Y	Y	Y
Executive (7.25 x 10.5 in)	Y	Y	Y	Y
Envelope #10 (4.125 x 9.5 in)	Y	N	N	N
Monarch (3.875 x 7.5 in)	Y	N	N	N
DL (110 x 220mm)	Y	N	N	N
C5 (162 x 229mm)	Y	N	N	N
Custom[1, 2]	Y	Y	Y	Y

[1] Custom: width: 76.2 mm (3.0 inches) to 215.9 mm (8.5 inches) for the MPF; 148 mm (5.83 inches) to 215.9 mm (8.5 inches) for tray1 and the optional 550-sheet feeder
length: 127.0 mm (5.0 inches) to 355.6 mm (14.00 inches) for the MPF; 210 mm (8.27 inches) to 355.6 mm (14.00 inches) for tray1 and the optional 550-sheet feeder

[2] XPS driver does not support custom size paper.

Supported Paper Types

Paper type		MPF		Tray1		Optional 550-sheet feeder		Duplex unit	
		Side 1	Side 2	Side 1	Side 2	Side 1	Side 2	Side 1	Side 2
Plain	Light	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N
	Normal	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N
	Thick	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N
Covers	Normal	Y	N	Y	N	Y	N	Y	N
	Thick	Y	N	Y	N	Y	N	N	N
Coated	Normal	Y	N	Y	N	Y	N	Y	N
	Thick	Y	N	Y	N	Y	N	N	N
Label	Normal	Y	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
	Light	Y	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
Envelope		Y	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
Recycled		Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N
Letterhead		Y	N	Y	N	Y	N	Y	N
Preprinted		Y	N	Y	N	Y	N	Y	N
Prepunched		Y	N	Y	N	Y	N	Y	N
Color		Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N

NOTE: For Plain and Label paper, you can set the paper density by selecting the Paper Density (Light or Normal) under Maintenance from the operator panel, **Tool Box**, or **Dell™ Printer Configuration Web Tool**. Once you set the Paper Density settings, the printer uses the settings for Plain and Label paper.

NOTE: Coated paper can only be fed one by one.

Paper Type Specifications

Paper type	Weight (g/m^2)	Remarks
Plain	60–90	-
Plain Thick	80/90–105	-
Recycled	60–105	-
Labels	-	Inkjet printer paper cannot be used.
Covers	106–163	-
Covers Thick	164–216	-
Envelope	-	-
Coated	106–163	Inkjet printer paper cannot be used.
Coated Thick	164–216	Inkjet printer paper cannot be used.
Letterhead	60–90	-
Preprinted	60–90	-
Prepunched	60–90	-
Color	60–90	-

Loading Print Media

Loading print media properly helps prevent jams and ensures trouble-free printing.

Before loading any print media, identify the recommended print side of the print media. This information is usually indicated on the print media package.

Capacity

Tray1 can hold:

* 250 sheets of the standard paper.

The optional 550-sheet feeder (tray2) can hold:

* 550 sheets of the standard paper.

The multipurpose feeder (MPF) can hold:

* 150 sheets of the standard paper.

Print Media Dimensions

The maximum dimensions of print media that tray1 and the optional 550-sheet feeder can handle are:

* Width — 148 mm (5.83 inches) to 215.9 mm (8.5 inches)
* Length — 210 mm (8.27 inches) to 355.6 mm (14.00 inches)

The maximum dimensions of print media that the MPF can handle are:

* Width — 76.2 mm (3.00 inches) to 215.9 mm (8.5 inches)
* Length — 127 mm (5.00 inches) to 355.6 mm (14.00 inches)

Loading Print Media in Tray1 and the Optional 550-Sheet Feeder

This section describes how to load letterhead. For details about loading print media other than letterhead, see "Loading Paper."

📝 **NOTE:** To avoid paper jams, do not remove the tray while printing is in progress.

📝 **NOTE:** Use only laser print media. Do not use ink jet paper in the printer.

Loading Letterhead (Pre-Printed and Pre-Punched Paper)

The pre-printed paper such as letterhead and pre-punched paper must be inserted bottom edge first with the print side facing down as shown below.

📝 **NOTE:** Set `Letterhead 2-Sided` or `Letterhead Duplex Mode` to `Enable` and `Paper Type` to `Letterhead`, `Preprinted`, or `Prepunched` from the operator panel or the printer driver even when you print on a single side of letterhead, pre-printed, or pre-punched paper.

Print media source	Print side	Page orientation
Tray1 and optional 550-sheet feeder	Face down	Letterhead enters the printer last
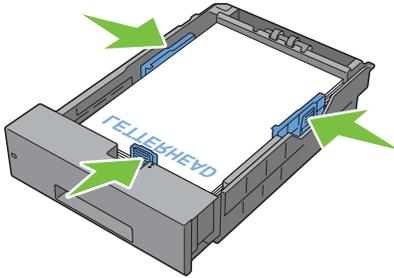
Print media source	Print side	Page orientation
MPF	Face down	Letterhead enters the printer last
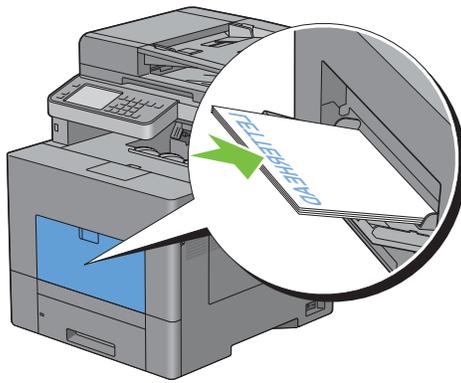
Loading Print Media in the MPF

1 Gently pull open the MPF cover.
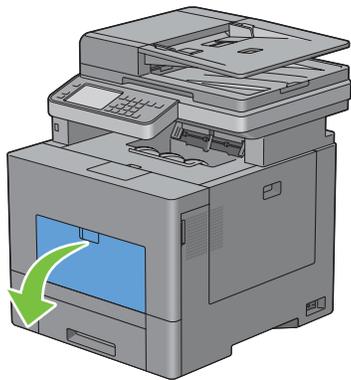
2 Extend the extension tray as necessary.
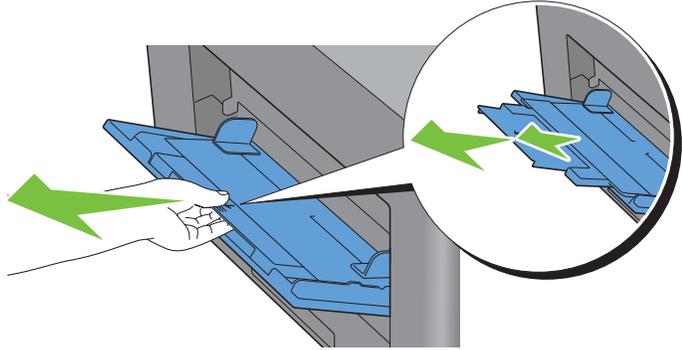
3 Slide the width guides to the edge of the tray. Th width guides should be fully extended.
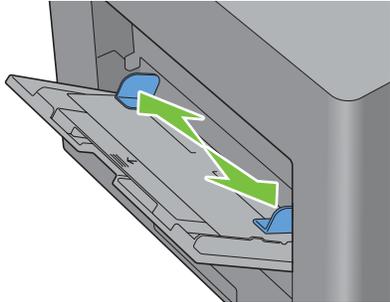
4 Insert all media facing up and top edge first into the MPF.

> ✍ **NOTE:** Do not force the print media into the MPF.
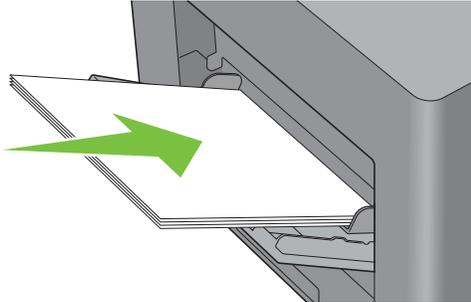
5 Slide both width guides until they rest lightly against the edge of the print media stack.

> 🖉 **NOTE:** Do not force the print media into the MPF.
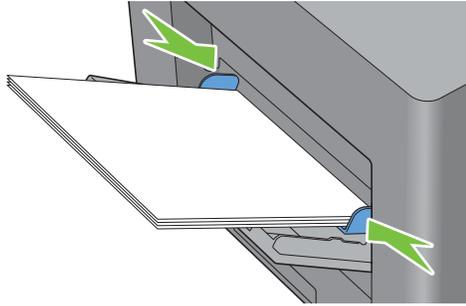
6 On the touch panel, tap `Size`.

7 Tap ▾ or ▴ until the desired paper size appears, and then select the size.

8 Tap `Type`.

9 Tap ▾ or ▴ until the desired paper type appears, and then select the type.

10 Tap `OK`.

Loading an Envelope in the MPF

Use the following guidelines when loading envelopes in the MPF:

> ⚠️ **CAUTION: Never use envelopes with windows, coated linings, or self-stick adhesives. These lead to paper jams and can cause damage to the printer.**

> 🖉 **NOTE:** If you do not load envelopes in the MPF right after they have been removed from the packaging, they may bulge. To avoid jams, press firmly across the whole envelopes to flatten them as shown below before loading the envelopes in the MPF.
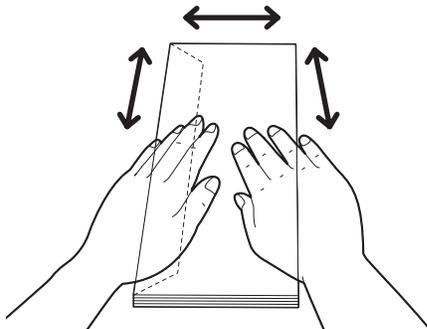
> 🖉 **NOTE:** The maximum height (quantity) of envelopes that can be loaded in the MPF is approximately 15 mm (0.59 inches) (15 envelopes).

Envelope #10, Monarch, or DL

Load the envelopes short edge feed with the flaps closed and the print side up. Ensure that the flaps come at the left when you face towards the printer.
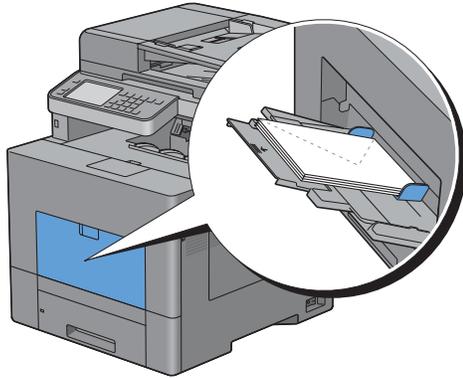
C5

Load the envelopes short edge feed with the flaps open or closed and the print side up.

Ensure that the flaps come at the bottom with the flaps open or at the top with the flaps closed when you face towards the printer.
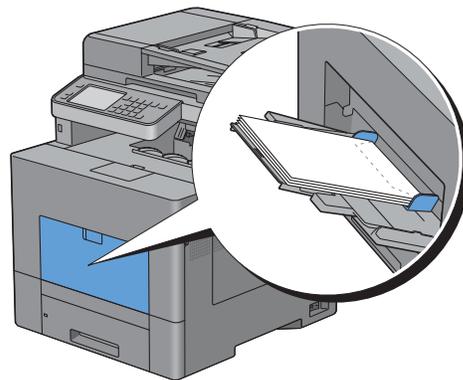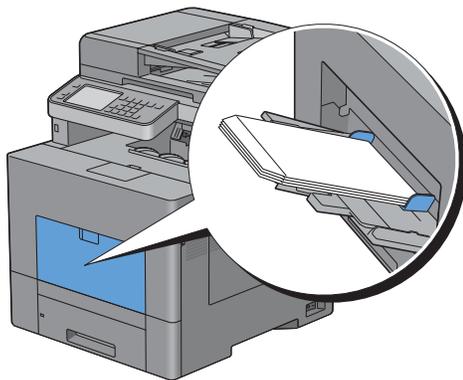
Using the MPF

- Load only one size and type of print media during a single print job.

- To achieve the best possible print quality, use only high-quality print media that is designed for use in laser printer. For more guidelines on print media, see "Print Media Guidelines."

- Do not add or remove print media when there is still print media in the MPF or when the printer is printing from the MPF. This may result in a paper jam.

- Print media should be loaded with the recommended print side up and the top of the print media going into the MPF first.

- Do not place objects on the MPF. Also, avoid pressing down or apply excessive force on it.

- The icons on the MPF show how to load the MPF with paper, and how to turn an envelope for printing.

Linking Trays

The printer automatically links the trays when you load the same size and type of print media in them. The first tray will be utilized until the media runs out after which the next tray will be used.

> **NOTE:** The print media should be the same size and type in each tray.
> The MPF cannot be linked to any of the tray sources.

After loading the selected trays with the same size and type of print media, select the Paper Type setting in the Tray Settings component for each source (tray).

To disable tray linking change the paper type in one of the sources (trays) to a unique value.

> **NOTE:** If different types of print media of the same size are loaded in each tray, the printer will automatically link them if the paper type is not specified in the printer driver properties/preferences.

Printing, Copying, Scanning, Faxing, and Dell Document Hub

Printing

This chapter covers tips for printing, how to print certain information from your printer, and how to cancel a job.

Tips for Successful Printing

Tips on Storing Print Media

Store your print media properly. For more information, see "Storing Print Media."

Avoiding Paper Jams

⚠ **CAUTION: Before buying large quantities of any print media, it is recommended that you try a sample first.**

By selecting appropriate print media and loading it properly, you can avoid paper jams. See the following instructions on loading print media:

- "Loading Paper"
- "Loading Print Media in the MPF"
- "Avoiding Jams"

If you encounter a paper jam, see "Clearing Jams."

Sending a Job to Print

To support all of the printer features, use the printer driver. When you choose **Print** from an application, a window representing the printer driver opens. Select the appropriate settings for the specific job that you are sending to print. Print settings selected from the driver override the default menu settings selected from the operator panel or **Tool Box**.

You may need to click **Preferences** from the initial **Print** box to see all of the available system settings you can change. If you are not familiar with a feature in the printer driver window, open the online Help for more information.

To print a job from a typical Microsoft® Windows® application:

1 Open the file you want to print.

2 From the **File** menu, select **Print**.

3 Verify that the correct printer is selected in the dialog box. Modify the print settings as appropriate (such as the pages you want to print or the number of copies).

4 Click **Preferences** to adjust system settings that are not available from the first screen, and then click **OK**.

5 Click **OK** or **Print** to send the job to the selected printer.

📝 **NOTE:** When you print on a small size medium such as an envelope, lift the operator panel so that you can easily remove the printed media from the output tray.

Canceling a Print Job

There are several methods for canceling a job.

- Canceling a Job From the Operator Panel
- Canceling a Job From a Computer Running Windows

Canceling a Job From the Operator Panel

To cancel a job after it has started printing:

1 Tap `Stop`.

Printing is canceled only for the current job. All the following jobs will continue to print.

To cancel a job before it has started printing:

1 Press the ⬚ button.

A list of print jobs appears.

2 Tap the desired job to cancel.

3 Tap `Stop`.

4 Tap `Stop Job`.

Canceling a Job From a Computer Running Windows

Canceling a Job From the Taskbar

When you send a job to print, a small printer icon appears in the bottom right corner of the taskbar.

1 Double-click the printer icon.

A list of print jobs appears in the printer window.

2 Select the job you want to cancel.

3 Press the <Delete> key.

Canceling a Job From the Desktop

1 Click **Start→ Devices and Printers**.

For Windows XP: Click **start→ Printers and Faxes**.

For Windows Vista®: Click **Start→ Control Panel→ Hardware and Sound→ Printers**.

For Windows Server® 2008: Click **Start→ Control Panel→ Printers**.

For Windows Server 2008 R2: Click **Start→ Devices and Printers**.

For Windows 8: Under Desktop mode, right-click the bottom left corner of the screen, and then click **Control Panel → Hardware and Sound → Devices and Printers**.

For Windows Server 2012: Under Desktop mode, right-click the bottom left corner of the screen, and then click **Control Panel → Hardware → Devices and Printers**.

A list of available printers appears.

2 Right-click the printer that you selected when you sent the job for print, and then select **See what's printing**.

3 Select the printer driver.

A list of print jobs appears in the printer window.

4 Select the job you want to cancel.

5 Press the <Delete> key.

Duplex Printing

Duplex printing (or two-sided printing) allows you to print on both sides of a sheet of paper. For sizes that are acceptable for duplex printing, see "Supported Paper Sizes."

Duplex Printing With Duplex Unit

1 Click **Start→ Devices and Printers**.

For Windows XP: Click **start→ Printers and Faxes**.

For Windows Vista: Click **Start→ Control Panel→ Hardware and Sound→ Printers**.

For Windows Server 2008: Click **Start→ Control Panel→ Printers**.

For Windows Server 2008 R2: Click **Start→ Devices and Printers**.

For Windows 8: Under Desktop mode, right-click the bottom left corner of the screen, and then click **Control Panel → Hardware and Sound → Devices and Printers**.

For Windows Server 2012: Under Desktop mode, right-click the bottom left corner of the screen, and then click **Control Panel → Hardware → Devices and Printers**.

2 Right-click the printer and select **Printing Preferences**.

The **General** tab appears.

3 From **Paper Source**, select the paper tray.

For PCL driver:

Select from **Auto**, **Tray1**, **Tray2**, or **MPF**.

For PS driver:

Select from **Automatically Select**, **Tray1**, **Tray2**, or **MPF**.

4 From **Duplex**, select **Flip on Short Edge** or **Flip on Long Edge**.

> ✎ **NOTE:** For details on the **Flip on Short Edge** and **Flip on Long Edge** options, see "Flip on Short Edge" and "Flip on Long Edge."

5 Click **OK**.

Using Booklet Print

To use the booklet print feature, select the **Enable** check box of the **Booklet Printing** in the **Layout** tab.

> ✎ **NOTE:** When the XPS or PS driver is used, booklet print is not available.

> ✎ **NOTE:** You must select **Flip on Long Edge** in the **Duplex** when using the Booklet Print feature.

Flip on Long Edge	Assumes binding along the long edge of the page (left edge for portrait orientation and top edge for landscape orientation). The following illustration shows long-edge binding for portrait and landscape pages:

Portrait **Landscape**
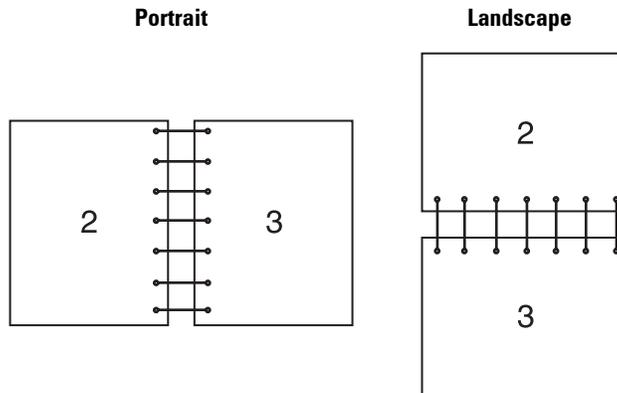
Flip on Short Edge	Assumes binding along the short edge of the page (top edge for portrait orientation and left edge for landscape orientation). The following illustration shows short-edge binding for portrait and landscape pages:

Portrait **Landscape**
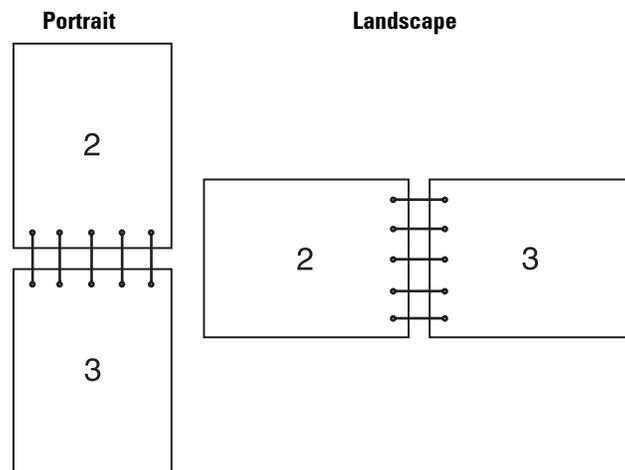
Using the Stored Print Feature

When you send a job to the printer, you can specify in the printer driver to store the job in the memory. When you are ready to print the job, go to the printer and use the operator panel to identify which job in the memory you want to print.

 NOTE: The data in the memory is cleared when the printer is turned off.

 NOTE: Stored Print feature is available when:

- The RAM disk is enabled in the printer menu.
- **RAM Disk** is set to **Available** in the printer driver.

Overview

The stored printing feature includes the following job types.

Secure Print

You can temporarily store print jobs secured with a password in the memory. Users with the password can print them from the operator panel. This feature can be used to print confidential documents. A stored print job will be deleted after you print it or at a designated time.
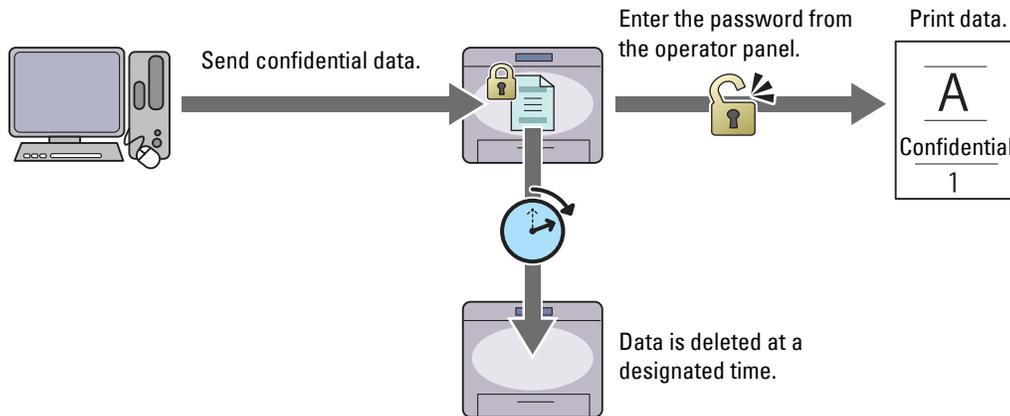
Private Mail Box Print

You can store print jobs secured with a password in the memory. Users with the password can print them at a more convenient time from the operator panel. This feature can be used to print confidential documents. The stored jobs remain in the memory until you delete them from the operator panel.
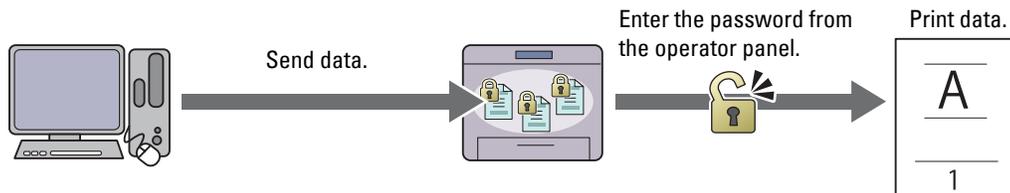
Public Mail Box Print

You can store print jobs without a password in the memory. Any user can print them at a more convenient time from the operator panel. The stored jobs remain in the memory until you delete them from the operator panel.
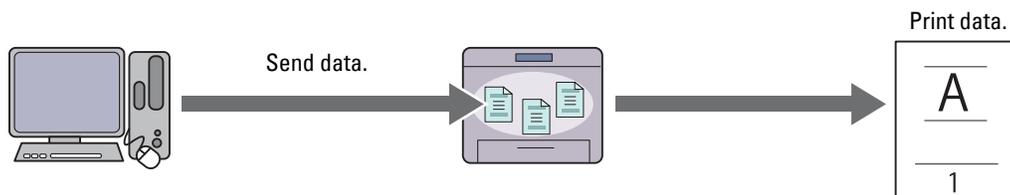
Proof Print

The collated print job is stored in the memory, but a single copy is printed automatically so you can check the print result. If you do not have problems with the print result, you can choose to print more copies. This prevents large number of misprinted copies from being printed at one time.
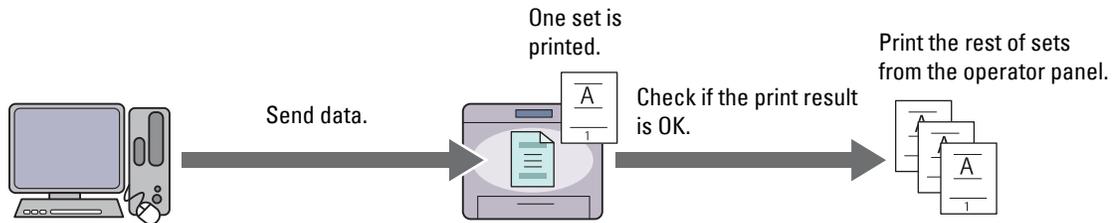
The difference between each of the job types are listed below. If you want to set the password for confidentiality, store the jobs in the Secure Print or Private Mail Box Print.

Job types	Password	Differences
Secure Print	Y	• The stored jobs will be deleted at a designated time. • You cannot specify the quantity of copies from the operator panel. The quantity of copies depends on the number you specified on the printer driver.
Private Mail Box Print	Y	• The stored jobs remain until you delete them from the operator panel.
Public Mail Box Print	N	• You can specify the quantity of copies from the operator panel.
Proof Print	N	• The print job is set to collate. • A single copy is printed automatically. • The stored jobs remain until you delete them from the operator panel. • You can specify the quantity of copies from the operator panel.

NOTE: If a print job is too large for the memory available, the printer may display an error message.

Procedures for Printing Stored Print

NOTE: The stored print feature is available when using the PCL or PS driver.

When you select a job type in the printer driver, the job will be stored in the memory until you request to print it from the operator panel. The following are procedures for storing and printing jobs.

Storing Print Jobs

To use the stored print feature, you need to select a job type other than **Normal Print** in the **General** tab of the printer driver. The job will be stored in the memory until you request to print it from the operator panel.

NOTE: Secure Print and Private Mail Box Print require specifying a password for confidentiality.

NOTE: If a document name is not assigned to your print job in the printer driver, the job's name will be identified using the printer's time and date of submission to distinguish it from other jobs you have stored under your name.

Printing the Stored Jobs

1 Press the 🏠 (**Home**) button.

2 Tap Print.

3 Select a job types such as Secure Print, Private Mailbox, Public Mailbox, or Proof Print.

A list of user ID appears.

4 Tap ▼ until the desired user ID appears, and then tap that user ID.

> ✎ **NOTE:** Secure Print and Private Mail Box Print require specifying a password for confidentiality. If you select Public Mail Box Print or Proof Print, proceed to step 6.

5 Enter the password using the number pad, and then tap OK.

For details about specifying the password, see "Specifying your password on the operator panel (Secure Print/Private Mail Box Print)."

6 Tap ▼ until the desired document appears, and then tap that document.

> ✎ **NOTE:** You can tap Quantity to specify the number of copies. For Secured Print, Quantity is not available.

7 Tap Print.

> ✎ **NOTE:** If you want to keep the data in the memory for the time being, clear the **Print and Delete** check box.

8 Tap OK.

The stored job will be printed.

Specifying your password on the operator panel (Secure Print/Private Mail Box Print)

When you tap Secure Print or Private Mailbox from Print Menu, a screen to enter the password appears after selecting your user ID.

Use the number pad to enter the numeric password you specified in the printer driver. The password you entered will appear as asterisks (*******) to ensure confidentiality.

If you enter an invalid password, the message Wrong Password Retry appears. Wait 3 seconds, or tap Close to return to the screen for entering the password.

When you enter a valid password, you have access to all print jobs matching the user ID and password you entered. The print jobs matching the password you entered appear on the screen. You can then choose to print or delete jobs matching the password you entered. (See "Printing the Stored Jobs" for more information.)

Deleting Stored Jobs

With Secure Print, a job that has been stored will be deleted after printing or deleted at a designated time entered on the operator panel.

For other jobs, these jobs remain stored until you delete them from the operator panel.

Printing from USB Memory

The USB Direct Print feature allows you to print files stored in a USB memory by operating from the operator panel.

> ⚠ **CAUTION: To prevent damage to your printer, do not connect any device other than USB memory to the front USB port of the printer.**

> ⚠ **CAUTION: Do not remove the USB memory from the front USB port until the printer has finished printing.**

> ✎ **NOTE:** If the Function Enabled setting for USB Direct Print is set to On (Password), you need to enter the four digit password to use the print function. If the Function Enabled setting for USB Direct Print is set to Off, the print function is disabled and the menu is also disabled on the screen. For details, see "Function Enabled."

The front USB port of the printer is designed for USB 2.0 devices. You must use only an authorized USB memory with an A plug type connector. Use only a metal shielded USB memory.

A plug type
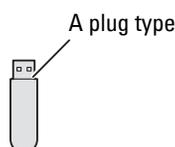
Supported File Formats

Files in the following file formats can be printed directly from a USB memory.

- PDF
- TIFF
- JPEG

Inserting and Removing a USB Memory

You can insert the USB memory before printing or scanning images.

Before removing the USB memory, ensure that the printer is not accessing the USB memory.
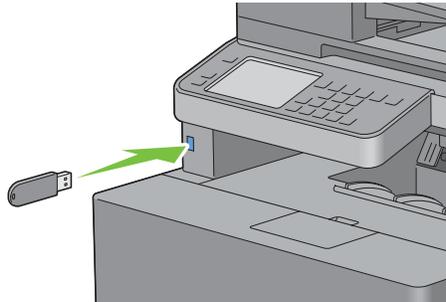
⚠ **CAUTION: If you remove the USB memory while the printer is accessing, the data in the USB memory or the USB memory device itself may be destroyed.**

Printing a PDF/TIFF File in a USB Memory

1 Press the 🏠 (**Home**) button.

2 Insert a USB memory to the front USB port of the printer.

For details about inserting a USB memory, see "Inserting and Removing a USB Memory."

3 Tap `Print PDF/TIFF`.

4 Scroll through the page or tap a folder until the desired files appear, and then tap those files.

> 📝 **NOTE:** Only the following characters are displayed on the touch panel:
> A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 $ % ' ' - @ {} ~ ! # ( ) & _ ^

> 📝 **NOTE:** Up to 10 files can be selected and printed in display order.

5 Tap ⚙ .

6 Specify print options such as `Output Color`, `Select Tray`, `2 Sided Printing`, `Layout`, `Image Types`, `Collation`, and `PDF Password` on the **Print Settings** screen. For details, see "Print PDF/TIFF."

7 Tap `Print` to begin printing.

> 📝 **NOTE:** Color printing is secured with a password if the Function Enabled setting for `USB Direct Print` is set to `On(Color Password)`. If you set `Output Color` to `Full Color` and the Function Enabled setting for `USB Direct Print` to `On(Color Password)`, you will need to enter the four digit password.

> 📝 **NOTE:** Only PDF/TIFF files created using the scan features of your printer can be printed through `Print PDF/TIFF`.

Printing a JPEG File in a USB Memory

1 Press ⌂ (**Home**) button.

2 Insert a USB memory to the front USB port of the printer.

For details about inserting a USB memory, see "Inserting and Removing a USB Memory."

3 Tap `Print JPEG`.

4 Scroll through the page or select a folder until the desired files appear, and then tap those files.

> ✐ **NOTE:** Only the following characters are displayed on the touch panel:
> A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 $ % ' ' - @ {} ~ ! # () & _ ^

> ✐ **NOTE:** Up to 100 files can be selected and printed in display order.

5 Tap ⚙ .

6 Specify print options such as `Output Color`, `Select Tray`, `2 Sided Printing`, `Layout`, `Image Types`, and `Collation` on the **Print Settings** screen. For details, see "Print JPEG."

7 Tap `Print` to begin printing.

> ✐ **NOTE:** Color printing is secured with a password if the Function Enabled setting for `USB Direct Print` is set to `On (Color Password)`. If you set `Output Color` to `Full Color` and the Function Enabled setting for `USB Direct Print` to `On(Color Password)`, you will need to enter the four digit password.

> ✐ **NOTE:** Only JPEG files created using the scan features of your printer can be printed through `Print JPEG`.

Printing With Web Services on Devices (WSD)

This section provides information for network printing with WSD, the protocol of Microsoft for Windows Vista, Windows 7, Windows 8, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 R2, and Windows Server 2012.

Adding Roles of Printer Services

When you use Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 R2 or Windows Server 2012, you need to add the roles of print services to the Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 R2 or Windows Server 2012 client.

For Windows Server 2008:

1 Click **Start**→ **Administrative Tools**→ **Server Manager**.

2 Select **Add Roles** from the **Action** menu.

3 Check the **Print Services** check box on the **Server Roles** window in the **Add Roles Wizard**, and then click **Next**.

4 Check the **Print Server** check box, and then click **Next**.

5 Click **Install**.

For Windows Server 2008 R2:

1 Click **Start**→ **Administrative Tools**→ **Server Manager**.

2 Select **Add Roles** from the **Action** menu.

3 Check the **Print and Document Services** check box on the **Server Roles** window in the **Add Roles Wizard**, and then click **Next**.

4 Click **Next**.

5 Check the **Print Server** check box, and then click **Next**.

6 Click **Install**.

For Windows Server 2012:

1 Click **Server Manager** of the **Start** screen.

2 Select **Add Roles and Features** from the **Manage** menu.

3 Click **Next** on the **Before You Begin** window → Select installation type on the **Installation Type** window → Select destination server on the **Server Selection** window in the **Add Roles and Features Wizard**.

4 Check the **Print and Document Services** check box on the **Server Roles** window, and then click **Next**.

5 Select features on the **Features** window → Confirm installation selections on the **Confirmation** window.

6 Click **Install**.

Printer Setup

You can install your new printer on the network using the *Software and Documentation* disc that shipped with your printer, or using Microsoft Windows' **Add Printer** wizard.

Installing a Printer Driver Using the Add Printer Wizard

1 Click **Start**→ **Devices and Printers** (**Start**→ **Control Panel**→ **Hardware and Sound**→ **Printers** for Windows Vista and Windows Server 2008).

For Windows 8 and Windows Server 2012:

Under Desktop mode, right-click the bottom left corner of the screen, and then click **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** (**Hardware** for Windows Server 2012)→ **Devices and Printers**.

2 Click **Add a printer** to launch the **Add Printer** wizard.

3 Select **Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer**.

4 In the list of available printers, select the one you want to use, and then click **Next**.

> **NOTE:** In the list of available printers, the WSD printer is displayed in the form of **http://IP address/ws/**.

> **NOTE:** If no WSD printer is displayed in the list, enter the printer's IP address manually to create a WSD printer. To enter the printer's IP address manually, follow the instructions below.
> For Windows Server 2008 R2, to create a WSD printer, you must be a member of Administrators group.
> 1. Click **The printer that I want isn't listed**.
> 2. Select **Add a printer using a TCP/IP address or hostname** and click **Next**.
> 3. Select **Web Services Device** from **Device type**.
> 4. Enter the printer's IP address in the **Hostname or IP address** text box and click **Next**.

> **NOTE:** Before installing the driver using the Add Printer wizard on Windows Server 2008 R2 or Windows 7, perform one of the following:
> • Establish the Internet connection so that Windows Update can scan your computer.
> • Add the printer driver to your computer.

5 If prompted, install the printer driver on your computer. If you are prompted for an administrator password or confirmation, type the password or provide confirmation.

6 Complete the additional steps in the wizard, and then click **Finish**.

7 Print a test page to verify print installation.

a Click **Start**→ **Devices and Printers** (**Start**→ **Control Panel**→ **Hardware and Sound**→ **Printers** for Windows Vista and Windows Server 2008).

For Windows 8 and Windows Server 2012:

Under Desktop mode, right-click the bottom left corner of the screen, and then click **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** (**Hardware** for Windows Server 2012)→ **Devices and Printers**.

    b   Right-click the printer you just created, and then click **Printer properties** (**Properties** for Windows Vista and Windows Server 2008).

    c   On the **General** tab, click **Print Test Page**. When a test page prints successfully, installation is complete.

Printing With Wi-Fi Direct™

This section provides information for Wi-Fi Direct printing. Wi-Fi Direct allows your Wi-Fi mobile devices such as computers, smart phone, and tablets, to connect to the printer directly via a Wi-Fi network. With Wi-Fi Direct, you can print documents, photos, or e-mail on your Wi-Fi mobile devices directly without a wireless access point.

📝 **NOTE:** Wi-Fi Direct is available when the optional wireless adapter is installed.

📝 **NOTE:** Wi-Fi Direct is available even if the printer is connected to your wireless network connection using the optional wireless adapter.

📝 **NOTE:** Only printing function is available via the Wi-Fi Direct network.

📝 **NOTE:** The maximum number of devices that can be connected via the Wi-Fi Direct network is 1.

📝 **NOTE:** You cannot connect your mobile device to the internet via the printer's Wi-Fi Direct network.

📝 **NOTE:** Depending on the device, the channel used to connect the device to the printer via Wi-Fi Direct may differ from the channel used by the printer to connect to a network via Wi-Fi infrastructure mode. In such a case, simultaneous connection with Wi-Fi Direct and Wi-Fi infrastructure mode may not work properly.

📝 **NOTE:** The printer connected with Wi-Fi Direct supports the following protocols; LPD, Port9100, WSD (print), Bonjour (mDNS), SNMPv1/v2c, Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool.

Setting Up Wi-Fi Direct

To use Wi-Fi Direct, you need to first set up the Wi-Fi Direct settings from the operator panel of the printer. To connect the mobile device to the printer via Wi-Fi Direct, select the SSID of the printer from the list of wireless networks on the mobile device and enter the passphrase necessary for connection.

Setting Up the Printer

1   Press the ⓘ (**Information**) button.

2   Tap the `Tools` tab, and then tap `Admin Settings`.

3   Tap `Network`.

4   Tap `Wi-Fi Direct`.

5   Tap `Wi-Fi Direct`.

6   Tap `Enable`, and then tap `OK`.

    When a popup message about the devices is displayed, tap `Close`.

7   Tap `Group Role`.

8   Tap `Group Owner`, and then tap `OK`.

9   Tap `Connection Status`.

10 Ensure no device is connected with the Wi-Fi Direct connection.

    📝 **NOTE:** When other device is connected (`1` is displayed on `Connection Status`), you cannot use the Wi-Fi Direct connection. Disconnect the other device from the Wi-Fi Direct network. See "Disconnecting Wi-Fi Direct Network."

11 The printer must be rebooted after you set `Wi-Fi Direct`. After the reboot, repeat steps from 1 to 4.

12 Tap ▾ until `SSID` and `Passphrase` appears, and tap each menu to check what the SSID and passphrase is.

    📝 **NOTE:** To confirm the printer's SSID and passphrase, you can also print the list by tapping `Print Passphrase` under the `Passphrase` menu.

Connecting the Mobile Device

1 Connect the mobile device to the Wi-Fi Direct network.

For Windows 8, Windows RT

a Tap **Settings** in the **PC settings** menu.

b Tap the Wi-Fi icon.

c Tap the printer's SSID, and then tap **Connect**.

d Enter the passphrase, and then tap **Next**.

The mobile device will connect to the printer.

For Windows 7

a Click on the network icon on the taskbar.

b Click the printer's SSID, and then click **Connect**.

c Enter the passphrase, and then click **OK**.

d Click **Cancel** to exit the **Set Network Location** window.

The mobile device will connect to the printer.

For Windows Vista

a Click **Start** → **Connect To**.

b Click the printer's SSID.

c Enter the passphrase, and then click **Connect**.

The mobile device will connect to the printer.

For Windows XP

a Click **Start** → **Control Panel** → **Network Connections**.

b Right-click on the Wireless Network Connection icon, and then select **View Available Wireless Networks**.

c Click the printer's SSID, and then click **Connect**.

d Enter the passphrase, and then click **Connect**.

The mobile device will connect to the printer.

For iOS

a Tap **Settings** → **Wi-Fi**.

b Tap the printer's SSID.

c Enter the passphrase, and then tap **Join**.

The mobile device will connect to the printer.

For Android™

The procedure varies depending on your mobile device you are using. Refer to the manual provided with your mobile device.

2 Install the printer on the mobile device.

For Windows 8, Windows RT

a Click **Devices** in the **PC settings** menu.

b Click **Add a device** in the **Devices** sub-menu.

c Click **Dell_xxxxxx**.

The printer is ready for use.

For Windows XP, Windows Vista, Windows 7

You need to install the printer driver on the mobile device. See "Installing Printer Drivers on Windows®
Computers."

For iOS

You need to install the printing application such as Mobile Print App for Dell, and then the printer is ready for use.

For Android

You need to install the printing application such as Dell Mobile Print, and then the printer is ready for use.

Printing via Wi-Fi Direct

The printing procedure varies depending on your mobile device you are using. Refer to the manual provided with
your mobile device to print as you normally do from the device.

Disconnecting Wi-Fi Direct Network

1 Press the ⓘ (**Information**) button.

2 Tap `Connection Status`.

📝 **NOTE:** The `Connection Status` menu is displayed only when the printer is connected via Wi-Fi Direct.

3 Tap the device name to disconnect.

4 Tap `Disconnect Now` or `Disconnect and Reset Passphrase`.

5 Tap `Yes`.

The selected device is successfully disconnected.

You can also disconnect the device from the following steps.

1 Press the ⓘ (**Information**) button.

2 Tap the `Tools` tab, and then tap `Admin Settings`.

3 Tap `Network`.

4 Tap `Wi-Fi Direct`.

5 Tap `Connection Status`.

6 Tap the device name to disconnect.

7 Tap `Disconnect now`.

8 Tap `Yes`.

Resetting the Passphrase

1 Press the ⓘ (**Information**) button.

2 Tap the `Tools` tab, and then tap `Admin Settings`.

3 Tap `Network`.

4 Tap `Wi-Fi Direct`.

5 Tap ▾ until `Passphrase` appears, and then tap `Passphrase`.

6 Tap `Reset Passphrase`.

7 Tap `Yes`.
The Wi-Fi Direct is disconnected and the passphrase is reset.

Resetting the PIN

1 Press the ⓘ (**Information**) button.

2 Tap the `Tools` tab, and then tap `Admin Settings`.

3 Tap `Network`.

4 Tap `Wi-Fi Direct`.

5 Tap ▼ until `WPS Setup` appears, and then tap `WPS Setup`.

6 Tap `PIN Code`.

7 Tap `Reset Code`.

8 Tap `Yes`.
The Wi-Fi Direct is disconnected and the PIN is reset.

Mobile Printing

The **Dell™ C2665dnf Color Laser Multifunction Printer** supports printing from a variety of mobile devices.

Android OS

Download the Dell Mobile Print app for free from Google Play™. Easy to use and navigate, the Dell Mobile Print app enables direct printing of photos, documents web content and more, to supported Dell printers on a Wi-Fi or Ethernet network.

Scan the QR Code® for quick access to the relevant application store.

For Android OS

Apple iOS

This printer is compatible with AirPrint. For details about AirPrint, see "Printing With AirPrint." This printer is also compatible with Mobile Print App for Dell by ThinxtreamTM, available for free download from App Store.

Scan the QR Code for quick access to the relevant application store.

For Apple iOS

Printing With AirPrint

This section provides information for printing with AirPrint. AirPrint allows you to print through a network with iPad (all models), iPhone (3GS or later), and iPod touch (3rd generation or later) running the latest version of iOS. AirPrint also allows you to accomplish basic network printing with Macintosh (Mac OS X 10.7 or later) without installing additional drivers.

Setting Up AirPrint on Your Printer

To use AirPrint, Bonjour (mDNS) and IPP protocols are required on your printer. Make sure that `Bonjour(mDNS)` and `IPP` are set to `Enable` on the operator panel menu. See "Protocols" for details. `Bonjour(mDNS)` and `IPP` can also be enabled by clicking **Turn on AirPrint** from the **Dell™ Printer Configuration Web Tool**. Follow the procedure below to configure the environment settings for AirPrint from the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**.

1 Ensure that the printer is connected to the network.

2 Launch the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** by entering the IP address of the printer in your web browser. For more information, see "Setting Up the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool" and "Starting the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool."

3 When the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** opens, go to the pages in the **Print Server Settings** tab. Click **Turn on AirPrint** in **Enable AirPrint**. The printer is ready for AirPrint.

> **NOTE:** If the **Turn on AirPrint** button is not active, it means that both `Bonjour (mDNS)` and `IPP` are already set to `Enable` on the operator panel menu and the printer is ready for AirPrint.

Printing via AirPrint

The following procedure uses the iPhone running iOS5 as an example.

1 Open your email, photo, web page, or document you want to print.

2 Tap the action icon   .

3 Tap **Print**.

4 Select your printer and set printer options.

5 Tap **Print**.

> **NOTE:** To cancel the printing job, double click the **Home** button, tap the **Print Center** icon   . If there are more than one job in the queue, select the job you want to cancel, then tap **Cancel Printing**.

Printing With Google Cloud Print™

This section provides information for Google Cloud Print service with your smart phone, tablet, or any other device. By registering the printer to your Google™ account, you can use the Google Cloud Print service to print from various devices connected to the Internet. You can print documents, photos or e-mails using the Google Chrome™ browser or applications such as Google Drive™ on your mobile device. For more information about Google Cloud Print, visit the Google web site.

Preparing to Use the Printer with Google Cloud Print

To use Google Cloud Print, you need to prepare the following in advance:

* Connect the printer to a network that has access to the Internet.

  > **NOTE:** Google Cloud Print supports only IPv4 connection.

  > **NOTE:** If the printer is connected to a network that uses a proxy server, you need to specify the settings in **Proxy Server** from the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**. For more information, see "Proxy Server."

* Acquire a Google account and a Gmail™ address.

- Set `Google Cloud Print` to `Enable` from the operator panel menu, or set **Google Cloud Print** to **On** from the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**.

When using the operator panel

1 Press the 🛈 (**Information**) button.
2 Tap the `Tools` tab, and then tap `Admin Settings`.
3 Tap `Network`.
4 Tap `Protocols`.
5 Tap ▼ until `Google Cloud Print` appears, and then tap `Google Cloud Print`.
6 Tap `Enable`.
7 Turn off the printer, and turn it on again to apply the settings.

When using the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool

1 Launch the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** by entering IP address of the printer in your web browser. For more information, see "Setting Up the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool" and "Starting the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool."
2 When the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** opens, go to the pages in the **Print Server Settings** tab. Click **Port Settings**. In **Port Status**, select the **On** check box for **Google Cloud Print**.

Registering the Printer to Your Google Account

To register the printer to your Google account, follow the procedure below.

1 Launch the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** by entering IP address of the printer in your web browser. For more information, see "Setting Up the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool" and "Starting the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool."
2 When the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** opens, go to the pages in the **Print Server Settings** tab. Click **Register This Device to Google Cloud Print** in **Google Cloud Print**. A sheet with a URL for the Google Cloud Print printer registration web site is printed.
3 From the web browser of your computer, visit the Google web site and sign in with your Google account. Visit the Google Cloud Print registration web site by entering the URL on the printout into your web browser. You can also visit the site by scanning the QR code with your mobile device.
4 On the Google Cloud Print registration web site, click **Finish printer registration**.
5 Click **Manage your printers**. Your printer will be listed in the **Printers** list and will be ready for use with the Google Cloud Print service.

Printing via Google Cloud Print

The printing procedure varies depending on the application or the device you are using. You can see the application list that supports Google Cloud Print service on the Google web site.

Printing From an Application on a Mobile Device

The following procedure uses the Google Drive application on an Android mobile device as an example.

1 Install the Google Drive application on your mobile device.

   ✐ **NOTE:** You can download the application from Google Play.
2 Access the Google Drive application from your mobile device and tap ❯ to select the document.
3 Tap ⠿ and then tap **Print**.
4 Select your printer from the list.

5   Select printer options and then tap **Print**.

Printing From Google Chrome

The following procedure uses the Google Chrome browser on a Windows PC as an example.

1   Open the Google Chrome browser.

2   Open the web page or e-mail that you want to print.

3   Click 🔧 or ☰ (varies depending on the version of the Google Chrome browser) in the top right corner and then click **Print**.

4   Click **Change** in the **Destination** area.

5   Choose your printer from the Google Cloud Print area.

6   Click **Print**.

Printing a Report Page

You can print a variety of settings for your printer including system settings, panel setting, and font list. For details about how to print reports or lists, see "Report / List."

Printer Settings

You can change most of the print settings from the application you are printing from. If your printer is attached to the network, you can also change settings from the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**. To launch the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**, type the printer's IP address in your web browser. To find your printer's IP address, see "Verifying the IP Settings."

Settings from the application update the default system settings for the printer. Settings from the printer driver only apply to the job that you are currently sending to the printer.

If you cannot change a setting from the application, use the operator panel, **Tool Box** or the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**. Changing a system setting from the operator panel, **Tool Box** or from the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** makes that setting the user default.

You can verify the detailed system settings by printing a system settings report. For details about how to print a system settings report, see "Report / List."

You can reset settings to their default values from the **Tool Box** or the operator panel. For details, see "When Using the Tool Box" or "When Using the Operator Panel."

Using the Operator Panel to Change the Printer Settings

You can select menu items and corresponding values from the operator panel.

When you first browse through the menus from the operator panel, you see some menu items are highlighted.

These highlighted items are the factory default and original system settings.

 📝 **NOTE:** Factory defaults may vary for different countries.

When you select a new setting from the operator panel, the item selected is highlighted to identify it as the current user default menu setting.

These settings are active until new ones are selected or the factory defaults are restored.

Driver settings may override changes previously made and may require you to change the operator panel defaults.

Using the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool to Change the Printer Settings

If your printer is connected to the network, you can change the printer settings from your web browser. If you are a network administrator, you can clone the system settings of one printer to one or all the printers on the network.

Type the IP address of your printer in your web browser. Choose **Printer Settings** from the topics list. From the **Printer Settings** tab, select the **System Settings** to change the printer settings.

To change the paper type and size, choose **Tray Management** from the topics list. To change the ColorTrack settings, choose **Print Volume** from the topics list, and then select the **Dell ColorTrack** tab.

To copy your system settings to another printer on the network, choose **Copy Printer Settings** from the topics list, and then type the other printer's IP address.

If you do not know your printer's IP address, see the system settings report or display the TCP/IP settings. For details about how to find your printer's IP address, see "Verifying the IP Settings."

Copying

> ✎ **NOTE:** If the Function Enabled setting for `Copy` is set to `On(Password)`, you need to enter the four digit password to use the copy function. If the Function Enabled setting for `Copy` is set to `Off`, the copy function is disabled and the menu is also disabled on the screen. For details, see "Function Enabled."

Loading Paper for Copying

The instructions for loading paper in the paper tray are the same whether you are printing, faxing, or copying. For details about loading paper, see "Loading Print Media." For details about setting the paper type and size in the tray, see "Print Media Guidelines."

Selecting Paper Tray

After loading the print media for copy output, select the desired paper tray to be used for the copy job.

To select the tray:

1 Press the ⌂ **(Home)** button.

2 Tap `Copy`.

3 Tap `Select Tray`.

4 Tap the desired tray, and then tap `OK`.

You can select `MPF`, `Tray1`, or `Tray2*`.

* `Tray2` is only available when the optional 550-sheet feeder (tray2) is installed.

Preparing a Document

You can use the document glass or the duplex automatic document feeder (DADF) to load an original document for copying, scanning, and sending a fax. You can load up to 50 sheets of 75 g/m^2 (20 lb) documents for one job using the DADF or one sheet at a time using the document glass.

> ⚠ **WARNING: Avoid loading documents that are smaller than 5.5 inches by 5.5 inches (139.7 mm by 139.7 mm) or larger than 8.5 inches by 14 inches (215.9 mm by 355.6 mm), different sizes or weights together, or booklets, pamphlets, transparencies, or documents having other unusual characteristics in the DADF.**

> ⚠ **WARNING: Carbon-paper or carbon-backed paper, coated paper, onion skin or thin paper, wrinkled or creased paper, curled or rolled paper, torn paper, photographs, or transparencies cannot be used in the DADF.**

> ⚠ **WARNING: Do not use the documents with staples, paper clips or exposed to adhesives or solvent based materials such as glue, ink and correcting fluid in the DADF.**

> ✎ **NOTE:** To get the best scan quality, especially for color or gray scale images, use the document glass instead of the DADF.

Making Copies From the Document Glass

✎ **NOTE:** A computer connection is not required for copying.

✎ **NOTE:** Remove any documents from the DADF before copying from the document glass.

✎ **NOTE:** Contaminants on the document glass may cause black spots on the copy output. For best results, clean the document glass before use. For more information, see "Cleaning the Scanner."

To make a copy from the document glass:

1 Lift and open the document cover.
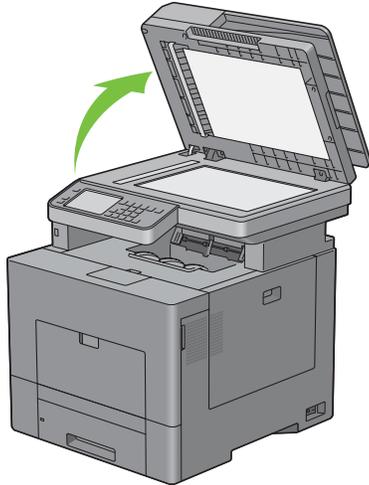
2 Place the document facing down on the document glass and align it with the registration guide on the top left corner of the glass.
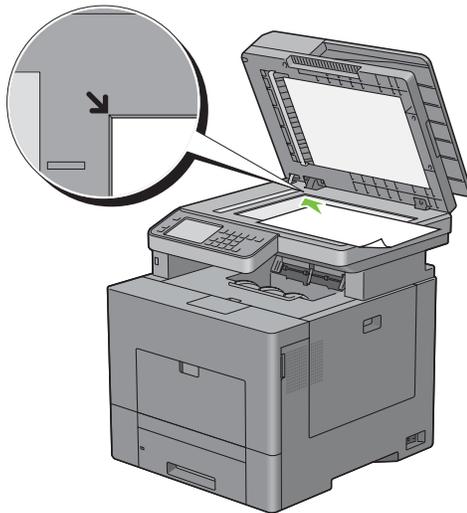
3 Close the document cover.

✎ **NOTE:** Leaving the document cover open while copying may affect the copy quality and increase the toner consumption.

✎ **NOTE:** If you are copying a page from a book or magazine, lift the cover until its hinges are caught by the stopper and then close the cover. If the book or magazine is thicker than 30 mm, start copying with the document cover open.

4 Press the 🏠 (**Home**) button.

To simply make a copy without changing the default copy settings, proceed to step 7.

5 Tap Copy.

To customize the copy settings such as Output Color, Select Tray, and Darken/Lighten, see "Setting Copy Options."

✍ **NOTE:** The copy options automatically return to their default status after the auto clear timer is expired.

6 Tap – or + to specify the number of copies from 1 to 99 in the Quantity tile.

7 Tap Copy to begin copying.

✍ **NOTE:** You can cancel a copy job at any time while scanning a document by tapping Stop.

Making Copies From the DADF

⚠ **CAUTION: Do not load more than 50 sheets into the DADF or allow more than 50 sheets to be fed to the document output tray. The document output tray should be emptied before it exceeds 50 sheets or your original documents may be damaged.**

✍ **NOTE:** A computer connection is not required for copying.

1 Load the document(s) facing up on the DADF with top edge of the documents in first. Then adjust the document guides to the document size.
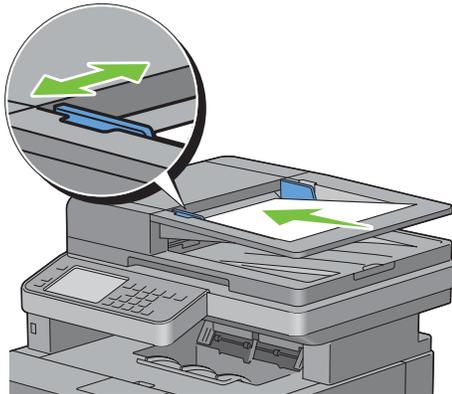
✍ **NOTE:** Ensure that you use the document stopper before copying a legal-size document.

2 Press the 🏠 (**Home**) button.

To simply make a copy without changing the default copy settings, proceed to step 5.

3 Tap Copy.

To customize the copy settings such as Output Color, Select Tray, and Darken/Lighten, see "Setting Copy Options."

✍ **NOTE:** The copy options automatically return to their default status after the auto clear timer is expired.

4 Tap – or + to specify the number of copies from 1 to 99 in the Quantity tile.

5 Tap Copy to begin copying.

✍ **NOTE:** You can cancel a copy job at any time while scanning a document by tapping Stop.

Setting Copy Options

Set the following options for the current copy job before tapping `Copy` to begin copying.

For details about making copies, see "Making Copies From the Document Glass" and "Making Copies From the DADF."

> 📝 **NOTE:** The copy options automatically return to their default status after the auto clear timer is expired.

Options on each tile are below:

- Copy tile
  - Quantity
  - Darken / Lighten
  - Output Color
  - Select Tray
  - 2 Sided Copying
  - Sharpness
  - Reduce / Enlarge
  - Original Size
  - Original Type
  - Collation
  - 2-Up
  - Color Saturation
  - Margin
  - Auto Exposure

Quantity

To specify the number of copies from 1 to 99.

1 Tap – or + to specify the number of copies.

Darken / Lighten

To adjust the contrast to make the copy darker or lighter than the original:

1 Tap `Darken/Lighten`.

2 Drag the desired level on the `Darken/Lighten` bar, and then tap `OK`.

You can select a contrast level from seven levels between `Darken` and `Lighten`.

Drag the indicator on the left side of the bar makes the document contrast lighter, and selecting a cell on the right side of the bar makes the document contrast darker.

Darken 3	Works well with light documents or faint pencil markings.
Darken 2	
Darken 1	
Normal*	Works well with normal typed or printed documents.
Lighten 1	Works well with dark documents.
Lighten 2	
Lighten 3	

* Denotes the factory default setting.

Output Color

To select mode for color or black and white copying:

1 Tap `Output Color`.

2 Tap `Full Color` or `Black & White`.

> ✍ **NOTE:** Color copy is secured with a password if the Function Enabled setting for `Copy` is set to `On(Color Password)`. If you set `Output Color` to `Full Color` and the Function Enabled setting for `Copy` to `On(Color Password)`, you will need to enter the four digit password.

Select Tray

To select the tray:

1 Tap `Select Tray`.

2 Tap the desired setting, and then tap `OK`.

MPF	The paper is fed from the multipurpose feeder.
Tray1*	The paper is fed from tray1.
Tray2	The paper is fed from the optional 550-sheet feeder.

* Denotes the factory default setting.

> ✍ **NOTE:** `Tray2` is only available when the optional 550-sheet feeder is installed.

> ✍ **NOTE:** When `Any` is displayed as the paper size and type in the MPF, you can select the paper size and type from this menu. For details, see "Select Tray."

2 Sided Copying

To make duplex copies with the specified binding position:

1 Swipe the screen until `2 Sided Copying` appears, and then tap `2 Sided Copying`.

2 Tap the desired setting, and then tap `OK`.

1 → 1 Sided*	Select 1 sided or 2 sided and specify binding position for the 2 sided copy.
1 → 2 Sided	
2 → 1 Sided	
2 → 2 Sided	
Long Edge Binding	
Short Edge Binding	

* Denotes the factory default setting.

When you are using the document glass and it is set to `1 → 2 Sided` or `2 → 2 Sided`, the display prompts you for another page after tapping `Copy`.

a If you want to place a new document, replace the document with a new document, and then tap `Continue`.

b If you finish copying, tap `Print Now`.

> ✍ **NOTE:** When you use the DADF to copy both sides of a document, the printed position of the front and back of the document may differ if the size in the document size setting and the size of the document do not match. In this case, set `Original Size` to the same size as the document.

Sharpness

To adjust the sharpness to make the copy image sharper or softer than the original:

1 Swipe the screen until `Sharpness` appears, and then tap `Sharpness`.

2 Tap the desired setting.

Sharpen	Makes the copy image sharper than the original.
Normal*	The color clarity of the image is the same as the original.
Soften	Makes the copy image softer than the original.

* Denotes the factory default setting.

Reduce / Enlarge

To reduce or enlarge the size of a copied image from 25 to 400 percent when you copy original documents from the document glass or DADF:

📝 **NOTE:** When you make a reduced copy, black lines may appear at the bottom of your copy.

1 Swipe the screen until `Reduce/Enlarge` appears, and then tap `Reduce/Enlarge`.

2 Tap the desired setting, and then tap `OK`.

(Inch series)

100%*
50%
64% (Ledger→Letter)
78% (Legal→Letter)
129% (Statement→Letter)
154% (Statement→Legal)
200%

(mm series)

100%*
50%
70% (A4→A5)
81% (B5→A5)
122% (A5→B5)
141% (A5→A4)
200%

* Denotes the factory default setting.

📝 **NOTE:** You can also specify the value in increments of 1 percent from 25 to 400 by tapping – or +.

Original Size

To select the default document size:

1 Swipe the screen until `Original Size` appears, and then tap `Original Size`.

2 Tap the desired setting.

(Inch series)

Auto*
Letter (8.5x11")
Folio (8.5x13")
Legal (8.5x14")
A4 (210x297mm)
A5 (148x210mm)
B5 (182x257mm)
Executive (7.3x10.5")

(mm series)

Auto*
A4 (210x297mm)
A5 (148x210mm)
B5 (182x257mm)
Letter (8.5x11")
Folio (8.5x13")
Legal (8.5x14")
Executive (7.3x10.5")

* Denotes the factory default setting.

Original Type

To select the copy image quality:

1 Swipe the screen until `Original Type` appears, and then tap `Original Type`.

2 Tap the desired setting.

Photo & Text*	Used for documents with both photos and text.
Text	Used for documents with text.
Photo	Used for documents with photos.

* Denotes the factory default setting.

Collation

To sort the copy output: For example, if you make two copies of three page documents, one complete three page document will be printed followed by the second complete document:
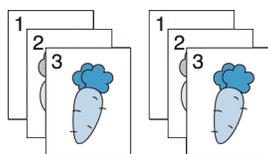
1 Swipe the screen until `Collation` appears, and then tap `Collation`.

2 Tap the desired setting.

Auto*	Only the documents loaded from DADF are copied in collated order.
Collated	Copies in collated order.
Uncollated	Does not copy in collated order.

* Denotes the factory default setting.

When you are using the document glass and it is set to `Collated`, the display prompts you for another page after tapping `Copy`.

a If you want to place a new document, replace the document with a new document, and then tap `Continue`.

b If you finish copying, tap `Print Now`.

2-Up

To print two original images to fit onto one sheet of paper:

Auto:
Automatically reduces the pages to fit in one page.

Manual:
Reduces the pages in the custom size depending on the setting of the `Reduce / Enlarge` menu.
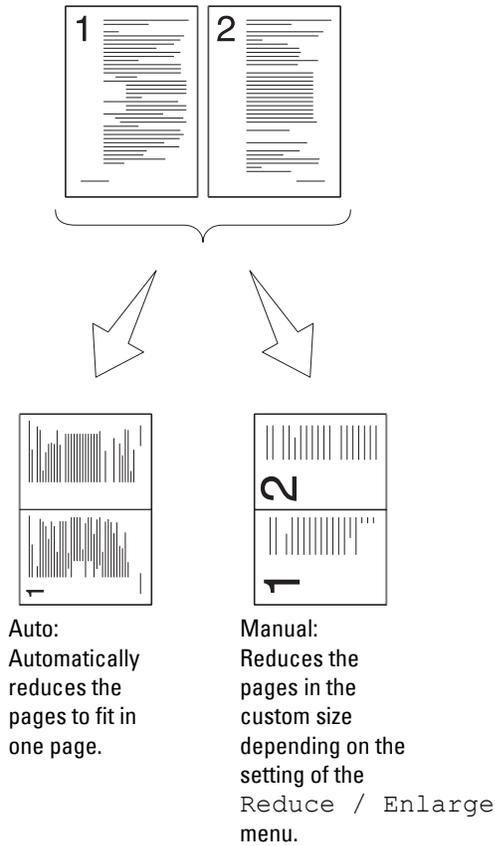
1 Swipe the screen until `2-Up` appears, and then tap `2-Up`.

2 Tap the desired setting, and then tap `OK`.

Off*	Does not perform multiple-up printing.
Auto	Automatically reduces the original pages to fit onto one sheet of paper.
Manual	Prints the original pages onto the one sheet of paper in the size specified in Reduce / Enlarge.

* Denotes the factory default setting.

When you are using the document glass and it is set to `Auto` or `Manual`, the display prompts you for another page after tapping `Copy`.

a If you want to place a new document, replace the document with a new document, and then tap `Continue`.

b If you finish copying, tap `Print Now`.

📝 **NOTE:** When you use the DADF to copy both sides of a document, the printed position of the front and back of the document may differ if the size in the document size setting and the size of the document do not match. In this case, set `Original Size` to the same size as the document.

Color Saturation

To adjust the amount of colors of the copy to make the colors darker or lighter than the original:

1 Swipe the screen until `Color Saturation` appears, and then tap `Color Saturation`.

2 Tap the desired setting.

High	Makes the color of the copy more vivid.
Normal*	The color saturation is the same as the original.
Low	Makes the color of the copy less vivid.

* Denotes the factory default setting.

Margin

To specify the margins of the copy:

1 Swipe the screen until `Margin` appears, and then tap `Margin`.

2 Tap – or + to enter the desired value, and then tap `OK`.

Top / Bottom	0.2 inch* (4 mm*)	Specify the value in increments of 0.1 inch (1 mm).
	Available Range: 0.0–2.0 inches (0–50 mm)	
Left / Right	0.2 inch* (4 mm*)	Specify the value in increments of 0.1 inch (1 mm).
	Available Range: 0–2.0 inches (0–50 mm)	
Middle	0 inches* (0 mm*)	Specify the value in increments of 0.1 inch (1 mm).
	Available Range: 0–2.0 inches (0–50 mm)	

* Denotes the factory default settings.

Auto Exposure

To suppress the background of the original to enhance text on the copy:

1 Swipe the screen until `Auto Exposure` appears, and then tap `Auto Exposure`.

2 Tap `On`.

Using the ID Copy

📝 **NOTE:** If the Function Enabled setting for `ID Copy` is set to `Disable`, the ID copy function is disabled and the menu is also disabled on the screen. For details, see "Function Enabled."

You can copy both sides of an ID card on one side of a single sheet of paper in its original size by tapping `ID Copy` on the touch panel. This feature helps to show both sides of an ID card in one page in its original size.

To make a copy:

1 Place an ID card facing down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

For details about loading a document, see "Making Copies From the Document Glass."

2 Press the ⌂ (**Home**) button.

3 Tap `ID Copy`.

4 Specify the copy settings below as required.

- Quantity
- Darken / Lighten
- Output Color
- Select Tray
- Sharpness
- Color Saturation
- Auto Exposure

For details, see "Setting Copy Options."

5 Tap `Copy` to begin copying.

After the front side of the ID card is scanned, the display prompts you to turn over the card.

a To scan the back side of the ID card, turn the ID card over and tap `Continue`.

b To finish copying, tap `Print Now`.

> ✍ **NOTE:** Color copy is secured with a password if the Function Enabled setting for `Copy` is set to `On(Color Password)`. If you set `Output Color` to `Full Color` and the Function Enabled setting for `Copy` to `On(Color Password)`, you will need to enter the four digit password.

Changing the Default Settings

The default settings of the copy menu options such as `Output Color`, `Select Tray`, and `Darken/Lighten` can be set to the most frequently used modes. When you copy a document, the specified default settings are used unless they are changed by using the operator panel.

The settings on `Default Settings` will be reflected when you create a new tile. If you change the settings on `Default Settings` after creating the new tile, it does not affect the settings of the tile you created earlier. For details about creating a new tile, see "Adding a New Tile."

To create your own default settings:

1 Press the ⓘ (**Information**) button.

2 Tap the `Tools` tab, and then tap `Default Settings`.

3 Tap `Copy Defaults`.

4 Tap ▾ until the desired menu item appears, and then tap that menu item.

5 Tap the desired setting or enter the value, and then tap `OK`.

6 Repeat steps 4 and 5 as needed.

21

Scanning

📝 **NOTE:** If the Function Enabled setting for a scan function (`Scan to E-mail`, `Scan to Network`, `Scan to PC`, `Scan to WSD`, or `Scan to USB`) is set to `On (Password)`, you need to enter the four digit password to use that scan function. If the Function Enabled setting for a scan function is set to `Off`, that scan function is disabled and the menu is also disabled on the screen. For details, see "Function Enabled."

Scanning Overview

Use your Dell™ C2665dnf Color Laser Multifunction Printer to turn pictures and text into editable images on your computer.

The Dell C2665dnf Color Laser Multifunction Printer provides several ways to scan your document. There are two main scanning types. One is operated on the printer side without using the scanner driver, and the other is operated on the computer side using a software and the scanner driver. See the available features below to help you find the information you need.

- Scanning - With scanner driver
- Scanning - Without scanner driver

Scanning - With scanner driver

- Scan into a graphic software such as Adobe® Photoshop® using a TWAIN driver

  (Supporting USB and Network connections for both Microsoft® Windows® and Apple Macintosh using a graphic software)

  See "Scanning Using the TWAIN Driver."

- Scan into a Microsoft's default program such as Windows Photo Gallery and Microsoft Paint, using a Windows Image Acquisition (WIA) driver

  (Supporting USB and Network (including WSD[*]) connections on Windows only)

  [*] WSD (Web Services on Devices)

  See "Scanning Using the Windows Image Acquisition (WIA) Driver."

- Scan and send the scanned document to computer connected via USB cable

  (Supporting USB connection for both Microsoft Windows and Apple Macintosh using bundled software tool of **ScanButton Manager**)

  Using the feature of Scan to PC on the operator panel of your printer, the scanned image is saved in the location of your computer specified with the **ScanButton Manager**.

  See "Scanning From the Operator Panel - Scan to PC."

Scanning - Without scanner driver

- Scan and save the scanned document in a USB memory

  See "Scanning to a USB Memory."

- Scan and send the scanned document by e-mail

  See "Sending an E-Mail With the Scanned Image."

- Scan and send the scanned document to computer or server connected to network

  See "Scanning to a PC or Server via SMB/FTP."

- Scan and send the scanned document to a computer connected to a network using WSD
  See "Scanning from the Operator Panel - Scan to WSD."

The resolution setting to use when you scan an item depends on the item type and how you plan to use the image or document after you scan it to your computer. For the best results, use these recommended settings.

Type	Resolution
Documents	300 dpi black-and-white or 200 dpi grayscale or color
Documents of poor quality or that contain small text	400 dpi black-and-white or 300 dpi grayscale
Photographs and pictures	100–200 dpi color or 200 dpi grayscale
Images for an inkjet printer	150–300 dpi
Images for a high-resolution printer	300–600 dpi

Scanning above these recommended resolutions may exceed the capabilities of the application. If you require a resolution above those recommended in the above table, you should reduce the size of the image by previewing (or pre-scan) and cropping before scanning the image.

Scanning From the Operator Panel - Scan to PC

NOTE: You must connect your computer via USB for selecting the Scan to PC feature from the operator panel. Network connection is not supported.

NOTE: This feature is supported on both Microsoft Windows and Apple Macintosh.

1   Load the document(s) facing up with top edge in first into the DADF.

    OR

    Place a single document facing down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

    For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document."

2   Press the 🏠 (**Home**) button.

3   Tap `Scan to PC`.

4   Specify scan settings such as `Output Color`, `Resolution`, `File Format`, `2-Sided Scanning`, `Darken/Lighten`, `Contrast`, `Sharpness`, `Auto Exposure`, `Original Size`, `Margin`, and `File Naming Mode`. For details, see "Scan Settings."

5   Tap `Scan` to begin scanning the document.

    NOTE: If the following dialog box appears on your computer, select **Dell C2665dnf Color MFP ScanButton Manager**, and then click **OK**.

For Microsoft Windows:
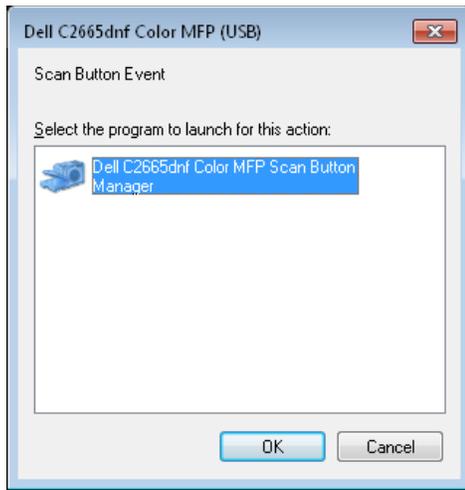
> 🖉 **NOTE:** Once you select **Dell C2665dnf Color MFP ScanButton Manager** with the **Always use this program for this action** check box selected, **Dell C2665dnf Color MFP ScanButton Manager** will automatically open without selecting an application.

> 🖉 **NOTE:** You must use **ScanButton Manager** on your computer to change the settings for scanning. For details, see "ScanButton Manager."

> 🖉 **NOTE:** For Macintosh, the dialog box for selecting a program is not displayed.

ScanButton Manager

The `Scan to PC` stores the image files in the **My Documents** folder by default, and then you can open them using the related application. Use **ScanButton Manager** to change the output destination of the obtained image files and to select whether to open the image files using the related application.

For Microsoft Windows:
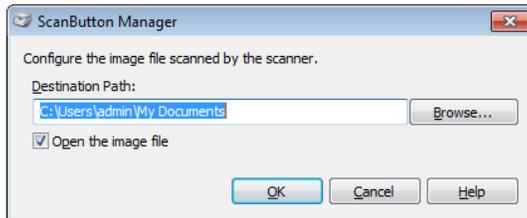
For Apple Macintosh:
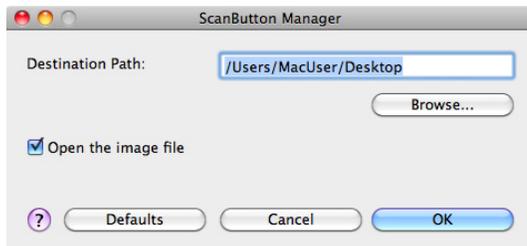
Scanning from the Operator Panel - Scan to WSD

If the printer is connected to a computer via network using WSD (Web Services on Devices), you can use the Scan to WSD function to send scanned images to a computer.

> **NOTE:** To use Scan to WSD, you need to setup connection using WSD.

> **NOTE:** WSD is supported only on Windows Vista®, Windows 7, and Windows 8.

Printer Setup for Scan to WSD

Setup the printer and computer for connection using WSD.

Checking the Printer Setting

To use the Scan to WSD function, `Scan to WSD` needs to be set to `Enable`. See "Protocols" for details.

Setting Up the Computer

> **NOTE:** For Windows 8, the computer automatically connects the printer using WSD. There is no need to install the printer manually.

For Windows 7:

1   Click **Start→ Computer→ Network**

2   Right-click the icon for the printer, and then click **Install**. The printer is connected using WSD.

For Windows Vista:

1   Click **Start→ Network**

2   Right-click the icon for the printer, and then click **Install**.

3   Click **Continue**. The printer is connected using WSD.

Procedures for Scan to WSD

1   Load the document(s) facing up with top edge in first into the DADF.

OR

Place a single document facing down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document."

2   Press the ⌂ (**Home**) button.

3   Tap `Scan to WSD`.

4   Swipe the screen until the desired computer you want to send the scan job to appears, and then select that computer.

5   Specify the type of scan. For details, see "Scan to WSD."

6   Tap `Scan` to begin sending the scanned file.

Scanning Using the TWAIN Driver

Your printer supports the TWAIN driver for scanning images that supports Microsoft Windows XP, Windows Server® 2003, Windows Vista, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows 7, Windows 8, Windows Server 2012, Apple Mac OS X 10.5, Mac OS X 10.6, Mac OS X 10.7, Mac OS X 10.8 works with various scanners.

1 Load the document(s) facing up with top edge in first into the DADF.

OR

Place a single document facing down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document."

2 Start the drawing software that supports TWAIN.

3 To set the location where to store the scanned images:

Click **Desktop→ Folders**.
In the **Folders** panel, specify a destination folder.

4 To set the scanner:

Click **Desktop→ Scan Settings→ Select...**

In the **Available Scanners** dialog box, select **TWAIN: Dell C2665dnf Color MFP**, and then click **OK**.

5 Make sure that **Display scanner dialog box** check box is selected on the **Scan or Get Photo** panel.

6 Click **Scan** to begin scanning process.

The **Dell C2665dnf Color MFP TWAIN Driver** window appears.

For Microsoft Windows:
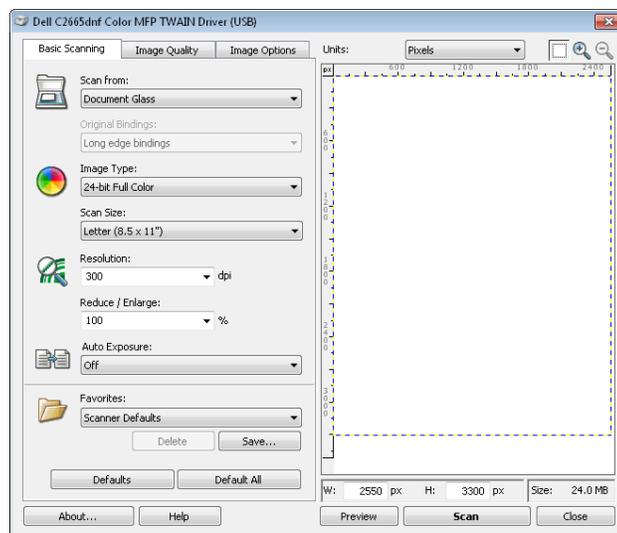
For Apple Macintosh:
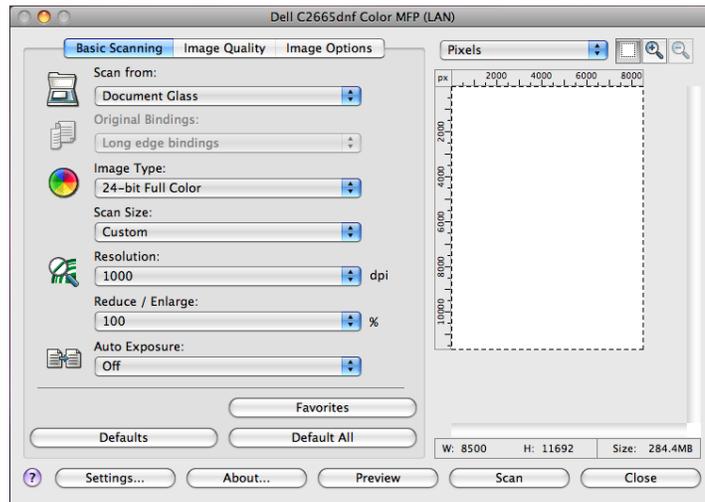
> **NOTE:** The screen image may vary depending on the operating system.

7 In the **Basic Scanning** tab, set the desired preferences, and click **Preview** to display the preview image.

> **NOTE:** The **Preview** feature cannot be used when performing duplex (two-sided) scanning from the DADF.

8 Adjust the settings in the **Image Quality** and **Image Option** tabs.

9 Click **Scan** to start scanning.

10 When the scanning is completed, click **Close** to exit the window.

11 The scanned image is automatically saved in the specified location.

If you want to scan more pages, follow the on-screen instructions to edit the picture after it is copied to your computer.

Scan Settings Tool

You can check the IP address of the printer or set the password using the **Scan Settings Tool**.

To open the **Scan Settings Tool**:

For Microsoft Windows:

Click **Start**→ **All Programs**→ **Dell Printers**→ **Dell C2665dnf Color Laser Multifunction Printer**→ **Scan Settings Tool**.
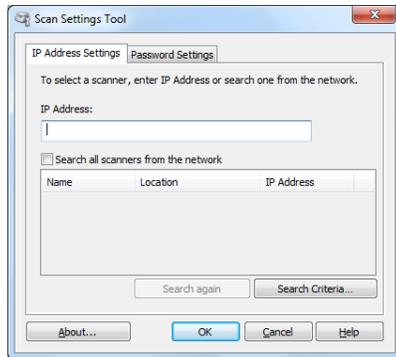
For Apple Macintosh:

Click **Settings** on the main scanning window of the **Dell C2665dnf Color MFP** window.
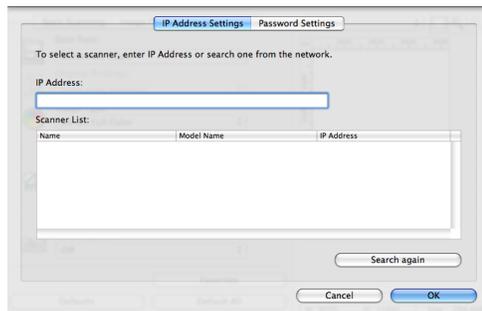
IP Address Settings

In the **IP Address Settings** tab, you can check the IP address that is set for your scanner or change the scanner selection.

- **IP Address**

  Enter the IP address.

- **Search all scanners from the network** (Windows only)

  Searches scanners in your network.

- **Scanner List**

  Displays a list of scanners that are detected.

- **Search again**

  Searches the scanners in your network.

- **Search Criteria** (Windows only)

  Displays the **Search Criteria** dialog box for setting the search condition.

Search Criteria Dialog Box (Windows only)
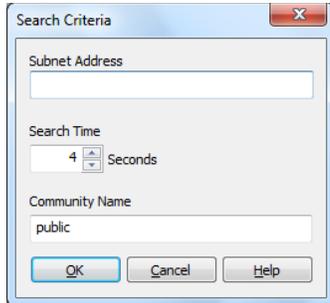
- **Subnet Address**

  Enter the subnet address.

  - IPv4: Broadcast Address such as "192.168.1.255"
  - IPv6: Multicast Address such as "ff02::1"

- **Search Time**

  Specify a time period for searching a scanner.

- **Community Name**

  Enter the SNMPv1/v2 community name. The default community name is "public."

Password Setting

In the **Password Setting** tab, you can input the password that is set for your scanner to access from your computer to the printer.

For Microsoft Windows:
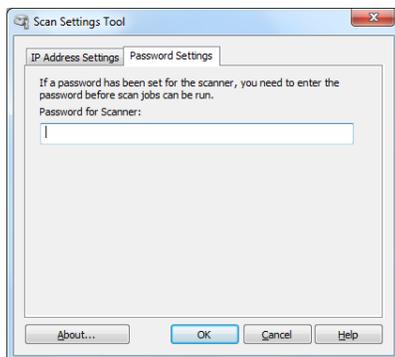
For Apple Macintosh:
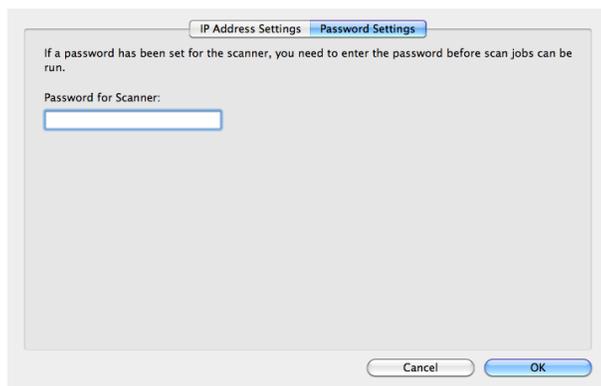
- **Password for Scanner**

  Enter the password.

Scanning Using the Windows Image Acquisition (WIA) Driver

Your printer also supports the WIA driver for scanning images. WIA is one of the standard components provided by Microsoft Windows XP and later operating systems and works with digital cameras and scanners. Unlike the TWAIN driver, the WIA driver allows you to scan an image and easily manipulate those images without using additional software.

✍ **NOTE:** The Windows Image Acquisition (WIA) driver is supported only on Windows.

To scan an image from the drawing software:

1 Load the document(s) facing up with top edge in first into the DADF.

   OR

   Place a single document facing down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

   For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document."

2 Start the drawing software, such as Microsoft Paint for Windows.

   ✍ **NOTE:** When you use Windows Vista or Windows Server 2008, use Windows Photo Gallery instead of Microsoft Paint.

   ✍ **NOTE:** When using applications that utilize WIA 2.0, such as Windows Fax and Scan on Windows Vista, Windows 7 and Windows 8, the **Feeder (Scan both sides)** option can be selected for duplex (two-sided) scanning.

3 Click **File→ From Scanner or Camera** (**Paint** button→ **From scanner or camera** for Windows 7, Windows 8, Windows Server 2008 R2, and Windows Server 2012).

The **Scan using Dell C2665dnf Color MFP** (*USB or LAN*) window appears.

> NOTE: The screen image may vary depending on the operating system.

4 Select your desired type of picture that you want to scan, and click **Adjust the quality of the scanned picture** to display the **Advanced Properties** dialog box.

5 Select the desired properties including brightness and contrast, and then click **OK**.

6 Click **Scan** to start scanning.

7 Click **File→ Save** to save your scanned document in your desired location on your computer.

To scan an image from Control Panel:

> NOTE: This feature is supported on Microsoft Window Server 2003 and Windows XP only.

1 Load the document(s) facing up with top edge in first into the DADF.

OR

Place a single document facing down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document."

2 Click **Start→ Control Panel→ Printers and Other Hardware→ Scanners and Cameras**.

3 Double-click the scanner icon. The **Scanner and Camera Wizard** launches.

4 Click **Next** to display the **Choose Scanning Preferences** page.
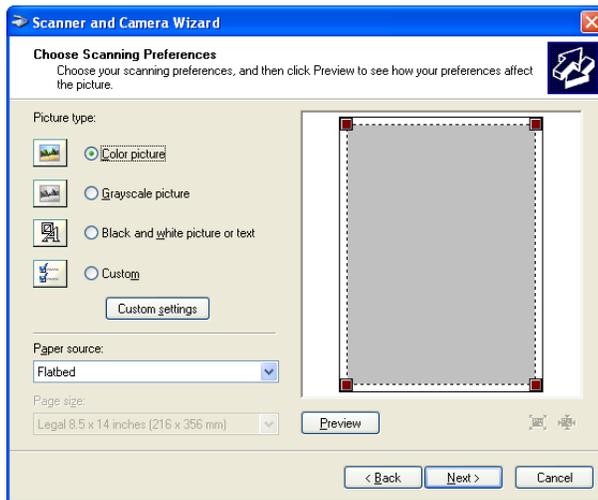
> ✎ **NOTE:** The screen image may vary depending on the operating system.

5 Select your desired type of picture, paper source, and paper size, and click **Next**.

6 Enter a picture name, select a file format, and specify the desired location to save the scanned document.

7 Click **Next** to start scanning.

8 Follow the on-screen instructions to edit the picture after it is copied to your computer.

Scanning to a PC or Server via SMB/FTP

> ✎ **NOTE:** This feature does not require a network scan driver.

Overview

The Scan to Network feature allows you to send the scanned documents to a computer or FTP server.
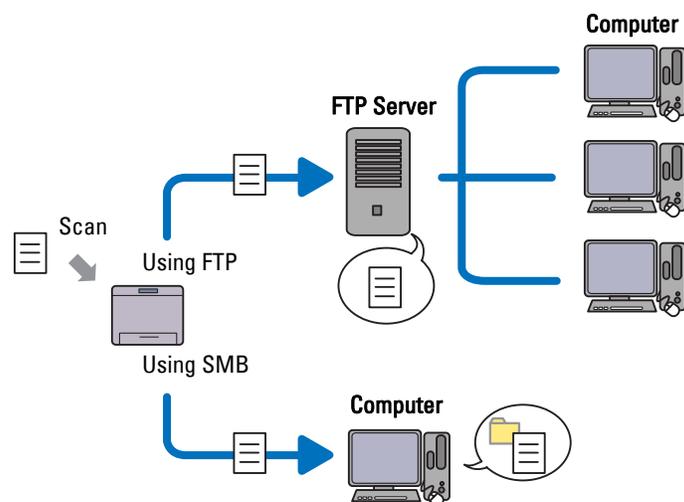
Required operating systems:

For FTP:

✐ **NOTE:** For information on how to configure the FTP service, refer to the manual provided with the software.

✐ **NOTE:** Microsoft Windows Server 2003, Windows XP, Windows Vista, Mac OS X 10.5 support IPv4 only.

- Microsoft Windows XP Professional

  FTP service of Microsoft Internet Information Services 5.1

- Microsoft Windows Server 2003 Service Pack 1

  FTP service of Microsoft Internet Information Services 6.0

- Microsoft Windows Vista
  Microsoft Windows Server 2008

  FTP service of Microsoft Internet Information Services 7.0

- Microsoft Windows 7
  Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2

  FTP service of Microsoft Internet Information Services 7.5

- Microsoft Windows 8
  Microsoft Windows Server 2012

  FTP service of Microsoft Internet Information Services 8.0

- Mac OS X 10.5/10.6/10.7/10.8

  FTP service of Mac OS X

For SMB:

✐ **NOTE:** Microsoft Windows Server 2003, Windows XP, Mac OS X 10.5/10.6 support IPv4 only.

- Microsoft Windows XP
- Microsoft Windows Server 2003
- Microsoft Windows Vista
- Microsoft Windows Server 2008
- Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2
- Microsoft Windows 7
- Microsoft Windows 8
- Microsoft Windows Server 2012
- Mac OS X 10.5/10.6/10.7/10.8

Procedures

For FTP:

1 "Setting a Destination Using an Address Book"
2 "Sending the Scanned File on the Network"

For SMB:

1 "Setting a Login Name and a Password (SMB Only)"
2 "Creating a Shared Folder (SMB Only)"

3 "Setting a Destination Using an Address Book"

4 "Sending the Scanned File on the Network"

Setting a Login Name and a Password (SMB Only)

The Scan to Network feature requires a user login account with a valid and non-empty password for authentication. Confirm a login user name and password.

For Microsoft Windows:

If you do not use a password for your user login, you need to create a password on your User Login Account with the following procedure.

For Windows XP:

1 Click **start→ Control Panel→ User Accounts**.

2 Click **Change an account**.

3 Click **Create a password** and add in a password for your user login account.

For Windows Vista and Windows 7:

1 Click **Start→ Control Panel**.

2 Click **User Accounts and Family Safety**.

3 Click **User Accounts**.

4 Click **Create a password for your account** and add in a password for your user login account.

For Windows Server 2008:

1 Click **Start→ Control Panel**.

2 Double-click **User Accounts**.

3 Click **Create a password for your account** and add in a password for your user login account.

For Windows Server 2008 R2:

1 Click **Start→ Control Panel**.

2 Select **User Accounts**.

3 Click **User Accounts**.

4 Click **Create a password for your account** and add in a password for your user login account.

For Windows 8 and Windows Server 2012:

1 Point to the top or bottom right corner of the screen, and then click **Settings**.

2 Click **Change PC settings**.

3 Click **Users**.

4 Click **Create a Password** and add in a password for your user login account.

For Mac OS X 10.5/10.6:

1 Click **System Preferences**→ **Accounts**.

2 Select **Change Password**.

3 Enter a password for your user login account in **New password**.

4 Re-enter the password in **Verify**.

Creating a Shared Folder (SMB Only)

Create a shared folder to store the scanned document from your printer.

For Microsoft Windows XP Home Edition:

1 Create a folder in the desired directory on your computer (Example of folder name, `MyShare`).

2 Right-click on the folder, and then select **Properties**.

The **Properties** dialog box appears.

3 Click on the **Sharing** tab, and then select **Share this folder on the network**.

4 Enter a shared name in the **Share name** box.

> ✍ **NOTE:** Write down this shared name because you will use this name in the next setting procedure.
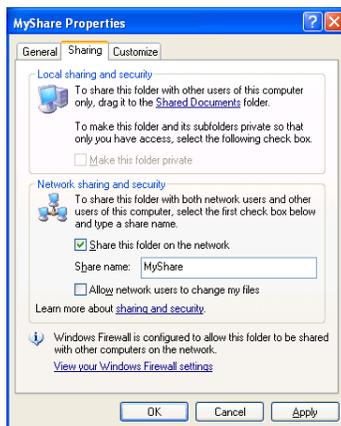
5 Select the **Allow network users to change my files** check box, and click **OK**.

> ✍ **NOTE:** When the following screen appears, click **If you understand the security risks but want to share files without running the wizard, click here**, then select **Just enable file sharing**, and then click **OK**.
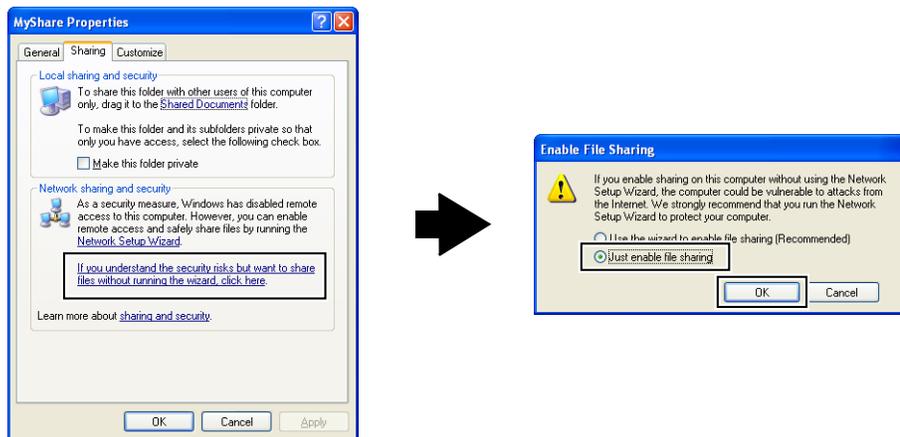
> 📝 **NOTE:** To add sub-folders, create new folders in the shared folder you have created.

For example:
Folder name: `MyShare`, Second-level folder name: `MyPic`, Third-level folder name: `John`
You should now see `MyShare\MyPic\John` in your directory.

For Microsoft Windows XP Professional:

1 Create a folder in the desired directory on your computer (Example of folder name, `MyShare`) and double-click the folder.

2 Select **Folder Options** from **Tools**.
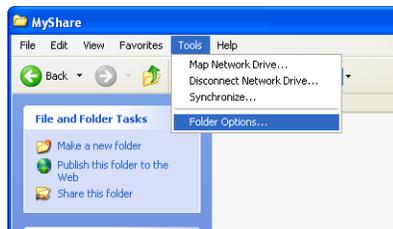
3 Click **View** tab, and then clear the check box of **Use simple file sharing (Recommended)**.
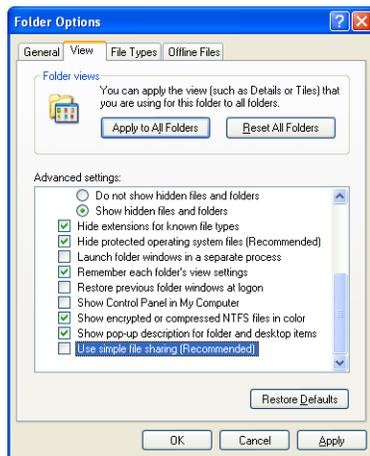
4 Click **OK**.

5 Right-click the folder, and then select **Properties**.

The **Properties** dialog box appears.

6 Select the **Sharing** tab, and then select **Share this folder**.

7 Enter a shared name in the **Share name** box.

> ☑ **NOTE:** Write down this shared name because you will use this name in the next setting procedure.
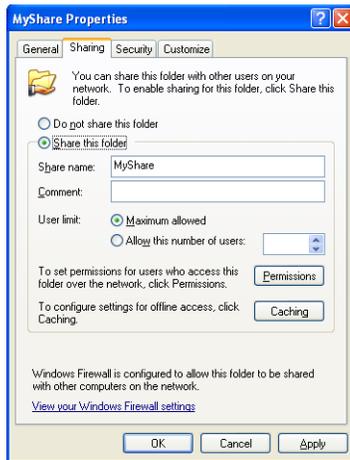
8 Click on **Permissions** to create a write permission for this folder.

9 Click **Add**.

10 Search user login name by clicking **Advanced**, or enter the user login name in **Enter the object names to select** box and click **Check Names** to confirm (Example of user login name, `Myself`).
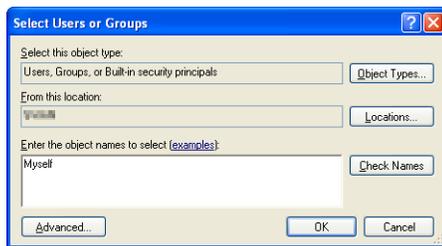
11 Click **OK**.

> ☑ **NOTE:** Do not use **Everyone** as the user login name.

12 Click on the user login name that you have just entered. Select **Full Control** check box. This will grant you permission to send the document into this folder.
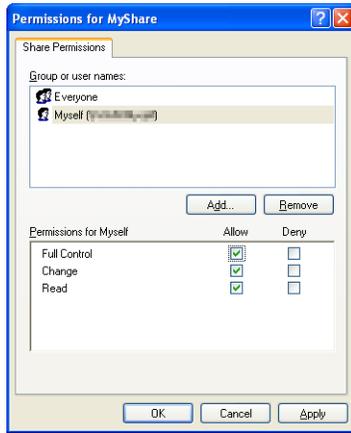
13 Click **OK**.

> ✎ **NOTE:** To add sub-folders, create new folders in the shared folder you have created.

For example:
Folder name: `MyShare`, Second-level folder name: `MyPic`, Third-level folder name: `John`
You should now see `MyShare\MyPic\John` in your directory.

For Windows Vista, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows 7, Windows 8, Windows Server 2012:

1 Create a folder in the desired directory on your computer (Example of folder name, `MyShare`).

2 Right-click on the folder, and then select **Properties**.

The **Properties** dialog box appears.
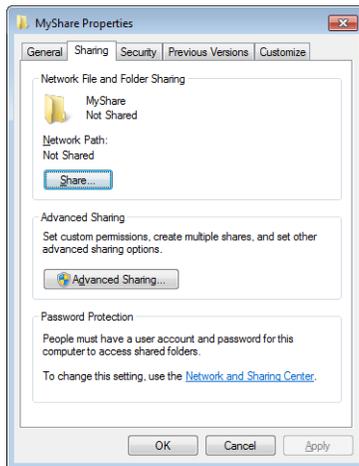
3 Click on the **Sharing** tab, and then select **Advanced Sharing**.

4 Select the **Share this folder** check box.

5 Enter a shared name in the **Share name** box.

> NOTE: Write down the shared name as you need to use this name in the next setting procedure.
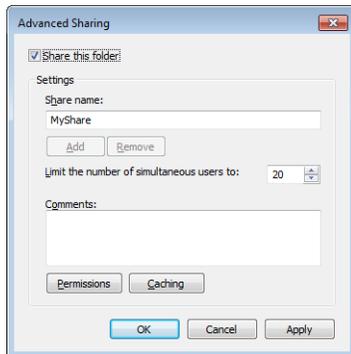
6 Click on **Permissions** to create a write permission for this folder.

7 Click **Add**.

8 Search user login name by clicking **Advanced**, or enter the user login name in **Enter the object names to select** box and click **Check Names** to confirm (Example of user login name, `Myself`).

9 Click **OK**.

10 Click on the user login name that you have just entered. Select **Full Control** check box. This will grant you permission to send the document into this folder.

> NOTE: Do not use **Everyone** as the user login name.
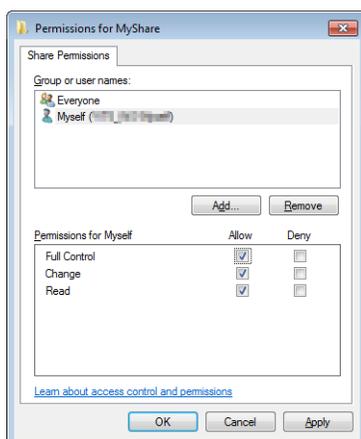
11 Click **OK**.

> ✎ **NOTE:** To add sub-folders, create new folders in the shared folder you have created.

For example:
Folder name: `MyShare`, Second-level folder name: `MyPic`, Third-level folder name: `John`
You should now see `MyShare\MyPic\John` in your directory.

For Mac OS X 10.5/10.6/10.7/10.8:

1 Create a folder in the desired directory on your computer (Example of folder name, `MyShare`).

2 Select the created folder, and then select **Get Info** from the **File** menu.

3 Select the **Shared Folder** check box.

4 Open **System Preferences**, and then click **Sharing**.

5 Select the **File Sharing** check box, and then click **Options**.

6 Select the **Share Files and folders using SMB** and account name check boxes.

7 Click **Done**.

Setting a Destination Using an Address Book

You can register the connection details for SMB and FTP server in the address book using **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** or **Address Book Editor**.

Before beginning to setup a destination, make sure you have the IP addresses you need such as printer and computer.

Verifying the IP Address Setting of the Printer

To setup the server address book through the network, you will first need to locate the IP address of the printer. To find your printer's IP address, see "Verifying the IP Settings."

Locating the IP Address Setting of Your Computer

You can locate the IP address of your computer by the following operations.

1 For Windows Vista/Windows 7:
Click **Start→ All Programs→ Accessories→ Run**.

For Windows XP/Windows Server 2003/Windows Server 2008/Windows Server 2008 R2:
Click **Start→ Run**.

For Windows 8/Windows Server 2012:
Point to the top or bottom right corner of the screen, and then click **Search** → Type `Run` in the search box, click **Apps**, and then click **Run**.

2 Type `cmd` in the text field and click **OK**. A command prompt window will open.

3 Type `ipconfig` and press **Enter**.

4 Write down the IP Address xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx.

Using Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool

1 Open a web browser.

2 Type in the IP address of the printer in the address bar, and press the <Enter> key.

The web page of the printer appears.

> ✎ **NOTE:** For details on how to check the IP address of the printer, see "Verifying the IP Settings."

3 Click **Address Book**. If a security login dialog box appears, type in the correct **User Name** and **Password**.

> **NOTE:** The default user name is "admin", and the default password is left blank (NULL).
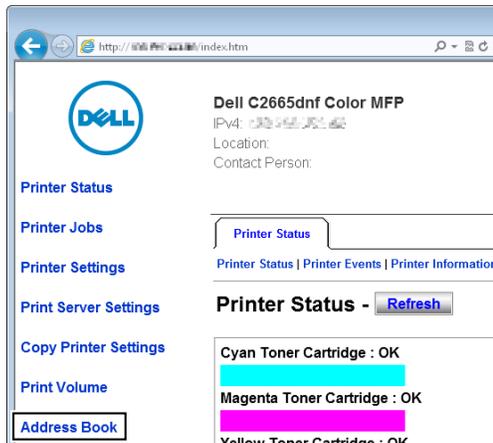
4 Click the **Server Address** tab, and then click **Create** of an ID.
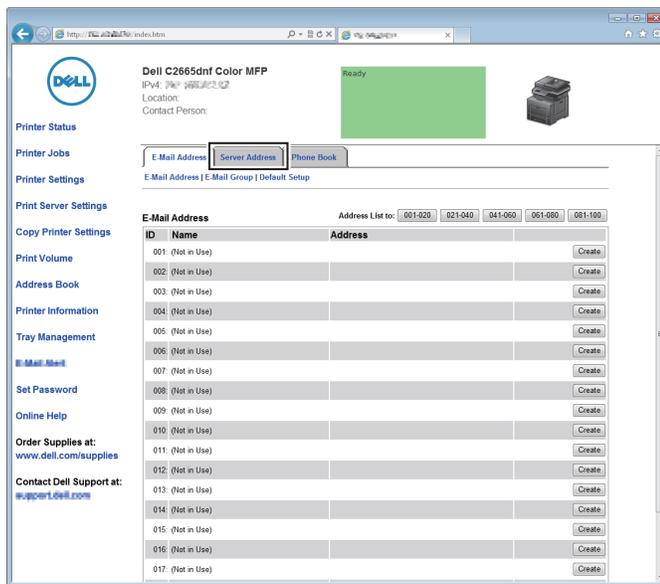
Server Address page appears.

To fill in the fields, enter the information as follows:

(1) Name	Enter a friendly name that you want it to appear on the Server address book.
(2) Server Type	Select **FTP** if you store document on a FTP server. Select **SMB** if you store documents in a shared folder on your computer.

(3) Server Address	Enter a FTP server name that you have shared out or a server name or IP address of your computer.
	
	• For FTP:
	  Server name: myhost.example.com
	  (myhost: host name, example.com: domain name)
	  IP address: 192.168.1.100
	
	• For SMB:
	  Server name: myhost
	  IP address: 192.168.1.100

(4) Share Name	Enter the name of the shared folder on the recipient computer. For SMB only. • For SMB: e.g. Share, Sharefolder
(5) Server Path	Enter the subdirectory path where you want the scanned document to be stored. Ensure that the subdirectory path is already created in the shared folder or FTP server. • For FTP: e.g. pub, pub/share • For SMB: e.g. finance, finance\Peter, finance\Peter\Sales
(6) Server Port Number	Enter the Server Port Number. If you are unsure, you can enter the default value of 21 for FTP or 139 for SMB. Available ports are: FTP: 21, 5000 - 65535 SMB: 139, 445, 5000 - 65535
(7) Login Name	Enter the user account name to allow access to a shared folder on your computer or to a FTP server. • For FTP: Contact the system administrator. • For SMB: Windows login name that you have specified in the procedure 1.
(8) Login Password	Enter the password corresponding to the above login name. • For FTP: Contact the system administrator • For SMB: Empty password is not valid in the Network (Computer) feature. Ensure that you have a valid password for the user login account. (See "Setting a Login Name and a Password (SMB Only)" for details on how to add a password in your user login account.)

(9) Re-enter Password	Re-enter your password.

Using Address Book Editor

1 Click **Start**→ **All Programs**→ **Dell Printers**→ **Dell C2665dnf Color Laser Multifunction Printer**→ **Address Book Editor**.

2 Click **Tool**→ **New (Device Address Book)**→ **Server**.

For Microsoft Windows:
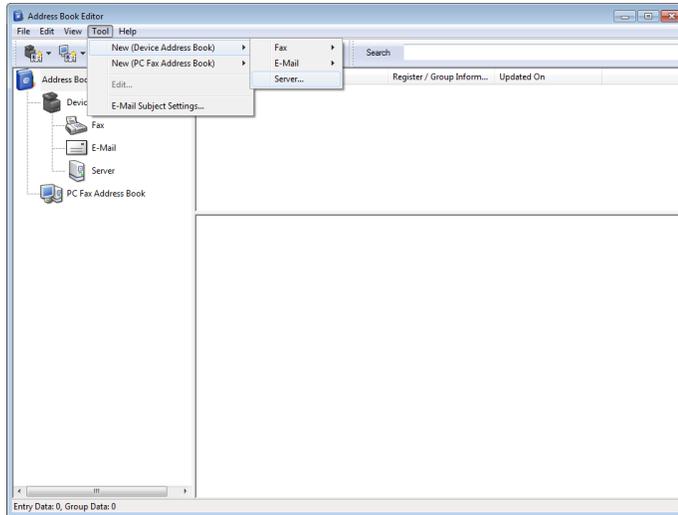
For Apple Macintosh:
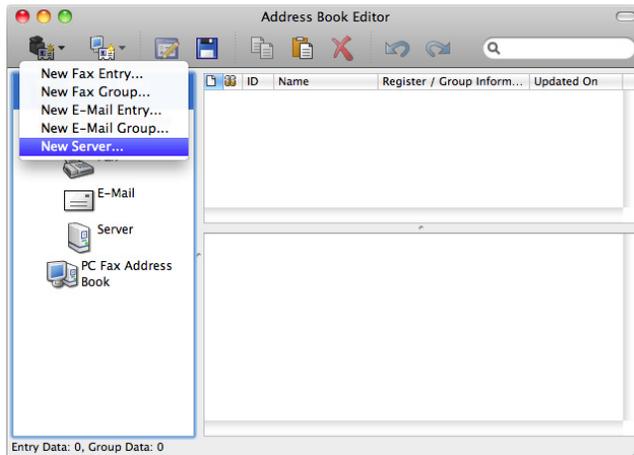
Server Address dialog box appears.

For Microsoft Windows:
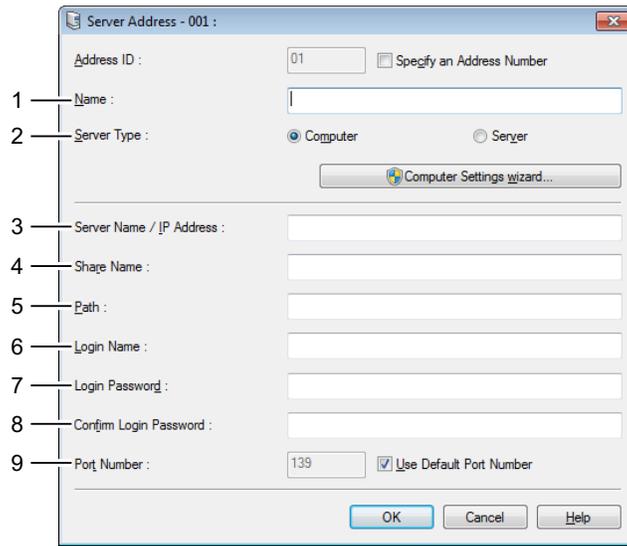
For Apple Macintosh:

To fill in the fields, enter the information as follows:

(1) Name	Enter a friendly name that you want it to appear on the Server address book.
(2) Server Type	Select **Computer** if you store documents in a shared folder on your computer. Select **Server** if you store documents on a FTP server.
(3) Server Name/IP Address	Enter a server name or IP address of your computer or the FTP server name that you have shared out. The following are examples: • For Computer: Server name: myhost IP address: 192.168.1.100 • For Server: Server name: myhost.example.com (myhost: host name, example.com: domain name) IP address: 192.168.1.100

(4) Share Name	Enter the name of the shared folder on the recipient computer. For SMB only.
	• For SMB: e.g. Share, Sharefolder
(5) Path	Enter the subdirectory path where you want the scanned document to be stored. Ensure that the subdirectory path is already created in the shared folder or FTP server.
	• For FTP: e.g. pub, pub/share
	• For SMB: e.g. finance, finance\Peter, finance\Peter\Sales
(6) Login Name	Enter the user account name to allow access to a shared folder on your computer or to a FTP server.
	• For Computer: Windows login name that you have specified in the procedure 1.
	• For Server: Contact the system administrator.
(7) Login Password	Enter the password corresponding to the above login name.
	• For Computer: Empty password is not valid in the `Network (Computer)` feature. Ensure that you have a valid password for the user login account. (See "Setting a Login Name and a Password (SMB Only)" for details on how to add a password in your user login account.)
	• For Server: Contact the system administrator.
(8) Confirm Login Password	Re-enter your password.
(9) Port Number	Enter the Server Port Number. If you are unsure, you can enter the default value of 139 for Computer and 21 for FTP server.
	Available ports are: For Computer: 139, 445, 5000 - 65535 For Server: 21, 5000 - 65535

Sending the Scanned File on the Network

1 Load the document(s) facing up with top edge in first into the DADF.

OR

Place a single document facing down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document."

2 Press the ⌂ (**Home**) button.

3 Tap `Scan to Network`.

4 Tap and select the desired address. When you cannot find the address, tap `Address Book` and select the desired address.

5 Tap ⚙ and specify scan settings such as `Output Color`, `Resolution`, `File Format`, `2-Sided Scanning`, `Darken/Lighten`, `Contrast`, `Sharpness`, `Auto Exposure`, `Original Size`, `Margin`, and `File Naming Mode`. For details, see "Scan Settings."

6 Tap `Scan` to begin sending the scanned file.

Scanning to a USB Memory

The Scan to USB feature allows you to store scanned image directly to a USB memory attached to the printer without using software.

Types of a USB Memory

You can use a USB memory with the following interfaces:

• USB 1.1

• USB 2.0

The USB memory must be formatted in FAT file systems (FAT16, FAT32, or VFAT) before inserting the memory device into the front USB port of the printer.

✍ **NOTE:** If the USB memory is formatted in a file system other than above, the printer may not recognize that the USB memory is attached.

✍ **NOTE:** A USB memory with authentication feature and some brands of USB memories cannot be used with this printer.

Procedures

To store the scanned images to a USB memory:

✍ **NOTE:** If you insert a USB memory to the front USB port first, the **USB Drive Detected** screen may appear. In this case, select `Scan to USB`, and proceed to step 6.

1 Load the document(s) facing up with top edge in first into the DADF.

    OR

    Place a single document facing down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

    For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document."

2 Press the 🏠 (**Home**) button.

3 Insert a USB memory into the front USB port of the printer. See "Inserting and Removing a USB Memory" for more details.

4 Tap `Scan to USB`.

5 Tap ⚙ and specify scan settings such as `Output Color`, `Resolution`, `File Format`, `2-Sided Scanning`, `Darken/Lighten`, `Contrast`, `Sharpness`, `Auto Exposure`, `Original Size`, `Margin`, and `File Naming Mode`. For details, see "Scan Settings."

    You can also specify the folder to save the scanned image. For details, see "Specifying a Folder to Save the Scanned Image."

6 Tap `Scan` to begin scanning the document.

7 Remove the USB memory from the printer. See "Inserting and Removing a USB Memory" for more details.

Specifying a Folder to Save the Scanned Image

To save the scanned image to a folder in the USB memory, specify the folder before executing the scan job.

1 If a folder has already existed in the USB memory, the folder name appears on the display.

2 Select a folder to save the scanned image.

    ✍ **NOTE:** The default saving location is the root directory of the USB memory.

    ✍ **NOTE:** You cannot directly enter a folder path using the numeric keypad.

    ✍ **NOTE:** You can select any folder in the USB memory but cannot create a new folder in this step. You should always create a new folder before connecting the memory to the printer.

    If the name of the scanned image has already existed in the folder, the printer automatically generate a new file name to save the data.

Sending an E-Mail With the Scanned Image

You can send the scanned image as an e-mail attachment using the **Scan to E-mail** function. To send an e-mail, an e-mail account is necessary such as the corporate mail account or the internet service provider's mail account. Gmail™ account can be used as well.

To send an e-mail from your printer, the following information is necessary:

- "Preparing the Printer to Send the E-Mail"
- "Setting the DNS Server Address"
- "Setting the Administrator's E-mail Address"
- "Setting the Information Necessary to Access the Mail Server"

Preparing the Printer to Send the E-Mail

To send an e-mail from your printer, the following information is necessary:

- E-mail account (user account) information
- E-mail sever information

NOTE: For information of your e-mail account or the mail server, consult your network administrator or your internet service provider.

NOTE: When the printer is connected to the network which is using a proxy server, the printer may not be able to send the e-mail. In this case, consult your network administrator.

NOTE: The preparations described below are effective while the e-mail account information is valid. You do not have to repeat the settings whenever you send the e-mail.

Setting the DNS Server Address

To set the DNS server address to your printer, follow the steps below:

1 Launch the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**.

   a Open the web browser.

   b Enter the IP address of your printer in the web browser.
   See "Dell™ Printer Configuration Web Tool."

2 Click **Print Server Settings**.

3 Click **TCP/IP**.

4 If you are using DHCP for TCP/IP setting for the printer:

   Set **Get DNS Server Address from DHCP** to **Enable**.

   If you are setting TCP/IP manually:

   Set **Manual DNS Server Address**.

5 Click **Apply New Settings**.

Setting the Administrator's E-mail Address

To make the printer to set an administrator's e-mail address, follow the steps below:

1 Launch the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**.

   a Open the web browser.

   b Enter the IP address of your printer in the web browser.
   See "Dell™ Printer Configuration Web Tool."

2 Click **Print Server Settings**.

3 Click **Basic Information**.

4 Set **Administrator E-Mail Address**. In the **Administrator E-Mail Address** text box. Up to 63 alphanumeric characters, periods, hyphens, underscores, and at symbols (@) can be used.

5 Click **Apply New Settings**.

Setting the Information Necessary to Access the Mail Server

To make the printer to send an e-mail, follow the steps below:

1 Launch the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**.

   a Open the web browser.

   b Enter the IP address of your printer in the web browser.
See "Dell™ Printer Configuration Web Tool."

2 Click **E-Mail Server Settings Overview**.

3 Set the mail server information under **E-Mail Server**.

   📝 **NOTE:** In this procedure, the server settings for a Gmail account are used as an example. The server settings will differ for each e-mail service.

   📝 **NOTE:** Information about the Gmail account is based on the information as of October 2013. For the latest information, visit the homepage of Gmail.
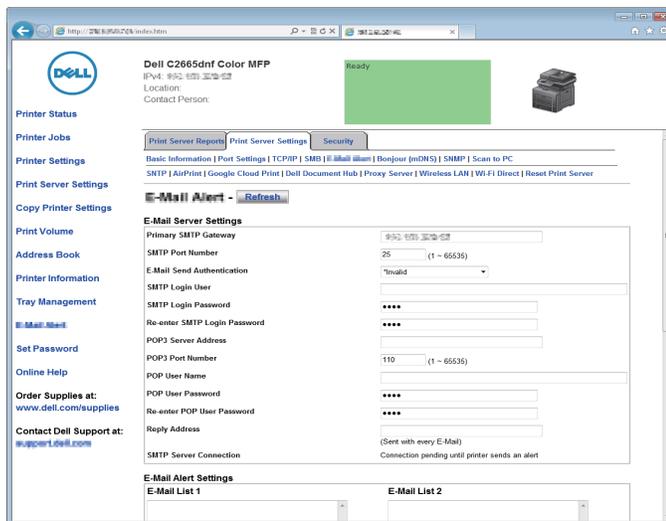
   a In the **Primary SMTP Gateway** text box, set the primary SMTP gateway.

      For example: `smtp.gmail.com`

   b In the **SMTP Port Number** text box, enter the SMTP port number. This must be 25,587 or between 5,000 and 65,535.

      For example: `587`

   c In the **E-Mail Send Authentication** drop-down menu, specify the authentication method for outgoing e-mail.

      For example: `SMTP_Auth (Auto)`

   d In the **SMTP Login User** text box, set the SMTP login user. Up to 63 alphanumeric characters, periods, hyphens, underscores, and at symbols (@) can be used. If specifying more than one address, separate them using commas.

      For example: `aaaa@gmail.com`

e In the **SMTP Login Password** text box, set the SMTP account password using up to 31 alphanumeric characters.

For example: (your Gmail account password)

f In the **Re-enter SMTP Login Password** text box, enter the login password again to confirm it.

For example: (your Gmail account password)

g In the **POP3 Server Address** text box, enter the POP3 server address in IP address format of "aaa.bbb.ccc.ddd" or as a DNS host name using up to 63 characters.[*1]

h In the **POP3 Port Number** text box, enter the POP3 server port number. This must be 110 or between 5,000 and 65,535.[*1]

i In the **POP User Name** text box, set the POP3 account user name. Up to 63 alphanumeric characters, periods, hyphens, underscores, and at symbols (@) can be used. If specifying more than one address, separate them using commas.[*1]

j In the **POP User Password** text box, enter the POP3 account password using up to 31 alphanumeric characters.[*1]

k In the **Re-enter POP User Password** text box, enter the POP user password again to confirm it.[*1]

l In the **Reply Address** text box, enter the reply e-mail address sent with each **E-Mail Alert**.

[*1] Required to enter if you select **POP before SMTP (Plain)** or **POP before SMTP (APOP)** for **E-Mail Send Authentication**.

4 Click **Apply New Settings**.

If SMTP authentication is selected for **E-Mail Send Authentication** and if SSL/TLS encryption is used to communicate with the SMTP sever, the SSL/TLS type must be set in **SMTP-SSL/TLS Communication** of **SSL/TLS** under the **Security** tab. Proceed to step 5.

If SSL/TLS is not used or if "**Invalid**", "**POP before SMTP (Plain)**", or "**POP before SMTP (APOP)**" is selected for **E-Mail Send Authentication**, the mail server settings are complete.

> **NOTE:** To send an e-mail through Gmail, set the SSL/TLS type should be set to **STARTTLS** in **SMTP-SSL/TLS Communication** of **SSL/TLS** under the **Security** tab.

5 Click **Security** tab.

6 Select **SSL/TLS**.

7 Select a SSL/TLS type from the **SMTP-SSL/TLS Communication** list.

> **NOTE:** To use a Gmail account, select **STARTTLS**.

8 Click **Apply New Settings**.

Registering a New E-Mail Address to Address Book

1 From the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**, click **Address Book**, and then click the **E-Mail Address** tab.

2 Click **Create**.

The **E-Mail Address** page for registering a new e-mail address appears.
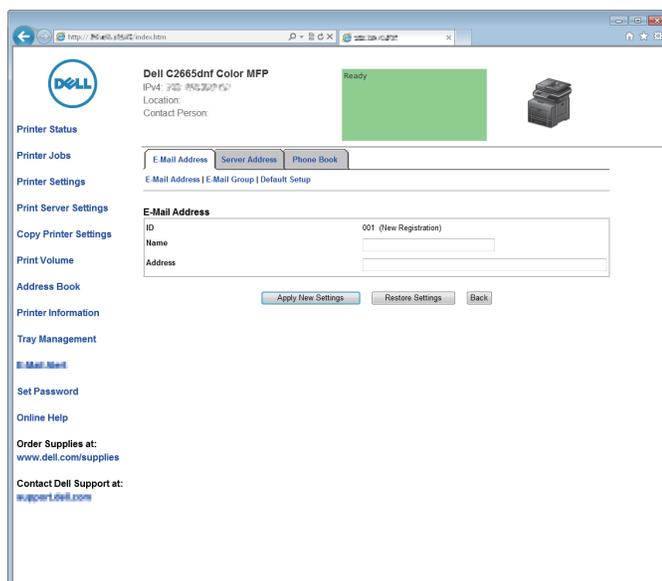
3 Enter the following:
- Name
- Address

4 Click **Apply New Settings**.

Sending an E-mail With the Scanned File

1 Press the ⌂ (**Home**) button.

2 Tap `Scan to E-mail`.

3 Specify a recipient from the following:

`Enter Recipient's Address`: Enter an e-mail address directly.

`Sender`: Select from the following types of selecting sender's e-mail address:

- `Keyboard`: Select an e-mail address from using keyboard.
- `Address Book`: Select a group of e-mails registered in the address book.
- `Network Address Book`: Search an e-mail address from the LDAP server address book.

`Address Book`: Select from the following types of address books:

- `Individuals`: Select an e-mail address registered in the address book.
- `Groups`: Select a group of e-mails registered in the address book.
- `Network Address Book`: Search an e-mail address from the LDAP server address book.

Tap + and the recipient you specified from `Enter Recipient's Address` to remove or edit the recipient.

Tap + and the recipient you specified from `Address Book` to remove or see details of the recipient. You can also change the e-mail to Bcc.

NOTE: For more information on address book and server address book, see "Address Books."

NOTE: For details about `Network Address Book`, see "Using the Server Address Book and Server Phone Book."

NOTE: The e-mail addresses needs to be registered before you can select `Address Book`.

4   Tap ⚙ and specify scan settings such as `Output Color`, `Resolution`, `File Format`, `2-Sided Scanning`, `Darken/Lighten`, `Contrast`, `Sharpness`, `Auto Exposure`, `Original Size`, `Margin`, and `File Naming Mode`. For details, see "Scan Settings."

5   Tap `Send` to begin sending e-mail.

Faxing

> ✎ **NOTE:** If the Function Enabled setting for `Fax` is set to `On(Password)`, you need to enter the four digit password to use the fax function. If the Function Enabled setting for `Fax` is set to `Off`, the fax function is disabled and the menu is also disabled on the touch panel. For details, see "Function Enabled."

> ✎ **NOTE:** If the `Panel Lock Control` is set to `Enable`, you need to enter the four digit password to enter the `Admin Settings` menu.

Specifying the Fax Initial Settings Using the Dell Printer Setup

You can specify the country, line type, tone/pulse, receive mode, DRPD pattern, fax header name, and fax number.

1 Insert the *Software and Documentation* disc provided with the printer in your computer. The **Dell Printer Setup** program launches automatically.

2 Click **Configure Printer** on the **Dell Printer Setup** window.
The **Configure Printer** window appears.
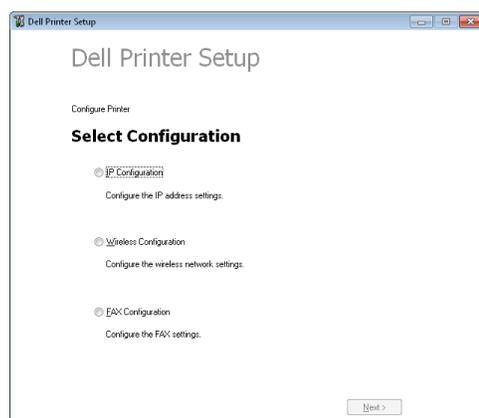
3 Click **Fax Configuration**.

4 Follow the instructions displayed on the screen.

Available settings are:

- Country
- Line Type
- Tone/Pulse
- Receive Mode
- DRPD Pattern
  (This setting is available only when a distinctive ring service is installed on your telephone line by your telephone company.)
- FAX Header Name
- FAX Number

> ✎ **NOTE:** To make initial settings from the printer operator panel, see "Setting Your Country."

Setting Your Country

1 Press the (i) (**Information**) button.

2 Tap the `Tools` tab, and then tap `Admin Settings`.

3 Tap `Fax Settings`.

4 Tap `Fax Line Settings`.

5 Tap `Country`.

6 Select the country where the printer is used, and then tap `OK`.

The printer must be rebooted after you set the country settings. When a screen prompting you to reboot the printer, tap `Yes`. After the reboot, the **Home** screen is displayed on the touch panel.

✎ **NOTE:** When you configure the country setting, the information, which is registered to the printer, is initialized.

Setting the Printer ID

In most countries, you are required by law to indicate your fax number on any fax you send. The printer ID, containing your telephone number and name or company name, will be printed at the top of each page sent from your printer.

1 Press the (i) (**Information**) button.

2 Tap the `Tools` tab, and then tap `Admin Settings`.

3 Tap `Fax Settings`.

4 Tap `Fax Line Settings`.

5 Tap `Fax Number`.

6 Enter your fax number using the number pad, and then tap `OK`.

✎ **NOTE:** If you make a mistake while entering numbers, press the ◄ button to delete the last digit.

7 Tap `Fax Header Name`.

8 Enter your name or company name using the keyboard, and then tap `OK`.

For details on how to use the keyboard to enter alphanumeric characters, see "Using the Keyboard Displayed on the Touch Panel."

Setting the Time and Date

✎ **NOTE:** It may be necessary to reset the correct time and date if loss of power to the printer occurs.

To set the time and date:

1 Press the (i) (**Information**) button.

2 Tap the `Tools` tab, and then tap `Admin Settings`.

3 Tap `System Settings`.

4 Tap `General`.

5 Tap `Date & Time`.

6 Tap `Time Zone`.

7 Tap ▼ until the desired geographic region appears, and then select that region.

8 Tap ▼ until the desired time zone appears, and then select that time zone.

9 Tap `OK`.

10 Tap `Date`.

11 Tap – or + or enter the date using the number pad, and then tap OK.

12 Tap Time.

13 Enter the time using the number pad.

14 Tap OK.

> ✍ **NOTE:** The printer beeps and does not allow you to proceed to the next step if a wrong number is entered.

Changing the Clock Mode

You can set the current time using either the 12-hour or the 24-hour format.

1 Press the ⓘ (**Information**) button.

2 Tap the Tools tab, and then tap Admin Settings.

3 Tap System Settings.

4 Tap General.

5 Tap Date & Time.

6 Tap Time.

7 Tap 12 Hour or 24 Hour, and then tap OK.

Setting Sounds

Speaker Volume

1 Press the ⓘ (**Information**) button.

2 Tap the Tools tab, and then tap Admin Settings.

3 Tap Fax Settings.

4 Tap Fax Line Settings.

5 Tap ▾ until Line Monitor appears, and then tap Line Monitor.

6 Select the desired volume, and then tap OK.

7 Turn off the printer, and turn it on again to apply the settings.

Ringer Volume

1 Press the ⓘ (**Information**) button.

2 Tap the Tools tab, and then tap Admin Settings.

3 Tap Fax Settings.

4 Tap Incoming Defaults.

5 Tap Ring Tone Volume.

6 Select the desired volume, and then tap OK.

7 Turn off the printer, and turn it on again to apply the settings.

Specifying the Fax Settings Options

Changing the Fax Settings Options

1 Press the ⓘ (**Information**) button.

2 Tap the Tools tab, and then tap Admin Settings.

3 Tap `Fax Settings`.

4 Select the desired menu.

5 Select the desired setting or enter a value.

To enter a value, tap – or +, or use the number pad or the keyboard.

6 Tap `OK`.

If necessary , repeat steps 4 through 6.

Available Fax Settings Options

You can use the following settings options for configuring the fax system:

Option		Description
Fax Line Settings	Fax Number	Specifies the fax number of the printer, which will be printed on the header of faxes. This feature is available when you set `Fax Header` to `On`. The number specified in Fax Number is used in the printer ID.
	Country	You can select the country where the printer is used. You can change this setting when: • No jobs in operation • No fax jobs waiting in the memory
	Fax Header Name	Specifies the sender's name to be printed on the header of faxes.
	Line Type	You can select the default line type. • PSTN • PBX
	Line Monitor	Sets the volume of the line monitor, which audibly monitors a transmission through the internal speaker until a connection is made.
	DRPD Pattern	Before using the Distinctive Ring Pattern Detection (DRPD) option, distinctive ring service must be installed on your telephone line by the telephone company. After the telephone company has provided a separate number for faxing with a distinctive ring pattern, configure the fax setup to monitor for that specific ring pattern.

Option			Description
Incoming Defaults	Receive Mode		You can select the default fax receiving mode.
			• **Telephone** (manual receive mode): Automatic fax reception is turned off. You can receive a fax by picking up the handset of the external telephone and then pressing the remote receive code, or by tapping `Manual Receive` in `On Hook` and then tapping `Receive`. For details about `Manual Receive`, see "Receiving a Fax Manually in the Telephone Mode."
			• **Fax**: (automatic receive mode)
			• **Telephone / Fax**: When the printer receives an incoming fax, the external telephone rings for the time specified in `Auto Rec Fax/Tel`, and then the printer automatically receives a fax. If an incoming call is not a fax, the printer beeps from the internal speaker indicating that the call is a telephone call.
			• **Ans Machine/Fax**: The printer can share a telephone line with an answering machine. In this mode, the printer will monitor the fax signal and pick up the line if there are fax tones. If the phone communication is using serial transmission in your country (such as Germany, Sweden, Denmark, Austria, Belgium, Italy, France and Switzerland), this mode is not supported.
			• **DRPD**: Before using the Distinctive Ring Pattern Detection (DRPD) option, distinctive ring service must be installed on your telephone line by the telephone company. After the telephone company has provided a separate number for faxing with a distinctive ring pattern, configure the fax setup to monitor for that specific ring pattern.
	Ring Tone Volume		Sets the volume of the ring tone, which indicates that an incoming call is a telephone call through the internal speaker when `Receive Mode` is set to `Telephone / Fax`.
	Auto Receive Setup	Auto Receive Fax	Sets the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after receiving an incoming call. The interval can be specified within the range of 0 to 255 seconds. The default is 0 second.
		Auto Receive Tel/Fax	Sets the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after the external telephone receives an incoming call. The interval can be specified within the range of 0 to 255 seconds. The default is 6 seconds.
		Auto Receive Ans/Fax	Sets the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after the external answering machine receives an incoming call. The interval can be specified within the range of 0 to 255 seconds. The default is 21 seconds.
	Junk Fax Setup		You can reject faxes sent from unwanted stations. The system only accepts faxes from the remote stations registered in the speed dial. This feature is useful for blocking any unwanted faxes.
			Tap `Off` to turn the feature off. Anybody can send you a fax.
			Tap `On` to turn the feature on.
	Secure Receive		You can specify whether to require a four digit password to receive faxes, and to set or change the password.

Option			Description
	Sent Fax Forward		You can set your printer to forward incoming faxes to another fax number, or forward them to an e-mail address. When a fax arrives at your printer, it is stored in the memory. Then, the printer dials the fax number you have specified in `Forwarding Number` or sends an e-mail to the address you have specified in `Forwarding E-mail Address 1-5`.
			To forward to a fax number, you need to register a fax number on `Forwarding Number`. To forward to an e-mail address, you need to register information on `E-Mail Server` and `Forwarding E-mail Address`. For information on e-mail alert, see "E-Mail Server" and on forwarding number and e-mail address, see "Fax Settings."
			Tap `Off` not to forward incoming faxes.
			Tap `Forward` to forward incoming faxes without printing. If an error occurs during forwarding a received fax, the printer prints the fax.
			Tap `Print and Forward` to forward and print incoming faxes.
			Tap `Print and E-mail` to print and forward incoming faxes to e-mail.
			Tap `Forward to Server` to forward incoming faxes to server.
			Tap `Print and Forward to Server` to print and forward incoming faxes to server.
	2 Sided Print		You can set whether to make duplex print when you print faxes.
			Tap `Off` to print faxes on one side of a sheet of paper.
			Tap `On` to print faxes on both sides of a sheet of paper.
	Remote Receive		You can receive a fax by pressing the remote receive code on the external telephone after picking up the handset of the telephone. When you set `Remote receive` to `On`, specify a two digit remote receive code in `Remote Receive Tone`.
	Discard Size		When receiving a document as long as or longer than the paper installed in your printer, you can set the printer to discard any excess at the bottom of the page. If the received page is outside the margin you set, it will print on two sheets of paper at the actual size. When the document is within the margin and `Discard Size` is set to `Auto Reduction`, the printer reduces the document to fit it onto the appropriate sized paper and discard does not occur. If `Discard Size` is set to other than `Auto Reduction`, the data within the margin will be discarded.
Transmission Defaults	Auto Redial Setup	Redial Attempts	You can specify the number of redial attempts to make when the destination fax number is busy, within the range of 0 to 13. If you enter 0, the printer will not redial.
		Interval of Redial	Your printer can automatically redial a remote fax machine if it was busy. Intervals from 1–15 minutes can be entered.
		Resend Delay	You can specify the interval between transmission attempts within the range of 3 to 255 seconds. The default is 8 seconds.

Option		Description
	Tone/Pulse	You can select the dialing type. • **Tone** • **Pulse(10PPS)** • **Pulse(20PPS)**
	Prefix Dial	You can specify whether or not to set a prefix dial number. When you set `Prefix Dial` to `On`, the number set in `Prefix Dial Number` dials before any auto dial number is started. It is useful for accessing the Private Automatic Branch Exchange (PBX). You can set a prefix dial number of up to five digits.
	Fax Cover Page	You can set whether to attach a cover page to faxes when sending faxes.
	Fax Header	Prints the sender's information on the header of faxes. Tap `Off` to turn this feature off. Tap `On` to turn this feature on. Note that if United States is selected for the setting of Country, this option does not appear on the menu. The setting is fixed to On and cannot be changed. For information on the country setting, see "Setting Your Country."
	ECM	You can set whether to enable or disable the ECM (Error Correction Mode).
	Modem Speed	You can set the modem speed.
	Display Manual Fax Recipients	You can set whether to display the fax number of the recipient on the **Sending Fax** screen when manually sending a fax.
Fax Reports	Fax Activity	You can set whether to automatically print a fax activity report after every 50 incoming and outgoing fax communications.
	Fax Transmit	You can set whether to print a transmission result after a fax transmission.
	Fax Broadcast	You can set whether to print a transmission result after a fax transmission to multiple locations.
	Fax Protocol	You can set whether to print the protocol monitor report after a fax transmission to monitor fax protocol problems.

📝 **NOTE:** Prefix Dial supports only the environment where you send a fax to the external line number. To use Prefix Dial, you must do the following from the operator panel.

1 Press the ⓘ (**Information**) button.

2 Tap the `Tools` tab, and then tap `Admin Settings`.

3 Tap `Fax Settings`.

4 Tap `Fax Line Settings`.

5 Tap `Line Type`.

6 Tap `PBX`, and then `OK`.

7 Tap `Transmission Defaults`.

8 Tap `Prefix Dial`.

9 Tap `On`.

10 Enter a prefix number using the number pad, and then tap OK. The characters you can use for a prefix number are 0–9, *, and #. The maximum number of characters for a prefix number is five.

11 Turn off the printer, and turn it on again to apply the settings.

Advanced Fax Settings

NOTE: The advanced fax settings are only meant for advanced users. Incorrect settings may damage the printer.

If you are experiencing fax send or receive errors, there is an advanced fax settings menu which you can access and change the settings accordingly.

To enter the Diagnostic Menu (Customer Mode), follow the instructions.

1 Turn off the printer.

2 Disconnect all network, phone line, and USB cables from the printer.

3 Turn on the printer while holding down the 8 and 2 buttons on the number pad to start in Customer Mode.

After all the advanced fax settings have been made, you will need to turn off and on the printer for the new settings to be effective.

Fax Data Encoding Method

Some of the legacy fax devices do not support the Joint Bi-level Image Experts Group (JBIG) data encoding method. You may experience fax send or receive errors due to this data encoding method. You can disable the JBIG and select the Modified Huffman (MH), Modified Read (MR), or Modified Modified Read (MMR) encoding with the following instructions.

You can change the modem transmission encoding with the following instructions.

1 Turn on the printer while holding down the 8 and 2 buttons on the number pad to start in Customer Mode.

2 Tap ↓ button to tap Fax/Scanner Diag, and then tap OK.

3 Tap ↓ button until Parameter appears, and then tap OK.

4 Ensure that FAX Parameter appears, and then tap OK.

5 Tap ↓ button until G3M TX Coding appears, and then tap OK.

6 Tap ↓ button until the desired encoding appears, and then tap OK.

You can select MH, MR, or MMR.

You can change the modem receive encoding with the following instructions.

1 Turn on the printer while holding down the 8 and 2 buttons on the number pad to start in Customer Mode.

2 Tap ↓ button to tap Fax/Scanner Diag, and then tap OK.

3 Tap ↓ button until Parameter appears, and then tap OK.

4 Ensure that FAX Parameter appears, and then tap OK.

5 Tap ↓ button until G3M RX Coding appears, and then tap OK.

6 Tap ↓ button until the desired encoding appears, and then tap OK.

You can select MH, MR, or MMR.

Diagnosing the Fax Connection

You can diagnose the Fax connection using the FAX Line Diagnosis feature that can detect the abnormalities of telephone line connection.

1 Turn on the printer while holding down the 8 and 2 buttons on the number pad to start in Customer Mode.

2 Tap ↓ button to tap Fax/Scanner Diag, and then tap OK.

3 Tap ↓ button until `FAX Test` appears, and then tap `OK`.

4 When the message `Check FAX Connection` appears, tap `OK`.

5 When the message `Ready to Start` appears, tap `OK` to start diagnosing the FAX connection.

One of the following diagnosing result is displayed.

Diagnosing result	Description
`Connection not Detected` `Please Reconnect Telephone Line`	The telephone line cord is not connected. Make sure that the telephone line cord is securely connected.

`Cable Connected Wrongly`
`Reconnect Telephone Line from Wall`
`Jack to Line Connection`
	The telephone line cord is connected to the wrong connector. Make sure that the telephone line cord is connected at one end to the wall jack connector (🔲) of your printer and at the other end to an active wall jack. If you use a telephone or answering machine, connect to the phone connector (📞).

`Fax Connection OK`
`Please Check Setting of Tone/Pulse`
`in Admin Menu after Restart Printer`
	The telephone line cord is properly connected. Check the Tone/Pulse setting. For information on Tone/Pulse setting, see "Available Fax Settings Options."

Sending a Fax

You can fax data from your printer. You can also directly fax data transferred from the computer running a Microsoft® Windows® operating system.

Loading an Original Document

You can use the DADF or the document glass to load an original document for faxing. Using the DADF, you can load up to 50 sheets of 75 g/m^2 (20 lb) paper at a time. Using the document glass, you can load one sheet at a time.

> **NOTE:** To get the best scan quality, especially for gray scale images, use the document glass instead of the DADF.

To fax a document using the Duplex Automatic Document Feeder (DADF):

1 Place the document(s) facing up on the DADF with the top edge of the documents in first. Then adjust the document guides to the correct document size.
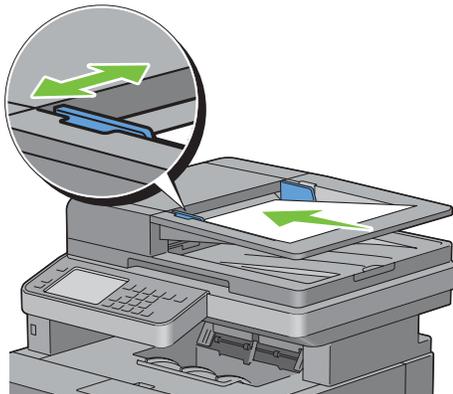
2 Adjust the document resolution. (For details, see "Adjusting the Document Resolution.")

To fax a document from the document glass:

1 Open the document cover.
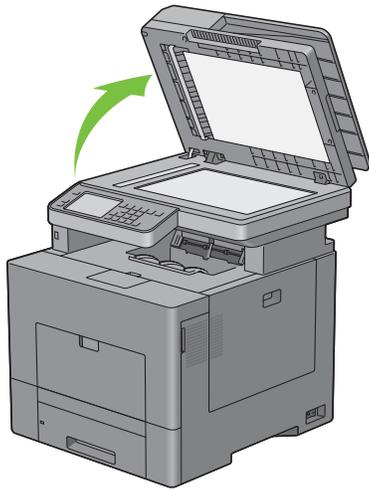
2 Place the document facing down on the document glass and align it with the registration guide on the top left corner of the glass.
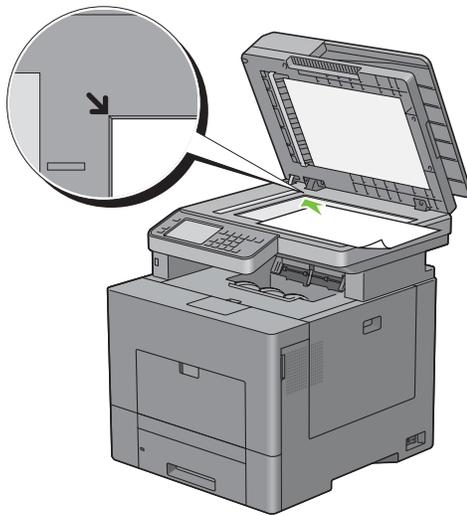
3 Adjust the document resolution. (For details, see "Adjusting the Document Resolution.")

4 Close the document cover.

> ✏ **NOTE:** Ensure that no document is in the DADF. If any document is detected in the DADF, it takes priority over the document on the document glass.

> ✏ **NOTE:** If you are faxing a page from a book or magazine, lift the cover until its hinges are caught by the stopper and then close the cover. If the book or magazine is thicker than 30 mm, start faxing with the cover open.

Adjusting the Document Resolution

You can improve the quality of the fax document by adjusting the resolution, especially for documents with low image quality or documents containing photographic images.

1 Press the 🏠 (**Home**) button.

2 Tap Fax.

3 Tap ⚙ .

4 Tap `Resolution`.

5 Tap the desired setting.

Standard*	Used for documents with normal sized characters.
Fine	Used for documents containing small characters or thin lines or documents printed using a dot-matrix printer.
Super Fine	Used for documents containing extremely fine detail. The super fine mode is enabled only if the remote machine also supports the Super Fine resolution. See the note below.
Photo	Used for documents containing photographic images.

* Denotes the factory default setting.

📝 **NOTE:** Faxes scanned in the Super Fine resolution transmit at the highest resolution supported by the receiving device.

Adjusting the Document Contrast

You can adjust the contrast of the fax document to be lighter or darker than the original.

1 Load the document(s) facing up with top edge in first into the DADF.

OR

Place a single document facing down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document."

2 Press the 🏠 **(Home)** button.

3 Tap `Fax`.

4 Tap ⚙ .

5 Tap `Darken/Lighten`.

6 Drag the desired level on the `Darken/Lighten` bar, and then tap `OK`.

You can select a contrast level from seven levels between `Darken` and `Lighten`.

Drag the indicator on the left side of the bar makes the document contrast lighter, and selecting a cell on the right side of the bar makes the document contrast darker.

Darken 3	Works well with light documents or faint pencil markings.
Darken 2	
Darken 1	
Normal*	Works well with standard typed or printed documents.
Lighten 1	Works well with dark documents.
Lighten 2	
Lighten 3	

* Denotes the factory default setting.

Sending a Fax From Memory

1 Load the document(s) facing up with top edge in first into the DADF.

OR

Place a single document facing down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document."

2 Press the ⌂ (**Home**) button.

3 Tap `Fax`.

4 Adjust the document resolution to suit your fax needs. (For details, see "Adjusting the Document Resolution." For adjusting the contrast, see "Adjusting the Document Contrast.")

5 To select a fax number, do one of the followings :

- Tap `Phone Book`, and then select one of the following:

  `Individuals:` Select an individual fax number and then tap `Done`.

  `Groups:` Select a group dial number and then tap `Done`.

  `Network Phone Book:` Search and select a fax number from the LDAP server and then tap `Search`.

  ✐ **NOTE:** For more information on address book and server address book, see "Address Books."

  ✐ **NOTE:** For details about `Network Phone Book`, see "Using the Server Address Book and Server Phone Book."

  ✐ **NOTE:** The fax number needs to be registered before you can select `Address Book`.

- Tap `Speed Dial`.

  Enter the speed dial number using the number pad, and then tap `Done`.

6 Tap `Send` to scan data.

When the document is loaded on the document glass, the display prompts you for another page.

If you want to place a new document, replace the document with a new document, and then tap `Continue`.

When you have finished loading documents, tap `Send Now`.

The printer starts dialing the number, and then sends the fax when the remote fax machine is ready.

✐ **NOTE:** You can cancel the fax job at any time while sending the fax by tapping `Stop`.

✐ **NOTE:** Tapping `Send` does not start sending a fax when the available time is set or the Fax function is locked. (For details, see "Set Available Time" for the Available time and "Function Enabled" for the Fax function.)

Sending a Fax Manually

1 Load the document(s) facing up with top edge in first into the DADF.
OR

Place a single document facing down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document."

2 Press the ⌂ (**Home**) button.

3 Tap `Fax`.

4 Adjust the document resolution to suit your fax needs. (For details, see "Adjusting the Document Resolution." For adjusting the contrast, see "Adjusting the Document Contrast.")

5 Tap `On Hook`.

6 Enter the fax number of the recipient using the number pad.

You can also select the recipient by using speed dial number or address book. (For details, see "Automatic Redialing.")

7 Tap `Send` to begin sending the fax.

✐ **NOTE:** You can cancel the fax job at any time while sending the fax by tapping `Stop`.

Confirming Transmissions

When the last page of your document has been sent successfully, the printer beeps and returns to the standby mode.

If something goes wrong while sending your fax, an error message appears on the display.

If you receive an error message, press Close to clear the message and try to send the document again.

You can set your printer to print a confirmation report automatically after each fax transmission. For further details, see "Printing a Report."

Automatic Redialing

If the number you have dialed is busy or there is no answer when you send a fax, the printer will automatically redial the number every minute based on the number set in the redial settings.

To change the time interval between redials and the number of redial attempts, see "Available Fax Settings Options."

Sending a Delayed Fax

The Delayed Start mode can be used to save scanned documents for transmission at a specified time to take advantage of lower long distance rates.

1 Load the document(s) facing up with top edge in first into the DADF.

    OR

    Place a single document facing down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

    For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document."

2 Press the ⌂ (**Home**) button.

3 Tap Fax.

4 Adjust the document resolution to suit your fax needs. (For details, see "Adjusting the Document Resolution." For adjusting the contrast, see "Adjusting the Document Contrast.")

5 Tap ⚙ , and then tap Delayed Send.

6 Tap On.

7 Enter the start time using – or +, and then tap OK.

8 Tap Back, and then enter the fax number of the recipient using the number pad.

    You can also select the recipient by using speed dial number or address book. (For details, see "Automatic Redialing.")

9 Tap Send to scan data.

    Once Delayed Start mode is activated, your printer stores all of the documents to be faxed into its memory and sends them at the specified time. After faxing in the Delayed Start mode is complete, the data in the memory is cleared.

Sending a Fax from the Driver (Direct Fax)

You can send a fax directly from your computer by using the driver.

> **NOTE:** Only black and white faxes can be sent using Direct Fax.

> **NOTE:** If the specified start time overlaps with the time periods for the available time or the Fax function, the printer cannot send the delayed fax at the specified time. (For details, see "Set Available Time" for the Available time and "Function Enabled" for the Fax function.)

Example

Send data via the **Dell C2665dnf Color MFP Fax** driver

Send fax

Sending machine (Dell™ C2665dnf Color Laser Multifunction Printer)

Receiving machine (fax machine/multifunction printer)
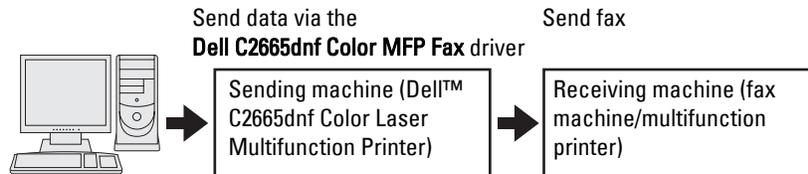
Procedure

> **NOTE:** The names of the dialog boxes and the buttons may be different from those given in the following procedure depending on the application you are using.

> **NOTE:** To use this feature, you must install the fax driver. (For details, see "Inserting the Software and Documentation Disc" for Windows or "Installing the Drivers and Software" for Macintosh.)

1. Open the file you want to send by fax.

2. Open the print dialog box from the application, and then select **Dell C2665dnf Color MFP Fax**.

3. Click **Preferences** in Windows, or select **FAX Setting** in Macintosh.

For Microsoft Windows:

For Apple Macintosh:
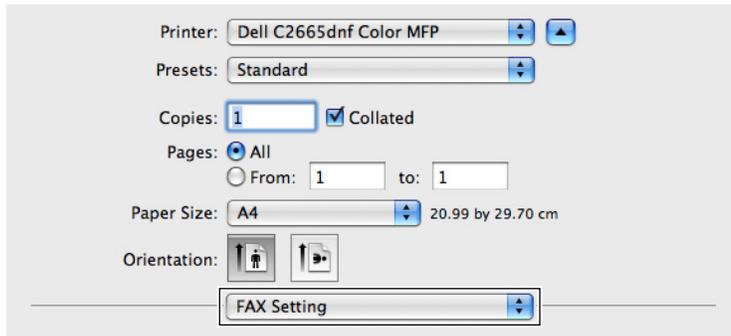
4 When the setting dialog box appears, specify the following settings.

📝 **NOTE:** The settings done here are only applied to a single fax job.

For Microsoft Windows:
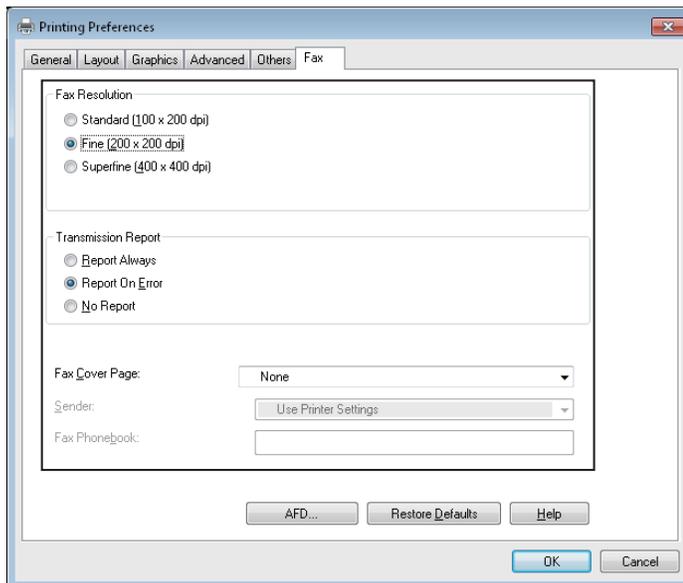
For Apple Macintosh:
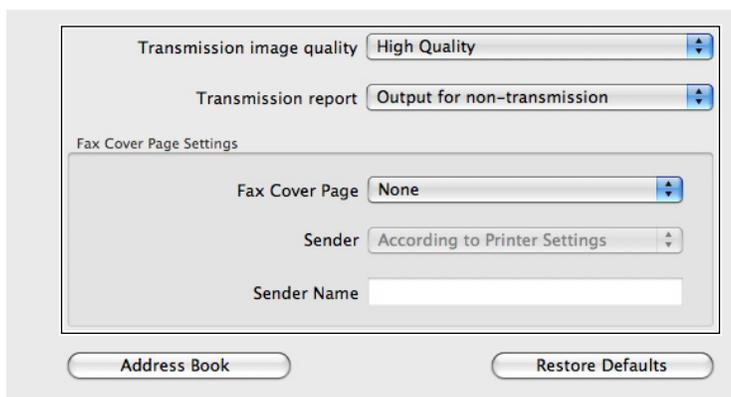
a. Transmission image quality

Purpose:

To set the output quality.

Values:

Standard	For documents with normal sized characters.
High Quality*	For documents containing small characters or thin lines or documents printed using a dot-matrix printer.
Super-high image quality	For documents containing extremely fine detail. The super fine mode is enabled only if the remote machine also supports Super Fine resolution. See the notes below.

* Denotes the factory default setting.

> **NOTE:** Faxes printed in the Super-high image quality by Direct Fax driver transmits at the highest resolution supported by the receiving device.

b. Transmission report

Purpose:

To specify whether to print a fax transmission result.

Values:

Output regularly	Prints a transmission result after every fax transmission.
Output for non-transmission*	Prints a transmission result only when an error occurs.
Do not output	Does not print fax transmission results.

* Denotes the factory default setting.

c. Fax Cover Page

Purpose:

To specify whether to attach a cover page to your fax.

Values:

According to Printer Settings	Determines whether to attach a cover page to your fax depending on the setting you specify in `Fax Cover Page` on the operator panel.
Attach	Attaches a cover page to your fax.
None*	Does not attach a cover page to your fax.

* Denotes the factory default setting.

Sender

Purpose:

To specify whether to print the sender's name on the fax cover page.

Values:

According to Printer Settings*	Determines whether or not to print the sender's name on the fax cover page based on the printer settings.
Enter a sender name	Allows you to enter a sender's name that will be printed on the fax cover page in **Sender Name**.

* Denotes the factory default setting.

Sender Name

Purpose:

To enter a sender's name that will be printed on the fax cover page.

The sender's name can be up to 30 characters. If it exceeds 30 characters, only the first 30 characters will be printed.

5 For Windows, click **OK** to close the **Printing Preferences** dialog box, and then click **Print**.

For Macintosh, click **Print**.

The **Set/Check Fax Transmission** dialog box appears.

For Microsoft Windows:
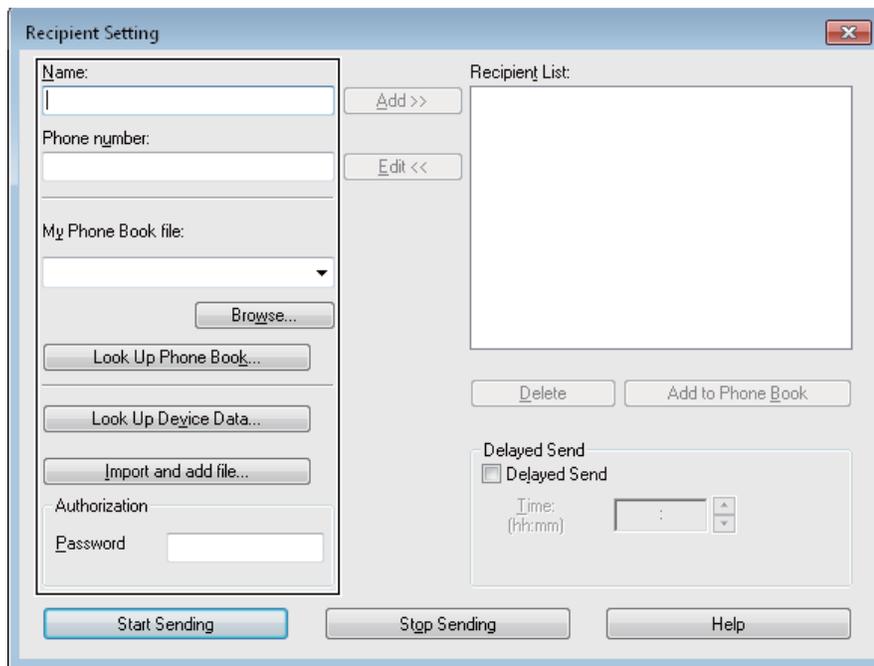
For Apple Macintosh:
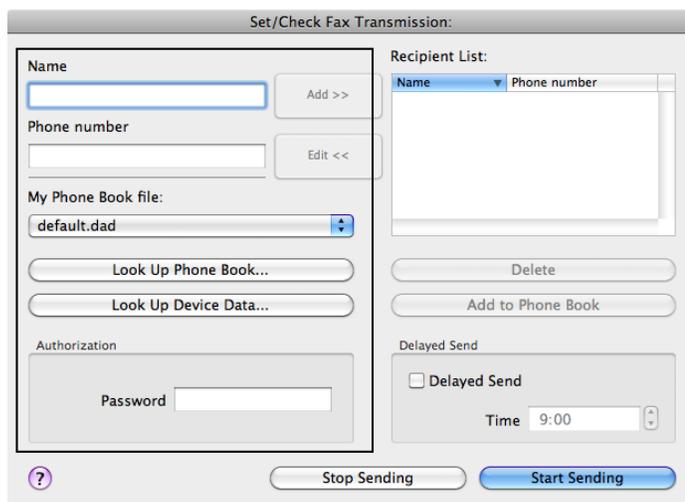
6 Enter the destination for the recipient. The following procedure is for entering the destination. For details on how to enter the destination, please refer to the Help file for the driver.

    a Enter the name and fax number directly.

    b Select a fax number from a phone book.

- **Look Up Phone Book**: Displays a list of fax numbers that are saved in the file specified for **My Phone Book file**.

- **Look Up Device Data**: Displays a list of fax numbers that are saved in the Phone Book on the Dell C2665dnf Color Laser Multifunction Printer.

- **Import and add file** (Windows only): Allows you to select a source file such as a CSV file, WAB file, MAPI, or a LDAP server. (For details on LDAP server, see "LDAP Server" and "Fax Server Phone Book.")

> **NOTE:** Depending on the application (when you are using Mac OS X 10.7 or later), you cannot use **Look Up Device Data** function.

> **NOTE:** Enter the password in the **Password** field in the **Authorization** area before sending a fax if the fax function is locked with a password.

> **NOTE:** If the Function Enabled setting for Fax is set to On (Password), you need to enter the four digit password to use the fax function.

To lock the fax function with a password:

> **NOTE:** To lock the fax function from Function Enabled, you must first set Panel Lock to On. For details, see "Panel Lock."

1 Press the ⓘ (**Information**) button.

2 Tap the Tools tab, and then tap Admin Settings.

3 Tap ▾ until Secure Settings appears, and then tap Secure Settings.

4 Tap Function Enabled.

5 Tap Fax.

6 Tap On (Password).

7 Enter a four digit password, and then tap OK.

8 Turn off the printer, and turn it on again to apply the settings.

To check whether the fax has been sent:

Print a job history report. For details about how to print a job history report, see "Report / List."

Receiving a Fax

About Receiving Modes

> **NOTE:** To use the Telephone / Fax or Ans Machine/Fax, connect an answering machine to the phone connector (📞) on the back of your printer.

When the memory is full, the fax is received in the Telephone mode.

Loading Paper for Receiving Faxes

The instructions for loading paper in the paper tray are the same whether you are printing, faxing, or copying, except that faxes can only be printed on Letter-sized, A4-sized, or Legal-sized paper. For details about loading paper, see "Loading Print Media." For details about setting the paper type and size in the tray, see "Print Media Guidelines."

Receiving a Fax Automatically in the Fax Mode

Your printer is preset to the `Fax` mode at the factory.

If you receive a fax, the printer automatically goes into the fax mode after a specified period of time and receives the fax.

To change the interval at which the printer goes into the fax mode after receiving an incoming call, see "Available Fax Settings Options."

Receiving a Fax Manually in the Telephone Mode

You can receive a fax by picking up the handset of the external telephone and then pressing the remote receive code (see "Available Fax Settings Options"). You can also receive a fax by tapping `Manual Receive` in `On Hook`.

To receive a fax by tapping `Manual Receive`:

  1 When the external telephone rings, pick up the handset and check for the fax tone.

  2 After you hear the fax tone, press the ⌂ (**Home**) button.

  3 Tap `Fax`.

  4 Tap `On Hook`.

  5 Tap `Receive`.

  6 Hang up the hand set of the external telephone.

The printer begins receiving a fax and returns to the standby mode when the reception is completed.

Receiving a Fax Automatically in the Telephone / Fax or Ans Machine/Fax

To use the `Telephone / Fax` or `Ans Machine/Fax` mode, you must connect an external telephone to the phone connector (☏) on the back of your printer.

If the caller leaves a message, the answering machine stores the message as it would normally. If your printer hears a fax tone on the line, it automatically starts to receive a fax.

For details on `Telephone / Fax` or `Ans Machine/Fax` mode, see "Available Fax Settings Options."

> 📝 **NOTE:** If you have set your printer to `Ans Machine/Fax` and your answering machine is switched off, or no answering machine is connected to your printer, your printer will automatically go into the `Fax` mode after a predefined time.

Receiving a Fax Manually Using an External Telephone (Remote Receive)

You can manually receive a fax from the external telephone without having to go to the printer.

To manually receive a fax using the external telephone, you must connect an external telephone to the phone connector (☏) on the back of your printer and also set `Remote Receive` to `On`.

When you receive a call on the external telephone and hear a fax tone, enter the two-digit code from the external telephone.

The printer receives the document.

When entering the remote receive code from the external telephone, press the number keys slowly in sequence. If you still hear the fax tone from the remote machine, try entering the two-digit code once again.

The default remote receive code is `00`. You can change the two-digit code to whatever you choose. For details on changing the code, see "Available Fax Settings Options."

> 📝 **NOTE:** Set the dialing system of your external telephone to DTMF.

Receiving Faxes Using the DRPD

The DRPD is a telephone company service which enables a user to use a single telephone line to answer several different telephone numbers. The particular number someone uses to call you on is identified by different ringing patterns, which consist of various combinations of long and short ringing sounds.

Before using the Distinctive Ring Pattern Detection option, Distinctive Ring service must be installed on your telephone line by the telephone company. To set up Distinctive Ring Pattern Detection, you will need another telephone line at your location, or someone available to dial your fax number from outside.

To set up the DRPD:

1 Press the (i) (**Information**) button.

2 Tap the `Tools` tab, and then tap `Admin Settings`.

3 Tap `Fax Settings`.

4 Tap `Fax Line Settings`.

5 Tap ▾ until `DRPD Pattern` appears, and then tap `DRPD Pattern`.

6 Tap the desired pattern, and then tap `OK`.

7 Turn off the printer, and turn it on again to apply the settings.

To receive faxes in the DRPD, you need to set the menu to DRPD. For details, see "Available Fax Settings Options."

Your printer provides seven DRPD patterns. If this service is available from your telephone company, ask your telephone company which pattern you need to select to use this service.

Receiving Faxes in the Memory

Since your printer is a multi-tasking device, it can receive faxes while you are making copies or printing. If you receive a fax while you are copying, printing, or run out of paper or toner, your printer stores incoming faxes in the memory. Then, as soon as you finish copying, printing, or re-supply the consumables, the printer automatically prints the fax.

Polling Receive

You can receive faxes from the remote fax machine when you want to receive it.

1 Press the ⌂ (**Home**) button.

2 Tap `Fax`.

3 Tap `On Hook`.

4 Tap `Polling`.

5 Enter the fax number of the remote machine using the number pad.

6 Tap `Receive` to begin receiving the fax.

Automatic Dialing

Speed Dialing

You can store up to 200 frequently dialed numbers in speed dial locations (001–200).

When the speed dial job specified in the delayed fax or redial exists, you cannot change the speed dial number from the operator panel or **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**.

Setting Speed Dial

1 Press the (i) (**Information**) button.

2 Tap the `Tools` tab, and then tap `Admin Settings`.

3 Tap `Phone Book`.

4 Tap `Individuals`.

5 Tap ▼ until the desired speed dial number between 1 and 200 appears and then select that number.

To jump to a specific speed dial number, enter the desired number and then # using the number pad.

6 Tap the `Enter Name` text box.

7 Enter the name, and then tap `OK`.

8 Tap the `Enter Number` text box.

9 Enter the fax number using the number pad, and then tap `OK`.

To insert a pause between numbers, press the 📞 (**Redial/Pause**) button.

"-" appears on the display.

10 Tap `OK`.

To store more fax numbers, repeat steps 5 to 10.

Sending a Fax Using Speed Dial

1 Load the document(s) facing up with top edge in first into the DADF.

OR

Place a single document facing down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document."

2 Press the 🏠 (**Home**) button.

3 Tap `Fax`.

4 Tap `Speed Dial`.

5 Enter the speed dial number between 1 and 200 using the number pad, and then tap `Done`.

6 Adjust the document resolution to suit your fax needs. (For details, see "Adjusting the Document Resolution." For adjusting the contrast, see "Adjusting the Document Contrast.")

7 Tap `Send` to scan data.

When the document is loaded on the document glass, the display prompts you for another page.

If you want to place a new document, replace the document with a new document, and then tap `Continue`.

When you have finished loading documents, tap `Send Now`.

The fax number stored in the speed dial location is automatically dialed. The document is sent when the remote fax machine answers.

> ✎ **NOTE:** Using the asterisk (*) in the first digit, you can send a document to multiple locations. For example, if you enter 00*, you can send a document to the locations registered between 001 and 009.

Group Dialing

If you frequently send the same document to several destinations, you can create a group of these destinations and set them under a one-digit group dial location. This enables you to use a group dial number setting to send the same document to all the destinations in the group.

📝 **NOTE:** You cannot include one group dial number within another group dial number.

Setting Group Dial

1 Press the ⓘ (**Information**) button.
2 Tap the `Tools` tab, and then tap `Admin Settings`.
3 Tap `Phone Book`.
4 Tap `Groups`.
5 Tap ▾ until the desired group dial number between 1 and 6 appears and then select that group dial number.

   If a speed dial number is already stored in the location you chose, the display shows the name and the number of entries stored in that group dial number.

6 Tap the `Enter Group Name` text box.
7 Enter the name, and then tap `OK`.
8 Tap `Add from Address Book`.

   📝 **NOTE:** The fax number needs to be registered before you can select `Add from Address Book`.

9 Tap ▾ until the desired speed dial number appears and then select that speed dial number.
10 Tap `OK`.

   To store more group dial numbers, repeat steps 5 to 10.

Editing Group Dial

You can delete a specific speed dial number from a selected group or add a new number to the selected group.

1 Press the ⓘ (**Information**) button.
2 Tap the `Tools` tab, and then tap `Admin Settings`.
3 Tap `Phone Book`.
4 Tap `Groups`.
5 Tap ▾ until the group dial number that you want to edit appears, and then select that group dial number.
6 Tap `Edit`.
7 Tap the `Enter Group Name` text box.
8 Enter a new name, and then tap `OK`.
9 To delete a speed dial number from the group dial number:
   a   Tap ▾ until the speed dial number that you want to edit appears, and then select that speed dial number.
   b   Tap `Remove`.
10 To add a new speed dial number to the group dial number:
   a   Tap `Add from Address Book`.
   b   Tap ▾ until the desired speed dial number appears and then select that speed dial number.
   c   Tap `OK`.

11 Tap OK.

To delete an existing group dial number, select the group dial number, and then tap Remove.

If you want to edit another group dial number, repeat steps 5 to 11.

Sending a Fax Using Group Dial (Multi-address Transmission)

You can use group dialing for Broadcasting or Delayed transmissions.

Follow the procedure of the desired operation. (For Delayed transmission, see "Specifying the Fax Settings Options.")

You can use one or more group numbers in one operation. Then continue the procedure to complete the desired operation.

Your printer automatically scans the document loaded in the DADF or on the document glass into the memory. The printer dials each of the numbers included in the group.

Printing a Speed Dial List

You can check your automatic dial setting by printing a Speed Dial list.

For details about how to print a Speed Dial list, see "Report / List."

Phone Book

You can select or search the registered phone numbers from the phone books.

1 Load the document(s) facing up with top edge in first into the DADF.
OR

Place a single document facing down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document."

2 Press the 🏠 (**Home**) button.

3 Tap Fax.

4 Tap Phone Book, and then select one of the following:

To select from the local phone book:

a Tap Individuals or Groups.

b Swipe the screen until the desired speed dial number or the group dial number appears, and then select that speed dial number or group dial number.

c Tap Done.

To search from the server phone book:

a Tap Network Phone Book.

b Enter a keyword using the keyboard, and then tap Search.

c Tap a recipient from the search result, and then tap Done.

> 🖉 **NOTE:** For more information on address book and server address book, see "Address Books."

> 🖉 **NOTE:** For details about Network Phone Book, see "Using the Server Address Book and Server Phone Book."

> 🖉 **NOTE:** A fax number needs to be registered before you can select an address book.

5 Tap Send to begin sending the fax.

Other Ways to Fax

Using the Secure Receiving Mode

You may need to prevent your received faxes from being accessed by unauthorized people. You can turn on the secure fax mode using the `Secure Receive` option to restrict printing out all of the received faxes when the printer is unattended. In the secure fax mode, all incoming faxes will go in memory. When the mode is turned off, all stored faxes will be printed.

NOTE: Before operation, ensure Panel Lock is enabled.

To turn the secure receiving mode on:

1 Press the ⓘ (**Information**) button.
2 Tap the `Tools` tab, and then tap `Admin Settings`.
3 Tap `Fax Settings`.
4 Tap `Incoming Defaults`.
5 Tap ▾ until `Secure Receive` appears, and then tap `Secure Receive`.
6 Tap `Secure Receive Set`.
7 Tap `Enable`.
8 Enter a four digit password, and then tap `OK`.

   When a fax is received in the secure receiving mode, your printer stores it into memory and `Secure Fax Receive` is enabled on the **Job Status** screen to let you know that there is a fax stored.

To print received documents:

1 Press the ⌂ (**Home**) button.
2 Tap `Print`.
3 Swipe the screen until `Secure Fax Receive` appears, and then tap `Secure Fax Receive`.
4 Enter a four digit password, and then tap `OK`.

   The faxes stored in memory are printed.

To turn the secure receiving mode off:

1 Follow the same steps from 1 to 6 in "To turn the secure receiving mode on:" and tap `Secure Receive Set`.
2 Tap `Disable`.

Using an Answering Machine

To the wall jack   Printer   Line   Telephone Answering Device   Phone
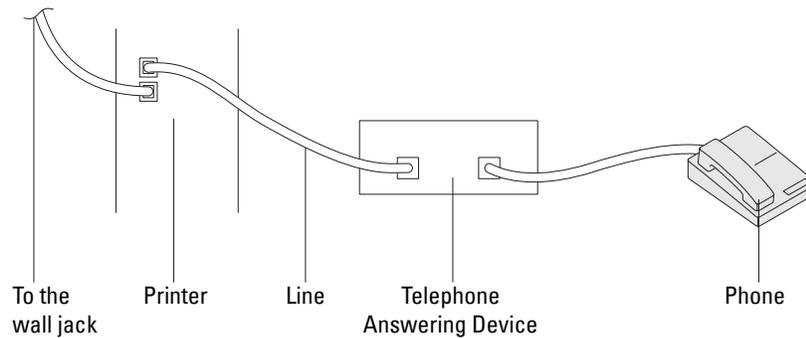
You can connect a telephone answering device (TAD) directly to the back of your printer as shown above.

- Set your printer to the `Ans Machine/Fax` and set `Auto Receive Ans/Fax` to specify the time for the TAD.

- When the TAD picks up the call, the printer monitors and takes the line if fax tones are received and then starts receiving the fax.

- If the answering device is off, the printer automatically goes into the `Fax` after the ring tone sounds for a predefined time.

- If you answer the call and hear fax tones, the printer will answer the fax call if you

  Set `On Hook` to `On` (you can hear voice or fax tones from the remote machine), and then tap `Receive` and hang up the receiver.

  OR

  Press the two-digit remote receive code and hang up the receiver.

Using a Computer Modem

To the Internet   Computer   Printer   Line   Telephone Answering Device   Phone
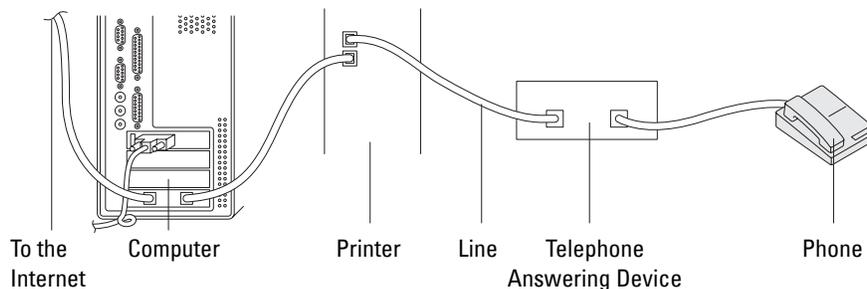
If you want to use your computer modem for faxing or for a dial-up Internet connection, connect the computer modem directly to the back of your printer with the TAD as shown above.

- Set your printer to the `Ans Machine/Fax` and set `Auto Receive Ans/Fax` to specify the time for the TAD.

- Turn off the computer modem's fax-receive feature.

- Do not use the computer modem if your printer is sending or receiving a fax.

- Follow the instructions provided with your computer modem and fax application to fax via the computer modem.

Printing a Report

The following reports may be useful when using fax:

> *NOTE:* For more information about other reports and how to print a report, see "Report / List."

Speed Dial	This list shows all the numbers currently stored in the memory of your printer as speed dial numbers.
Address Book	This list shows all the addresses currently stored in the printer's memory as Address Book information.
Server Address	This list shows all of the numbers currently stored in the printer's memory as Server Address information.
Fax Activity	This report shows information about the faxes you recently received or sent.
Fax Pending	This list shows the status of pending faxes. You may print this list to confirm your changes after changing any settings.
Print Meter	This report shows the total number of pages printed. The report will be titled **Print Volume Report** or **ColorTrack Report**, depending on the ColorTrack Mode setting.

Changing Setting Options

1 Press the ⓘ (**Information**) button.

2 Tap the Tools tab, and then tap Default Settings.

3 Tap Fax Defaults.

4 Select the desired menu.

5 Select the desired setting or enter the value using the number pad, and then tap OK.

Dell™ Document Hub

The Dell Document Hub is a convenient one-stop gateway to a variety of cloud services to help you manage your documents. With the Dell Document Hub, you can convert hard copy documents into editable digital content and store them directly in your preferred cloud storage service. You can search for files across multiple clouds simultaneously and then share and print content easily.
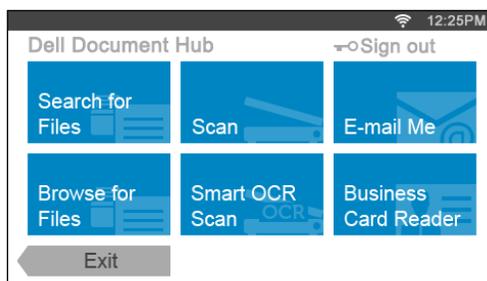
Registering the User and Signing In to the Dell Document Hub

To use the Dell Document Hub, you need a user account registered to the printer, and sign in to the Dell Document Hub.

Registering a New User to the Dell Document Hub

Prepare the access information required for each of the cloud services you want to use, and make sure that you have a user account registered to the printer. For more information on registering an account, see "Creating a New User Account."

1 Access the Dell Document Hub website from your computer.

Enter the following URL in the web browser:

www.dell.com/dochub

2 Follow the instructions displayed on the screen.

3 An e-mail will be soon sent to the registered e-mail address. Check the e-mail and follow the instructions on the e-mail to activate.

To Register a New User From the Printer

You can start the user registration alternatively using the printer.

📝 **NOTE:** To complete the registration process, you will need to use your computer or mobile device to receive an e-mail and access the Dell Document Hub website.

1 Log in to the printer as a registered user.

2 Tap the `Dell Document Hub` tile in the **Home** screen.

3 Tap `New User`.

The **Welcome to Dell Document Hub** screen is displayed. Tap `Next`.

4 Follow the instructions displayed in the touch panel.

Signing In to the Dell Document Hub

1 Log in to the printer as a registered user.

2 Tap the `Dell Document Hub` tile in the **Home** screen.

The **Dell Doc Hub Sign In** screen is displayed.
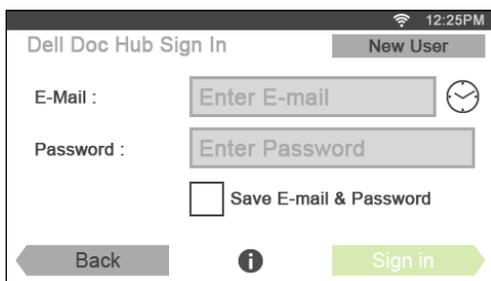
3 Tap the `E-mail` text box to enter the e-mail address.

> ✎ **NOTE:** You can also tap ⊘ to select a recently entered e-mail address from a list. The list can contain up to eight recently entered e-mail addresses.

4 Tap the `Password` text box to enter the password, and tap `Done`.

5 If you want to save your e-mail address and password, tap to check the `Save E-mail & Password` check box.

The e-mail and password are stored under the registered user's account and unauthorized user will not be able to access them. For security purpose, it is recommended that you set a password for registered user.

6 Tap `Sign in`.

When the **Dell Document Hub** screen is displayed, signing in is successful.

> ✎ **NOTE:** If all the tiles on the Dell Document Hub screen are pale and disabled when you sign in, you have not completed the necessary procedures to activate your account of the Dell Document Hub. Check the e-mail you received from the Dell Document Hub, and activate your account.

When the Favorites Screen is Displayed When You Tap the Tile on the Dell Document Hub Screen

This means that your favorite settings for the function have been saved on the printer. Select settings from the list as desired.

Returning to the Home Screen

Tap `Exit`. The sign-in status is maintained. Next time you tap the `Dell Document Hub` tile on the **Home** screen, you do not have to sign in while you are logged in to the **Home** screen.

You can tap `Sign out` as well to return to the **Home** screen, but the sign-in status is not maintained. Next time you sign in to the Dell Document Hub, you need to reenter your e-mail address and password.

Logging Out From the Printer

Press the ⊷○ (**Login/Logout**) button. You will log out from the **Home** screen and the portal screen will be displayed. In this case, the sign-in status to the Dell Document Hub is maintained as far as the `Save E-mail & Password` check box option is selected in the step 5 above. Next time you tap the `Dell Document Hub` tile on the **Home** screen, you can skip the sign in process.

Searching for and Printing Files

You can search for the files saved in the cloud services, and print them from the printer. You can search across multiple cloud services at once. This method is suitable when you want to search by the keywords, including the file name.

✐ **NOTE:** To search for files across multiple cloud services, you need to go to **www.dell.com/dochub** and connect the cloud services with the Dell Document Hub.

1 Tap the `Search for Files` tile in the **Dell Document Hub** screen.

2 Enter the keywords, and tap `Search`.

Files are searched across the cloud services you registered.

The **Search Results** screen is displayed.

3 Tap the files you want to print. You can select up to 10 files.

To sort the results, tap ![A-Z sort icon] and select the sorting order.

4 Tap ![preview icon] to preview the selected files.

The **File Preview** screen is displayed. The first three pages of each file are displayed in the small previews.

    a To show the page in the large preview, tap the page in the small previews.

    b To preview other files, flick the screen side to side.

    c To specify the file as the one to be printed, tap the rectangle beside the small previews to enter a check mark.

    d To return to the previous screen, tap `Back`.

5 Tap ![settings icon] to check or change the print settings.

The **Print Settings** screen is displayed.

    a To show the other tiles, flick the screen side to side.

    b To return to the previous screen, tap `Back`.

       For more information on the Print Settings, see "Print Settings."

6 Tap `Print` to start printing.

To cancel printing, tap `Stop`.

When all the selected files are printed, the screen returns to the Search Results screen.

✐ **NOTE:** You can start printing by tapping `Print` in any screens of **Search Results**, **File Preview** or **Print Settings**.

Browsing and Printing Files

You can browse and print the files saved in the selected cloud services. This method is suitable when you know which cloud service the file you want to print is located in.

1 Tap the `Browse for Files` tile in the **Dell Document Hub** screen.
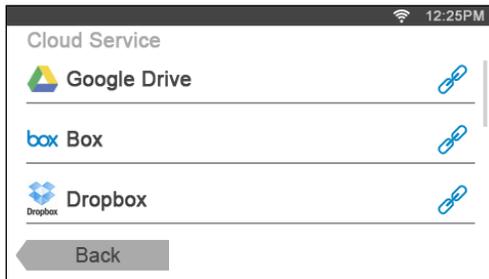
The **Cloud Services** screen is displayed.

To scroll the list, flick the screen up or down.

The status of the cloud services can be confirmed by an icon on the right side of the names of each cloud service.

   indicates that the cloud service is correctly associated with the Dell Document Hub.

   indicates that the cloud service is not associated, or not linked correctly.

   indicates that the cloud service link with the Dell Document Hub has expired.

To link the cloud service with the Dell Document Hub, go to **www.dell.com/dochub**.

For more information, tap the status icon.

2 Tap the cloud service you want to browse in.

The list of the contents stored in the selected cloud service is displayed.

3 Tap the location you want to browse in.

The contents in the selected location are listed.

4 Tap the files you want to print. You can select up to 10 files.

5 Tap   to search the files in the current location.

   a Enter the file name or keywords, and tap `Search`.

      The **Search Results** screen is displayed.

      You can sort the results by tapping   and selecting the sorting order.

   b To return to the previous screen, tap `Back`.

6 Tap   to preview the selected files.

The **File Preview** screen is displayed. The first three pages of each file are displayed in the small previews.

   a To show the page in the large preview, tap the page in the small previews.

   b To preview other files, flick the screen side to side.

   c To specify the file as the one to be printed, tap the rectangle beside the small previews to enter a check mark.

   d To return to the previous screen, tap `Back`.

7 Tap ⚙ to check or change the print settings.

The **Print Settings** screen is displayed.

a To show the other tiles, flick the screen side to side

b To return to the previous screen, tap `Back`.

For more information on the Print Settings, see "Print Settings."

✐ **NOTE:** Tap 💾 in the **Print Settings** screen, and you can save your print settings and file path to the cloud service as a favorite. Name your favorite in the **Save Favorites** screen, and tap `Save`. If you are saving the favorite in the same name with the existing favorite, the settings and the file path will be overwritten. You can delete the unnecessary favorite by tapping 🗑 .
Once you save your settings as a favorite in the Favorites screen, you can recall those settings the next time you sign in to the Dell Document Hub from any printers of the same model.

8 Tap `Print` to start printing.

To cancel printing, tap `Stop`.

When all the selected files are printed, the screen to show the selected location returns.

✐ **NOTE:** You can start printing by tapping `Print` in any screens of contents list, Search Results, **File Preview** or **Print Settings**.

Searching for the Files in the Selected Cloud Service

After you select the cloud service in the step 2 above, you can search for the files by tapping 🔍 .

Enter the file name or keywords, and tap `Search`.

You can select the files to print in the **Search Results** screen, sort the results by tapping ⇵ , or preview the files by tapping 📄 .

Scanning

You can scan the document and save the scanned file in the cloud service.

1 Tap the `Scan` tile in the **Dell Document Hub** screen.
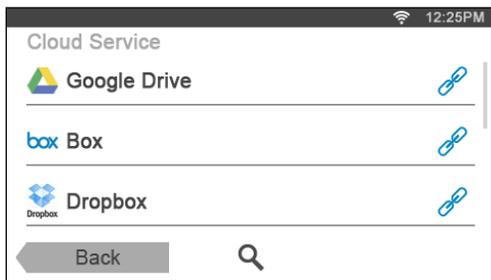
The **Cloud Services** screen is displayed.

To scroll the list, flick the screen up or down.

The status of the cloud services can be confirmed by an icon on the right side of the names of each cloud service.

For more information, tap the status icon.

2 Tap the destination cloud service you want to save the scanned file to.

The list of the contents stored in the selected cloud service is displayed.

3 Tap the location you want to save the scanned file to.

The screen to show the selected location is displayed.

4 Tap `Next`.

The screen to specify the file name and the file format is displayed.

5 Tap the `File Name` text box, and enter the file name.

6 Tap the `File Format` box, and specify the file format to save the scanned file.

7 Tap ⚙ to check or change the scan settings.

The **Scan Settings** screen is displayed.

a To show the other tiles, flick the screen side to side.

b To return to the previous screen, tap `Back`.

For more information on the Scan Settings, see "Scan" and "Scan Settings."

📝 **NOTE:** Tap 🖫 in the **Scan Settings** screen, and you can save your scan settings and file path to the cloud service as a favorite. Name your favorite in the **Save Favorite**s screen, and tap `Save`. If you are saving the favorite in the same name with the existing favorite, the settings and the file path will be overwritten. You can delete the unnecessary favorite by tapping 🗙 .
Once you save your settings as a favorite in the Favorites screen, you can recall those settings the next time you sign in to the Dell Document Hub from any printers of the same model.

8 Tap `Scan` to start scanning.

To cancel scanning, tap `Stop`.

When the scanning is completed, the screen to show the selected location returns.

Searching for the Location Across the Cloud Services

Before you select the cloud service in the step 2 above, you can search for the location you want to save the scanned file across the cloud services by tapping 🔍 .

Enter the keywords, and tap `Search`.

You can select the location to save the scanned file in the **Search Results** screen.

You can sort the results by tapping ⬇ .

Searching for the Location in the Selected Cloud Service

Before you select the location in the step 3 above, you can search for the location in the selected cloud service by tapping 🔍 .

Enter the keywords, and tap `Search`.

You can select the location to save the scanned file in the **Search Results** screen.

You can sort the results by tapping ⬇ .

Scanning the Document Using Optical Character Recognition (OCR)

You can scan the document using OCR, and save it in the cloud service.

1 Tap the `Smart OCR Scan` tile in the **Dell Document Hub** screen.
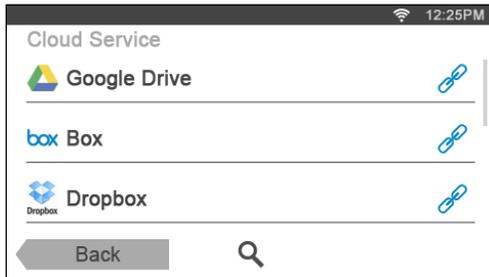
The **Cloud Services** screen is displayed.

To scroll the list, flick the screen up or down.

The status of the cloud services can be confirmed by an icon on the right side of the names of each cloud service.

For more information, tap the status icon.

2 Tap the destination cloud service you want to save the converted file to.

The list of the contents stored in the selected cloud service is displayed.

3 Tap the location you want to save the converted file to.

The screen to show the selected location is displayed.

4 Tap `Next`.

The screen to specify the file name and the file format is displayed.

5 Tap the `File Name` text box, and enter the file name.

6 Tap the `File Format` box, and specify the file format to save the converted file.

7 Tap ⚙ to check or change the OCR scan settings.

The **Scan Settings** screen is displayed.

 a To show the other tiles, flick the screen side to side.

 b To return to the previous screen, tap `Back`.

 For more information on the Scan Settings, see "Smart OCR Scan" and "Scan Settings."

 📝 **NOTE:** Tap 💾 in the **Scan Settings** screen, and you can save your scan settings and file path to the cloud service as a favorite. Name your favorite in the **Save Favorites** screen, and tap `Save`. If you are saving the favorite in the same name with the existing favorite, the settings and the file path will be overwritten. You can delete the unnecessary favorite by tapping 🗑 .
 Once you save your settings as a favorite in the **Favorites** screen, you can recall those settings the next time you sign in to the Dell Document Hub from any printers of the same model.

8 Tap `Scan` to start scanning using the OCR.

Receiving the Scanned File as an E-Mail

The document can be scanned and sent to you as an attached file of an e-mail.

1 Tap the `E-mail Me` tile in the **Dell Document Hub** screen.

The **E-mail Me** screen is displayed.
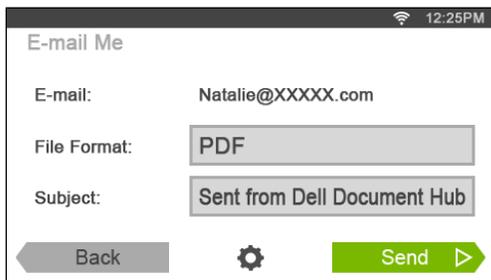
2 Tap the `File Format` box, and specify the file format to save the scanned file.

3 Tap the `Subject` text box, and enter the subject of the mail sent with the scanned file.

4 Tap ⚙ to check or change the e-mail settings.

   a To show the other tiles, flick the screen side to side.

   b To return to the previous screen, tap `Back`.

    For more information on the E-mail Settings, see "E-mail Me" and "Scan Settings."

   📝 **NOTE:** Tap 💾 in the E-mail Settings screen, and you can save your e-mail settings as a favorite. Name your favorite in the **Save Favorites** screen, and tap `Save`. If you are saving the favorite in the same name with the existing favorite, the settings will be overwritten. You can delete the unnecessary favorite by tapping ❎ .
Once you save your settings as a favorite in the Favorites screen, you can recall those settings the next time you sign in to the Dell Document Hub from any printers of the same model.

5 Tap `Send` to start scanning and sending the scanned file as an attached file of an e-mail.

Receiving the Scanned Image of the Business Card as an E-Mail

The business card can be scanned and converted to the vCard file, and sent to you as an attached file of an e-mail.

1   Tap the `Business Card Reader` tile in the **Dell Document Hub** screen.

The **Business Card Reader** screen is displayed.
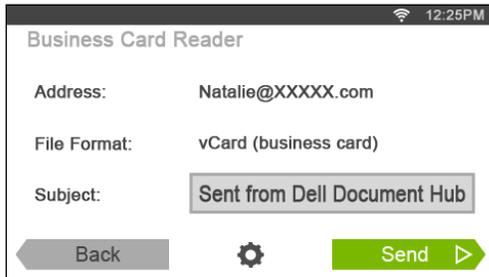
2   Tap the `Subject` text box, and enter the subject of the e-mail sent with the vCard file.

3   Tap ⚙ to check or change the scan settings.

   a   Tap the `OCR Language` tile to specify the language.

   b   To return to the previous screen, tap `Back`.

4   Tap `Send` to start scanning and sending the vCard file as an attached file of an e-mail.

Know Your Printer

24

Understanding Your Printer Software

Use the *Software and Documentation* disc that shipped with your printer to install a combination of software programs, depending on your operating system.

Printer Status Window

The **Printer Status** window alerts you when there is a warning or when an error occurs, for example, when a paper jam occurs or toner is running low.

By default, the **Printer Status** window launches only when an error occurs. When an error occurs, the error message appears on the **Printer Status** window. You can set the **Printer Status** window to always launch when printing in **Printing Status Window Properties**.

You can also check toner level, quantity of paper remaining or the configuration of options for the printer.

Status Monitor Console

Use the **Status Monitor Console** to manage multiple instances of the **Status Window** for a particular printer.

Select a printer from the list view (or **Printer Selection**) by clicking its name to open a **Status Window** for a particular printer.

Dell™ Supplies Management System

You can launch the **Dell Supplies Management System** dialog box from the **All Programs** menu or the desktop icon.

You can order consumables by phone or from the web.

1. Click **Start**→ **All Programs**→ **Dell Printers**→ **Additional Color Laser Software**→ **Dell Supplies Management System**.

   The **Dell Supplies Management System** window appears.

2. Select your printer from the **Select Printer Model** list.

3. If you are ordering from the web:

   a. Select a URL from the **Select Reorder URL** list.

   b. Click **Visit Dell printer supplies ordering web site**.

   📝 **NOTE:** When you cannot get information from the printer automatically by two-way communication, a window prompting you to type the Service Tag appears. Type the Service Tag of your Dell printer in the field provided. Your Service Tag is located inside the front cover of your printer.

4. If you order by phone, call the number that appears in the **Order by Phone** section.

User Setup Disk Creating Tool

The **User Setup Disk Creating Tool** program located in the **MakeDisk** folder of the **Utilities** folder on the *Software and Documentation* disc and the printer drivers located on the *Software and Documentation* disc are used to create driver installation packages that contain custom driver settings. A driver installation package can contain a group of saved printer driver settings and other data for things such as:

- Print orientation and Multiple Up (document settings)
- Watermarks
- Font references

If you want to install the printer driver with the same settings on multiple computers running the same operating system, create a setup disk in a floppy disk or in a server on the network. Using the setup disk that you have created will reduce the amount of work required when installing the printer driver.

- Install the printer driver in the computer on which the setup disk is to be created.
- The setup disk can only be used on the operating system on which the disk was created or computers running the same operating system. Create a separate setup disk for each of the operating systems.

Software Update

The firmware and/or driver updates can be downloaded from the Dell Support web site located at **dell.com/support**.

Printer Utility Software

You can open the **Status Window**, **Tool Box**, **Troubleshooting**, **Address Book Editor**, and **ScanButton Manager** using the **Quick Launch Utility** window.

NOTE: Quick Launch Utility is only supported on Microsoft® Windows®.

To use the **Quick Launch Utility**, select to install the **Quick Launch Utility** when you install the Dell software.

To install the Dell software, follow the instructions below.

1   Insert the *Software and Documentation* disc into your computer and click **setup_assist.exe** to start **Dell Printer Setup**.

2   Click **Install Printer Driver and Software**.

3   Follow the on-screen instructions.

To open the **Quick Launch Utility** window:

1   Click **Start**→ **All Programs**→ **Dell Printers**→ **Additional Color Laser Software**→ **Quick Launch Utility**.
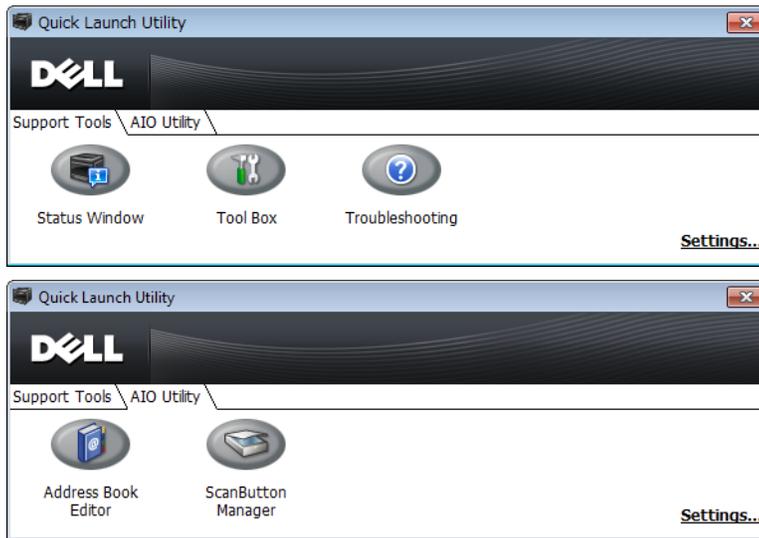
The **Quick Launch Utility** window provides five buttons: **Status Window**, **Tool Box**, **Troubleshooting**, **Address Book Editor**, and **ScanButton Manager**.

To exit the **Quick Launch Utility** window:

1 Click the Close (x) button at the top-right of the window.

For details, click **Help** of each application.

Status Window

The **Status Window** button opens the **Printer Status** window. For more information about using Status Window, refer to "Printer Status Window."

Tool Box

The **Tool Box** button opens the **Tool Box**. For more information about using **Tool Box**, refer to "Understanding the Tool Box Menus."

Troubleshooting

The **Troubleshooting** button opens the Troubleshooting Guide, which allows you to solve problems by yourself.

Address Book Editor

The **Address Book Editor** button opens the **Address Book Editor**, which allows you to register the contact information such as phone number and e-mail address. For more information about using **Address Book Editor**, refer to "Using Address Book Editor."

ScanButton Manager

The **ScanButton Manager** button opens the **ScanButton Manager**, which allows you to specify how the **ScanButton Manager** behaves for scan events that the device generates (USB connection only). For more information about using **ScanButton Manager**, refer to "Scanning From the Operator Panel - Scan to PC."

Address Books

There are several address books available for Scan and Fax functions. Address books help you organize contact information, such as e-mail addresses, fax numbers and server information, and quickly choose the recipient or locate the address. The address book data can be obtained from the printer or a remote LDAP server.

> **NOTE:** Phone Book is described as one of Address Books in this section.

> **NOTE:** For information on how to setup the LDAP server, see "LDAP Server" and "LDAP User Mapping." For information on how to obtain e-mail addresses and fax numbers from LDAP servers, see "Using the Server Address Book and Server Phone Book."

Types of Address Books

- E-mail Address Book (for Scan to E-mail)

  E-mail addresses registered for sending the scanned document via e-mail

- Email Group (for Scan to E-mail)

  Groups of e-mail addresses registered for sending the scanned document via e-mail

- LDAP Server Address Book (for Scan to E-mail)

  E-mail addresses registered in the LDAP server for sending the scanned document via e-mail

- Network Address Book (for Scan to Network)

  Computer and FTP server information registered for sending the scanned document to a computer or ftp server

- Phone Book (for Fax)

  Fax numbers registered for sending documents from your printer

- Group Dial (for Fax)

  Groups of fax numbers registered for sending documents from your printer
- LDAP Server Phone Book (for Fax)

  Fax numbers registered in the LDAP server for sending documents from your printer
- PC Fax Address Book (for Direct Fax)

  Fax numbers registered for sending documents from your computer
- PC Fax Address Book for group (for Direct Fax)

  Groups of fax numbers registered for sending documents from your computer

Adding and Editing Entries to the Address Books

There are following three ways to add or edit entries to the address books:

- Operator panel of the printer
- **Address Book Editor**
- **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**

Functions	Features	Types of Address Books	Entry Registration		
			Operator Panel on the Printer	Address Book Editor	Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool
Scan	E-mail	Address Book	-	●	●
		Email Group	-	●	●
		Server Address Book (LDAP server)	-	-	-
	Network	Address Book	-	●	●
Fax	Fax	Phone Book	●	●	●
		Group Dial	●	●	●
		Server Phone Book (LDAP server)	-	-	-
	Direct Fax	PC Fax Address Book	-	●	-
		PC Fax Address Book - group	-	●	-

Using Operator Panel of the Printer

You can directly enter the fax numbers on the operator panel.

> **NOTE:** For information on how to add a new entry, see "Setting Speed Dial."

Using Address Book Editor

You can use **Address Book Editor** installed on your computer to add or edit entries. **Address Book Editor** is synchronized with the address books of your printer and updated simultaneously as you save changes to the entries in **Address Book Editor**.

> **NOTE:** This tool is supported on both Microsoft Windows and Apple Macintosh.

> **NOTE:** When the printer and your computer is connected via USB, you must install the scanner driver.

With **Address Book Editor**, you can:

- Automatically retrieves data from the address books of your printer at startup
- Synchronizes with the printer
- Allows you to import the Address Book data from CSV file, WAB file, MAPI, and LDAP server
- Allows you to export the Address Book data into a CSV file

✐ **NOTE:** Do not edit the exported CSV file with applications other than the **Address Book Editor**. Editing the CSV file with other applications may corrupt the address data.

Address Book Panel

There are two address books you can manage in the **Address Book Editor**: Device Address Book for Fax, E-mail, and Server and PC Fax Address Book for Direct Fax.

For Microsoft Windows:
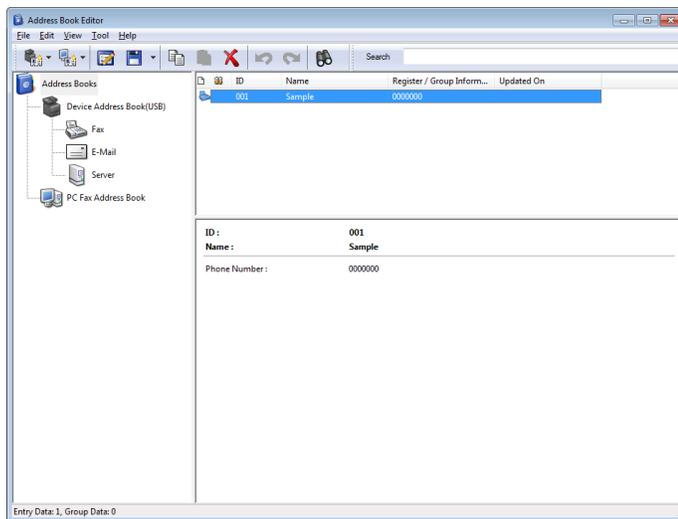
For Apple Macintosh:
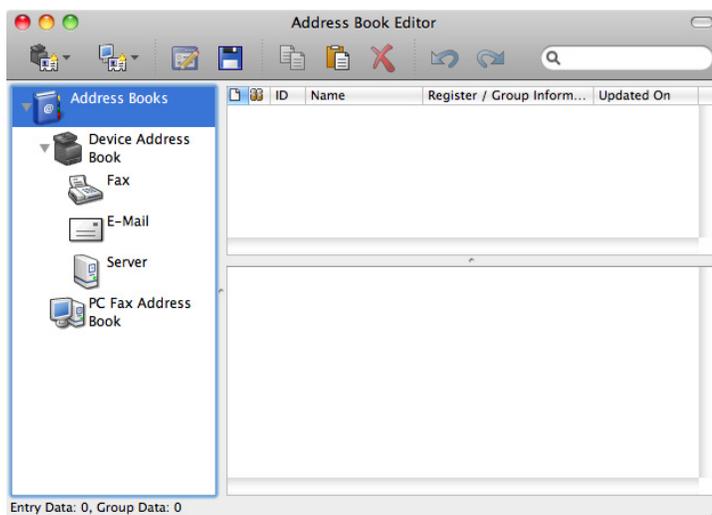
- **Device Address Book**

  - **Fax**

    Links to the printer's Address Book for Fax feature. You can register up to 200 fax numbers and 6 groups with 200 fax numbers.

  - **E-Mail**

    Links to the printer's Address Book for Scan to E-mail feature. You can register up to 100 e-mail addresses and 10 groups with 10 e-mail addresses.

  - **Server**

    Links to the printer's Address Book for Scan to Network feature. You can register up to 32 server information.

- **PC Fax Address Book**

  You can manage the PC Fax Address Book for using Direct Fax feature on your computer. You can register up to 500 fax numbers and 500 groups with 30 fax numbers.

Editing an entry:

1 Select an Address Book that the entry you want to edit is stored.

2 Select an entry that you want to edit.

3 Click **Edit**, and enter new information.

4 Click **Save** to save changes.

> NOTE: When the address book entries are updated, it synchronizes with the printer and updates the address books of your printer simultaneously.

Using Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool

You can use **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** using a general web browser.

> NOTE: For information on how to add a new entry, see "Address Book."

> NOTE: When the address book entries are updated, it synchronizes with the printer and updates the address books of your printer simultaneously.

App Manager

The **App Manager - Dell C2665dnf** is a utility that lets you manage the apps on your printer.

The following tasks can be performed from the **App Manager - Dell C2665dnf**:

- Install, update, and uninstall apps
- Back up and restore printer settings, address books, and apps

> ⚠ CAUTION: Do not turn off the printer or the computer while backing up or restoring data.

> NOTE: The **App Manager - Dell C2665dnf** can back up the data of 10 printers. For each printer, up to five backup history can be cached.

> NOTE: The following will not be included in the backup data:

– Settings data of Default Settings, Network Settings, Fax Settings, Maintenance, Secure Settings, and USB Settings

– Data that is integral with other setting data such as digital certificates

– Data that is specific to the printer such as an IP address

– Data that is not permitted to be backed up due to security reasons

– Settings about date and time, and also settings that are associated with date and time

– Data that are considered invalid for settings of the printer

📝 **NOTE:** The time it takes to send and create backup files may take longer depending on the data size.

📝 **NOTE:** The features of the **App Manager - Dell C2665dnf** may not be used when the printer has an error. If the **App Manager - Dell C2665dnf** does not respond, check and clear the status of the printer.

Preparing to use the App Manager - Dell C2665dnf

To use the **App Manager - Dell C2665dnf**, it is recommended that your computer should have more than 25GB of storage space.

📝 **NOTE:** Your computer needs to be connected to a network. USB connection is not supported.

📝 **NOTE:** For Windows XP and Windows Vista®, .Net Framework 3.5 or later is required.

Using the App Manager - Dell C2665dnf

1 Click **Start**→**All Programs**→**Dell Printers**→**Dell C2665dnf Color Laser Multifunction Printer**→**App Manager**

2 Click **Printers**.

3 Click **Add Printer.**

4 Find the printer you want to register and click **Add**.

📝 **NOTE:** If the printer you are looking for does not appear in the list, enter the IP address of the printer in the search text box.

5 Enter the same ID and password that is used for the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**, and click **OK**.

6 Click ← to return to the printer list.

Click the printer you want to manage from the list.

📝 **NOTE:** If the printer you are looking for does not appear in the list or cannot be accessed from the **App Manager - Dell C2665dnf**, check that the **On** check box for **Port9100** and **SNMP** is selected in the **Port Settings** of **Print Server Settings** tab in the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**.

Status Monitor Widget for Macintosh

Status Monitor Widget is a printer utility that promotes efficient use of the printer through the exchange of information between the Macintosh and the printer.

Status Monitor Widget Feature

- Monitoring Dell Printers

  Allows you to check the status of Dell printers currently connected to your Macintosh

- Receiving Alerts

  Alerts you to problems, such as paper jams or low toner

- Ordering Supplies

  Allows you to access the web site to order supplies

Before Installing the Status Monitor Widget

Operating systems

- Mac OS X 10.5
- Mac OS X 10.6
- Mac OS X 10.7

- Mac OS X 10.8

Network protocols and interfaces

- LPR
- Socket 9100
- Bonjour
- USB 2.0 and 1.1 (When connecting with multiple printers of the same model via USB cables, only the printer recognized first can be monitored in the **Status Monitor Widget**.)

Installing the Status Monitor Widget

1   Double-click the **Dell C2665 Installer** icon in the **Finder** window.

2   Follow the on-screen instructions.

    When the **Install Succeeded** screen appears, the installation is complete.

    NOTE: Entering the administrative login name and password are required during the installation process.

Opening and Closing the Status Monitor Widget

Opening the Status Monitor Widget

1   Click the Dashboard icon in the Dock to launch Dashboard.

2   Click the Plus (+) sign to display the Widget Bar.

3   Click the icon of **Status Monitor** in the Widget Bar. The **Printer Status** window appears.

    NOTE: If the message **Select a printer** is displayed, select your printer in **Preferences**. (For more information on Preferences, see "Preferences.")

Closing the Status Monitor Widget

1   Click the Close (x) button in the upper-left corner of the **Printer Status** window.

Printer Status Window

When the **Status Monitor Widget** is activated, the **Printer Status** window appears on Dashboard.
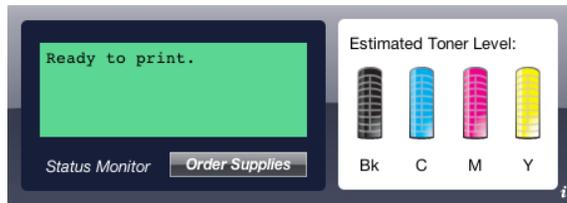
Printer Status Message Area

Displays a message of the current printer status.

> ✎ **NOTE:** The Status Monitor Widget automatically obtains the printer information at the updated interval that can be specified in Preferences. Also, the printer status is refreshed when Dashboard is launched or Preferences is closed.

> ✎ **NOTE:** If the Status Monitor Widget receives no response from the printer, the message Cannot get printer information is displayed.

> ✎ **NOTE:** When the printer is connected via USB cable, you cannot check the status of the printer during a print or scan job.

Printer Status Image Area

Displays the image of printer condition.

- Estimated Toner Level image

  Displays the estimated toner level of each color if the printer is functioning properly.

> ✎ **NOTE:** If the utility does not receive a response from the printer, the Unknown toner image is displayed.

- Printer error image

  Displays an indication image when an error occurs.

  An error has occurred and the printer cannot be used.

Order Supplies button

Click this button to display the **Order** window.
To hide the **Order** window, click **Order Supplies** again.

Info (i) button

Click this button to open **Preferences**.

> ✎ **NOTE:** The info (i) button appears on the lower-right corner of the window when the cursor is over the Printer Status window. The info (i) button is a standard used across all widgets.

Order Window

This window provides you with the information for ordering printer supplies by telephone or from the web site.

To open the **Order** window:

1 Click **Order Supplies** in the **Printer Status** window.

The **Order** window appears.

> ✍ **NOTE:** The **Order** window appears when low toner is detected.
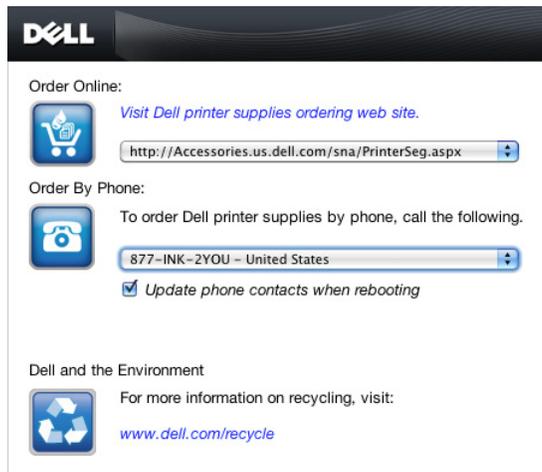
Order Online

- **Visit Dell printer supplies ordering web site** hyperlink

  Click the **Visit Dell printer supplies ordering web site** hyperlink to access the web site for ordering Dell printer supplies.

- URL list

  Displays a list of available URLs where you can order Dell printer supplies.

  Select a URL address to use when the **Visit Dell printer supplies ordering web site** hyperlink is clicked.

Order By Phone

- Phone number list

  Displays a list of available phone numbers that you can call to order Dell printer supplies.

- **Update phone contacts when rebooting** check box

  Select this check box to regularly update the phone number list.

Dell and the Environment

Click the hyperlink to access the web site about recycling.

Preferences

To open **Preferences**:

1 Click the **info (i)** button in the **Printer Status** window.

Preferences appears.

> ✍ **NOTE:** The **info (i)** button appears on the lower-right corner of the window when the cursor is over the **Printer Status** window. The **info (i)** button is a standard used across all widgets.

Printer

Displays a list of available printer names in the pull down menu. The first printer displayed in this list is set as default.

Status Update Interval

You can specify the update interval of the printer status. By default, it is set to obtain the printer information every 10 seconds. It can be set from 0 second to 600 seconds.

SNMP Community Name

You can change the SNMP (Simple Network Management Protocol) community name if using default community name (public). Up to 31 characters can be entered.

Service Tag button

Click this button to obtain the service tag.

> ✍ **NOTE:** You cannot retrieve the service tag when the printer is connected via USB cable.

done button

Click this button to return to the **Printer Status** window.

Status Monitor Console for Linux

Status Monitor Console is a printer utility that promotes efficient use of the printer through the exchange of information between the Linux and the printer.

Status Monitor Console Feature

- Monitoring Dell Printers

  Allows you to check the status of Dell printers currently connected to your Linux.

- Receiving Alerts

  Alerts you to problems, such as paper jams or low toner.

- Ordering Supplies

  Allows you to access the web site to order supplies.

Before Installing the Status Monitor Console

> **NOTE:** The **Status Monitor Console** requires the following modules installed.
>
> - Python, PyGTK, Net-SNMP, cups-libs, and xdg-open
>
> Please confirm that these modules are installed before you install the **Status Monitor Console**.

> **NOTE:** The **Status Monitor Console** is available when the printer is connected to a network (LPR or Socket 9100). USB connection is not supported.

Distributions

- Red Hat® Enterprise Linux® 5 Desktop
- Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 Desktop
- SUSE® Linux Enterprise Desktop 10
- SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 11

Printing system

- CUPS (Common Unix Printing System)

Installing the Status Monitor Console

1 Activate the terminal, and log in as a super user.

2 Type the following rpm command in the terminal window.

```
# rpm -ivh (Type the package file name)
```

Starting the Status Monitor Console

1 Click **Dell Printers→ Status Monitor Console**

The **Printer Selection** window appears.

For more information on Printer Selection window, see "Printer Selection Window."

2 Select your printer.

The **Printer Status** window appears.

For more information on **Printer Status** window, see "Printer Status Window."

- You can order supplies from the **Dell Supplies Management System** window. See "Dell Supplies Management System Window."

Printer Selection Window
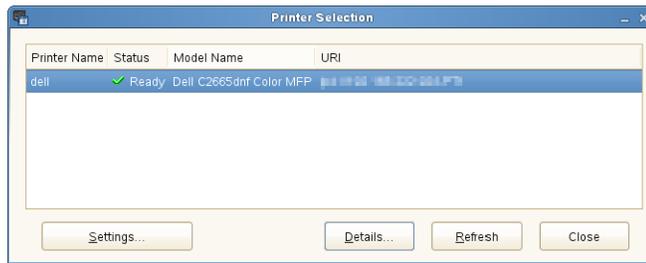
Printers list

All the printers registered in the CUPS (Common UNIX Printing System) are displayed in a list.

- Status icons:

  ✔ Ready

  ⚠ Unknown/Offline/Toner Low/Paper Low

  ❌ Door Open/Paper Jam/No Toner/Out Of Paper

Settings button

Click this button to open the **Settings** window.

Details button

Click this button to open the **Printer Status** window. If a non-supported printer is selected, it opens the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool.** For details on the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**, see "Dell™ Printer Configuration Web Tool."

Refresh button

Click this button to update the information of printers.

Close button

Click this button to close the **Printer Selection** window.

Printer Status Window

When the printer is specified in the **Printer Selection** window, the **Printer Status** window appears.
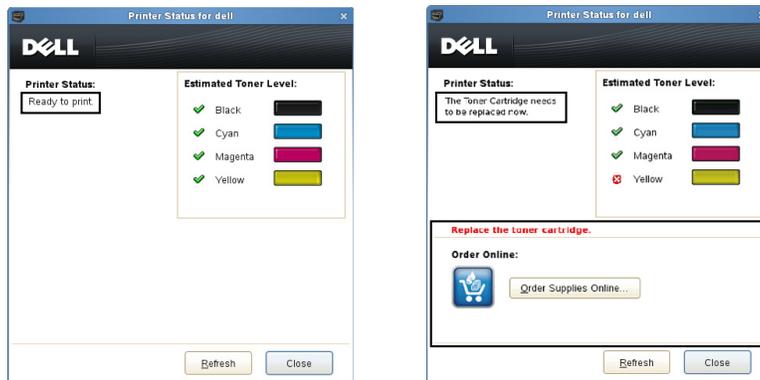
Printer Status Message Area

Displays a message of the current printer status.

> **NOTE:** The Status Monitor Console automatically obtains the printer information at the updated interval that can be specified in the Settings window. Also, the printer status is refreshed when the Refresh is clicked.

> **NOTE:** If the Status Monitor Console receives no response from the printer, the message Cannot get printer information is displayed.

Printer Status Image Area

- Current Toner Status icons

  Displays icons of the current status of each toner.

  - The toner level is more than 30%.

  - The toner level is less than 29%.

  - The toner level is less than 9%.

  - The toner level is unknown.

- Estimated Toner Level images

  Keeps you informed about the amount of toner that remains for each color.

Toner Alert

Displays an alert message when any remaining toner is low, empty, or unknown.

Order Online

- **Order Supplies Online** button

  Click this button to access the web site for ordering Dell printer supplies. This button appears when the amount of toners becomes less than 30%.

Refresh button

Click this button to update the status of the printer.

Close button

Click this button to close the **Printer Status** window.

Dell Supplies Management System Window

This window provides you with the information for ordering printer supplies by telephone or from the web site.

To open the **Dell Supplies Management System** window:

1 Click **Order Supplies Online** in the **Printer Status** window.

OR

Click **Dell Printers**→ **Dell Supplies Management System**.

Select Printer Model

Select your printer model name.

Order Online

- **Order Supplies Online** button
  - When the Regular URL is selected in the **Select Reorder URL**:

    Click this button to open the **Service Tag** window.

  - When the Premier URL is selected in the **Select Reorder URL**:

    Click this button to open the procurement and support web site.

- **Select Reorder URL**

  Displays a list of available URLs where you can order Dell printer supplies. Select a URL address to use when the **Order Supplies Online** button is clicked.

  - Regular URL: **http://Accessories.us.dell.com/sna/PrinterSeg.aspx**
  - Premier URL: **http://premier.dell.com**

Order by Phone

- **To order Dell printer supplies by phone, call the following**

  Select your country with phone number from the list, and call the displayed telephone number to order supplies.

- **Update phone contacts when rebooting** check box

  Select this check box to regularly update the phone number list.

Dell and the Environment

Click the hyperlink to access the web site about recycling.

Close button

Click this button to close the **Dell Supplies Management System** window.

Service Tag Window

1 Enter the Dell printer service tag.

> ✎ **NOTE:** For information on the service tag, see "Express Service Code and Service Tag."

Settings Window

To open the **Settings** window:

1 Click **Settings** in the **Printer Selection** window.

The **Settings** window appears.
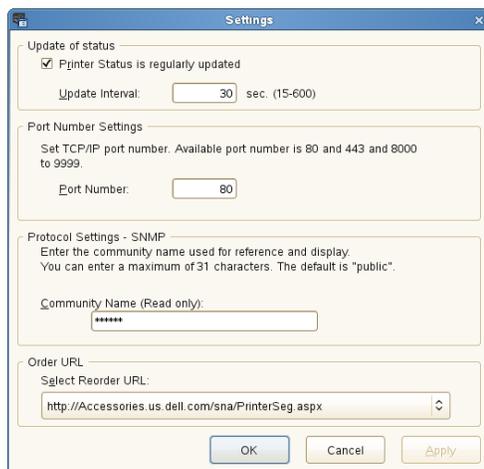
Update of status

- **Printer Status is regularly updated** check box

  Select the check box to enable/disable the printer status to be updated by the specified interval.

- **Update interval** text box

  Specify the update interval of the printer status.

Port Number Settings

- **Port Number**

  Specify the port number in the **Port Number** text box to open the setting page of your printer in a web browser.

Protocol Settings - SNMP

- **Community Name**

  Enter the Community name of SNMP in the **Community Name** text box.

Order URL

- **Select Reorder URL**

  The selected URL address is set as default web site for the **Select Reorder URL** in the **Dell Supplies Management System** window.

User Authentication

Using the user authentication function, it is possible to create and manage up to 18 user accounts secured with a password. Each user of the accounts can customize the home screen and save the changes.

It is also possible to associate NFC (Near Field Communication) capable ID Cards to an user account. When the ID card is associated with a user account, you can login to that user account by waving the ID card over the NFC reader.

> **NOTE:** This printer supports the following card types:
> * MIFARE® Ultralight
> * MIFARE Standard (Classic) 1K
> * MIFARE Standard (Classic) 4K

Creating and Editing the User Accounts

To use user authentication, you must first create a user account.

Creating a New User Account

1 Turn on the printer and wait until the portal screen is displayed.

2 Tap ⚙ .

> **NOTE:** If the `Panel Lock Control` is set to `Enable`, you need to enter the four digit password to proceed further.

The dialog box is displayed to confirm to enter the edit mode.

3 Tap **OK**.

The printer enters the edit mode, and the `Add Account` tile is displayed in the portal screen.

> **NOTE:** In the edit mode, each tile except the `Add Account` tile has ⚙ .

4 Enter the account name and select the tile color.

You can preview the image of your custom tile in **Preview**.
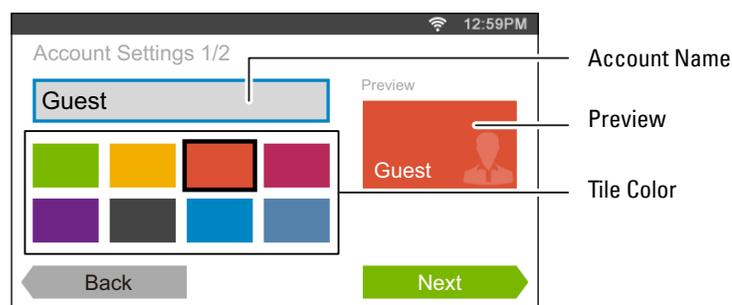
5 Tap `Next`.

The **Account Settings 2/2** screen is displayed.

6 Enter the account password and NFC ID.

> ✎ **NOTES:**
> - When there is a check mark in the `Initial Login` check box, the printer always displays the **Home** screen of the account when you turn on the printer. If no account is specified as `Initial Login`, the portal screen is displayed when you turn on the printer.
> - You can create a new account without setting the account password.
> - When the NFC Authentication is disabled, **NFC ID** is not displayed.
> - When you use UID as the NFC ID, enter the hexadecimal characters. The characters A to F should be entered in the capital letters.

7 Tap Done. The screen returns to the portal screen.

Editing the User Account

1 Tap ⚙ in the portal screen to enter the edit mode.

2 Tap the account tile you want to edit.

3 Edit the account name, tile color, password, NFC ID, or `Initial Login`.

> ✎ **NOTE:** When the NFC authentication is disabled, **NFC ID** is not displayed.

4 Tap `Done`.

The screen returns to the portal screen.

Deleting the User Account

1 Tap ⚙ in the portal screen to enter the edit mode.

2 Tap and hold the account tile you want to edit.

🗑 is displayed.

3 Drag the tile to 🗑 .

4 Tap `OK` to delete the tile.

Logging In to the User Account

There are two ways to log in to the account. One is to log in using the touch panel, and the other is to log in using the NFC authentication card.

Logging In Using the Touch Panel

1 Start the printer and wait until the portal screen is displayed.

2 Tap the account tile you want to log in to.

> ✎ **NOTE:** When the account you want to log in to does not require a password, skip step 3. The **Home** screen is displayed.

3 Enter the account password, and tap `Login`.

When the password is correct, the **Home** screen is displayed.

Logging In Using the NFC Authentication Card

To use the NFC authentication card, the following settings are needed:

- Enable the NFC authentication function in Secure Settings of the operator panel.

  (See "NFC Authentication")

- Register your user account to the printer so that you can log in with your NFC Authentication card.

  (See "Creating a New User Account")

1 Turn on the printer and wait until the portal screen is displayed.

> **NOTE:** The NFC authentication is available only when the portal screen is displayed.

2 Wave the card over the NFC reader on the printer.

Your **Home** screen is displayed.

Logging Out

When there is an account which is specified as `Initial Login`, turning on the printer will always display the Home screen of that account. To log in to another account, you need to log out first.

1 Press the ⊶O (**Login/Logout**) button on the operator panel.

The screen returns to the portal screen.

Multiple Desktop
- Tile Customization

The **Home** screen is like a desktop of your computer and customizable to suit your preference or work style.

For example, you can gather only the tiles you often use, or rearrange the tiles so that you can easily access the tiles you often use.

The tiles on the **Home** screen can be the shortcuts to the jobs to be done on the printer, like "taking seven copies of the handouts for the weekly meeting in 2-Sided color copy" or "scanning the document and sending the scanned file to my boss by e-mail." If you create a tile for a job with such job settings, the printer will automatically change the settings of the printer as you specified just by tapping the tile.

Adding a New Tile

You can select and add the tile from the pre-defined tiles, or you can create a new customized tile which includes specific settings for copy, fax, scan or print. Up to 41 tiles can be placed in your **Home** screen.

Selecting From the Pre-defined Tiles

The printer offers the pre-defined tiles which include the default job settings.

1 On the **Home** screen, tap the `Add App` tile.

The **Apps List** screen is displayed.

2 Tap the tile you want to add to your **Home** screen.

🏠 indicates that the tile already exists in your **Home** screen.

Creating a New Tile Including the Job Settings

You may often use the same settings to copy a certain document, for example. You can create the tile including those job settings and save it in your **Home** screen.

Creating Your Custom Tile for Job With Its Job Settings

The following explanation is an example to create your custom tile for copying.

To create custom tiles for other jobs such as faxing, scanning, or printing, follow the same procedures on the job settings screen of each job.

1 Tap the `Copy` tile in your **Home** screen.

The **Copy Settings** screen is displayed.

2 Tap the setting tiles to change the copy options as needed. For more information, see "Setting Copy Options."

3 After setting all the necessary copy options, tap ⊡ .

The **Save Settings** screen is displayed.

4 Tap the text box to name your settings.

5 Tap the color tile to select the color of your custom tile.

You can preview the image of your custom tile in **Preview**.

6 Tap `Save As`.

Your settings are saved as a new tile in your **Home** screen.

> ✍ **NOTE:** When a tile has the Lock icon, that function is controlled by the **Function Enabled** setting. To enable the function, you need to enter the password.
> For more information, see "Function Enabled."

> ✍ **NOTE:** When you save the job settings for `Fax` or `Scan to E-mail` as a custom tile, recipient information is saved together with the settings. To prevent from sending faxes or e-mails to wrong recipients, check that the fax number or the e-mail address of the recipient shown in the operator panel is correct.
> To prevent others from using customized tiles with personal information, logout from your user account after you finish using the printer.

Editing Your Custom Tile for Job

You can edit the job settings saved in your custom tile.

1 Tap the tile you want to edit in your **Home** screen.

2 Change the job settings as needed.

3 Tap ⊡ .

The **Save Settings** screen is displayed.

4 Tap the text box to name your settings if you want to rename your settings.

5 Tap the color tile if you want to change the color of the tile.

6 Tap `Save`.

Your settings are overwritten.

If you have renamed the tile name, the new settings overwrites the old settings, and the tile is renamed with a new name.

> ✍ **NOTE:** If you tap `Save As` instead, the new tile will be added in your **Home** screen.

Moving or Deleting Your Tiles

You can move your tiles in your **Home** screen or delete your tiles from your **Home** screen.

For more information, see "Moving, Adding or Deleting the Tiles."

Using the Server Address Book and Server Phone Book

With the **E-mail Server Address Book** and the **Fax Server Phone Book**, you can specify an e-mail address or fax number of a recipient registered in the external LDAP server when sending a scanned image with e-mail or fax.

To use the **E-mail Server Address Book** and the **Fax Server Phone Book**, the printer needs to be configured in order to access the external LDAP server.

> ✎ **NOTE:** To configure the settings of the external LDAP server, consult your system administrator.

Preparing the Printer to Access the External LDAP Server

Set the following items using the **Dell™ Printer Configuration Web Tool**.

- Authentication type
- LDAP Server
- LDAP User Mapping

Starting the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool

To launch the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**, enter the IP address of your printer in your web browser.

If you do not know the IP address of your printer, print the system settings report or display the **TCP/IP Settings** page, which lists the IP address. For details about how to find your printer's IP address, see "Verifying the IP Settings."

Setting Authentication Type

1 Select **Print Server Settings**, click the **Security** tab, and then select **Authentication System**.
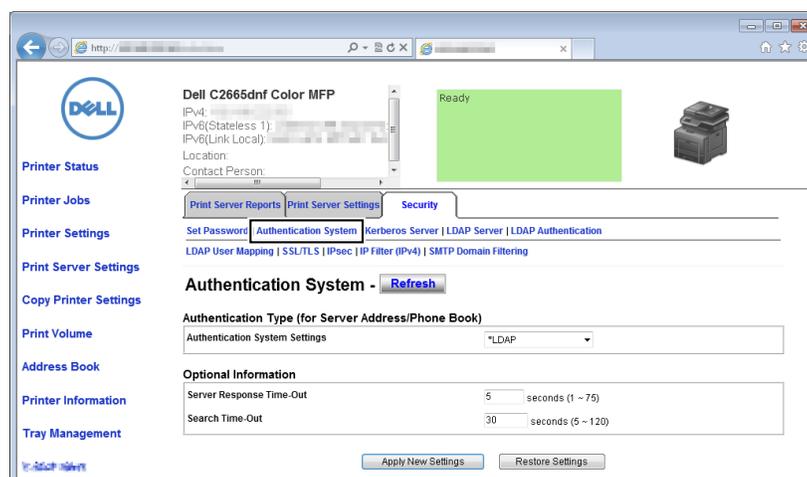
2 From the **Authentication System Settings** drop-down menu under **Authentication Type (for Server Address/Phone Book)**, select **LDAP** as the authentication method, and then click **Apply New Settings**.

> ✎ **NOTE:** When the server you are accessing uses the Kerberos authentication, select **Kerberos** as the authentication method. To set the information necessary to access the Kerberos server, enter the information in **Kerberos Server** under the **Security** tab. For more information, see "Kerberos Server."

3 Click **Restart Printer**.

Setting LDAP Server

📝 **NOTE:** When SSL/TLS communication is required to access the LDAP server, enter a check in the **Enable** check box for **LDAP-SSL/TLS Communication** in **SSL/TLS** under the **Security** tab. For more information, see "SSL/TLS."

1 Select **Print Server Settings**, click the **Security** tab, and then select **LDAP Server**.
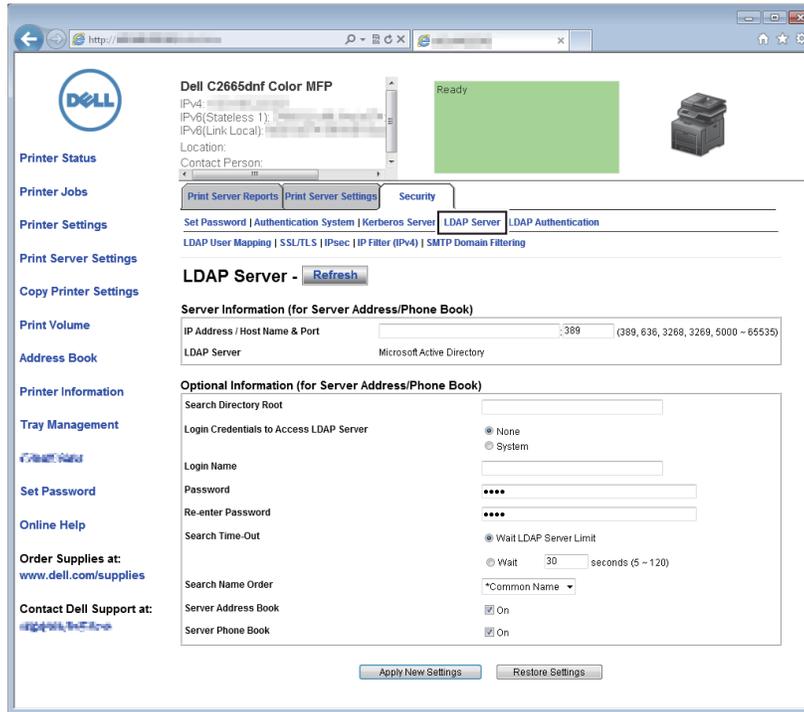
2 In the **IP Address/Host Name & Port** text box under **Server Information** (**for Server Address/Phone Book**), enter IP address or the host name, and the port number. The port number must be 389, 3268, or between 5,000 and 65,535.

📝 **NOTE:** When LDAPS communication is required, set the port number to 636, and when you use the global catalog, set the port number to 3269.

3 Under **Optional information** (**for Server Address/Phone Book**), set the following items.
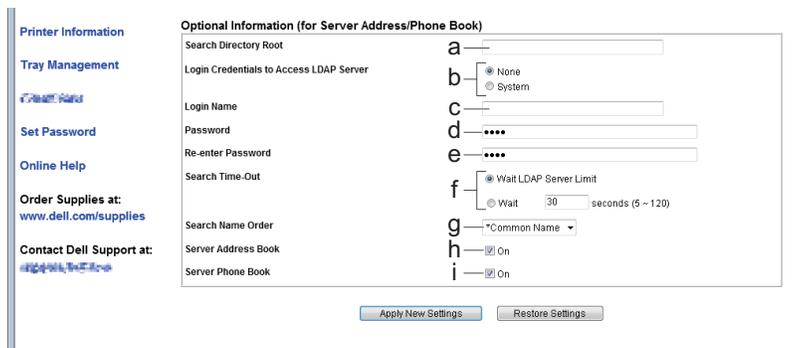
For details on configuring each item, consult your network administrator.

a In the **Search Directory** Root text box, enter the search directory root.

b In **Login Credentials to Access LDAP Server**, select credential used to access the LDAP server.

c In the **Login Name** text box, enter the login name.

d In the **Password** text box, enter the login password using 1 to 127 alphanumeric characters. If the password is left blank (NULL), you cannot log in to a server.

e In the **Re-enter Password** text box, enter the login password again to confirm it.

f In **Search Time-Out**, select **Wait LDAP Server Limit** to follow the time specified by the LDAP server. Select **Wait** to specify the time between 5 and 120 seconds.

g From the **Search Name Order** drop-down menu, specify the search order.

h In **Server Address Book**, select the check box to enable the server address book.

i In **Server Phone Book**, select the check box to enable the server phone book.

4 Click **Apply New Settings**.

5 Click **Restart Printer**.

Setting LDAP User Mapping

1 Select **Print Server Settings**, click the **Security** tab, and then select **LDAP User Mapping**.
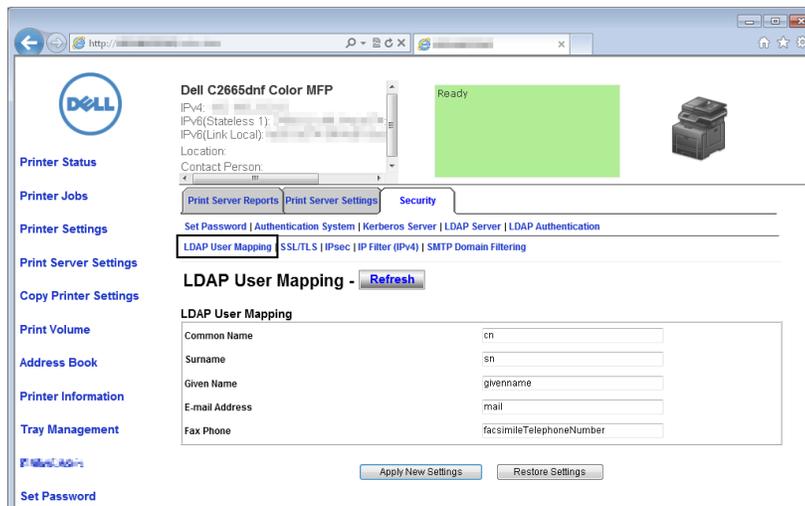
2 Specify the attribute names used in the LDAP server. If the attribute names are not customized in the LDAP server, leave the settings in this step as they are by default.

3 Click **Apply New Settings** if you make any changes.

4 Click **Restart Printer**.

Sending an E-mail With the Scanned File Using the E-mail Server Address Book

1 Press the ⌂ (**Home**) button.

2 Tap `Scan to E-mail`.

3 Tap `Address Book`.
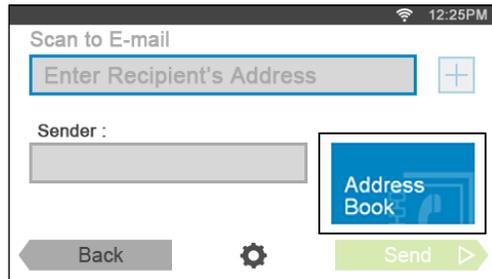
4 Tap `Network Address Book`.

5 Enter a keyword using the keyboard, and then tap `Search`.

6 Tap a recipient from the search result, and then tap `Done`.

7 Tap `Send` to begin sending e-mail.

Sending a Fax Using the Fax Server Phone Book

1 Press the ⌂ (**Home**) button.

2 Tap `Fax`.

3 Tap `Phone Book`.
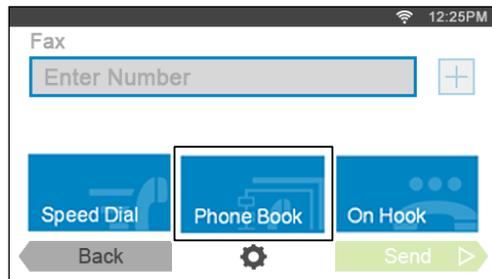
4 Tap `Network Address Book`.

5 Enter a keyword using the keyboard, and then tap `Search`.

6 Tap a recipient from the search result, and then tap `Done`.

7 Tap `Send` to begin sending the fax.

Using Digital Certificates

The authentication feature using digital certificates upgrades security when sending print data or setting data.

This chapter describes how to manage digital certificates.

> 📝 **NOTE:** For information about digital certificate error, see "Understanding Printer Messages" and "Digital Certificate Problems."

The following is a typical setup flow for using digital certificates.

```
┌─────────────────────────────────────────────────────────┐
│ Prepare to manage digital certificates.                  │
│   •  Set HTTPS Communication                             │
└─────────────────────────────────────────────────────────┘
                          │
                          ▼
┌─────────────────────────────────────────────────────────┐
│ Import and set digital certificates.                     │
│   •  Import a Digital Certificate                        │
│   •  Set a Digital Certificate                           │
│   •  Confirm the Settings of a Digital Certificate       │
└─────────────────────────────────────────────────────────┘
                          │
                          ▼
┌─────────────────────────────────────────────────────────┐
│ Set various security features using digital certificates.│
└─────────────────────────────────────────────────────────┘
```
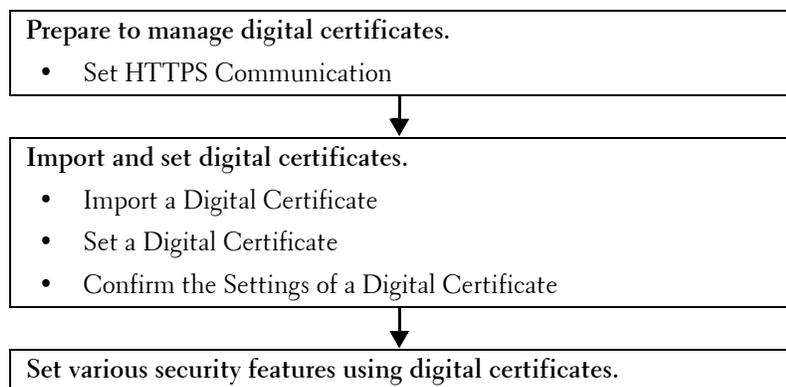
Managing Certificates

This section describes how to manage digital certificates as follows.

- "Preparing to Manage Certificates"
- "Importing a Digital Certificate"
- "Setting a Digital Certificate"
- "Confirming the Settings of a Digital Certificate"
- "Deleting a Digital Certificate"
- "Exporting a Digital Certificate"

Preparing to Manage Certificates

Before managing digital certificates, the following settings must be applied.

- "Setting HTTPS Communication"

Setting HTTPS Communication

Before managing certificates, set HTTPS communication with a self-signed certificate.

When Using the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool

1 Launch **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**.

   a Open the web browser.

   b Enter the IP address of your printer in the web browser.

   See "Dell™ Printer Configuration Web Tool."

2 Select **Print Server Settings**.

3 Click the **Security** tab.

4 Select **SSL/TLS**.

5 Click **Generate Self-Signed Certificate** of **Machine Digital Certificate**. The **Generate Self-Signed Certificate** page is displayed.

6 Select the size of public key from the list of **Size of Public Key**.

7 Specifies the issuer of SSL self-signed certificate.

8 Click **Generate Signed Certificate**.

9 The **Restart Printer** button is displayed after generating the self-signed certificate, and then click **Restart Printer**.

10 Repeat steps 2 to 4 to display the **SSL/TLS** page after restarting the printer.

11 If the self-signed certificate is set correctly, since the **HTTP- SSL/TLS Communication** column is set to **Enable** and a check box is displayed, select **Enable**.

Importing a Digital Certificate

⚠ **CAUTION: Before importing a certificate file, back up the certificate file.**

📝 **NOTE:** To manage digital certificates, you must set up HTTPS communication. For details, see "Preparing to Manage Certificates."

📝 **NOTE:** Be sure to import the certificate with Internet Explorer.

📝 **NOTE:** After importing a PKCS#12 format certificate, the secret key is not exported even if you execute exporting.

1 Launch **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**.

    a Open the web browser.

    b Enter the IP address of your printer in the web browser.

    See "Dell™ Printer Configuration Web Tool."

2 Select **Print Server Settings**.

3 Click the **Security** tab.

4 Select **SSL/TLS**.

5 Click **Upload Signed Certificate** of **Machine Digital Certificate**.

    The **Upload Signed Certificate** page is displayed.

6 Enter a password.

7 Re-enter the password again to confirm it.

8 Click **Browse** of **File Name,** and select the file to be imported.

9 Click **Import** to import the certificate.

Setting a Digital Certificate

📝 **NOTE:** To manage digital certificates, you must set up HTTPS communication. For details, see "Preparing to Manage Certificates."

1 Launch **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**.

    a Open the web browser.

    b Enter the IP address of your printer in the web browser.

    See "Dell™ Printer Configuration Web Tool."

2 Select **Print Server Settings**.

3 Click the **Security** tab.

4 Select **SSL/TLS**.

5 Click **Certificate Management** to display the **Certificate Management** page.

6 When setting a Wireless LAN (Server) certificate, select **Trusted Certificate Authorities** within **Category**. When setting a certificate of SSL Server, SSL Client, IPsec, or Wireless LAN (Client), select **Local Device.**

7 Select the purpose of use from the **Certificate Purpose** list.

8 Click **Display the List** to display the **Certificate List** page.

> ✍ NOTE: If the list includes more than 20 certificates, click **Next** to display the next page.

9 Select the certificate to associate. At this time, confirm that **Validity** of the certificate selected is set to **Valid**.

10 Click **Certificate Details** to display the **Certificate Details** page.

11 Confirm the content, and click **Use This Certificate** at the upper-right corner.

Confirming the Settings of a Digital Certificate

> ✍ NOTE: To manage digital certificates, you must set up HTTPS communication. For details, see "Preparing to Manage Certificates."

1 Launch **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**.

   a Open the web browser.

   b Enter the IP address of your printer in the web browser.

   See "Dell™ Printer Configuration Web Tool."

2 Select **Print Server Settings**.

3 Click the **Security** tab.

4 Select **SSL/TLS**.

5 Click **Certificate Management** to display the **Certificate Management** page.

6 Select the category from the **Category** list.

7 Select the purpose of use from the **Certificate Purpose** list.

8 Click **Display the List** to display the **Certificate List** page.

> ✍ NOTE: If the list includes more than 20 certificates, click **Next** to display the next page.

9 The certificate displayed with an asterisk as "***Valid**" in the **Validity** column is the certificate associated with the use purpose and actually used.

Deleting a Digital Certificate

> ✍ NOTE: To manage digital certificates, you must set up HTTPS communication. For details, see "Preparing to Manage Certificates."

1 Launch **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**.

   a Open the web browser.

   b Enter the IP address of your printer in the web browser.

   See "Dell™ Printer Configuration Web Tool."

2 Select **Print Server Settings**.

3 Click the **Security** tab.

4 Select **SSL/TLS**.

5 Click **Certificate Management** to display the **Certificate Management** page.

6 Select the category from the **Category** list.

7 Select the purpose of use from the **Certificate Purpose** list.

8 Click **Display the List** to display the **Certificate List** page.

> **NOTE:** If the list includes more than 20 certificates, click **Next** to display the next page.

9 Select the certificate to be deleted.

10 Click **Certificate Details** to display the **Certificate Details** page.

11 To delete the selected certificate, click **Delete** at the upper-right corner.

> **NOTE:** When a certificate is deleted, the features associated with the deleted certificate are disabled. To delete a certificate being used, either set the feature to OFF in advance or switch the association to another certificate, and then switch to another operation mode if possible before deleting the certificate.

- For an SSL Server, switch to another certificate such as a self-signed certificate.

- For an SSL Client, set the LDAP-SSL/TLS and IEEE 802.1x (EAP-TLS) setting to OFF.

- For IPsec, change the IKE setting to Pre-Shared Key or set the feature to OFF.

- For Wireless LAN, change the Wireless Security setting to other than WPA-Enterprise before deleting the certificate.

Exporting a Digital Certificate

> **NOTE:** To manage digital certificates, you must set up HTTPS communication. For details, see "Preparing to Manage Certificates."

> **NOTE:** Since the secret key is not exported, an imported PKCS#12 format certificate can be exported only as a PKCS#7 certificate.

1 Launch **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**.

   a Open the web browser.

   b Enter the IP address of your printer in the web browser.

   See "Dell™ Printer Configuration Web Tool."

2 Select **Print Server Settings**.

3 Click the **Security** tab.

4 Select **SSL/TLS**.

5 Click **Certificate Management** to display the **Certificate Management** page.

6 Select the category from the **Category** list.

7 Select the purpose of use from the **Certificate Purpose** list.

   Click **Display the List** to display the **Certificate List** page.

> **NOTE:** If the list includes more than 20 certificates, click **Next** to display the next page.

8 Select the certificate to be exported.

9 Click **Certificate Details** to display the **Certificate Details** page.

10 To export the selected certificate, click **Export This Certificate**.

Setting the Features

You can set various security features using digital certificates.

See the following for details:

- "Setting the Certificate in the IPsec Digital Signature Mode"
- "Setting the SSL-use Server Certificate (HTTP/IPP)"
- "Setting LDAP-SSL/TLS Communication"
- "Setting Server Certificate Verification for LDAP-SSL/TLS Communication"
- "Setting Client Certificate for LDAP-SSL/TLS Communication"
- "Setting for Wireless LAN WPA-Enterprise (EAP-TLS)"
- "Setting for Wireless LAN WPA-Enterprise (PEAPV0-MS-CHAPV2, EAP-TTLS PAP, EAP-TTLS CHAP)"
- "Setting Client Certificate for IEEE 802.1x (EAP-TLS)"

Setting the Certificate in the IPsec Digital Signature Mode

> NOTE: To manage digital certificates, you must set up HTTPS communication. For details, see "Preparing to Manage Certificates."

1 Import the certificate to be used with IPsec. For more information, see "Importing a Digital Certificate."
2 Set the certificate to be used with IPsec. For more information, see "Setting a Digital Certificate."
3 Confirm whether the certificate is set correctly in IPsec. For more information, see "Confirming the Settings of a Digital Certificate."
4 Select **Print Server Settings** from the left side of the page.
5 Click the **Security** tab.
6 Select **IPsec**.
7 Select the **Enable** check box for **Protocol**.
8 Select **Digital Signature** from the **IKE** list.
9 Set each item, as necessary.
10 Click **Apply New Settings**.
11 After restarting the printer, IPsec communication using digital signatures is enabled. You can execute IPsec communication (Digital Signature Mode) between the printer and the network device (such as PC) on which the certificate and IPsec are set identically as on this device.

Setting the SSL-use Server Certificate (HTTP/IPP)

> NOTE: To manage digital certificates, you must set up HTTPS communication. For details, see "Preparing to Manage Certificates."

1 Import the certificate to be used with the SSL-use server. For more information, see "Importing a Digital Certificate."
2 Set the certificate to be used with the SSL-use server. For more information, see "Setting a Digital Certificate."
3 Confirm whether the certificate is set correctly. For more information, see "Confirming the Settings of a Digital Certificate."

> NOTE: Confirm whether the newly set certificate, not the self-signed certificate, is associated.

4 After restarting the printer, the certificate set as described above is used as the server certificate when executing communication with HTTP/IPP-SSL/TLS.

Setting LDAP-SSL/TLS Communication

1 Select **Print Server Settings** from the left side of the page.

2 Click the **Security** tab.

3 Select **SSL/TLS**.

4 Select the **Enable** check box for **LDAP-SSL/TLS Communication**.

5 Click **Apply New Settings**.

6 After restarting the printer, **LDAP-SSL/TLS Communication** is enabled.

> **NOTE:** When executing the certificate validity of the server and the presentation of the client certificate, see "Setting Server Certificate Verification for LDAP-SSL/TLS Communication" and "Setting Client Certificate for LDAP-SSL/TLS Communication."

Setting Server Certificate Verification for LDAP-SSL/TLS Communication

> **NOTE:** This feature is enabled only when **Enable** is set for **LDAP-SSL/TLS Communication**.

1 Import the root certificate (including intermediate certificate) for the LDAP server certificate. For more information, see "Importing a Digital Certificate."

> **NOTE:** In the verification of a certificate of the connected server, to automatically search for an imported certificate and verify the path, the certificate does not need to be associated.

2 Confirm whether the root certificate is correctly imported to the LDAP server. For more information, see "Confirming the Settings of a Digital Certificate."

3 Select **Print Server Settings**.

4 Click the **Security** tab.

5 Select **SSL/TLS**.

6 Select the **Enable** check box for **Verify Remote Server Certificate**.

7 Click **Apply New Settings**.

8 After restarting the printer, the certificate presented by the LDAP server is verified when LDAP-SSL/TLS communication starts with the LDAP server.

> **NOTE:** When the result of verification is NG, communication is not established and an error results.

Setting Client Certificate for LDAP-SSL/TLS Communication

> **NOTE:** To manage digital certificates, you must set up HTTPS communication. For details, see "Preparing to Manage Certificates."

> **NOTE:** This feature is enabled only when **Enable** is set for **LDAP-SSL/TLS Communication**.

1 Import a certificate to be used with SSL Client. For more information, see "Importing a Digital Certificate."

2 Set a certificate to be used with SSL Client. For more information, see "Setting a Digital Certificate."

3 Confirm whether the certificate is set correctly. For more information, see "Confirming the Settings of a Digital Certificate."

4 After restarting the printer, the LDAP client certificate is presented when LDAP-SSL/TLS communication with the LDAP server starts. When the LDAP server is set to require a client certificate, the client certificate provided by the printer is verified by the LDAP server.

Setting for Wireless LAN WPA-Enterprise (EAP-TLS)

NOTE: To manage digital certificates, you must set up HTTPS communication. For details, see "Preparing to Manage Certificates."

NOTE: WPA-Enterprise is available only when infrastructure is selected as the network type.

NOTE: Be sure to import the certificate with Internet Explorer.

NOTE: After importing a PKCS#12 format certificate, the secret key is not exported even if you execute exporting.

1 Import the certificate to be used with Wireless LAN (server or root certificate). For details, see "Importing a Digital Certificate."

2 Set the digital certificate for wireless LAN (server or root certificate).

   a Launch **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**.

   b Select **Print Server Settings**.

   c Click the **Security** tab.

   d Select **SSL/TLS**.

   e Click **Certificate Management** to display the **Certificate Management** page.

   f Select **Trusted Certificate Authorities** within **Category**.

   g Select the Wireless LAN (Server) of use from the **Certificate Purpose** list.

   h From **Certificate Order**, select how the certificates are sorted in **Certificate List**. This setting is not necessary if you do not need to specify the order for the certificates.

   i Click **Display the List** to display the **Certificate List** page.

   j Select the certificate to associate. At this time, confirm that **Validity** of the certificate selected is set to **Valid**.

   k Click **Certificate Details** to display the **Certificate Details** page.

   l Confirm the content, and click **Use This Certificate** at the upper-right corner.

3 Confirm whether the certificate is set correctly. For details, see "Confirming the Settings of a Digital Certificate."

4 Import the certificate to be used with Wireless LAN (client or client certificate). For details, see "Importing a Digital Certificate."

5 Set the digital certificate for wireless LAN (client or client certificate).

   a Launch **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**.

   b Select **Print Server Settings**.

   c Click the **Security** tab.

   d Select **SSL/TLS**.

   e Click **Certificate Management** to display the **Certificate Management** page.

   f Select **Local Device** within **Category**.

   g Select the Wireless LAN (Server) of use from the **Certificate Purpose** list.

   h From **Certificate Order**, select how the certificates are sorted in **Certificate List**. This setting is not necessary if you do not need to specify the order for the certificates.

   i Select the certificate to associate. At this time, confirm that **Validity** of the certificate selected is set to **Valid**.

   j Click **Certificate Details** to display the **Certificate Details** page.

   k Confirm the content, and click **Use This Certificate** at the upper-right corner.

6 Confirm whether the certificate is set correctly. For details, see "Confirming the Settings of a Digital Certificate."

7 Set WPA-Enterprise for EAP-TLS.

a Launch **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**.

b Click the **Print Server Settings** tab.

c Select **Wireless LAN**.

> ✎ **NOTE:** This setting is available only when the optional wireless adapter is installed.

d Select either of the following from the **Encryption list** of **Secure Settings**.

- **WPA-Enterprise-AES/WPA2-Enterprise-AES**
- **WPA-Enterprise-TKIP**

> ✎ **NOTE:** WPA-Enterprise-AES/WPA2-Enterprise-AES or WPA-Enterprise-TKIP becomes available only when the following steps are set correctly.
> - Importing a Digital Certificate
> - Setting a Digital Certificate
> - Confirming the Settings of a Digital Certificate

e Set **EAP-Identity** of **WPA-Enterprise**.

f Select **EAP-TLS** from the **Authentication Method** list of **WPA-Enterprise**.

g Click **Apply New Settings**.

Setting for Wireless LAN WPA-Enterprise (PEAPV0-MS-CHAPV2, EAP-TTLS PAP, EAP-TTLS CHAP)

> ✎ **NOTE:** To manage digital certificates, you must set up HTTPS communication. For details, see "Preparing to Manage Certificates."

> ✎ **NOTE:** WPA-Enterprise is available only when infrastructure is selected as the network type.

> ✎ **NOTE:** Be sure to import the certificate with Internet Explorer.

> ✎ **NOTE:** After importing a PKCS#12 format certificate, the secret key is not exported even if you execute exporting.

1 Import the certificate to be used with Wireless LAN (server or root certificate). For details, see "Importing a Digital Certificate."

2 Set the digital certificate for wireless LAN (server or root certificate).

a Launch **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**.

b Select **Print Server Settings**.

c Click the **Security** tab.

d Select **SSL/TLS**.

e Click **Certificate Management** to display the **Certificate Management** page.

f Select **Trusted Certificate Authorities** within **Category**.

g Select the purpose of use from the **Certificate Purpose** list.

h Click **Display the List** to display the **Certificate List** page.

i Select the certificate to associate. At this time, confirm that **Validity** of the certificate selected is set to **Valid**.

j Click **Certificate Details** to display the **Certificate Details** page.

k Confirm the content, and click **Use This Certificate** at the upper-right corner.

3 Confirm whether the certificate is set correctly.

a Launch **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**.

b Select **Print Server Settings**.

c Click the **Security** tab.

d Select **SSL/TLS**.

e Click **Certificate Management** to display the **Certificate Management** page.

f Select the category from the **Category** list.

g Select the Wireless LAN (Server) of use from the **Certificate Purpose** list.

h From **Certificate Order**, select how the certificates are sorted in **Certificate List**. This setting is not necessary if you do not need to specify the order for the certificates.

i Click **Display the List** to display the **Certificate List** page.

j The certificate displayed with an asterisk as "***Valid**" in the **Validity** column is the certificate associated with the use purpose and actually used.

4 Set WPA-Enterprise for PEAPV0-MS-CHAPV2, EAP-TTLS PAP, or EAP-TTLS CHAP.

a Launch **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**.

b Click the **Print Server Settings** tab.

c Select **Wireless LAN**.

> **NOTE:** This setting is available only when the optional wireless adapter is installed.

d Select either of the following from the **Encryption list** of **Secure Settings**.

- **WPA-Enterprise-AES/WPA2-Enterprise-AES**
- **WPA-Enterprise-TKIP**

> **NOTE: WPA-Enterprise-AES/WPA2-Enterprise-AES** or **WPA-Enterprise-TKIP** becomes available only when the following steps are set correctly.
> - Importing a Digital Certificate
> - Setting a Digital Certificate
> - Confirming the Settings of a Digital Certificate

e Set **EAP-Identity**, **Login Name**, and **Password** of **WPA-Enterprise**.

f Select either of the following from the **Authentication Method** list of **WPA-Enterprise**:

- **PEAPV0 MS-CHAPV2**
- **EAP-TTLS PAP**
- **EAP-TTLS CHAP**

g Click **Apply New Settings**.

Setting Client Certificate for IEEE 802.1x (EAP-TLS)

> **NOTE:** To manage digital certificates, you must set up HTTPS communication. For details, see "Preparing to Manage Certificates."

> **NOTE:** This feature is enabled only when Enable is set for IEEE 802.1x (EAP-TLS).

1 Import a certificate to be used with SSL Client. For more information, see "Importing a Digital Certificate."

2 Set a certificate to be used with SSL Client. For more information, see "Setting a Digital Certificate."

3 Confirm whether the certificate is set correctly. For more information, see "Confirming the Settings of a Digital Certificate."

4 After restarting the printer, the IEEE 802.1x (EAP-TLS) certificate is presented when IEEE 802.1x communication with the RADIUS server starts. When the RADIUS server is set to require a client certificate, the client certificate provided by the printer is verified by the RADIUS server.

Understanding Fonts

Typefaces and Fonts

A font is a set of characters and symbols created with a distinct design. The distinct design is called a *typeface*. The typefaces you select add personality to a document. Well-chosen typefaces make a document easier to read.

The printer has numerous resident fonts in PCL 5/PCL 6 and PostScript Level3 Compatible. See "Resident Fonts" for a listing of all resident fonts.

Weight and Style

Typefaces are often available in different weights and styles. These variations modify the original typeface so you can, for example, emphasize important words in text or highlight book titles. The different weights and styles are designed to complement the original typeface.

Weight refers to the thickness of the lines that form the characters. Thicker lines result in darker characters. Some words commonly used to describe the weight of a typeface are bold, medium, light, black, and heavy.

Style refers to other typeface modifications, such as tilt or character width. Italic and oblique are styles where the characters are tilted. Narrow, condensed, and extended are three common styles that modify the character widths.

Some fonts combine several weight and style modifications; for example, Helvetica BdOb. A group of several weight and style variations of a single typeface is called a *typeface family*. Most typeface families have four variations: regular, italic (oblique), bold, and bold italic (bold oblique). Some families have more variations, as the following illustration for the Helvetica typeface family shows:

Helvetica	ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOabcdefghijklmno1234567890
Helvetica Oblique	*ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOabcdefghijklmno1234567890*
Helvetica Bold	**ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOabcdefghijklmno1234567890**
Helvetica Bold Oblique	***ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOabcdefghijklmno1234567890***
Helvetica Narrow	ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOabcdefghijklmno1234567890
Helvetica Narrow Oblique	*ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOabcdefghijklmno1234567890*
Helvetica Narrow Bold	**ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOabcdefghijklmno1234567890**
Helvetica Narrow Bold Oblique	***ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOabcdefghijklmno1234567890***

Pitch and Point Size

The size of a font is specified as either a pitch or point size, depending on whether the font is fixed space or proportional.

In *fixed space* fonts, each character has the same width. *Pitch* is used to specify the size of fixed space fonts. It is a measure of the number of characters that will print in one horizontal inch of type. For example, all 10-pitch fonts print 10 characters per inch (cpi) and all 12-pitch fonts print 12 cpi:

```
Courier        10 Pitch   1234567890
Courier-Bold 10 Pitch   1234567890

Courier        12 Pitch   123456789012
Courier-Bold   12 Pitch   123456789012
```

← 1 inch →

In *proportional* (or *typographic*) fonts, every character can have a different width. Since proportional fonts have characters with different widths, the font size is specified in point size, not pitch. *Point size* refers to the height of the characters in the font. A *point* is defined as 1/72 inch. The characters in a font printed at 24 point will be twice as large as the characters in the same font printed at 12 point.

The following illustration shows samples of a font printed in different point sizes:

The point size of a font is defined as the distance from the top of the tallest character in the font to the bottom of the lowest character in the font. Due to the definition of point size, different fonts printed at the same point size may appear quite different in size. This is because there are other font parameters that affect how the font looks. However, the point size of a font is an excellent specification of the relative size of a font. The following examples illustrate two very different proportional fonts at 14 point:

Bitmapped and Scalable Fonts

The printer uses both bitmapped and scalable fonts.

Bitmapped fonts are stored in print memory as predefined patterns of bits that represent a typeface at a specific size, style, and resolution. The following illustration shows an example of a character from a bitmapped font.
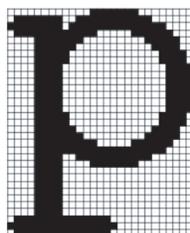
Bitmapped fonts are available in different type styles and point sizes as downloadable fonts.

Scalable fonts (also called *outline* fonts) are stored as computer programs that define the outlines of the characters in the font. Each time you print characters from a scalable font, the printer creates a bitmap of the characters at the point size you choose and saves it temporarily in print memory.

These temporary bitmapped fonts are deleted when you turn off or reset the printer. Scalable fonts provide the flexibility of printing in many different point sizes.

Your printer uses different scalable font formats for downloading fonts to the printer. PCL 5/PCL 6 uses Intellifont and TrueType scalable fonts. PostScript Level3 Compatible uses Type 1 and TrueType scalable fonts. There are thousands of different scalable fonts available in these different font formats from numerous font suppliers.

If you plan to use many downloadable bitmapped or scalable fonts or if you plan to use many different sizes of scalable fonts, you may need to purchase additional memory for your printer.

Resident Fonts

Your printer is equipped with resident fonts stored permanently in print memory. Different fonts are available in PCL 5/PCL 6 and PostScript Level3 Compatible. Some of the most popular typefaces, like Courier and TimesNew (PCL 5/PCL 6)/Times New Roman (PostScript Level3 Compatible), are available for all printer languages.

The following table lists all the fonts resident in your printer. See "Report / List" for instructions on how to print samples of the fonts. You can select the resident fonts from your software program. You can also select the fonts from the operator panel if you are using PCL 5/PCL 6.

Resident bitmapped and scalable fonts	
PCL 5/PCL 6	**PostScript Level3 Compatible**
CG Times	CG Times
CG Times It	CG Times Italic
CG Times Bd	CG Times Bold
CG Times BdIt	CG Times Bold Italic
Univers Md	Univers Medium
Univers MdIt	Univers Medium Italic
Univers Bd	Univers Bold
Univers BdIt	Univers Bold Italic
Univers MdCd	Univers Condensed Medium
Univers MdCdIt	Univers Condensed Medium Italic
Univers BdCd	Univers Condensed Bold
Univers BdCdIt	Univers Condensed Bold Italic
AntiqueOlv	Antique Olive
AntiqueOlv It	Antique Olive Italic
AntiqueOlv Bd	Antique Olive Bold

Resident bitmapped and scalable fonts	
PCL 5/PCL 6	**PostScript Level3 Compatible**
CG Omega	CG Omega
CG Omega It	CG Omega Italic
CG Omega Bd	CG Omega Bold
CG Omega BdIt	CG Omega Bold Italic
Garamond Antiqua	Garamond Antiqua
Garamond Krsv	Garamond Kursiv
Garamond Hlb	Garamond Halbfett
Garamond KrsvHlb	Garamond Kursiv Halbfett
Courier	CourierPCL
Courier It	CourierPCL-Italic
Courier Bd	CourierPCL-Bold
Courier BdIt	CourierPCL-Bold Italic
LetterGothic	LetterGothic
LetterGothic It	LetterGothic-Italic
LetterGothic Bd	LetterGothic-Bold
Albertus Md	Albertus-Medium
Albertus XBd	Albertus-ExtraBold
Clarendon Cd	Clarendon-Condensed-Bold
Coronet	Coronet
Marigold	Marigold
Arial	Arial
Arial It	Arial-Italic
Arial Bd	Arial-Bold
Arial BdIt	Arial-BoldItalic
TimesNew	TimesNewRoman
TimesNew It	TimesNewRoman-Italic
TimesNew Bd	TimesNewRoman-Bold
TimesNew BdIt	TimesNewRoman-BoldItalic
Symbol	SymbolMT

Resident bitmapped and scalable fonts	
PCL 5/PCL 6	**PostScript Level3 Compatible**
Wingdings	Wingdings
Line Printer	
Times Roman	Times-Roman
Times It	Times-Italic
Times Bd	Times-Bold
Times BdIt	Times-BoldItalic
Helvetica	Helvetica
Helvetica Ob	Helvetica-Oblique
Helvetica Bd	Helvetica-Bold
Helvetica BdOb	Helvetica-BoldOblique
CourierPS	Courier
CourierPS Ob	Courier Oblique
CourierPS Bd	Courier Bold
CourierPS BdOb	Courier Bold Oblique
SymbolPS	Symbol
Palatino Roman	Palatino-Roman
Palatino It	Palatino-Italic
Palatino Bd	Palatino-Bold
Palatino BdIt	Palatino-BoldItalic
ITCBookman Lt	Bookman-Light
ITCBookman LtIt	Bookman-LightItalic
ITCBookmanDm	Bookman-Demi
ITCBookmanDm It	Bookman-DemiItalic
HelveticaNr	Helvetica-Narrow
HelveticaNr Ob	Helvetica-Narrow-Oblique
HelveticaNr Bd	Helvetica-Narrow-Bold
HelveticaNr BdOb	Helvetica-Narrow-BoldOblique
N C Schbk Roman	NewCenturySchoolbook-Roman
N C Schbk It	NewCenturySchoolbook-Italic
N C Schbk Bd	NewCenturySchoolbook-Bold
N C Schbk BdIt	NewCenturySchoolbook-BoldItalic

Resident bitmapped and scalable fonts	
PCL 5/PCL 6	**PostScript Level3 Compatible**
ITC A G Go Bk	AvantGarde-GothicBook
ITC A G Go BkOb	AvantGarde-GothicBookOblique
ITC A G Go Dm	AvantGarde-GothicDemi
ITC A G Go DmOb	AvantGarde-GothicDemiOblique
ZapfC MdIt	ZapfChancery-MediumItalic
ZapfDingbats	ZapfDingbats

Symbol Sets

A symbol set is the collection of alphabetic and numeric characters, punctuation, and special characters available in the font you select. Symbol sets support the requirements for different languages or specific applications, such as math symbols used for scientific text.

In PCL 5/PCL 6, a symbol set also defines which character will print for each key on the keyboard (or more specifically, for each *code point*). Some applications require different characters at some code points. To support multiple applications and languages, your printer has 36 symbol sets for the resident PCL 5/PCL 6 fonts.

Symbol Sets for PCL 5/PCL 6

Not all font names support all of the symbol sets listed.

Roman 8 (Default)	ISO 8859-1 Latin 1	ISO 8859-2 Latin 2
ISO 8859-9 Latin 5	ISO 8859-10 Latin 6	PC-8
PC-8 DN	PC-775 Baltic	PC-850 Multilingual
PC-852 Latin 2	PC-1004 OS/2	PC Turkish
Windows 3.1 Latin 1	Windows 3.1 Latin 2	Windows 3.1 Latin 5
DeskTop	PS Text	MC Text
Microsoft Publishing	Math 8	PS Math
Pi Font	Legal	ISO 4 United Kingdom
ISO 6 ASCII	ISO 11 Swedish:names	ISO 15 Italian
ISO 17 Spanish	ISO 21 German	ISO 60 Norwegian v1
ISO 69 French	Windows 3.0 Latin 1	Windows Baltic
Symbol	Wingdings	ITC ZapfDingbats MS

30

Understanding Printer Messages

The touch panel displays error messages describing the current state of the printer and indicates possible printer problems you must resolve. This chapter provides a list of error codes or error messages, and informs you what you can do to clear error messages. When you contact customer support about an error, have the error codes and messages ready.

> ⚠ **CAUTION: When an error occurs, the print data remaining on the printer and the information accumulated in the memory of the printer may be corrupted.**

> 📝 **NOTE:** An error code is listed in an error message.

> 📝 **NOTE:** For error codes that are not listed in this chapter, refer to instructions in each error messages.

Error Codes

Error-Code	What you can do
004-310	Turn off the printer. Make sure that the tray is correctly installed, and turn on the printer. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated.
005-110	Open the DADF cover and remove the jammed documents.
005-121	
005-124	Open the DADF cover and remove all documents.
009-340	Turn off the printer. Clean the CTD sensor with a clean dry cotton swab, and turn on the printer. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated. For more information about cleaning the CTD sensor, see "Cleaning the CTD Sensor."
009-360	Turn off the printer. Make sure that the yellow toner cartridge is correctly installed, and turn on the printer. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated. For more information about installing the toner cartridge, see "Replacing the Toner Cartridges."
009-361	Turn off the printer. Make sure that the magenta toner cartridge is correctly installed, and turn on the printer. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated. For more information about installing the toner cartridge, see "Replacing the Toner Cartridges."
009-362	Turn off the printer. Make sure that the cyan toner cartridge is correctly installed, and turn on the printer. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated. For more information about installing the toner cartridge, see "Replacing the Toner Cartridges."
009-363	Turn off the printer. Make sure that the black toner cartridge is correctly installed, and turn on the printer. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated. For more information about installing the toner cartridge, see "Replacing the Toner Cartridges."
009-367	Turn off the printer. Make sure that the yellow toner cartridge is correctly installed, and turn on the printer. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated. For more information about installing the toner cartridge, see "Replacing the Toner Cartridges."
009-368	Turn off the printer. Make sure that the magenta toner cartridge is correctly installed, and turn on the printer. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated. For more information about installing the toner cartridge, see "Replacing the Toner Cartridges."
009-369	Turn off the printer. Make sure that the cyan toner cartridge is correctly installed, and turn on the printer. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated. For more information about installing the toner cartridge, see "Replacing the Toner Cartridges."
009-370	Turn off the printer. Make sure that the black toner cartridge is correctly installed, and turn on the printer. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated. For more information about installing the toner cartridge, see "Replacing the Toner Cartridges."

Error-Code	What you can do
010-317	Turn off the printer, wait for 30 minutes to let the fusing unit cool, and then make sure that the fusing unit is fully installed. For more information about installing the fusing unit, see "Replacing the Fusing Unit."
010-351	Turn off the printer. Remove the used fusing unit, and install a new fusing unit. For more information about replacing the fusing unit, see "Replacing the Fusing Unit."
010-377	Turn off the printer. Confirm that the fusing unit is correctly installed, and turn on the printer. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated. For more information about installing the fusing unit, see "Replacing the Fusing Unit."
016-338	Turn off the printer, and turn it on again. If the error message remains on the touch panel, confirm that the wireless adapter is securely inserted. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated.
016-404	Contact your system administrator. For more information about digital certificate problems, see "Digital Certificate Problems."
016-405	Security setting mismatch. Initialize the security setting, and then restart the printer. Contact your system administrator for the security resetting.
016-503	Unable to resolve the e-mail SMTP server hostname. Tap Close, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if SMTP server and DNS server are set correctly.
016-504	Unable to resolve the e-mail POP3 server hostname. Tap Close, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if user name and password for POP3 server and DNS server are set correctly.
016-505	E-mail POP3 server login error. Tap Close, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if user name and password used for POP3 server are set correctly.
016-506	SMTP server is not configured. Tap Close, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if SMTP server or POP server is set.
016-507	E-mail SMTP server login error. Tap Close, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if user name and password used for SMTP server are set correctly.
016-520	IPsec certificate error. (Certificate error of the printer.) The certificate of the printer is invalid. Contact your system administrator. Reset the certificate from other connectable clients with **Dell™ Printer Configuration Web Tool**. If no device can be connected, disconnect Ethernet cable, turn off the IPsec, and then reset the certificate with **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**.
016-521	IPsec certificate error. (Remote device certification verification error.) The certificate of the destination client is invalid. Contact your system administrator. Confirm the certificate of the destination client and reset.
016-530	Authentication server access error. Turn off the printer, and turn it on again. Check the access settings for the authentication server and try again. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated.
016-541	A wireless certificate (server or client) cannot be correctly referenced while using Wireless LAN WPA-Enterprise or WPA2-Enterprise. Ask your system administrator to connect the printer with a wired network, initialize the wireless settings, import the wireless certificate, and set WPA-Enterprise or WPA2-Enterprise again.
016-542	A server certificate error has occurred when acquiring the certificate with the operation of WPA-Enterprise or WPA2-Enterprise. This is a problem in the server certificate, such as the validity period has expired for the server certificate being used with the Radius server. Ask your system administrator to confirm the server certificate being used with the Radius server.
016-543	A wireless certificate (server or client) corruption error has occurred while using the Wireless LAN WPA-Enterprise or WPA2-Enterprise. Ask your system administrator to connect the printer with a wired network, initialize the wireless settings, import the wireless certificate, and set WPA-Enterprise or WPA2-Enterprise again.
016-718	Error relating to USB Direct Print problems has occurred. While the USB memory is still inserted, set Image Types to Photos(Standard Quality) in **Print Settings** under the Print PDF/TIFF menu and try printing again. For more information about this setting, see "Image Types."
016-720	Error relating to PDL emulation problems has occurred. Change the **Print Mode** setting in the **Graphics** tab of the printer driver. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated.

Error-Code	What you can do
016-756	Printing in the prohibited time. Contact your system administrator.
016-757	The account is not registered. Contact your system administrator.
016-758	The function cannot be used. Contact your system administrator.
016-759	Printable page limit is exceeded. Contact your system administrator.
016-764	An error occurs when the printer connected to the SMTP server. Tap Close, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check the SMTP server settings or contact the SMTP server administrator.
016-765	The capacity of the SMTP server is not enough. Tap Close, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Contact the SMTP server administrator.
016-766	The e-mail exceeds the SMTP server size restriction. Tap Close, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Contact the SMTP server administrator.
016-767	The e-mail address of the recipient is incorrect. Tap Close, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check e-mail address, and try scanning again.
016-768	The e-mail address of the sender is incorrect. Tap Close, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check e-mail address, and try scanning again.
016-786	A timeout error occurs when sending or receiving scanned data. Tap Close, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if the Ethernet cable is connected properly. If there is no problem with the Ethernet cable, contact server administrator.
016-790	Network connection error. (IP address is not determined.) Tap Close, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if the Ethernet cable is connected properly. If there is no problem with the Ethernet cable, contact server administrator.
016-799	Tap Close to clear the message and cancel the current print job. Confirm the configuration of the printer on the printer driver.
016-930	The device is not supported. Remove it from the front USB port.
016-931	The USB hub is not supported. Remove it from the front USB port.
016-985	Tap Close, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Retry scanning by lowering the resolution setting or changing the file format of the scanned image.
016-986	
024-920	Remove the paper from the output tray.
024-927	Check the toner gauge on the touch panel for an empty toner cartridge. Remove the empty toner cartridge, and install a new cartridge. For more information about replacing the toner cartridge, see "Replacing the Toner Cartridges."
024-965	Confirm that the size and type specified in the tray settings matches the size and type of paper loaded in the tray.
024-966	
024-969	
026-721	Check your USB memory: • If the file size or the number of files exceeds the limit of your USB memory. • If your USB memory is write-protected.
027-446	Change the IPv6 address to avoid duplication. Turn off the printer, and turn it on again.
027-452	Change the IPv4 address to avoid duplication. Turn off the printer, and turn it on again.
031-521	SMB server login error. Tap Close, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Confirm login-able computer with your system administrator.
031-522	SMB server login error. Tap Close, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if login name (domain name and user name) and password are correct.
031-523	Invalid SMB share name. Tap Close, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check the share name you specified.

Error-Code	What you can do
031-524	Exceeded the SMB server user account limit. Tap `Close`, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check the number of users who use the server at the same time is not exceeding the upper limit.
031-525	SMB destination client permission error. Tap `Close`, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if the specified user can read and write file at the storage location.
031-526	Unable to resolve the SMB server hostname. Tap `Close`, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check DNS connection, or check if forwarding destination server is registered with DNS.
031-527	Unable to resolve the SMB server hostname. Tap `Close`, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Set DNS address, or set forwarding destination server address as IP address.
031-528	Unable to connect to the SMB server. Tap `Close`, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if the printer can communicate via network with the forwarding destination SMB server. For example, check the following: • Connection of an Ethernet cable • TCP/IP setting • Communication with Port 137 (UDP), 138 (UDP), and 139 (TCP). For communication beyond the subnet, contact your system administrator.
031-529	SMB server login error. (Invalid password.) Tap `Close`, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if password is correct.
031-530	The SMB share folder was not found on the specified SMB server. Tap `Close`, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check the following: • Check if the storage location is correct. • Check if the file name you specified can be used when creating a file on the SMB server. • Have your system administrator check the DFS setting, and directly specify the SMB server, share name, and storage location according to the checked settings.
031-531	Unable to get a file or folder name on the SMB server. Tap `Close`, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check access right of the folder you specified.
031-532	SMB scan file or folder name limit exceeded. Tap `Close`, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Change file name and forwarding destination folder, or move or delete file in forwarding destination folder.
031-533	Unable to write a file in the SMB server. Tap `Close`, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check the following: • If the file name you specified is not used by other users. • If file or folder that has the same name as the one you specified already exists.
031-534	Unable to create a folder on the SMB server. Tap `Close`, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check the following: • If the file name you specified is not used by other users. • If file or folder that has the same name as the one you specified already exists.
031-535	Unable to delete a file on the SMB server. Tap `Close`, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if other user is not operating file in storage location you specified.
031-536	Unable to delete a folder on the SMB server. Tap `Close`, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if other user is not operating file in storage location you specified.
031-537	SMB server capacity exceeded. Tap `Close`, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if storage location has free space.
031-539	The specified SMB server is invalid. Tap `Close`, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if server name is correct.
031-540	The specified domain name is invalid. Tap `Close`, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if domain name is correct.

Error-Code	What you can do
031-541	Invalid user name specified for SMB server. Tap `Close`, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if login name (user name) is correct.
031-542	TCP/IP not initialized. Tap `Close`, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Wait for a while and try the same operation again. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated.
031-543	SMB server login error. Tap `Close`, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check login permitted time with your system administrator.
031-544	SMB server login error. (Expired password.) Tap `Close`, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check the password valid period with your system administrator.
031-545	SMB server login error. (Password change required.) Tap `Close`, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check necessity of password change with your system administrator.
031-546	SMB server login error. (Invalid user is specified.) Tap `Close`, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Contact your system administrator for the destination server settings.
031-547	SMB server login error. (The specified user is restricted from accessing the SMB server.) Tap `Close`, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Contact your system administrator for the destination server settings.
031-548	SMB server login error. (Logon time of SMB destination expired.) Tap `Close`, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Contact your system administrator for the destination server settings.
031-549	SMB server login error. Specified user is restricted, and a null password is prohibited. Tap `Close`, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. On server security settings, check access permission of null password user.
031-550	Append command not supported by SMB server. Tap `Close`, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if the printer has access rights to append data to the SMB server. Check if server supports SMB append command.
031-551	Rename command not supported by SMB server. Tap `Close`, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if the printer has access rights to rename data on the SMB server. Check if server supports SMB append command.
031-552	Job canceled. Tap `Close`, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Change the file name that already exists on FTP server.
031-574	Unable to resolve the FTP server hostname. Tap `Close`, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check DNS connection, or check if name of forwarding destination server is registered with DNS.
031-575	Unable to resolve the FTP server hostname. Tap `Close`, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Set DNS address, or set forwarding destination server address as IP address.
031-576	Unable to connect to the FTP server. Tap `Close`, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if the printer communicates with forwarding destination FTP server. For example, check connection of Ethernet cable and if the IP address of the server is correct.
031-578	FTP server login error. Tap `Close`, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if login name (user name) and password are correct.
031-579	Invalid FTP subdirectory path. Tap `Close`, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if storage location is correct.
031-580	Failed to obtain a file or folder name of the FTP server. Tap `Close`, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check server access right.
031-581	FTP scan file or folder name limit exceeded. Tap `Close`, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Change file name and forwarding destination folder, or move or delete file in forwarding destination folder.
031-582	Unable to write a scan file to the FTP server location. Tap `Close`, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if the file name you specified can be created in storage location. Check if storage location has free space.

Error-Code	What you can do
031-584	Unable to create a scan folder on the FTP server. Tap `Close`, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if the folder name you specified can be created in storage location. Check if the folder that has the same name as the one you specified already exists.
031-585	Unable to delete a file on the FTP server. (DEL command failure.) Tap `Close`, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check server access rights.
031-587	Unable to delete a folder on the FTP server. (RMD command failure.) Tap `Close`, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check server access rights.
031-588	Unable to write a file to the FTP server location. Tap `Close`, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if storage location has free space.
031-590	Job canceled. Tap `Close`, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Change the file name that already exists on FTP server.
031-594	FTP transfer type error. (TYPE command failure.) Tap `Close`, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Try the same operation again. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated.
031-595	FTP data port error. (PORT command failure.) Tap `Close`, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Try the same operation again. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated.
031-598	FTP append data error. (APPE command failure.) Tap `Close`, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if the printer has access rights to append data to the FTP server. Check if server supports FTP append command.
031-599	FTP rename file error. (RNFR command failure.) Tap `Close`, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if the printer has access rights to rename data on the FTP server. Check if server supports FTP rename command.
033-513	Tap `Close`, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Try the following: • Print the received fax, or wait for a while until sending a fax is completed. • Print the fax job stored using the Secure Receive feature. For more information about the Secure Receive feature, see "Using the Secure Receiving Mode."
033-527	Tap `Close`, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Wait for a while until the printer is not busy, and try again.
033-528	Tap `Close`, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check the available time period for the FAX, and try again.
033-762	Tap `Close`, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. The printer rejects faxes sent from unwanted numbers. For more information, see "Junk Fax Setup."
033-776	The size of the fax document data is too large and may have exceeded the space available in memory. Lower the scan resolution rate and then try scanning again. For details, see "Adjusting the Document Resolution."
033-788	Tap `Close`, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Try the following: • Remove the received fax, or wait for a while until sending a fax is completed. • Print the fax job stored using the Secure Receive feature. For more information about the Secure Receive feature, see "Using the Secure Receiving Mode."
034-515	Tap `Close`, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Try the following: • Try the same operation. • Check the printer or remote machine if the memory is full.

Error-Code	What you can do
034-791	Tap `Close`, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if the telephone line cord is connected properly. If the line connection is correct, check the following: • If Tone/Pulse setting is correct. For more information about Tone/Pulse setting, see "Tone / Pulse." If Tone/Pulse setting is correct, check the following: • If the remote machine can receive a fax.
035-701	Tap `Close`, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check the following: • Status of the remote machine • Tone/Pulse setting For more information about Tone/Pulse setting, see "Tone / Pulse."
035-708	Tap `Close`, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Try the following: • Try the same operation. • Reduce the modem speed. For more information about modem speed, see "Modem Speed."
035-717	Tap `Close`, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Reduce the modem speed. For more information about modem speed, see "Modem Speed."
035-718	Tap `Close`, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check the status of the remote machine.
035-720	Tap `Close`, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check the features of the remote machine.
035-781	Tap `Close`, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if the remote machine is busy.
042-700	Wait for a while until the printer cools down. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated.
075-910	Make sure that the multipurpose feeder (MPF) is fully installed.
077-300	Close the front cover.
077-301	Close the right side cover.
077-302	Close the rear cover.
091-911	Remove the used waste toner box, and install a new toner box. For more information about replacing the waste toner box, see "Replacing the Waste Toner Box."
091-914	Reinsert the black drum cartridge. If the message remains, replace the cartridge. For more information about reinserting the drum cartridge, see "Replacing the Drum Cartridges."
091-917	Reinsert the yellow drum cartridge. If the message remains, replace the cartridge. For more information about reinserting the drum cartridge, see "Replacing the Drum Cartridges."
091-918	Reinsert the magenta drum cartridge. If the message remains, replace the cartridge. For more information about reinserting the drum cartridge, see "Replacing the Drum Cartridges."
091-919	Reinsert the cyan drum cartridge. If the message remains, replace the cartridge. For more information about reinserting the drum cartridge, see "Replacing the Drum Cartridges."
091-921	Make sure that the black drum cartridge is fully installed. For more information about installing the drum cartridge, see "Replacing the Drum Cartridges."
091-922	Make sure that the yellow drum cartridge is fully installed. For more information about installing the drum cartridge, see "Replacing the Drum Cartridges."
091-923	Make sure that the magenta drum cartridge is fully installed. For more information about installing the drum cartridge, see "Replacing the Drum Cartridges."
091-924	Make sure that the cyan drum cartridge is fully installed. For more information about installing the drum cartridge, see "Replacing the Drum Cartridges."
091-931	Remove the used black drum cartridge, and install a new cartridge. For more information about replacing the drum cartridge, see "Replacing the Drum Cartridges."

Error-Code	What you can do
091-932	Remove the used yellow drum cartridge, and install a new cartridge. For more information about replacing the drum cartridge, see "Replacing the Drum Cartridges."
091-933	Remove the used magenta drum cartridge, and install a new cartridge. For more information about replacing the drum cartridge, see "Replacing the Drum Cartridges."
091-934	Remove the used cyan drum cartridge, and install a new cartridge. For more information about replacing the drum cartridge, see "Replacing the Drum Cartridges."
091-942	Reinsert the black drum cartridge. If the message remains, replace the cartridge. For more information about replacing the drum cartridge, see "Replacing the Drum Cartridges."
091-943	Reinsert the yellow drum cartridge. If the message remains, replace the cartridge. For more information about replacing the drum cartridge, see "Replacing the Drum Cartridges."
091-944	Reinsert the magenta drum cartridge. If the message remains, replace the cartridge. For more information about replacing the drum cartridge, see "Replacing the Drum Cartridges."
091-945	Reinsert the cyan drum cartridge. If the message remains, replace the cartridge. For more information about replacing the drum cartridge, see "Replacing the Drum Cartridges."
091-960	Remove the unsupported yellow drum cartridge, and install a supported drum cartridge. For more information about installing the drum cartridge, see "Replacing the Drum Cartridges."
091-961	Remove the unsupported magenta drum cartridge, and install a supported drum cartridge. For more information about installing the drum cartridge, see "Replacing the Drum Cartridges."
091-962	Remove the unsupported cyan drum cartridge, and install a supported drum cartridge. For more information about installing the drum cartridge, see "Replacing the Drum Cartridges."
091-963	Remove the unsupported black drum cartridge, and install a supported drum cartridge. For more information about installing the drum cartridge, see "Replacing the Drum Cartridges."
092-651	Clean the CTD sensor with a clean dry cotton swab. For more information about cleaning the CTD sensor, see "Cleaning the CTD Sensor."
093-930	Remove the used yellow toner cartridge, and install a new cartridge. For more information about replacing the toner cartridge, see "Replacing the Toner Cartridges."
093-931	Remove the used magenta toner cartridge, and install a new cartridge. For more information about replacing the toner cartridge, see "Replacing the Toner Cartridges."
093-932	Remove the used cyan toner cartridge, and install a new cartridge. For more information about replacing the toner cartridge, see "Replacing the Toner Cartridges."
093-933	Remove the used black toner cartridge, and install a new cartridge. For more information about replacing the toner cartridge, see "Replacing the Toner Cartridges."
093-960	Remove the unsupported yellow toner cartridge, and install a supported toner cartridge. For more information about installing the toner cartridge, see "Replacing the Toner Cartridges."
093-961	Remove the unsupported magenta toner cartridge, and install a supported toner cartridge. For more information about installing the toner cartridge, see "Replacing the Toner Cartridges."
093-962	Remove the unsupported cyan toner cartridge, and install a supported toner cartridge. For more information about installing the toner cartridge, see "Replacing the Toner Cartridges."
093-963	Remove the unsupported black toner cartridge, and install a supported toner cartridge. For more information about installing the toner cartridge, see "Replacing the Toner Cartridges."
093-970	Make sure that the yellow toner cartridge is fully installed. For more information about installing the toner cartridge, see "Replacing the Toner Cartridges."
093-971	Make sure that the magenta toner cartridge is fully installed. For more information about installing the toner cartridge, see "Replacing the Toner Cartridges."
093-972	Make sure that the cyan toner cartridge is fully installed. For more information about installing the toner cartridge, see "Replacing the Toner Cartridges."

Error-Code	What you can do
093-973	Make sure that the black toner cartridge is fully installed. For more information about installing the toner cartridge, see "Replacing the Toner Cartridges."
094-422	Remove the used transfer belt unit, and install a new transfer belt unit. For more information about replacing the transfer belt unit, see "Replacing the Transfer Belt Unit, the 2nd Belt Transfer Roller (2nd BTR), and the Retard Roller."
094-910	Make sure that the transfer belt unit is fully installed. For more information about installing the transfer belt unit, see "Replacing the Transfer Belt Unit, the 2nd Belt Transfer Roller (2nd BTR), and the Retard Roller."
094-911	Remove the used transfer belt unit, and install a new transfer belt unit. For more information about replacing the transfer belt unit, see "Replacing the Transfer Belt Unit, the 2nd Belt Transfer Roller (2nd BTR), and the Retard Roller."
116-722	Tap `Close` for the printer to recover. Check the WSD scan address and the destination computer, and then try scanning again. Contact your system administrator.
193-700	When genuine toner cartridges are installed, change the Non-Dell Toner setting to disable using the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** or the **Tool Box**.

Error Messages

Message	Cause	Action
Cannot access the LDAP address book. Consult your network administrator if this error persists.	The printer fails to authenticate against an authentication server.	Check the server settings. If the error persists, consult your network administrator.
	An SSL authentication error on connection to the LDAP server; an SSL authentication internal error occurs.	If the error persists, consult your network administrator.
Cannot access the LDAP address book. The LDAPS server certificate is not correct.	An SSL authentication error on connection to the LDAP server; the server certificate data is incorrect.	Check the root certificate of the LDAP server SSL certificate on the printer.
Cannot access the LDAP address book. The LDAPS SSL client certificate is not set.	An SSL authentication error on connection to the LDAP server; the LDAP server cannot acquire an SSL client certificate.	Check that an SSL client certificate is correctly imported into the printer.
Cannot access the LDAP address book. The server names of LDAPS and the SSL certificate do not match.	An SSL authentication error on connection to the LDAP server; the server certificate for the LDAP server is not yet valid or has expired.	Change to a valid LDAP server SSL certificate.
	An SSL authentication error on connection to the LDAP server; the LDAP server name does not match the certificate.	Set the LDAP server address on the printer to match the address on the LDAP server SSL certificate.
Cannot access the LDAP address book. The time settings of the printer and the Kerberos server do not match.	The printer and the Kerberos server clocks have a time difference that exceeds the Kerberos server clock skew value.	Check that the printer and the Kerberos server clocks have the correct time.
Cannot connect to server. Check the server settings.	The specified server settings such as IP address and realm/domain name are incorrect.	Make sure that the correct IP address/host name, port number, realm/domain name, and search directory root are specified in **IP Address / Host Name & Port**, **Domain Name**, and **Search Directory Root** on the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**. (See "Kerberos Server" and "LDAP Server.")
	The LDAP or Kerberos version on the server is not compatible with the printer.	Consult your network administrator.

Message	Cause	Action
	The server is down.	Check that the server is functioning normally.
Change the server settings and confirm the server connection.	The printer cannot search for destinations within the specified time.	Increase the time setting for **Search Time-Out** on the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**. (See "Authentication System" and "LDAP Server.")
		Check that the printer and the server are properly connected with an Ethernet cable. If there are not any problems with the connection and the error persists, the server settings may have been changed. Consult your network administrator.
Check the authentication settings.	The login name and password for access to an authentication server are incorrect.	Make sure that the correct login name and password are specified in **Login Name** and **Password** on the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**. (See "Kerberos Server" and "LDAP Server.")
Invalid search characters or LDAP User Mapping incorrectly configured for Configuration Web Tool.	The LDAP search filter fails to work properly as special characters are used in your search condition or on the **LDAP User Mapping** page on the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**.	Remove special characters, and then search again. (See "LDAP User Mapping.")
Network connection is not ready. Try again later.	You have started searching for destinations before the IP address is set for the printer.	Wait for a while, and then search again.
No attribute or invalid name. Confirm address info. on server.	The address information on the server contain incorrect data or are insufficient to get your search request.	Check the address information registered on the server or consult your network administrator.
No Entries.	The printer cannot find any destinations that meet your search condition.	Tap OK to return to the **Search Network Address Book** screen, and then specify a new condition to search again.
Search Directory Root incorrectly configured for Configuration Web Tool.	The directories that do not exist in the LDAP server are specified or an invalid DN syntax is specified.	Make sure that valid values are specified in **Search Directory Root** on the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**. (See "LDAP Server.") Specify the origin of the search with the correct DN syntax, as shown in the following example: dc=w2008ad,dc=addressbook,dc=net
Too many search results. Only a maximum of 50 search scan be displayed. Please refine your search if needed.	The number of search results has exceeded the limits (50 search results) the printer can display.	Tap Close to display the search results. If you cannot find your desired destination on the result list, specify a new condition to search again.
Authentication server access Error 016-530 Restart the printer.	Some other error occurs regarding the LDAP server address book.	Turn off the printer, and turn it on again. If the error persists, consult your network administrator.

31

Specifications

Operating System Compatibility

Your Dell™ C2665dnf Color Laser Multifunction Printer is compatible with Microsoft® Windows® XP, Windows XP 64-bit Edition, Windows Server® 2003, Windows Server 2003 x64 Edition, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows Vista®, Windows Vista 64-bit Edition, Windows 7, Windows 7 64-bit Edition, Windows 8, Windows 8 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2012, Windows RT, Mac OS X 10.5, 10.6, 10.7, 10.8, Red Hat® Enterprise Linux® 5/6 Desktop (x86), and SUSE® Linux Enterprise Desktop 10/11 (x86).

Power Supply

Rated voltage	220 VAC - 240 VAC	110 VAC - 127 VAC
Frequency	50/60 Hz	50/60 Hz
Current	5 A or less	10 A or less
Power consumption	67.0 W (Ready)	63.0 W (Ready)
	15.0 W (Sleep)	14.5 W (Sleep)
	3.5 W (Deep Sleep)	3.5 W (Deep Sleep)
	0 W (Offline)	0 W (Offline)
TEC value	2.8 kWh	2.8 kWh

Dimensions

Height: 558 mm (21.97 inches) Width: 439 mm (17.28 inches) Depth: 530 mm (20.87 inches)

Weight (including toner cartridges and drum cartridges): 43.9 kg (96.78 lb)

Memory

Memory	1 GB
Speed	DDR3-1066MHz

Page Description Language (PDL)/Emulation, Operating System, and Interface

PDL/Emulations	PCL 6, PCL5e, PostScript Level3 Compatible, HBPL, XML Paper Specification (Host Based)	
Operating systems	Microsoft Windows XP/XP x64/Server 2003/Server 2003 x64/Server 2008/Server 2008 x64/Server 2008 R2 x64/Vista/Vista x64/7/7 x64/8/8 x64/Server 2012, Mac OS X (10.5/10.6/10.7/ 10.8), Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5/6 Desktop (x86), and SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 10/11 (x86)	
Interfaces	Standard local:	USB 2.0
	Standard network:	10Base-T/100Base-TX/ 1000Base-T Ethernet
	Optional network:	IEEE 802.11b/802.11g/802.11n (Wireless)

MIB Compatibility

Management Information Base (MIB) is a database containing information about network devices (such as adapters, bridges, routers, or computers). This information helps network administrators manage the network (analyze performance, traffic, errors, and so on). Dell C2665dnf Color Laser Multifunction Printer complies with standard industry MIB specifications, allowing the printer to be recognized and managed by various printer and network management software systems.

Environment

Operation

Temperature	10 °C - 32 °C
Relative humidity	10 % - 85 % RH (no condensation)

Print Quality Guarantee

Temperature	15 °C - 28 °C
Relative humidity	20 % - 70 % RH (no condensation)

Storage

Temperature range	-20 °C to 40 °C (0 °F to 104 °F)
Storage humidity range	5 % - 85 % RH (no condensation)

Altitude

Operating	Up to 3,100 m (10,170 feet)
Storage	Up to 3,100 m (10,170 feet)

Cables

Your interconnection cable must meet the following requirements:

	Connection type	Connection specifications and symbols	
1	Ethernet	10Base-T/100Base-TX/ 1000Base-T	
2	USB	USB 2.0	
3	Wireless adapter socket	IEEE 802.11b/802.11g/802.11n	
4	Phone connector		PHONE

Connection type	Connection specifications and symbols
5 Wall jack connector	LINE
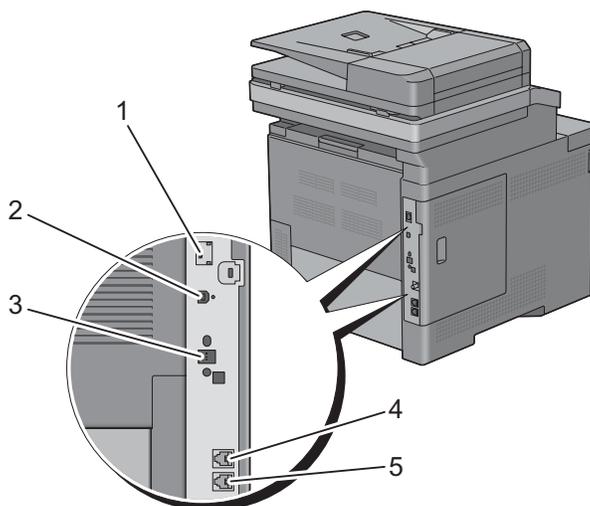
Print Specifications
===

Item	Description
Print resolution	600 dpi x 600 dpi
Print speed	Simplex: Color 27 ppm, Black & White 27ppm (A4)
	Duplex: Color 18 ppm, Black & White 18ppm (A4)
Paper size	A4, B5, A5, Letter, Executive, Folio (8.5" x 13"), Legal, Envelope #10, Monarch, DL, C5

Copy Specifications
===

Item	Description
Copy resolution	Optical: 600 dpi x 600 dpi
Copy speed	Color 27 cpm or more, Black & White 27 cpm or more (When using the document glass to make sequential copies of a document with pages scanned one by one.)
	Simplex: Color 13 cpm or more, Black & White 22 cpm or more
	Duplex: Color 4 cpm or more, Black & White 7 cpm or more
	(When using the Duplex Automatic Document Feeder (DADF) to make sequential copies of multiple documents.)
Paper size	A4, B5, A5, Letter, Executive, Folio (8.5" x 13"), Legal, Envelope #10, Monarch, DL, C5
Zoom rate	Document glass: 25 % - 400 %, DADF: 25 % - 400 %
Multiple copies	1 - 99

Item	Description
Copy mode (=Original type)	Text, Text & Photo, Photo
Scanning method	Document glass: Document-fixed flatbed scanning
	DADF: Carriage-fixed, document-feeding scanning (2- side scanning)

Scanner Specifications

Item	Description
Compatibility	TWAIN, TWAIN-Net, Windows Image Acquisition (WIA)[1], Scan Service for Web Services on Devices (WSD)[2]
Scan resolution	Optical: 600 dpi x 300 dpi (Color only), 600 dpi x 400 dpi, 600 dpi x 600 dpi, 1,200 dpi x 1,200 dpi
	Enhanced (Pull Scan):
	• TWAIN – 50 x 50 to 9,600 x 9,600 dots/25.4 mm
	• WIA – 75/100/150/200/300/400/600 dots/25.4 mm
	Enhanced (Push Scan):
	200(Default)/300/400/600 dots/25.4 mm
Color bit depth	24 bit
Mono bit depth	1 bit for Line art. 8 bit for Gray scale
Effective scanning length	Document glass: 297 mm. DADF: 355.6 mm
Effective scanning width	215.9 mm
Scan speed (Text mode)	Monochrome: 665 μs/line (600 dpi), 1330 μs/line (1200 dpi)
	Color: 1330 μs/line (600 dpi), 2660 μs/line (1200 dpi)

[1] : Windows OS only

[2] : Windows Vista/7/8 only

Facsimile Specifications

Item	Description
Compatibility	ITU-T Super G3, ITU-T G3 ECM, ITU-T G3
Applicable line	Public Switched Telephone Network (PSTN), Private Branch Exchange (PBX), or Leased line (3.4 KHz/2-wire)
Data coding	1bit/JBIG/MMR/MR/MH
Max modem speed	33.6 Kbps
Transmission speed	Approx. 3 seconds/page *Transmission time applies to memory transmission of text data scanned in Standard resolution with ECM using only ITU-T No.1 Chart.
Scanning speed	Document glass: approx. 3 seconds/A4 (at standard fax resolution mode) DADF: approx. 5 seconds/Letter (at standard fax resolution mode), 7.5 seconds/Letter (at fine fax resolution mode)
Maximum document length	Document glass: 297 mm DADF: 355.6 mm
Paper size	Letter, A4 (depending on a country)
Resolution	Standard: R8 x 3.85 l/mm, Fine: R8 x 7.7 l/mm, Super Fine: 400 dpi x 400 dpi, Photo: R8 x 7.7 l/mm

Item	Description
User memory	4 MB (320 pages)
Halftone	256 levels

Optional Wireless Adapter

Item	Description
Connectivity technology	Wireless
Compliant standards	IEEE 802.11b, 802.11g, and 802.11n
Bandwidth	2.4 GHz
Data transfer rate	IEEE 802.11n: 65 Mbps IEEE 802.11g: 54, 48, 36, 24, 18, 12, 9, and 6 Mbps IEEE 802.11b: 11, 5.5, 2, and 1 Mbps
Security	64 (40-bit key)/128 (104-bit key) WEP, WPA- PSK (TKIP, AES), WPA2-PSK (AES), WPA-Enterprise (TKIP, AES)[1], WPA2-Enterprise (AES)[1]
Wi-Fi Protected Setup® (WPS)[2]	Push-Button Configuration (PBC), Personal Identification Number (PIN)
Wireless mode	Infrastructure, Ad-hoc, Wi-Fi Direct

[1] EAP method supports PEAPv0, EAP-TLS, EAP-TTLS PAP, and EAP-TTLS CHAP.

[2] WPS 2.0 compliant.

Maintaining Your Printer

Maintaining Your Printer

You need to complete certain tasks to maintain optimum print quality.

Determining the Status of Supplies

If your printer is connected to the network, the **Dell™ Printer Configuration Web Tool** can provide instant feedback on remaining toner levels. Type the printer's IP address in your web browser to view this information. To use the **E-Mail Alert Setup** feature that notifies you when the printer requires new supplies, type the desired e-mail address in the e-mail list box.

On the touch panel screen, you can also confirm the following:

- Any supply or maintenance items that require attention replacing (However, the printer can only display information about one item at a time).

- Amount of toner remaining in each toner cartridge.

Conserving Supplies

You can change several settings in your printer driver to conserve toner cartridge and paper.

Supply	Setting	Function
Toner cartridge	**Toner Saver** in the **Others** tab	This check box allows the users to select a print mode that uses less toner. The image quality will be lower when this feature is used.
Print media	**Multiple Up** in the **Layout** tab	The printer prints two or more pages on one side of a sheet.
Print media	**Duplex** in the **General** tab	The printer prints on both sides of a sheet of paper.

Ordering Supplies

You can order consumables (toner cartridges, drum cartridges, and waste toner box) from Dell on the Internet when using a networked printer. Type the IP address of your printer in your web browser, launch the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**, and click the **Order Supplies at:** to order consumables for your printer.

You can also order consumables by the following method.

1 Click **Start**→ **All Programs**→ **Dell Printers**→ **Additional Color Laser Software**→ **Dell Supplies Management System**.

   The **Dell Supplies Management System** window appears.

2 Select your printer from the **Select Printer Model** list.

3 If ordering from the web:

   a Select a URL from the **Select Reorder URL** list.

   b Click **Visit Dell printer supplies ordering web site**.

   📝 **NOTE:** When you cannot get information from the printer automatically by two-way communication, a window that prompts you to type the Service Tag appears. Type your Dell printer Service Tag in the field provided.
   Your Service Tag number is located inside the front cover of your printer.

4 If ordering by phone, call the number that appears under the **Order by Phone** heading.

Storing Print Media

To avoid potential paper feeding problems and uneven print quality, there are several things you can do:

- To achieve the best possible print quality, store print media in an environment where the temperature is approximately 21 ℃ (70 ℉) and the relative humidity is 40 %.
- Store cartons of print media on a pallet or shelf, rather than directly on the floor.
- If you store individual packages of print media out of the original carton, ensure that they rest on a flat surface so the edges do not buckle or curl.
- Do not place anything on top of the print media packages.

Storing Consumables

Store consumables in their original packaging until you need to use them. Do not store consumables in:

- Temperatures greater than 40 ℃ (104 ℉).
- An environment with extreme changes in humidity or temperature.
- Direct sunlight.
- Dusty places.
- A car for a long period of time.
- An environment where corrosive gases are present.
- A humid environment.

Replacing the Toner Cartridges

⚠ **WARNING: Before performing any of the following procedures, read and follow the safety instructions in the *Important Information*.**

Dell toner cartridges are available only through Dell. You can order cartridges online at **http://www.dell.com/supplies** or by phone. To order by phone, see "Contacting Dell."

It is recommended to use Dell toner cartridges for your printer. Dell does not provide warranty coverage for problems caused by using accessories, parts, or components not supplied by Dell.

⚠ **WARNING: Never throw used toner cartridges into fire. The residual toner could explode resulting in burns and injuries.**

⚠ **WARNING: Do not shake the used toner cartridge. This may cause toner spills.**

Removing the Toner Cartridge

📝 **NOTE:** Ensure that you remove all the paper from the MPF and close the MPF cover before removing the toner cartridge.

1 Grasp the grips on both sides of the front cover, and then pull it down to open.
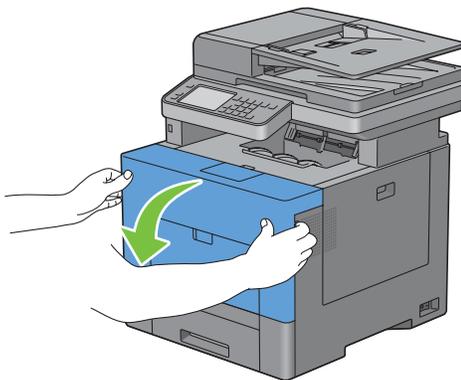
2 Grasp the handle on the toner cartridge that you want to replace, and then pull it out.
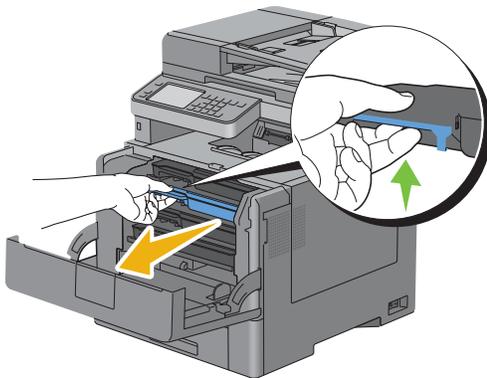
⚠ **WARNING: Do not shake the toner cartridge as it may cause toner spills.**

Installing a Toner Cartridge

1 Unpack a new toner cartridge of the desired color.

2 Shake the new toner cartridge five or six times to distribute the toner evenly.
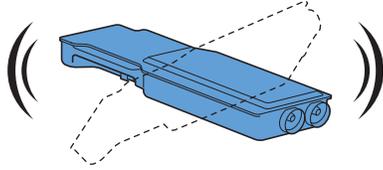
3 Insert the toner cartridge into the associated cartridge slot, and then push until it stops.
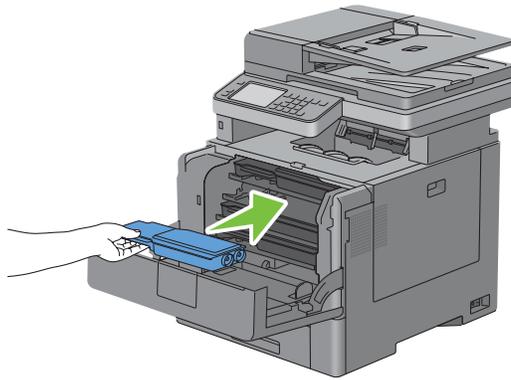
4 Close the front cover.
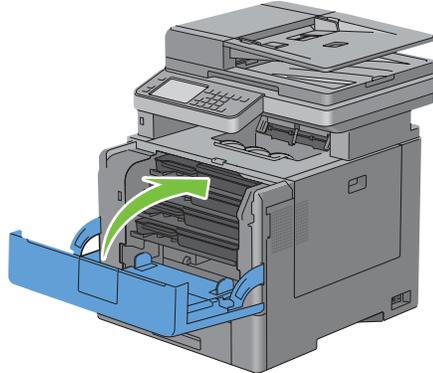
Replacing the Drum Cartridges

You need to replace all drum cartridges (yellow, magenta, cyan, and black) at a time.

⚠ **WARNING: Before performing any of the following procedures, read and follow the safety instructions in the *Important Information*.**

⚠ **CAUTION: Protect the drum cartridges against bright light. If the right side cover remains open for more than three minutes, print quality may deteriorate.**

Removing the Drum Cartridge

1 Open the right side cover.
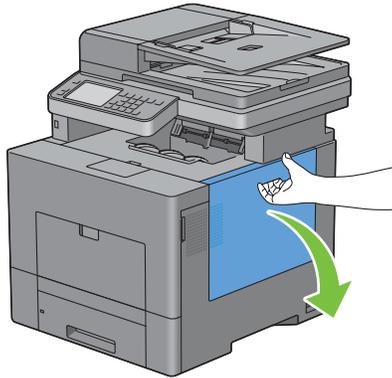
2 Turn the waste toner box lock lever 90-degrees counterclockwise to unlock the waste toner box.

3 Grasp the handle on the waste toner box and pull it out making sure to hold it upright so that the waste toner does not spill out.
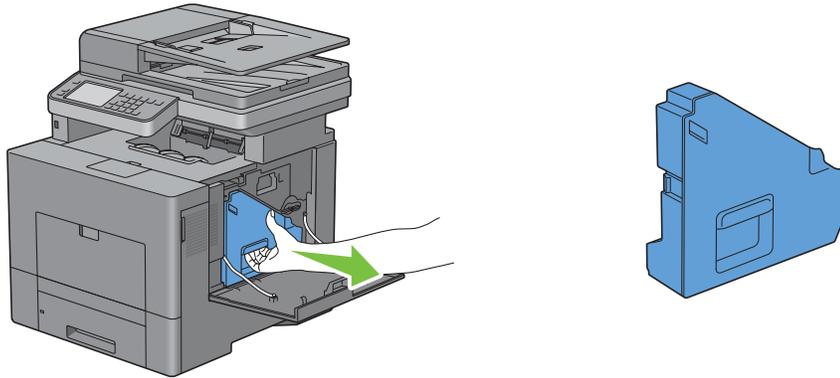
⚠ **CAUTION: Take care not to drop the waste toner box while you are removing it.**

⚠ **CAUTION: After removing the waste toner box, do not touch the parts shown in the illustration. Toner can dirty or stain your hands.**

4 Stand the removed waste toner box upright on a level surface.

⚠ **WARNING: Never lay the waste toner box on its side as this may cause its malfunction or toner spills.**
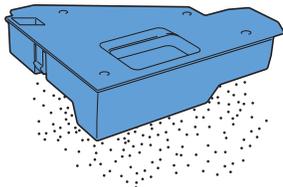
5 Slightly pressing down the tab on the drum cartridge that you want to replace, pull it out halfway with one hand.
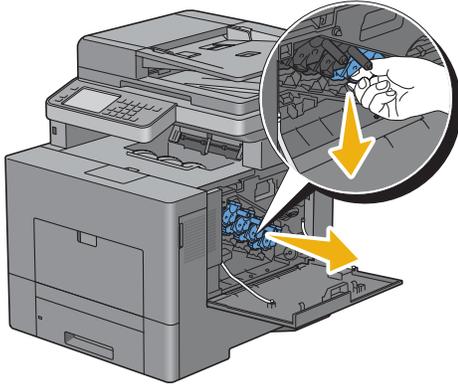
6 Support the drum cartridge with the other hand from underneath, and then pull it out completely.
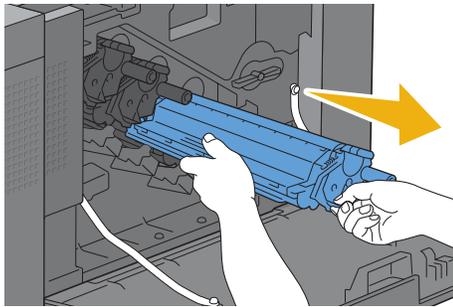
7 Repeat the steps 5 and 6 to remove the other three cartridges.

Installing a Drum Cartridge

1 Unpack a new drum cartridge of the desired color.

2 Remove the orange protective cover from the drum cartridge.
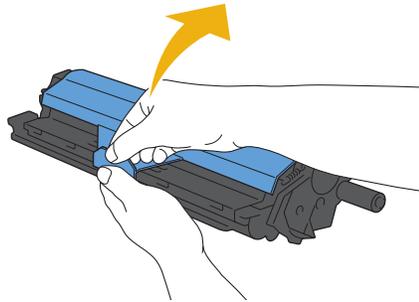
3 Insert the drum cartridge into the associated cartridge slot, and then push until it stops.
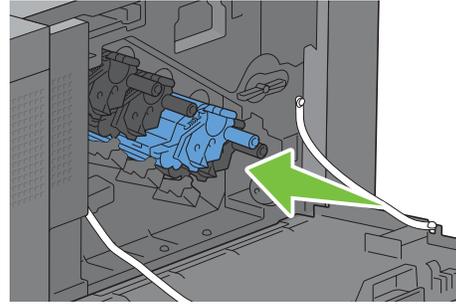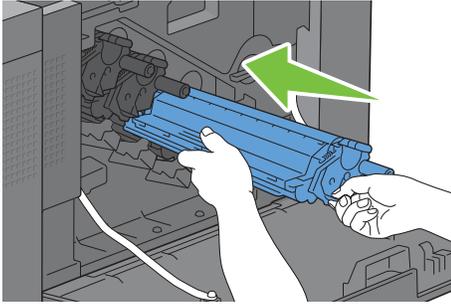
4 Repeat the steps 1 to 3 to insert the other three cartridges.

5 Remove the cleaning rod from inside the printer.
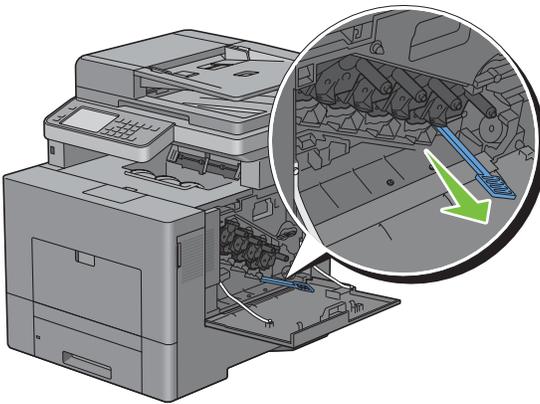
6 Remove the cleaning pad by pressing the white tabs between your thumb and index finger.
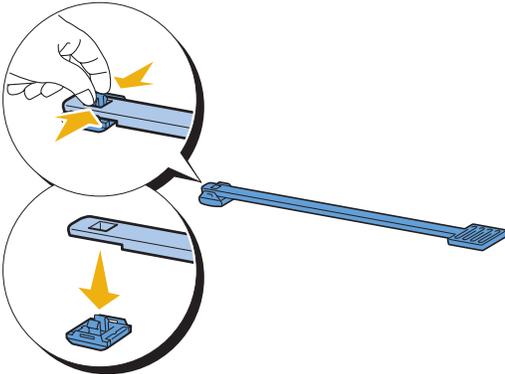
7 Unpack a new cleaning pad.

8 Attach the new cleaning pad to the cleaning rod.
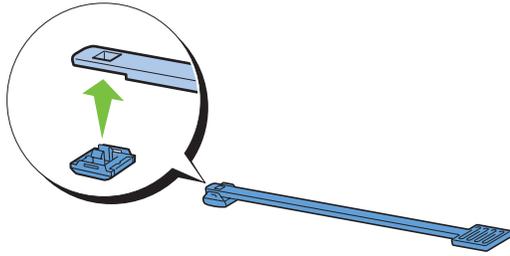
9 Insert the cleaning rod fully into one of the four holes until it clicks into the interior of the printer as illustrated below, and then pull it out.
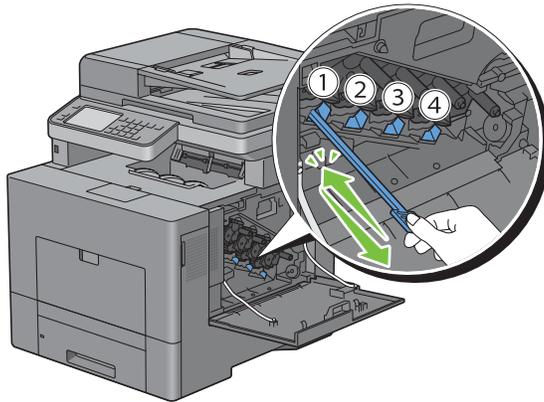
10 Repeat step 9 also on the other three holes. One time insertion is enough for each hole.

11 Return the cleaning rod to its original location.
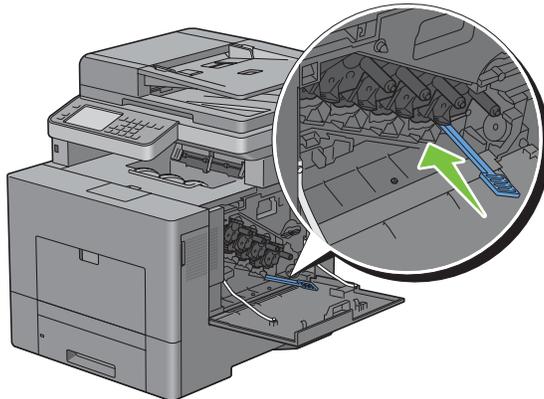
12 Reinsert the removed waste toner box.
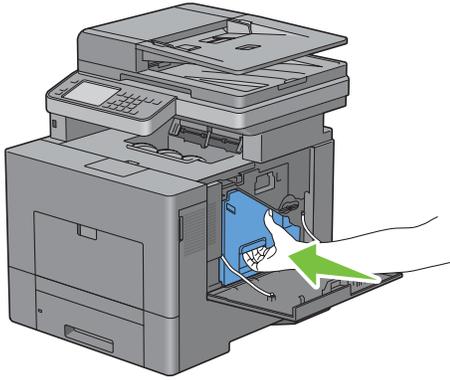
⚠ **CAUTION: If the waste toner box does not fit into place properly, make sure that the drum cartridge is fully inserted in the previous step.**

13 Turn the waste toner box lock lever 90-degrees clockwise to lock the waste toner box.
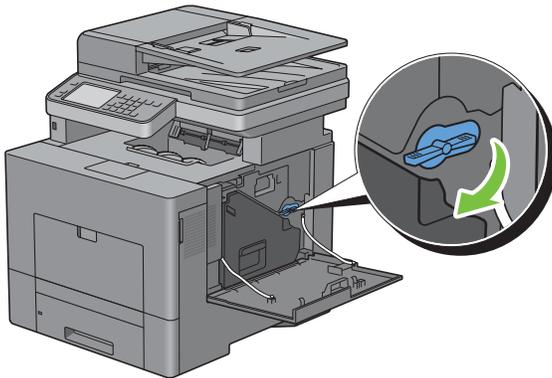
14 Close the right side cover.
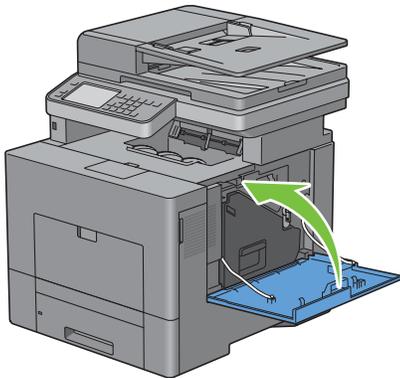
Replacing the Fusing Unit

⚠ **WARNING: Before performing any of the following procedures, read and follow the safety instructions in the *Important Information*.**

Removing the Fusing Unit

1 Turn off the printer and wait for 30 minutes.

2 Push down the latch to open the rear cover.
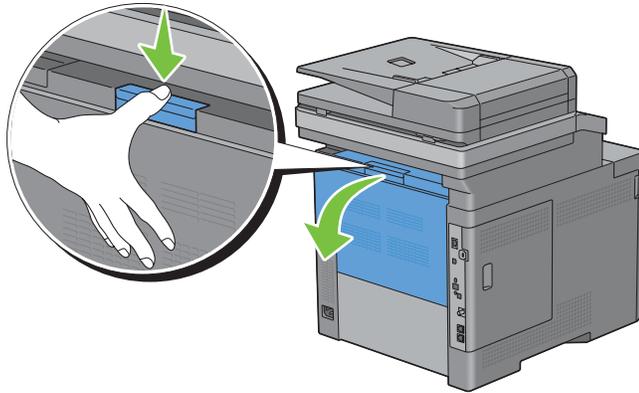
3 Grasp the grips on both sides of the fusing unit squeezing the lever under the left side grip, and then pull out the unit.
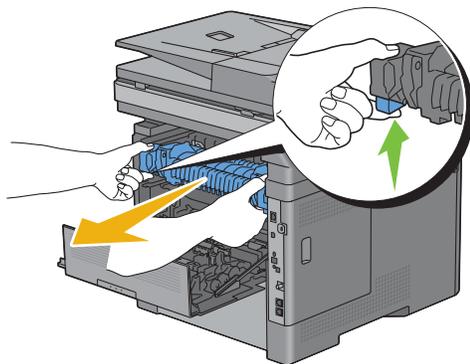
Installing a Fusing Unit

1 Unpack a new fusing unit.

2 Make sure that the two tabs of the fusing unit align with the grooves on the printer, and then insert it into the printer until it clicks.
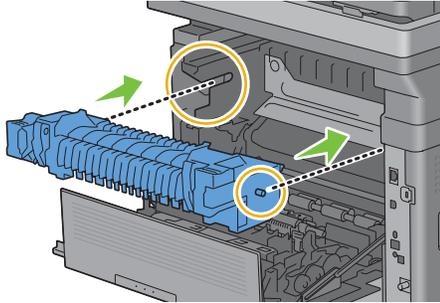
3 Close the rear cover.
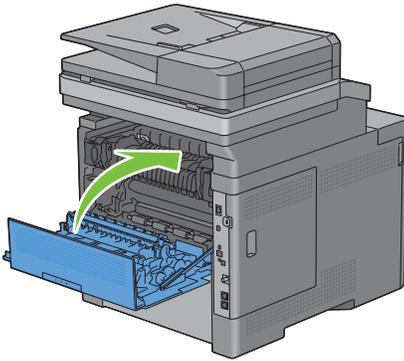
> 🖊 **NOTE:** After replacing the fusing unit, be sure to initialize its life counter by following the instructions in the accompanying manual.

Replacing the Transfer Belt Unit, the 2nd Belt Transfer Roller (2nd BTR), and the Retard Roller

You need to replace all three parts (transfer belt unit, 2nd BTR, and retard roller) at a time. Both the 2nd BTR and the retard roller for replacement come with a new transfer belt unit.

⚠ **WARNING: Before performing any of the following procedures, read and follow the safety instructions in the** *Important Information*.

⚠ **CAUTION: Ensure nothing touches or scratches the surface (black-colored film) of the transfer belt unit. Scratches, dirt, or oil from your hands on the film of the transfer belt unit may reduce print quality.**

Removing the Transfer Belt Unit

1 Push down the latch to open the rear cover.
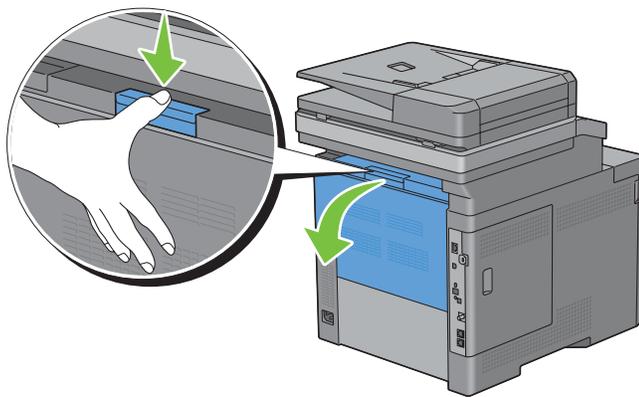
2 Open the right side cover.
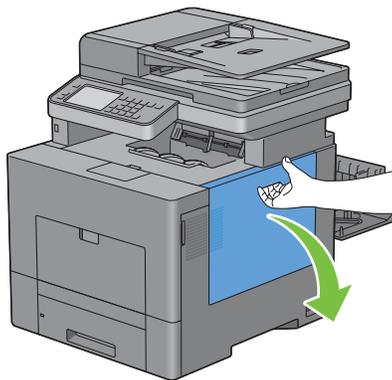
3 Turn the waste toner box lock lever 90-degrees counterclockwise to unlock the waste toner box.
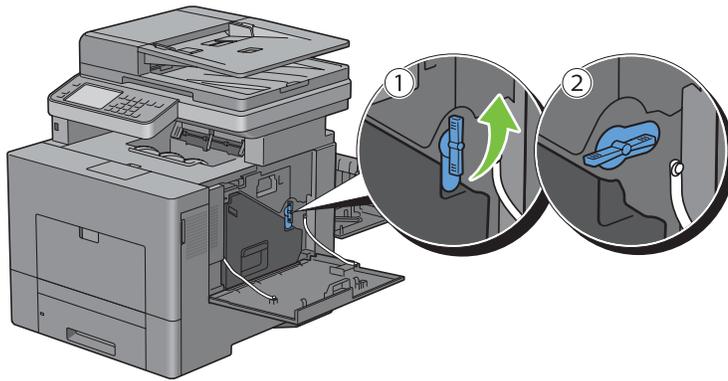
4 Grasp the handle on the waste toner box and pull it out making sure to hold it upright so that the waste toner does not spill out.
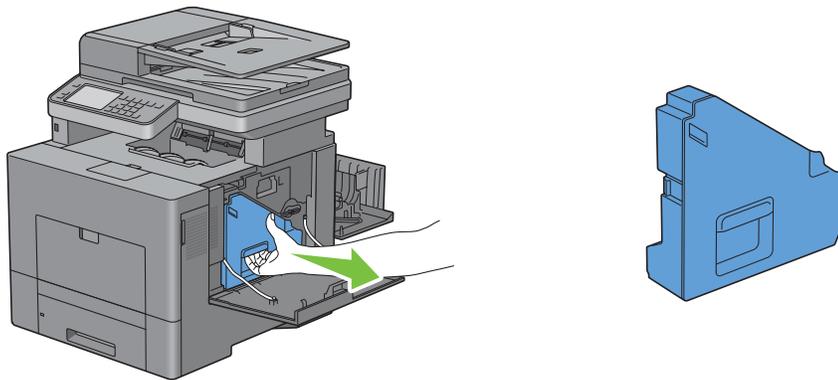
⚠ **CAUTION: Take care not to drop the waste toner box while you are removing it.**

⚠ **CAUTION: After removing the waste toner box, do not touch the parts shown in the illustration. Toner can dirty or stain your hands.**
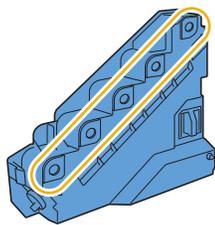
5 Stand the removed waste toner box upright on a level surface.
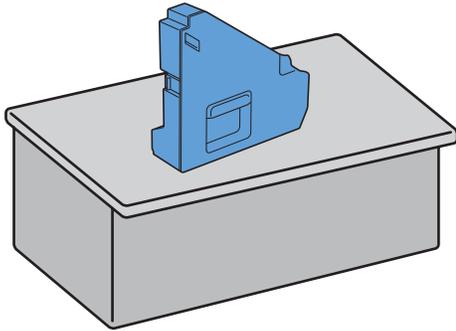
⚠ **WARNING: Never lay the waste toner box on its side as this may cause its malfunction or toner spills.**
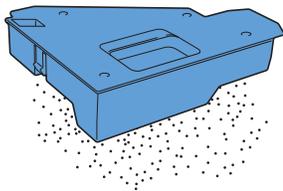
6 Lift the operator panel.
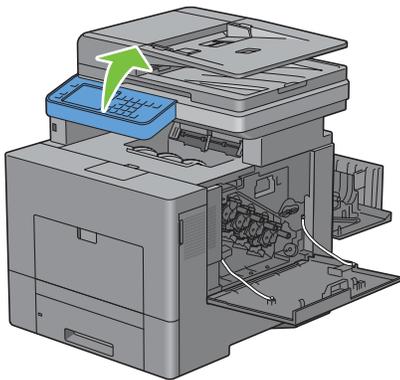
7 Open the top cover.
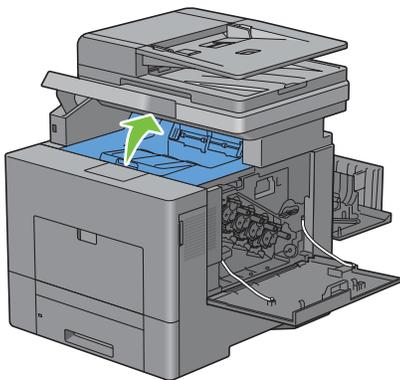
8 Put your fingers through the loops on both sides of the transfer belt unit, and then pull it out.
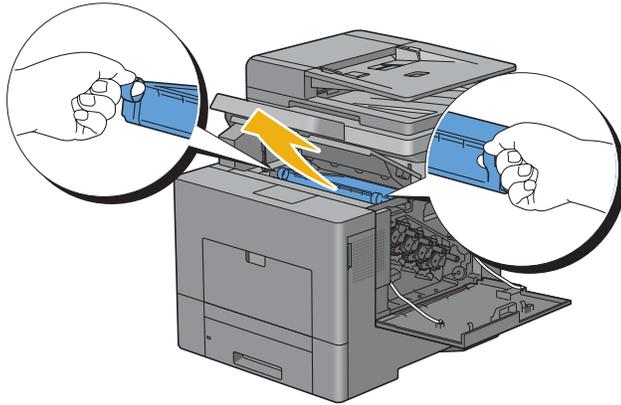
⚠ **CAUTION: If you cannot pull out the unit from the printer, make sure that all of the above procedures are performed properly.**

9 Clean the CTD sensor (as shown) with a clean, dry cotton swab.
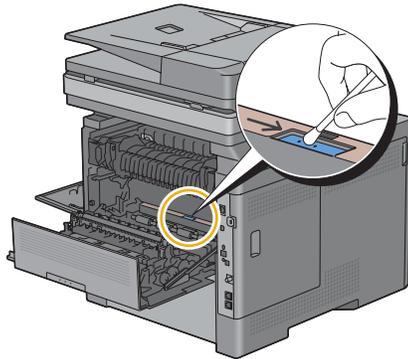
Installing a Transfer Belt Unit

1 Unpack a new transfer belt unit.

2 Remove the two orange packing materials first, and then the protective sheet from the transfer belt unit.
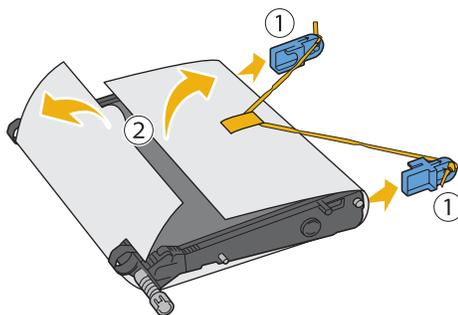
⚠ **CAUTION: Ensure nothing touches or scratches the surface (black-colored film) of the transfer belt unit. Scratches, dirt, or oil from your hands on the film of the transfer belt unit may reduce print quality.**

3 Make sure that the arrow marks on the transfer belt unit and the printer face each other, and then insert the unit into the printer until it clicks.
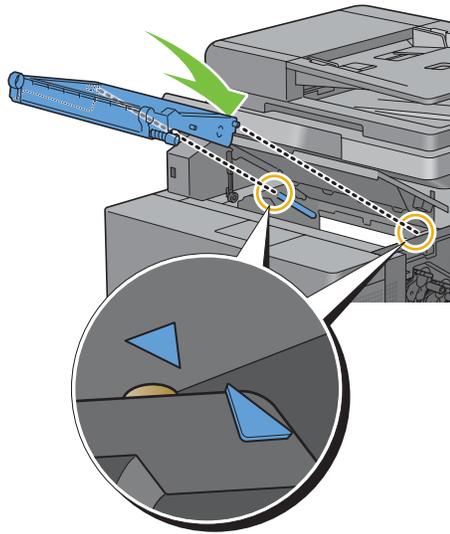
4 Close the top cover.
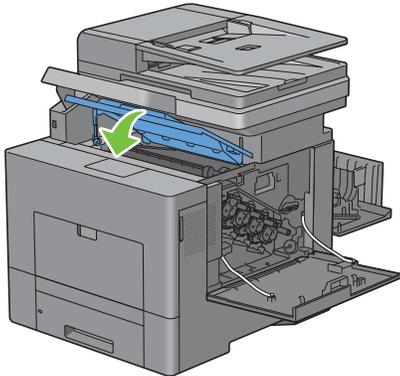
5 Lower the operator panel back in place.
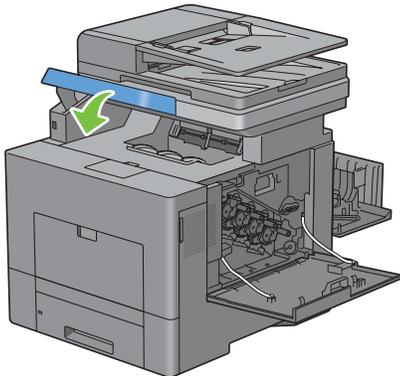
6 Reinsert the removed waste toner box.
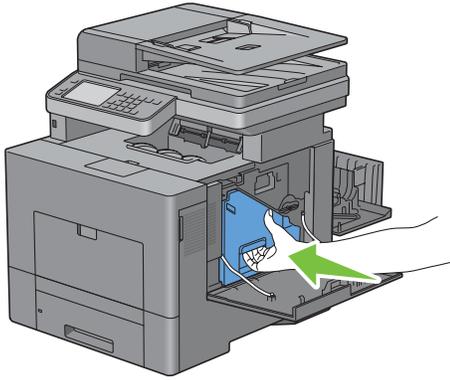
⚠ **CAUTION: If the waste toner box does not fit into place properly, make sure that the transfer belt unit is fully inserted.**

7 Turn the waste toner box lock lever 90-degrees clockwise to lock the waste toner box.
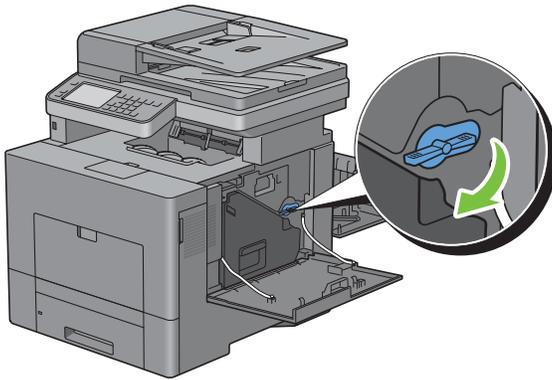
8 Close the right side cover.
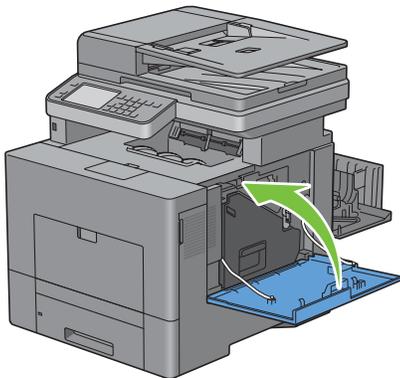
📝 **NOTE:** After replacing the transfer belt unit, be sure to initialize its life counter by following the instructions in the accompanying manual.

Removing the 2nd BTR

1 Pinching the tabs on both sides of the 2nd BTR, lift it out of the printer.
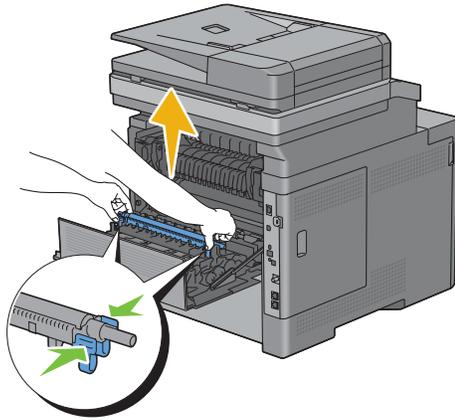
Installing a 2nd BTR

1 Unpack a new 2nd BTR.

2 Hold the 2nd BTR by both its ends.
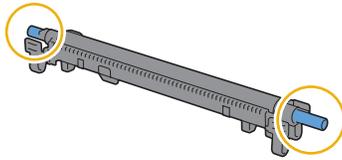
3 Make sure that the arrow marks on the 2nd BTR and the printer face each other, and then press down the 2nd BTR until it clicks.
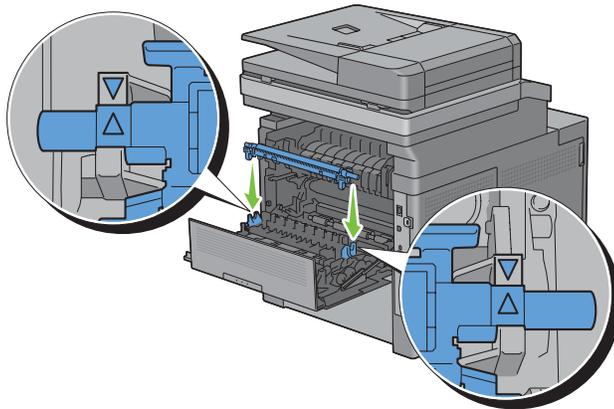
4 Close the rear cover.
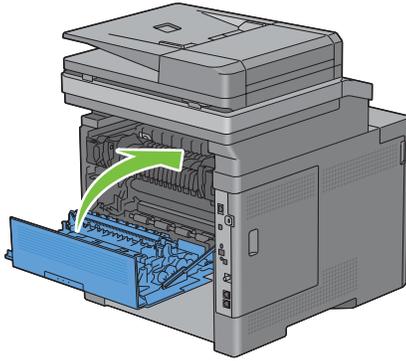
Removing the Retard Roller in Tray1

1 Pull tray1 out of the printer about 200 mm.
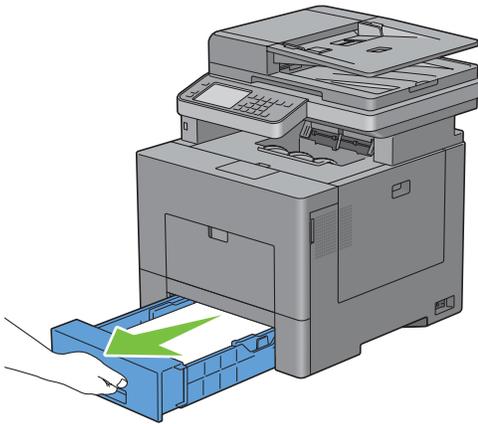
2 Hold tray1 with both hands, and remove it from the printer.
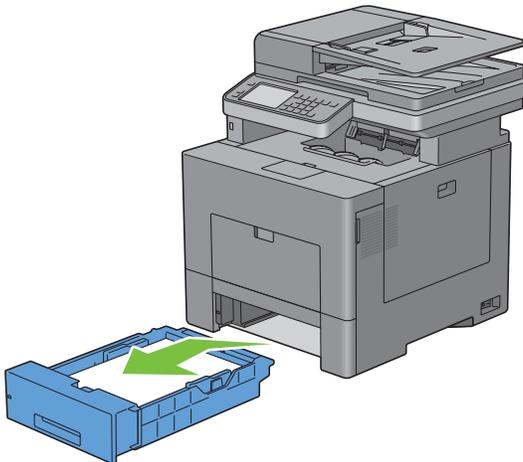
> ✍ **NOTE:** Ensure that you remove all the paper from tray1 before removing the retard roller.

3 Slightly pressing down the lock lever on tray1 to the right with one hand, raise the retard roller with the other hand.
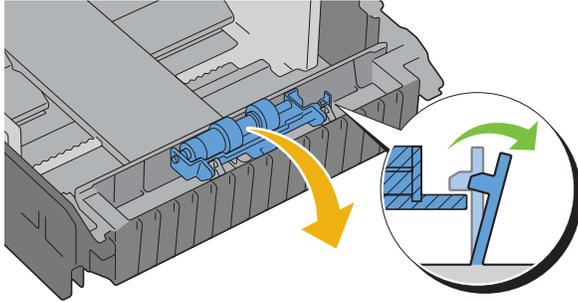
4 Slide the retard roller to the left to remove it from tray1.
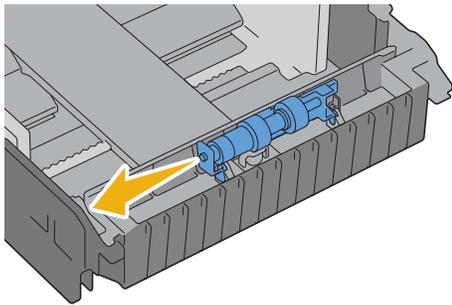
Installing a Retard Roller in Tray1

1 Slide the two axles of the retard roller into the holes on tray1.
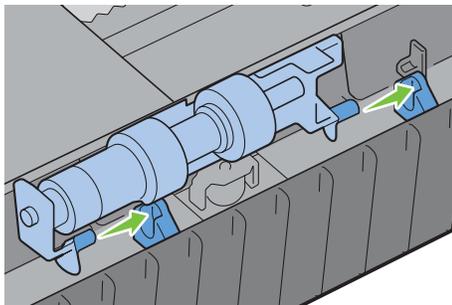
2 Press down the retard roller until it snaps.
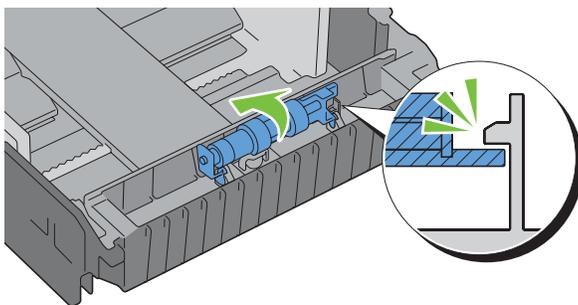
3 Load paper in tray1, and then insert the tray into the printer and push until it stops.
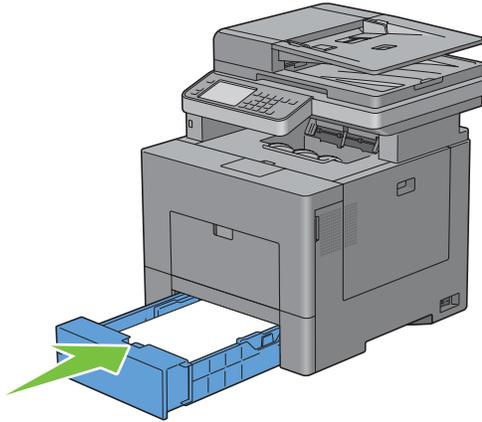
Replacing the Waste Toner Box

⚠ **WARNING: Before performing any of the following procedures, read and follow the safety instructions in the *Important Information*.**

Removing the Waste Toner Box

1 Open the right side cover.
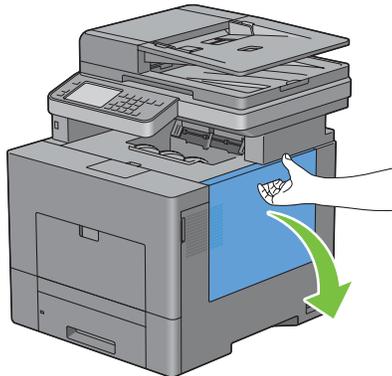
2 Turn the waste toner box lock lever 90-degrees counterclockwise to unlock the waste toner box.
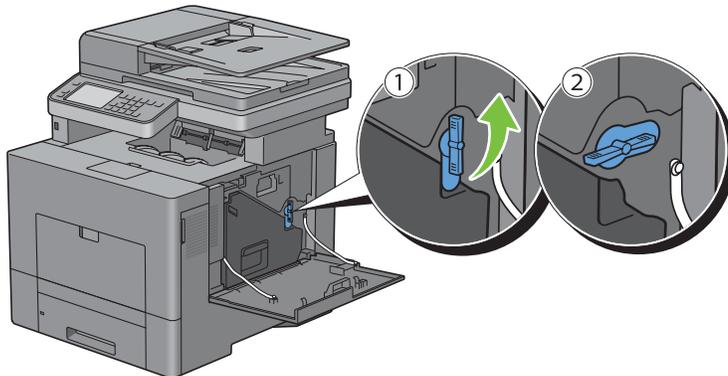
3 Grasp the handle on the waste toner box and pull it out making sure to hold it upright so that the waste toner does not spill out.
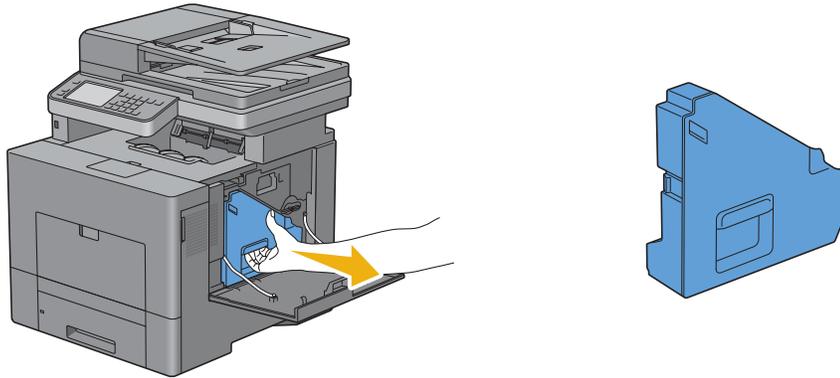
⚠ **CAUTION: Take care not to drop the waste toner box while you are removing it.**

⚠ **CAUTION: After removing the waste toner box, do not touch the parts shown in the illustration. Toner can dirty or stain your hands.**
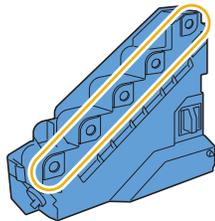
4 Insert the used waste toner box into the plastic bag that came with the new waste toner box and seal the bag.

Installing a Waste Toner Box

1 Unpack a new waste toner box.

2 Insert the waste toner box.
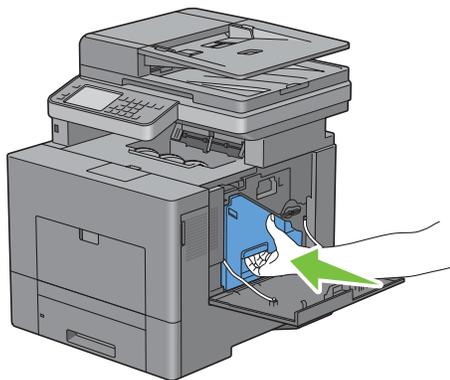
3 Turn the waste toner box lock lever 90-degrees clockwise to lock the waste toner box.
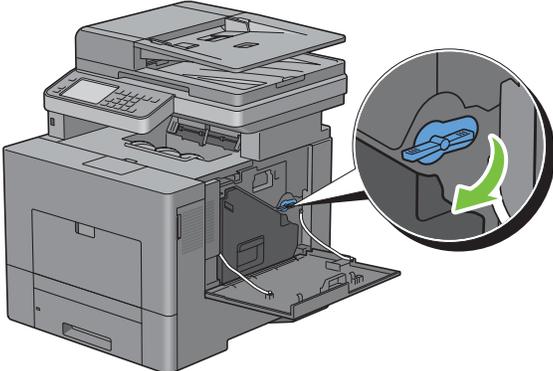
4 Close the right side cover.
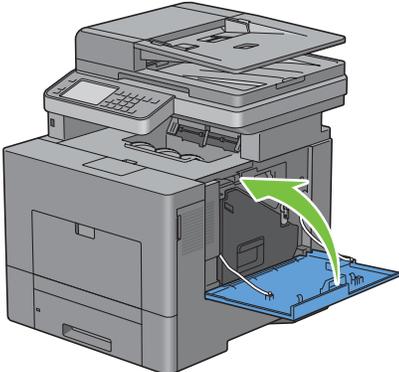
Cleaning Inside the Printer

Cleaning the CTD Sensor

Clean the Color Toner Density (CTD) sensor only when an alert for the CTD sensor is shown on the Status Monitor or touch panel screen.

1 Ensure that the printer is turned off.

2 Push down the latch to open the rear cover.
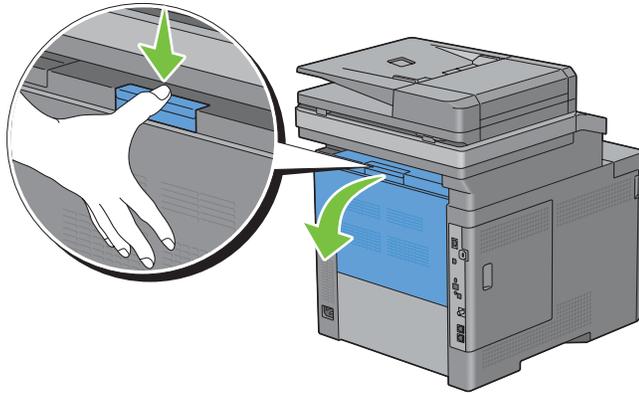
3 Open the right side cover.
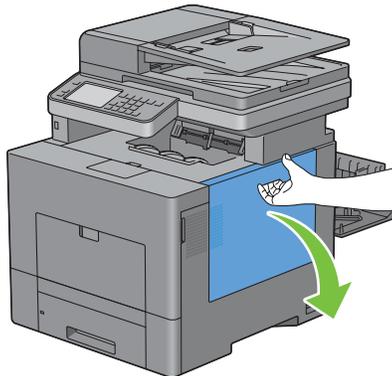
4 Turn the waste toner box lock lever 90-degrees counterclockwise to unlock the waste toner box.
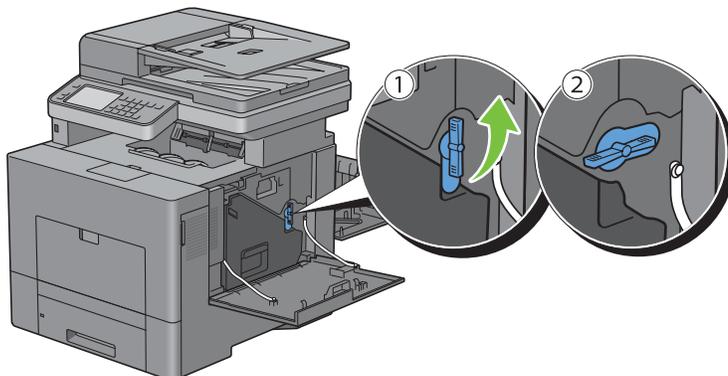
5 Grasp the handle on the waste toner box and pull it out making sure to hold it upright so that the waste toner does not spill out.
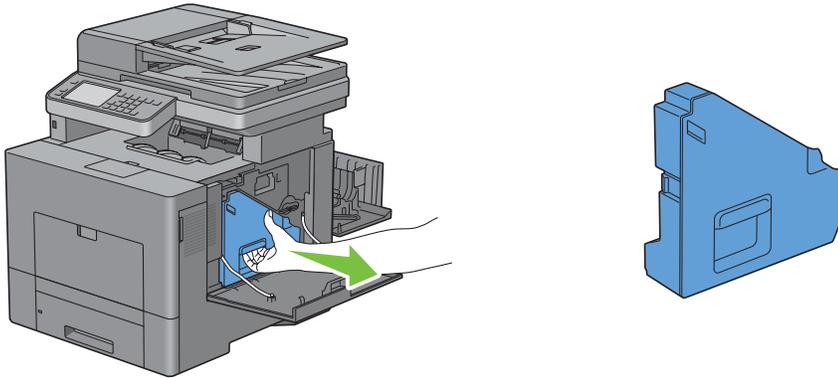
⚠ **CAUTION: Take care not to drop the waste toner box while you are removing it.**

⚠ **CAUTION: After removing the waste toner box, do not touch the parts shown in the illustration. Toner can dirty or stain your hands.**
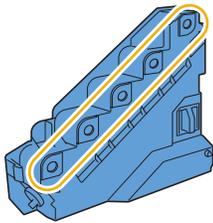
6 Stand the removed waste toner box upright on a level surface.
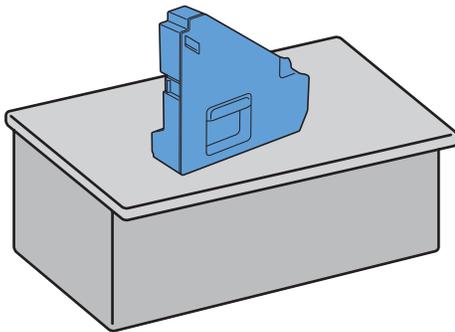
⚠ **WARNING: Never lay the waste toner box on its side as this may cause its malfunction or toner spills.**
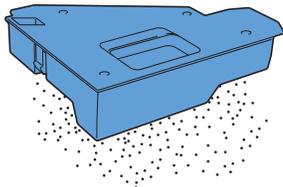
7 Lift the operator panel.
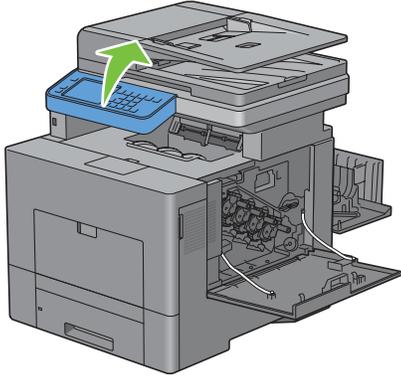
8 Open the top cover.
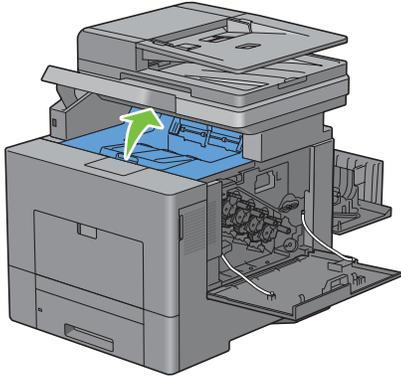
9 Put your fingers through the loops on both sides of the transfer belt unit, and then pull it out.
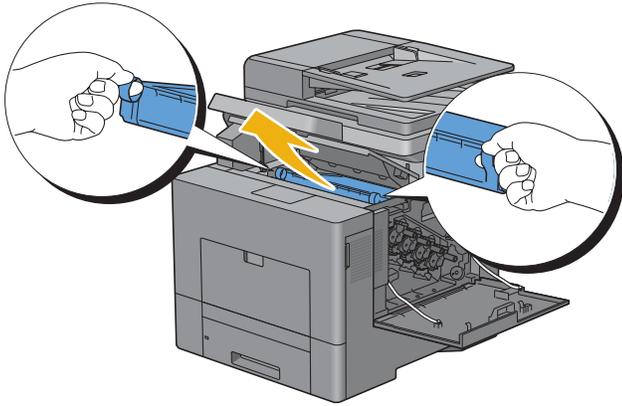
10 Clean the CTD sensor (as shown) with a clean, dry cotton swab.
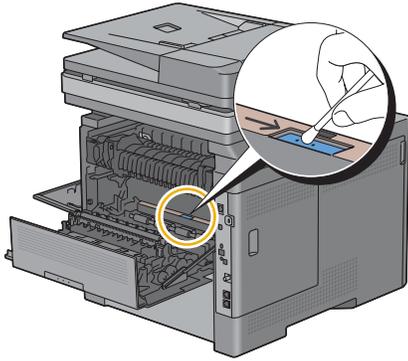
11 Make sure that the arrow marks on the transfer belt unit and the printer face each other, and then insert the unit into the printer until it clicks.
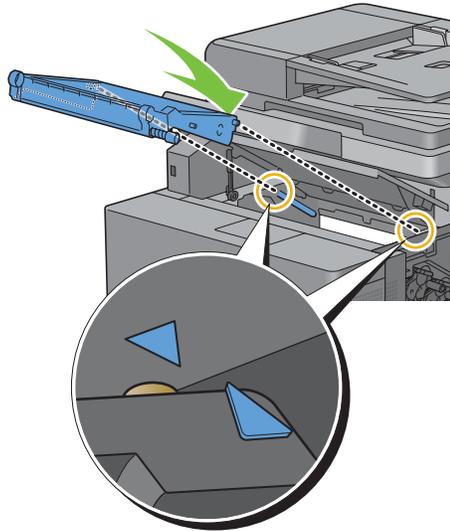
12 Close the top cover.
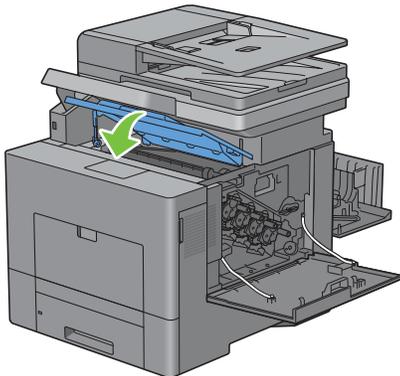
13 Lower the operator panel back in place.
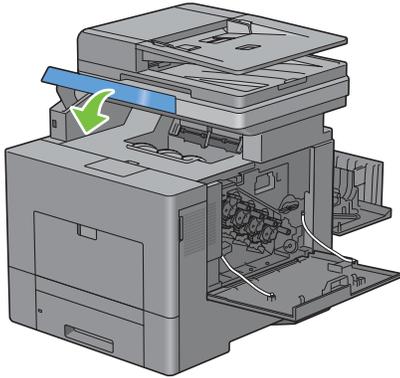
14 Reinsert the removed waste toner box.
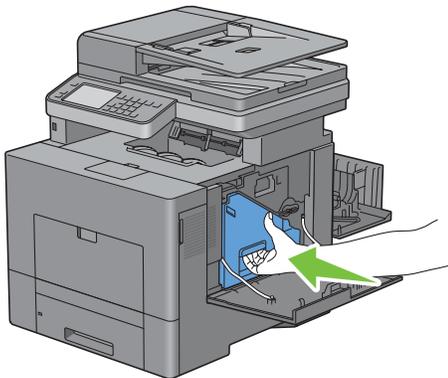
⚠ **CAUTION: If the waste toner box does not fit into place properly, make sure that the transfer belt unit is fully inserted.**

15 Turn the waste toner box lock lever 90-degrees clockwise to lock the waste toner box.
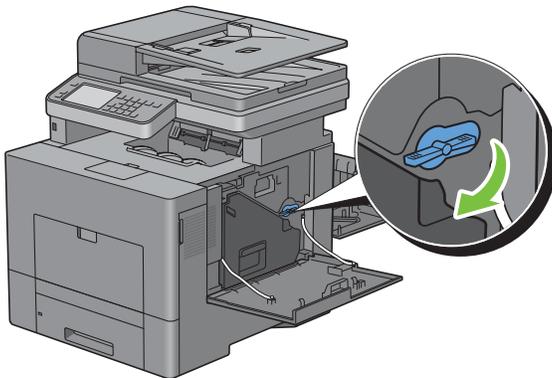
16 Close the right side cover.
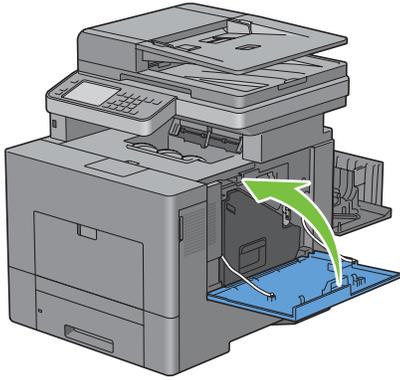
17 Close the rear cover.
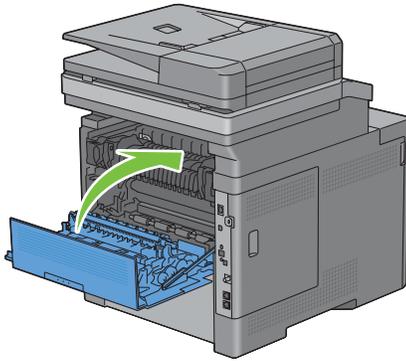
Cleaning the Raster Optical Scanner (ROS) Window

To prevent deterioration of printing quality due to stains inside the printer, clean inside the printer regularly by using the cleaning rod whenever you replace drum cartridges.

1 Open the right side cover.
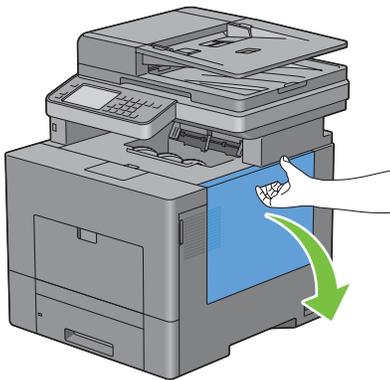
2 Turn the waste toner box lock lever 90-degrees counterclockwise to unlock the waste toner box.

3 Grasp the handle on the waste toner box and pull it out making sure to hold it upright so that the waste toner does not spill out.
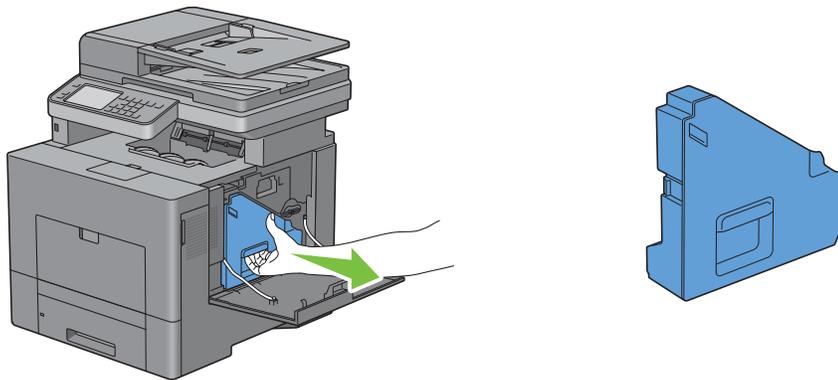
⚠ **CAUTION: Take care not to drop the waste toner box while you are removing it.**

⚠ **CAUTION: After removing the waste toner box, do not touch the parts shown in the illustration. Toner can dirty or stain your hands.**

4 Stand the removed waste toner box upright on a level surface.

⚠ **WARNING: Never lay the waste toner box on its side as this may cause its malfunction or toner spills.**
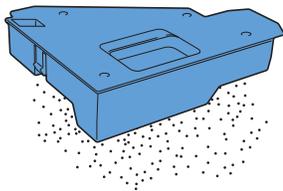
5 Remove the cleaning rod from inside the printer.
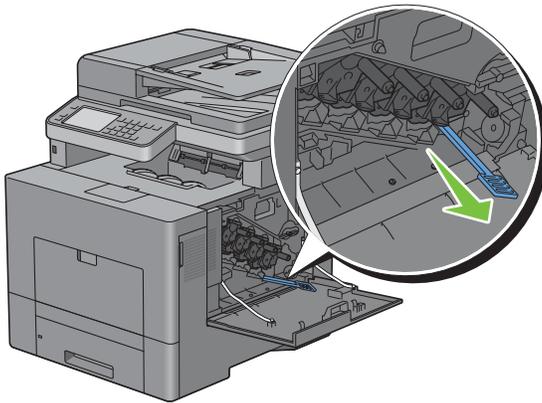
6 Insert the cleaning rod fully into one of the four holes until it clicks into the interior of the printer as illustrated below, and then pull it out.
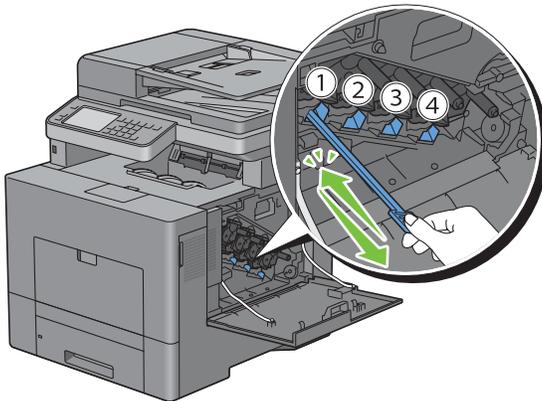
7 Repeat step 6 also on the other three holes. One time insertion is enough for each hole.

8 Return the cleaning rod to its original location.
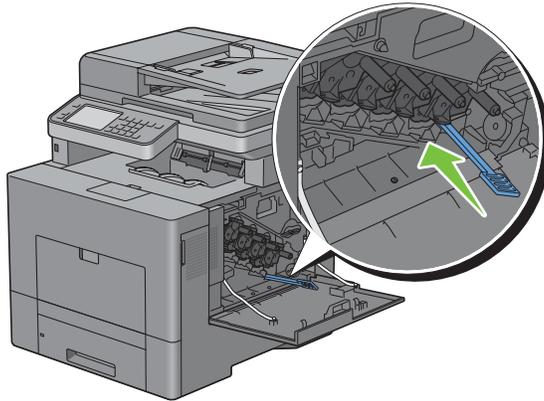
9 Reinsert the removed waste toner box.
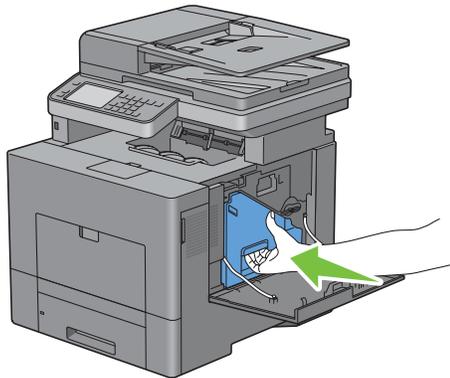
10 Turn the waste toner box lock lever 90-degrees clockwise to lock the waste toner box.
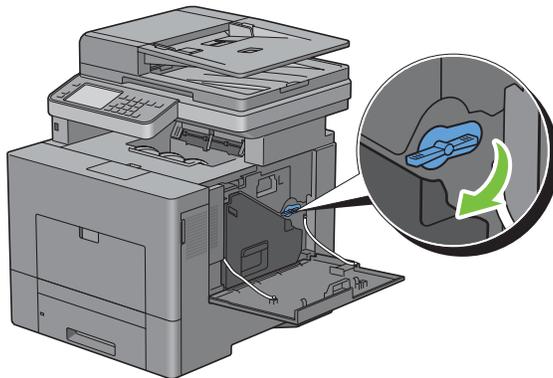
11 Close the right side cover.
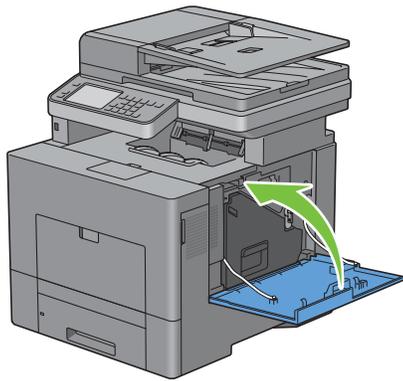
Cleaning the Scanner

Keeping the scanner clean helps ensure the best possible copies. It is recommended to clean the scanner at the start of each day and during the day, as needed.

1 Slightly dampen a soft lint-free cloth or paper towel with water.

2 Open the document cover.
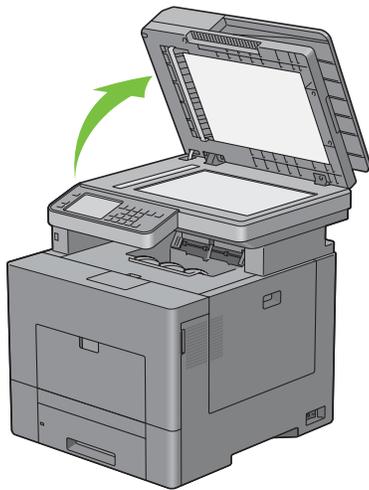
3 Wipe the surface of the document glass and DADF glass until it is clean and dry.
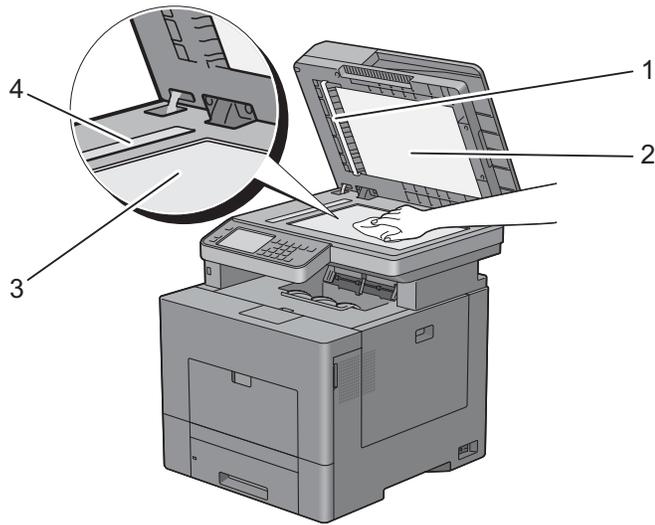
1	White Sheet
	NOTE: Handle with care.
2	White Document Cover
3	Document Glass
4	DADF Glass

4 Wipe the underside of the white document cover and white sheet until it is clean and dry.

5 Close the document cover.

Cleaning the DADF Feed Roller

Keeping the DADF feed roller clean helps ensure the best possible copies. It is recommended to clean the DADF feed roller at regular intervals.

1 Open the DADF cover.
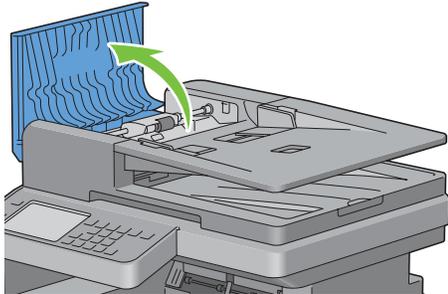
2 Wipe the DADF feed roller with a dry soft lint-free cloth or paper towel until it is clean.

If the DADF feed roller gets soiled with ink stains, paper from the DADF may also be soiled. In this case, slightly dampen a soft lint-free cloth or paper towel with a neutral detergent or water, and then remove the contamination from the DADF feed roller until it is clean and dry.
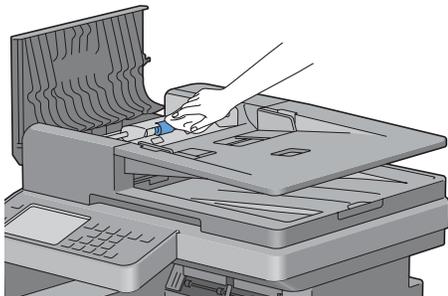
Adjusting Color Registration

To adjust the color registration when you first install the printer or after moving it to a new location, follow the procedure below.

- Printing the Color Registration Chart
- Determining Values
- Entering Values

📝 **NOTE:** If the `Panel Lock Control` is set to `Enable`, you need to enter the four digit password to enter the `Admin Settings` menu.

Printing the Color Registration Chart

When Using the Operator Panel

1 Press the ⓘ (**Information**) button.

2 Tap the `Tools` tab, and then tap `Admin Settings`.

3 Tap `Maintenance`.

4 Tap ▾ until `Color Reg Adjust` appears, and then tap `Color Reg Adjust`.

5 Tap `Color Regi Chart`.

6 Tap `Print`.

The color registration chart is printed.

When Using the Tool Box

1 Click **Start**→ **All Programs**→ **Dell Printers**→ **Dell C2665dnf Color Laser Multifunction Printer** → **Tool Box**.

✎ **NOTE:** For details about starting the **Tool Box**, see "Starting the Tool Box."

The **Tool Box** opens.

2 Click the **Printer Maintenance** tab.

3 Select **Service Tools** from the list at the left side of the page.

The **Service Tools** page is displayed.

4 Click **Start** next to **Print Color Regi Chart** under **Color Registration Adjustments**.

The color registration chart is printed.

Determining Values

On the color registration chart, there are two types of charts: Chart 1 (fast scan) and Chart 2 (slow scan).

Chart 1 (fast scan)
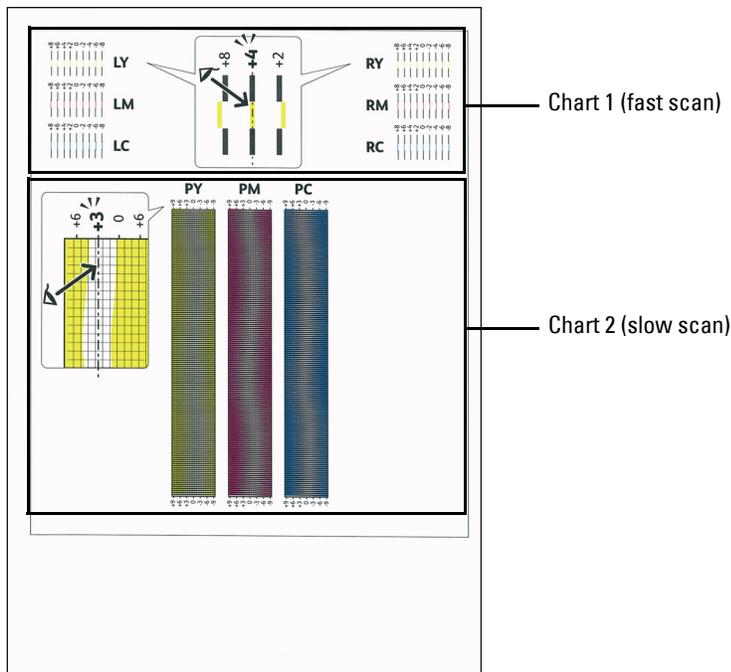
Chart 2 (slow scan)

The Chart 1 is used to adjust the color registration for the fast scan direction, which is vertical to paper feed direction. The Chart 2 is used to adjust the color registration for the slow scan direction, which is horizontal to paper feed direction.

The following sections explain how to determine the adjustment values for the fast scan and the slow scan using Chart 1 and Chart 2.

Fast Scan

On the Chart 1 of the color registration chart, find the straightest lines where the two black lines and the colored line are most closely aligned for each color (**LY**, **LM**, **LC**, **RY**, **RM**, and **RC**). If you find the straightest line, make a note of the value (-8 to +8) indicated by the straightest line for each color.

When the value is 0 for each color, you do not need to adjust the color registration for the fast scan.

When the value is not 0, enter the value using the procedure in "Entering Values."

Straightest line
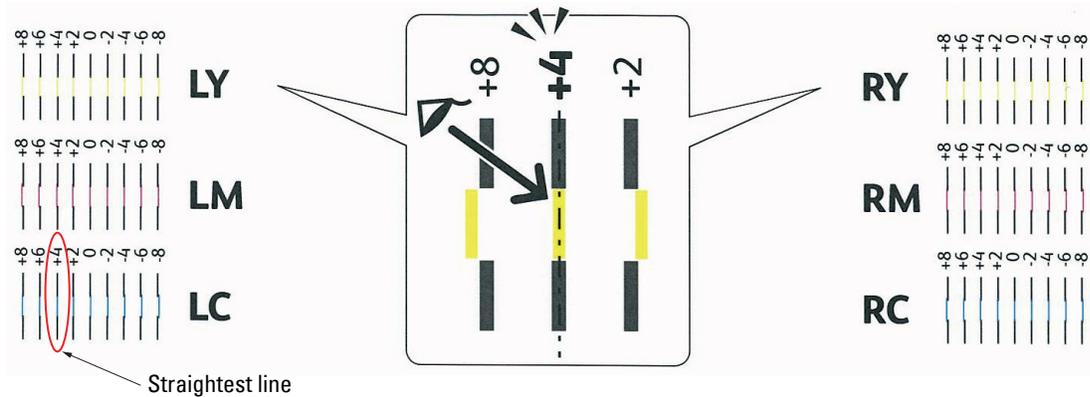
✏️ **NOTE:** If it is difficult to choose only one value, as in the case that there seem to be two values closest to a straight line, take the value between the two. For example, in the figure above, -6 and -8 are the values closest to a straight line, so you would enter the value -7.

Slow Scan

On the Chart 2 of the color registration chart, find the medium line within the range of white area for each color pattern (**PY**, **PM**, and **PC**). If you find the medium line, make a note of the value (-9 to +9) indicated by the medium line for each color.

When the value is 0 for each color, you do not need to adjust the color registration for the slow scan.

When the value is not 0, enter the value using the procedure in "Entering Values."

Lattice pattern
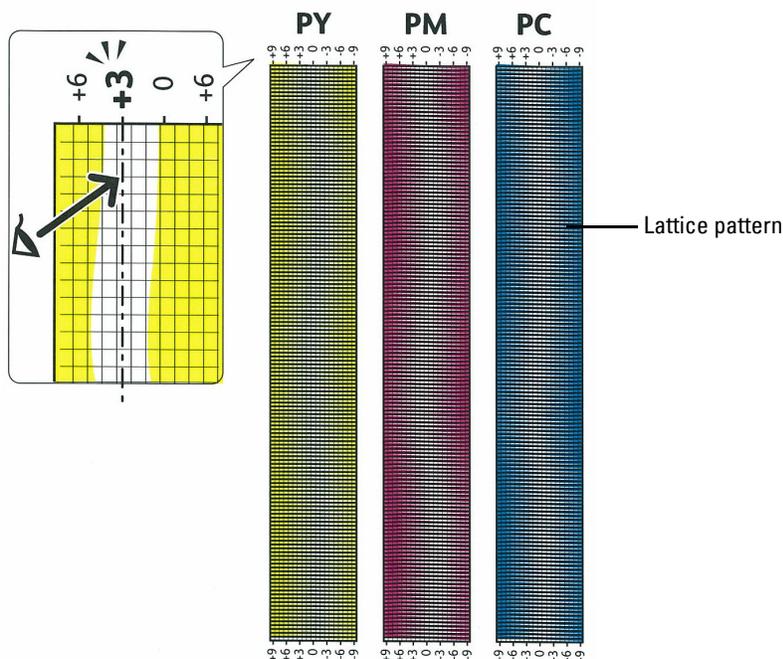
Entering Values

When Using the Operator Panel

Using the operator panel, enter the values found in the color registration chart to make adjustments.

1 Press the ⓘ (**Information**) button.

2 Tap the `Tools` tab, and then tap `Admin Settings`.

3 Tap `Maintenance`.

4 Tap ▾ until `Color Reg Adjust` appears, and then tap `Color Reg Adjust`.

5 Tap `Enter Number`.

6 Tap – or + to specify the values for left colors (`LY`, `LM`, and `LC`), and then tap `Next`.

7 Tap – or + to specify the values for right colors (`RY`, `RM`, and `RC`), and then tap `Next`.

8 Tap – or + to specify the values for process colors (`PY`, `PM`, and `PC`), and then tap `OK`.

✐ **NOTE:** The registration values are always shown as 0 the next time you enter the menu.

9 Tap `Color Regi Chart`.

10 Tap `Print`.

The color registration chart with the new values is printed.

If the straightest line is not at the value of 0, adjust the values again. Checking the charts before and after the adjustments will help you to determine the values to enter.

When Using the Tool Box

Using the **Tool Box**, enter the values that you found in the color registration chart to make adjustments.

1 Click **Start**→ **All Programs**→ **Dell Printers**→ **Dell C2665dnf Color Laser Multifunction Printer**→ **Tool Box**.

✐ **NOTE:** For details about starting the **Tool Box**, see "Starting the Tool Box."

The **Tool Box** opens.

2 Click the **Printer Maintenance** tab.

3 Select **Service Tools** from the list at the left side of the page.

The **Service Tools** page is displayed.

4 Specify each value for process, left, and right colors in **Enter Number** under **Color Registration Adjustments**, and then click **Apply New Settings**.

5 Click **Start** next to **Print Color Regi Chart** under **Color Registration Adjustments**.

The color registration chart is printed with the new values.

6 Adjust till all straight lines are at the value of 0. Show image of before and after adjustment will help.

After printing the color registration chart, do not turn off the printer until the printer motor has stopped running.

✐ **NOTE:** If 0 is not next to the straightest lines, determine the values and adjust the printer again.

Removing Options

If the printer location needs to change or the printer and print media handling options need to be shipped to a new location, all print media handling options must be removed from the printer. For shipping, pack the printer and print media handling options securely to avoid damage.

Removing the Optional 550-Sheet Feeder

⚠ **WARNING: When you remove the optional 550-sheet feeder (Tray2), be sure to turn off the printer, unplug the power cable, and disconnect all cables from the back of the printer before starting these tasks.**

1 Ensure that the printer is turned off, and then disconnect all cables from the back of the printer.

2 Pull the tray1 out of the printer about 200 mm.
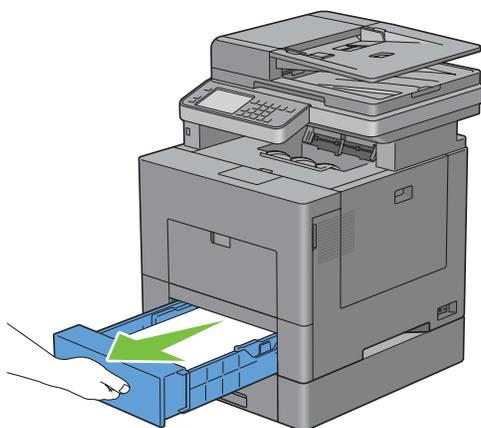
3 Hold tray1 with both hands, and remove it from the printer.
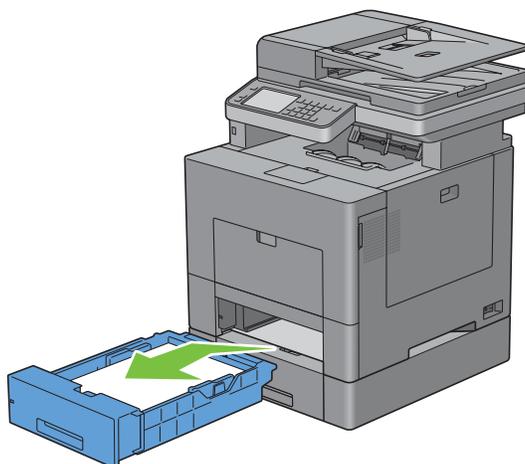
4 Remove the two screws joining the printer and the optional 550-sheet feeder by unscrewing them with a coin or similar object.
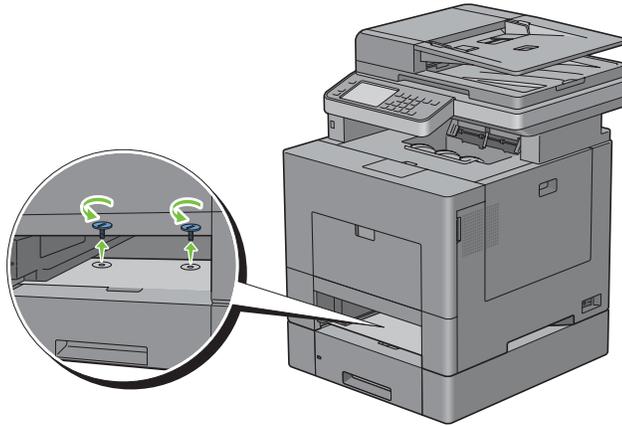
5 Gently lift the printer off the optional 550-sheet feeder, and place it on a level surface.

⚠ **WARNING: Two people are required to lift the printer.**
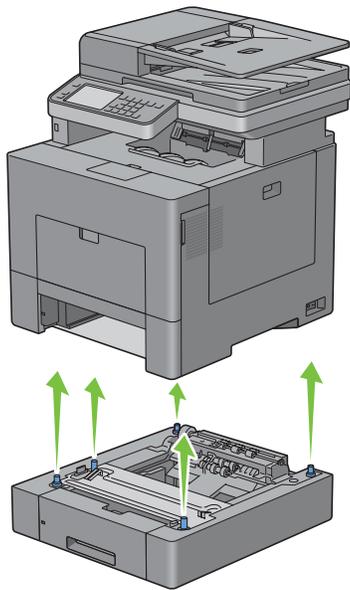
6 Insert the tray1 into the printer, and push until it stops.
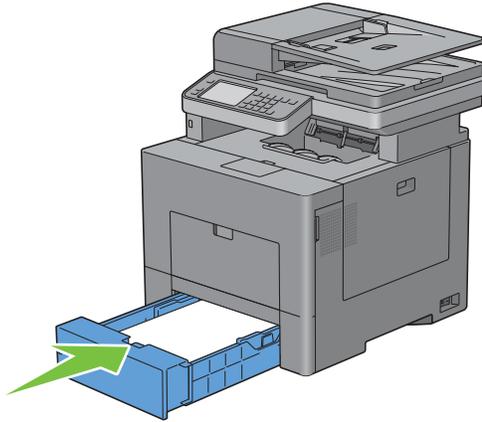
⚠ **CAUTION: Do not use excessive force on the tray. Doing so could damage the tray or the inside of the printer.**

7 Re-connect all cables into the back of the printer and turn on the printer.

Removing the Optional Wireless Adapter

⚠️ **WARNING: When you remove the optional wireless adapter, be sure to turn off the printer, unplug the power cable, and disconnect all cables from the back of the printer before starting these tasks.**

1 Ensure that the printer is turned off.

2 Turn the screw on the left side cover counterclockwise to remove it.
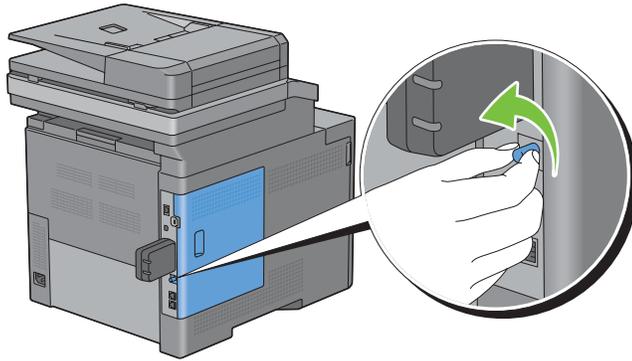
3 Slide the left side cover towards the back of the printer.
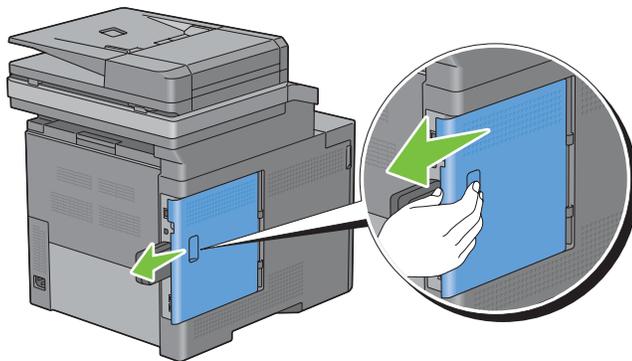
4 Open the left side cover completely.
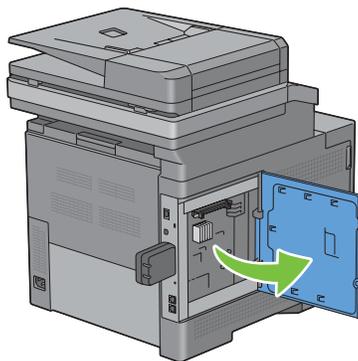
5 Remove the wireless adapter from the printer by releasing the adapter's hook while pushing the wireless adapter towards the front of the printer.
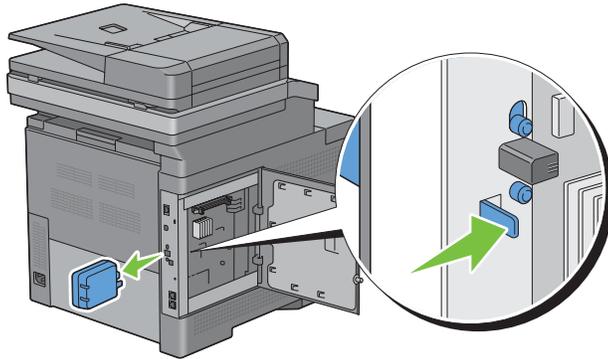
6 Close the left side cover, and then slide it towards the front of the printer.
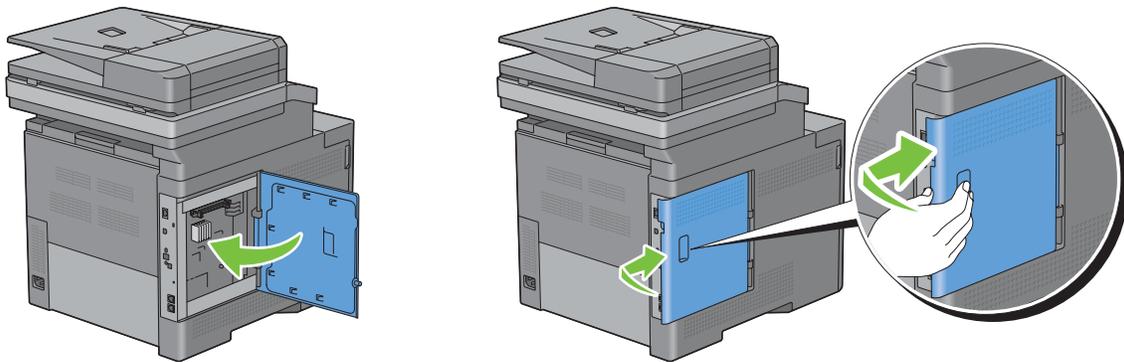
7 Turn the screw clockwise.
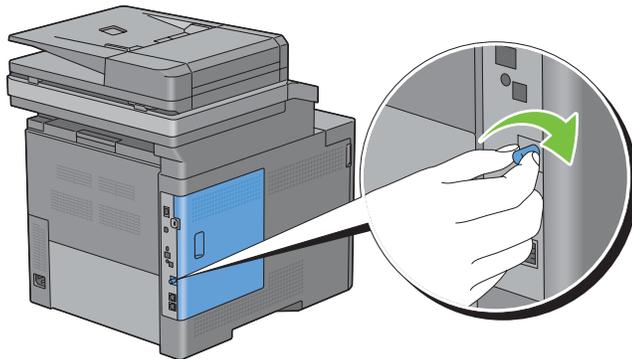
8 Turn on the printer.

Clearing Jams

Careful selection of appropriate print media and proper loading allow you to avoid paper jams. See "Print Media Guidelines" for more information.

NOTE: Before buying large quantities of any print media, it is recommended to try a sample first.

Avoiding Jams

- Use only recommended print media. See "Print Media Guidelines" for more information.
- See "Loading Print Media in Tray1 and the Optional 550-Sheet Feeder" and "Loading Print Media in the MPF" to load print media properly.
- Do not overload the print media sources. Ensure that the print media stack height does not exceed the maximum height indicated by the load-line labels in the tray.
- Do not load wrinkled, creased, damp, or curled print media.
- Flex, fan, and straighten print media before you load it. If a jam occurs with print media, try feeding one sheet at a time through the multipurpose feeder (MPF).
- Do not use print media that you have cut or trimmed yourself.
- Do not mix print media sizes, weights, or types in the same print media source.
- Ensure that the recommended print side is face up when you insert the print media.
- Keep print media stored in an acceptable environment. For more information, see "Storing Print Media."
- Do not remove the feeding tray during a print job.
- Push tray1 or the optional 550-sheet feeder (tray2) in firmly after loading.
- Ensure that all cables that connect to the printer are correctly attached.
- Overtightening the guides may cause jams.
- Wipe the retard rollers in the tray or MPF with a cloth that is slightly dampened with water if jams caused by misfeeding paper occur frequently.

Identifying the Location of Paper Jams

⚠ **WARNING: Do not attempt to clear any jams using tools or instruments. This may permanently damage the printer.**

The following illustration shows where paper jams may occur along the print media path.
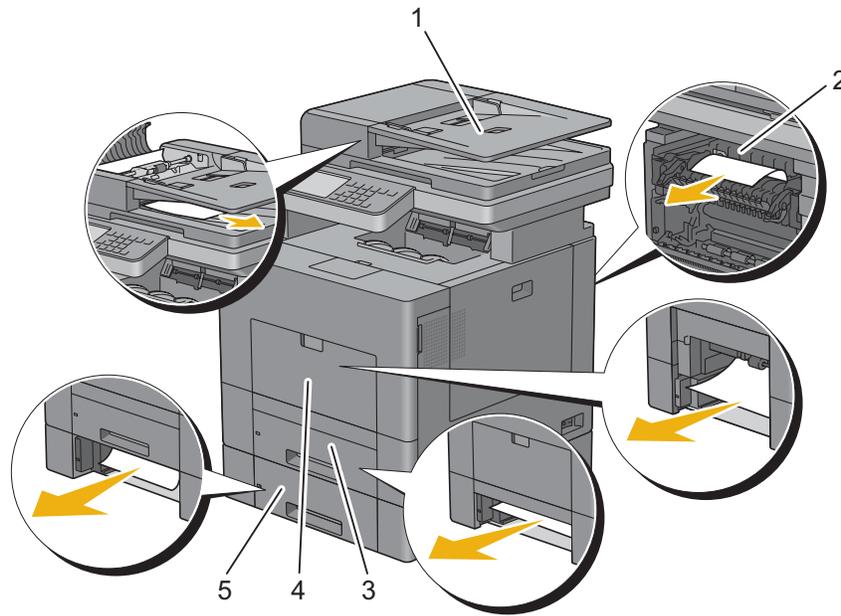
1	Duplex Automatic Document Feeder (DADF)
2	Fusing Unit
3	Tray1
4	MPF
5	Optional 550-Sheet Feeder

Clearing Paper Jams From the DADF

When a document jams while it passes through the DADF, remove the jam according to the following procedure.

> NOTE: To prevent document jams, use the document glass for thick, thin, or mixed documents.

1   Remove the remaining documents from the DADF.

   If the document is jammed in the paper feed area:

   a   Open the DADF cover.
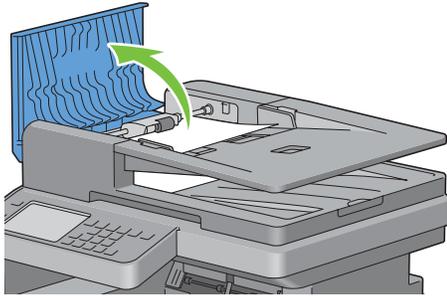
   b   Lift the release lever 90 degrees and remove the jammed document by carefully pulling it to the right.
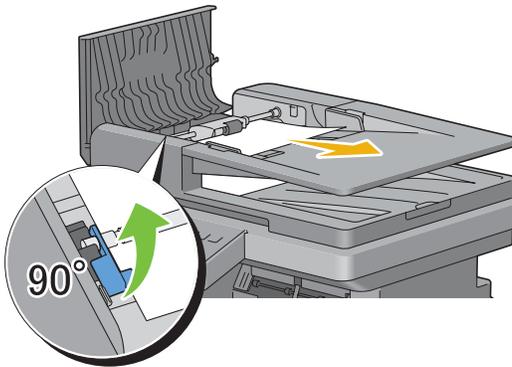
   If you find it difficult to pull the document:

c   Remove the DADF feed roller assembly and remove the document by gently pulling it straight up.
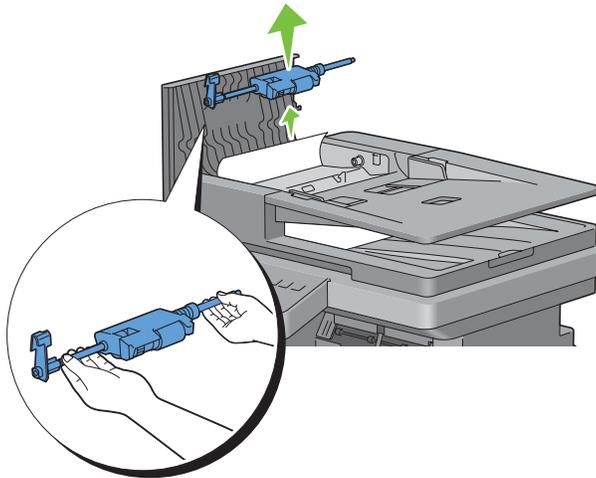
d   Insert the DADF feed roller assembly and press down the release lever.
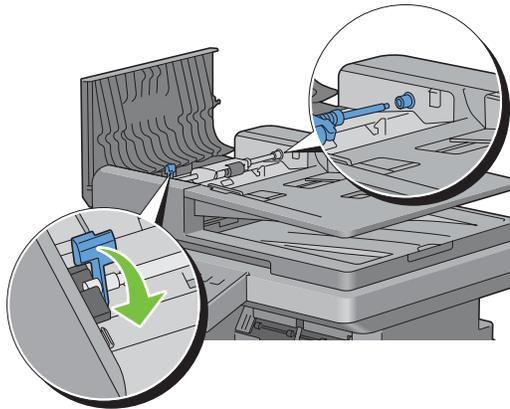
If the document is jammed in the paper exit area:

e   Remove the jammed document from the document output tray.
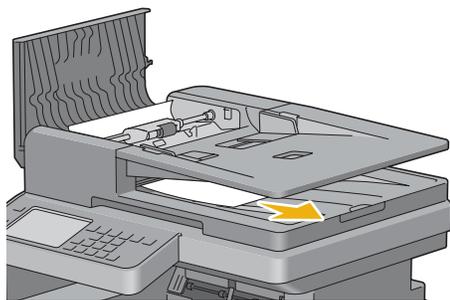
f Close the DADF cover, and then load the documents back into the DADF.
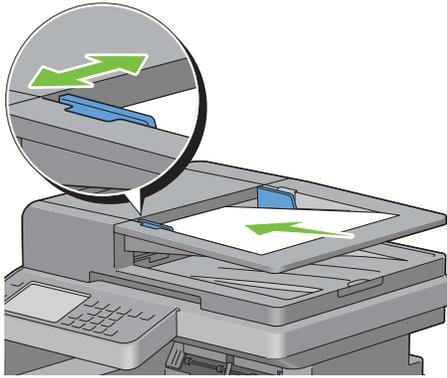
> 📝 **NOTE:** Ensure that you adjust the document guides before printing a Legal-size document.

2 If you cannot see the jammed document or the jammed document do not move when you pulled, open the document cover.

3 Remove the document from the white sheet by carefully pulling it to the right.

4 Close the document cover, and then load the documents back into the DADF.

5 Tap Start.

Clearing Paper Jams From the MPF

> 📝 **NOTE:** To resolve the error displayed on the touch panel, you must clear all print media from the print media path.

If error code: 050-112 appears:

1 Remove any paper loaded on the MPF
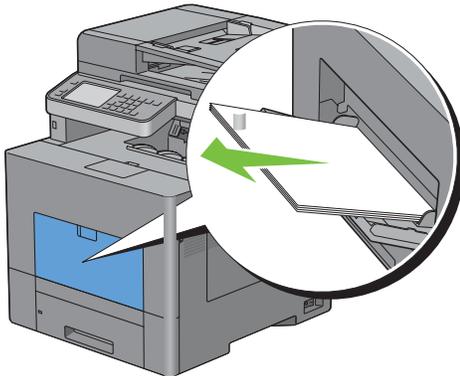
2 Grasp both sides of the MPF, and then pull it out of the printer.
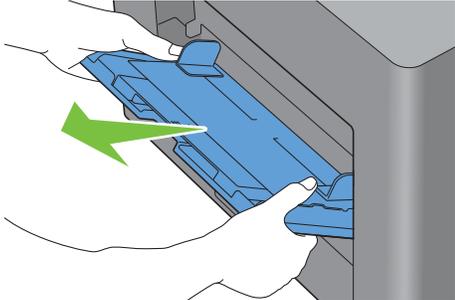
3 Pull tray1 out of the printer about 200 mm.
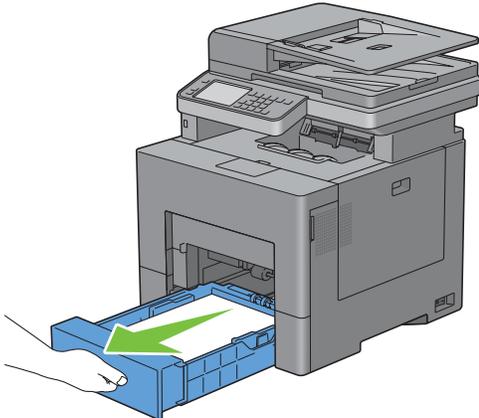
4 Hold tray1 with both hands, and remove it from the printer.
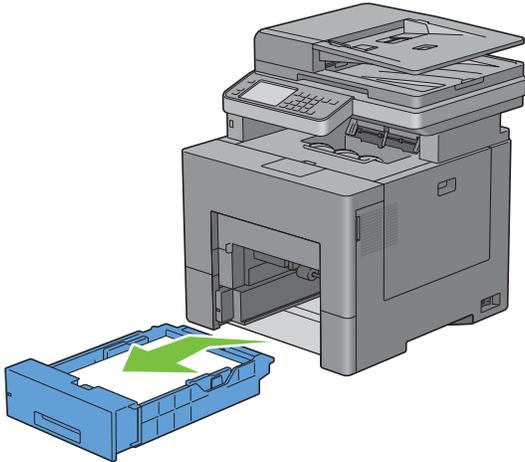
5 Remove the jammed paper.
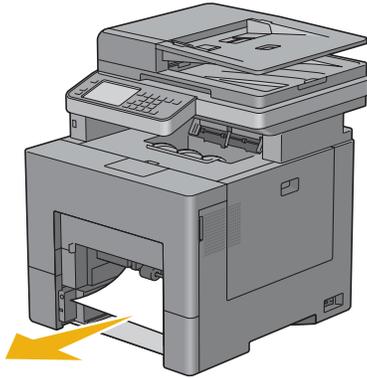
6 Insert tray1 into the printer, and push until it stops.
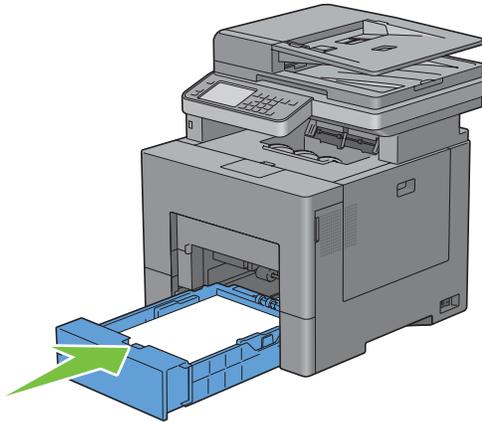
7 Insert the MPF into the printer.
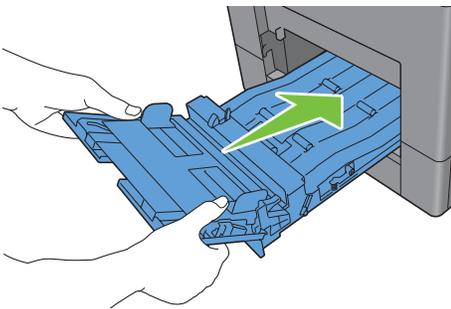
If error code: 050-129 appears:

Follow the instructions in "If error code: 050-129 appears:" to clear paper jams.

Clearing Paper Jams From Tray1

✎ **NOTE:** To resolve the error displayed on the touch panel, you must clear all print media from the print media path.

1 Pull tray1 out of the printer about 200 mm.
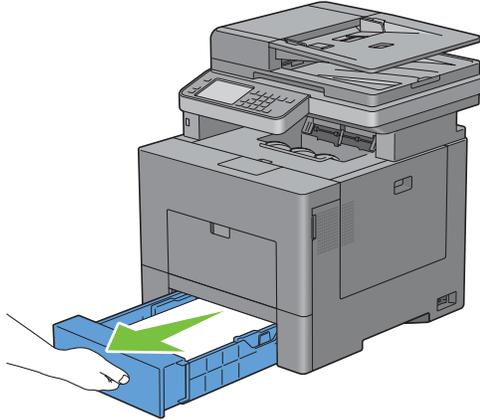
2 Hold tray1 with both hands, and remove it from the printer.
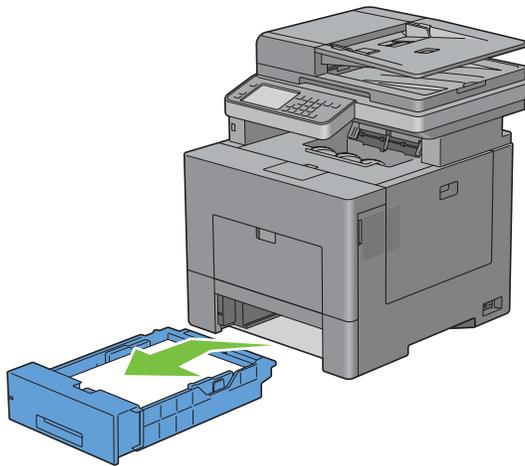
3 Remove the jammed paper.
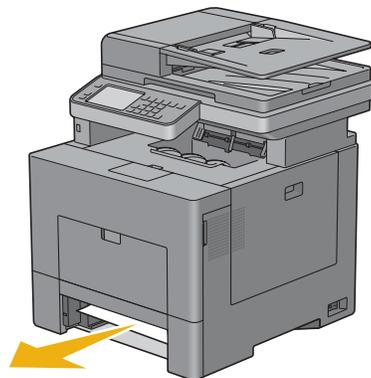
4 Insert tray1 into the printer, and push until it stops.
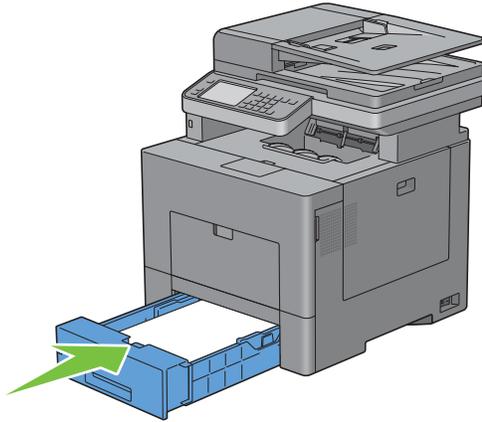
5 Tap Start.

Clearing Paper Jams From the Fusing Unit

✎ **NOTE:** To resolve the error displayed on the touch panel, you must clear all print media from the print media path.

If error code: 050-111 appears:

1 Push down the latch to open the rear cover.
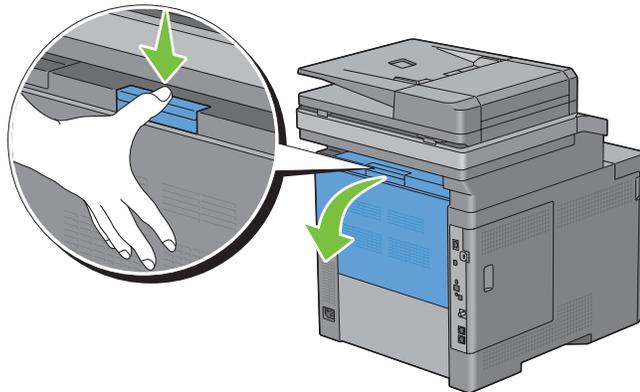
2 Lift the levers on both sides of the fusing unit.
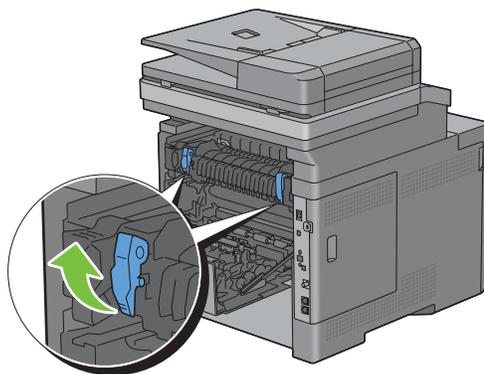
3 Hold and lower the tab to open the inner part.
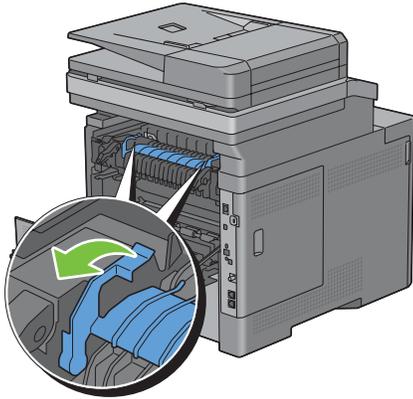
4 Remove the jammed paper.
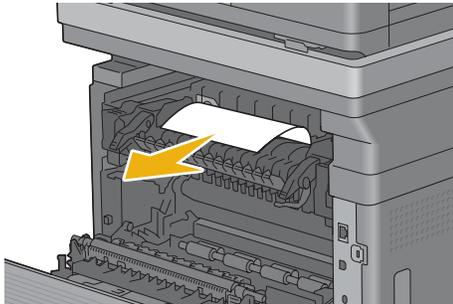
5 Replace the inner part.
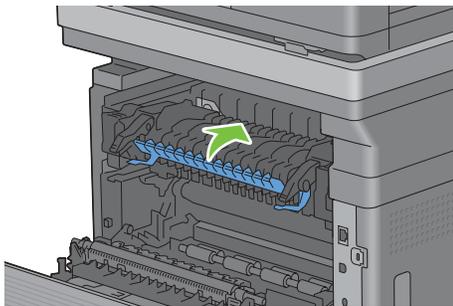
6 Press down the levers on both sides of the fusing unit, and then close the rear cover.
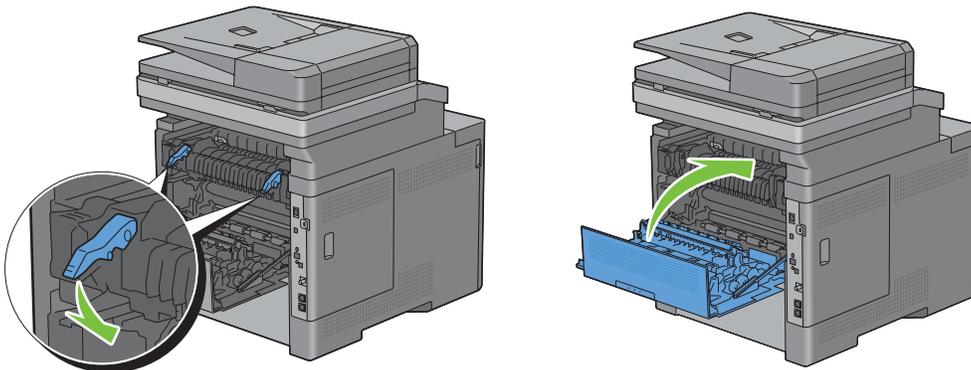
If error code: 050-129 appears:

1 Remove any paper loaded on the MPF
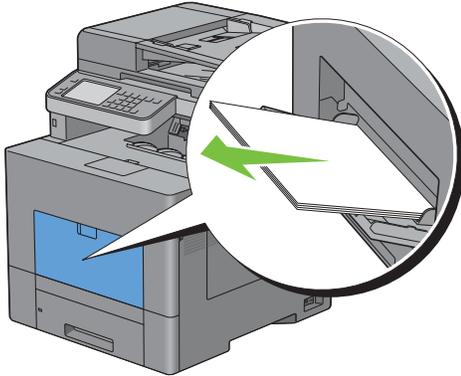
2 Grasp both sides of the MPF and then pull it out of the printer.
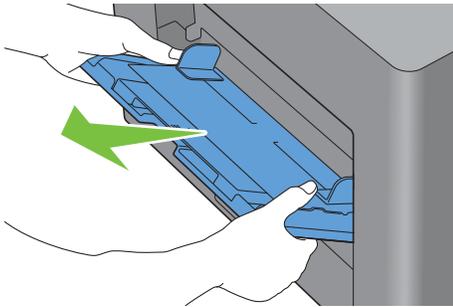
3 Pull tray1 out of the printer about 200 mm.
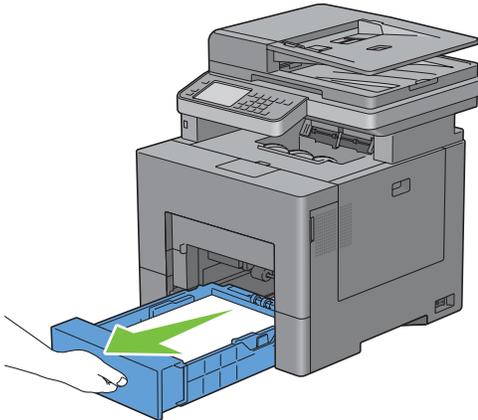
4 Hold tray1 with both hands, and remove it from the printer.
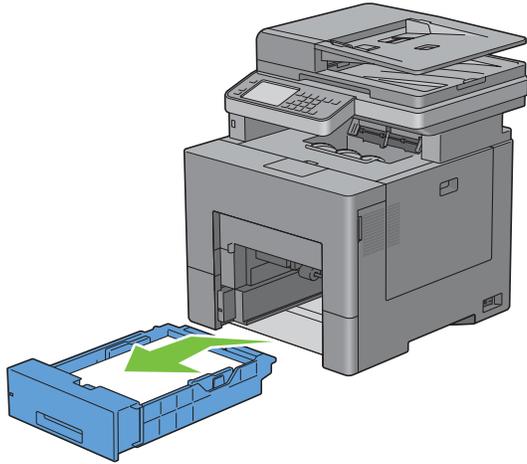
If you can see the jammed paper:

a Remove the jammed paper.
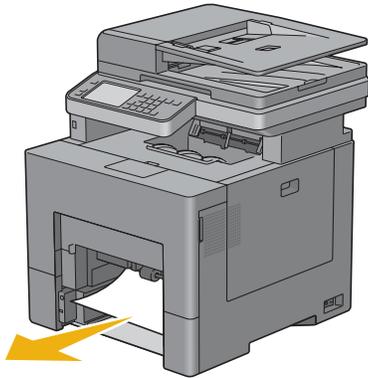
b Reinsert tray1 and the MPF into the printer.
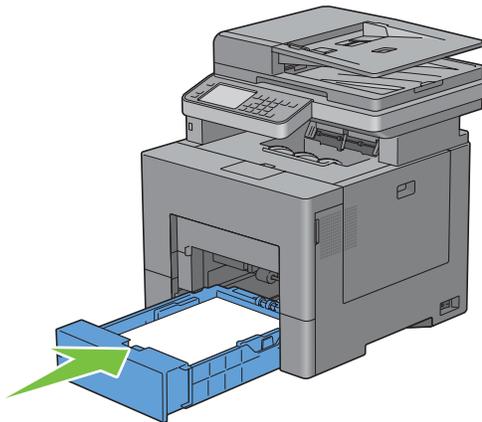
If you cannot see the jammed paper:

a Go to the next step.
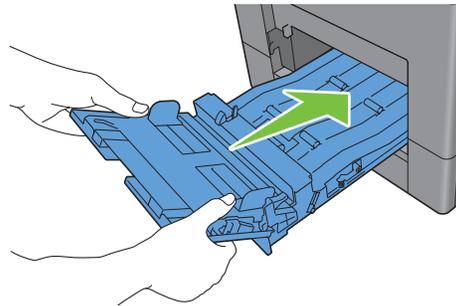
5 Push down the latch to open the rear cover.
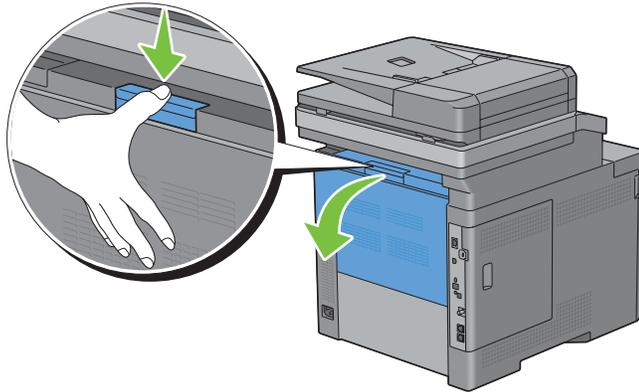
6 Lift the levers on both sides of the fusing unit.
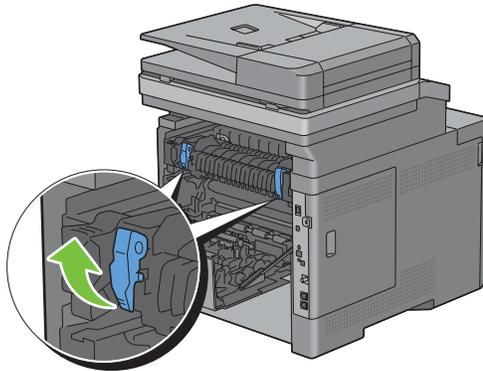
7 Hold and lower the tab to open the inner part.
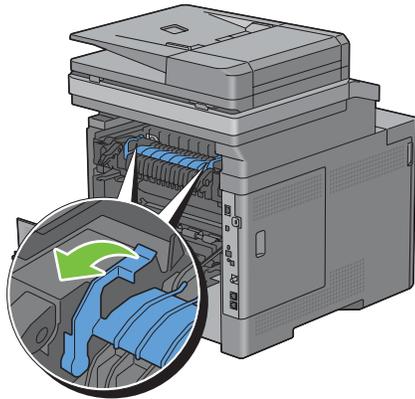
8 Remove the jammed paper.
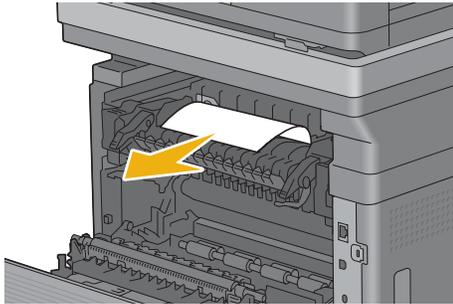
9 Replace the inner part.
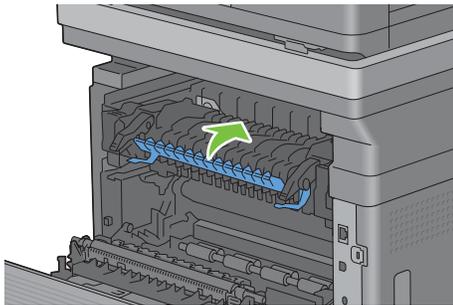
10 Press down the levers on both sides of the fusing unit, and then close the rear cover.
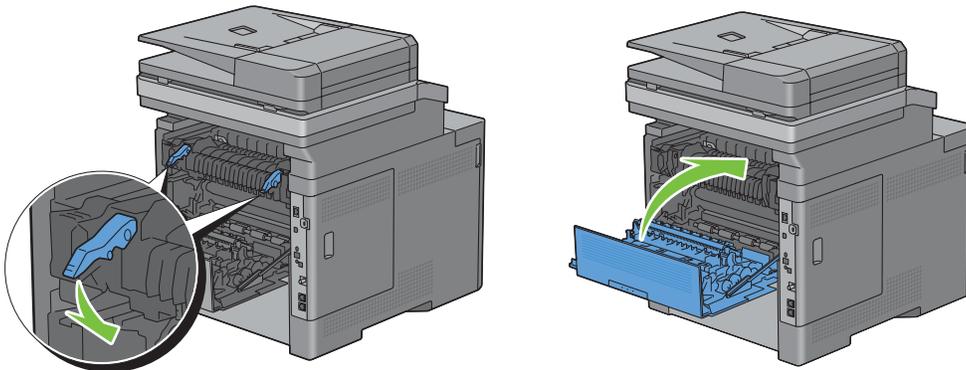
11 Insert tray1 into the printer, and push until it stops.
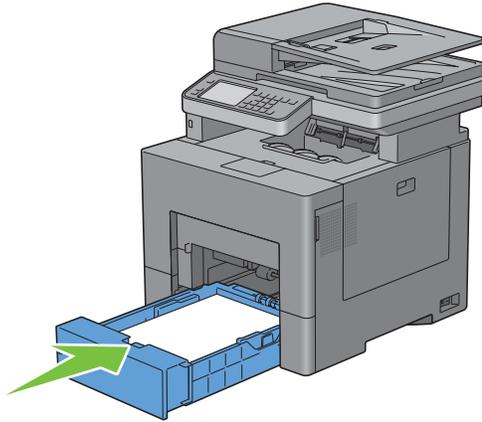
12 Insert the MPF into the printer.
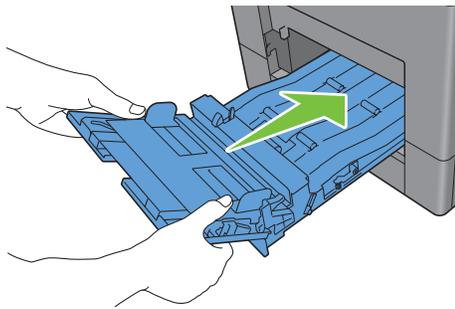
Clearing Paper Jams From the Optional 550-Sheet Feeder

✐ **NOTE:** To resolve the error displayed on the touch panel, you must clear all print media from the print media path.

1 Pull the optional 550-sheet feeder out of the printer about 200 mm.
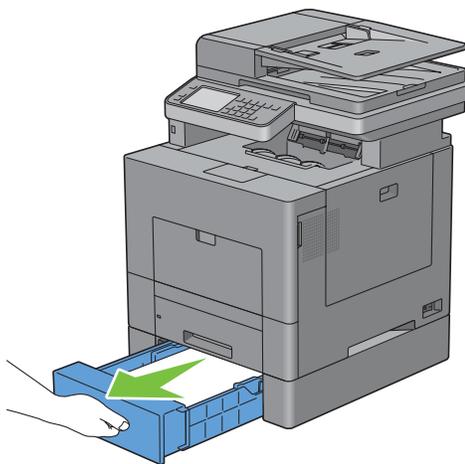
2 Hold the optional 550-sheet feeder with both hands, and remove it from the printer.
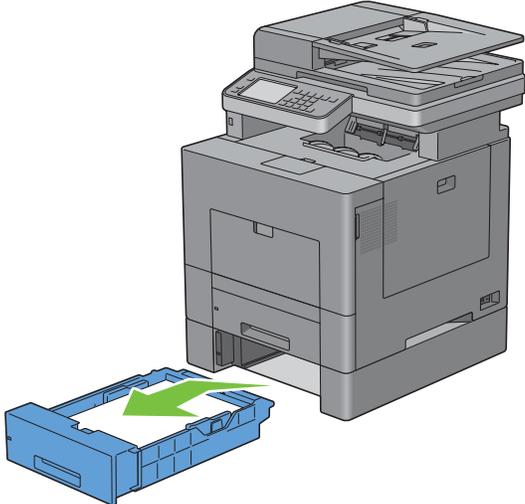
3 Remove the jammed paper.
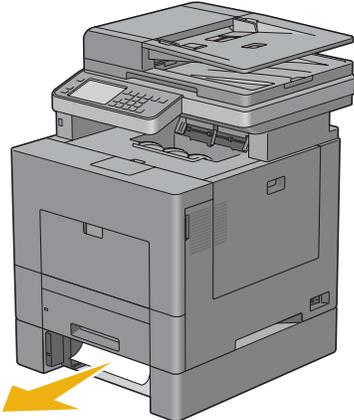
4 Insert the optional 550-sheet feeder into the printer, and push until it stops.
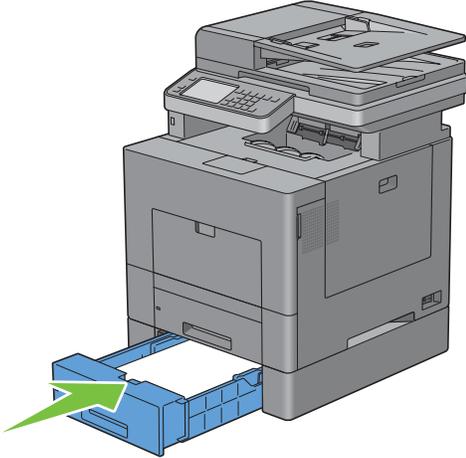
Troubleshooting

35

Troubleshooting Guide

Basic Printer Problems

Some printer problems can be easily resolved. If a problem occurs with your printer, check each of the following:

- The power cable is plugged into the printer and a properly grounded electrical outlet.
- The printer is turned on.
- The electrical outlet is not turned off at any switch or breaker.
- Other electrical equipment plugged into the outlet is working.
- All options are properly installed.

If you have checked all of the above and still have a problem, turn off the printer, wait for 10 seconds, and then turn on the printer. This often fixes the problem.

> ✐ **NOTE:** If error messages are displayed on the touch panel or on your computer screen, follow the on-screen instructions to resolve the printer problems. For details about error messages and error codes, see "Understanding Printer Messages."

Display Problems

Problem	Action
Menu settings changed from the operator panel have no effect.	Settings in the software program, the printer driver, or the printer utilities are overriding the settings made on the operator panel.

Printing Problems

> ✐ **NOTE:** If `Panel Lock Control` is set to `Enable`, you need to enter the four digit password to enter the `Admin Settings` menu.

Problem	Action
Job did not print or incorrect characters printed.	Ensure that the top menu appears on the touch panel before you send a job to print. Press the ⌂ (**Home**) button to return to the top menu.
	Ensure that the print media is loaded in the printer. Press the ⌂ (**Home**) button to return to the top menu.
	Verify that the printer is using the correct Page Description Language (PDL).
	Verify that you are using the correct printer driver.
	Ensure that the correct USB or Ethernet cable is securely connected to the printer.
	Verify that the correct print media size is selected.
	If you are using a print spooler, verify that the spooler has not stalled.
	Check the printer's interface from the `Admin Settings`.
	Determine the host interface you are using. Print a panel settings report to verify that the current interface settings are correct.

Problem	Action
Print media misfeeds or multiple feeds occur.	Ensure that the print media you are using meets the specifications for your printer. See "Supported Paper Types" for more information.
	Fan the print media before loading it.
	Ensure that the print media is loaded correctly.
	Ensure that the width and length guides of the print media sources are adjusted correctly.
	Ensure that tray1, the optional 550-sheet feeder (tray2), or the multi-purpose feeder (MPF) unit is securely inserted.
	Do not overload tray1, the optional 550-sheet feeder, or the MPF.
	Do not force print media into the MPF when you load it; otherwise, it may skew or buckle.
	Ensure that the print media is not curled.
	Face the recommended print side up. See "Loading Print Media in Tray1 and the Optional 550-Sheet Feeder" for more information.
	Turn the print media over or around and try printing again to see if feeding improves.
	Do not mix print media types.
	Do not mix reams of print media.
	Remove the top and bottom curled sheets of a ream before loading the print media.
	Load print media only when tray1, the optional 550-sheet feeder, or the MPF is empty.
	Wipe the retard rollers in tray1, the optional 550-sheet feeder, or the MPF with a cloth moistened with water.
The envelope is creased after printed.	Make sure that the envelope is loaded in the MPF as instructed in "Loading an Envelope in the MPF."
Page breaks in unexpected places.	Increase the value for **Time-Out** using the operator panel, the **Tool Box**, or **Dell™ Printer Configuration Web Tool**.
Print media does not stack neatly in the output tray.	Turn the print media stack over in tray1 or the MPF.
Printing takes time when printing from the Dell Document Hub.	Set `Print Mode` to `High Speed` in the printer menu. See "Print Mode" for more information.
Cannot print from tray1 or the optional 550-sheet feeder because the print media in tray1 or the optional 550-sheet feeder is curled.	Load the print media into the MPF.

Print Quality Problems

📝 **NOTE:** Some of the following procedures that use the **Tool Box** can also be performed using the operator panel or **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**. For information on how to use the operator panel and **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**, see "Understanding the Printer Menus" and "Dell™ Printer Configuration Web Tool."

- The output is too light
- Toner smears or print comes off
- Random spots/Blurred images
- The entire output is blank

- Streaks appear on the output
- Part or the entire output is black
- Pitched color dots
- Vertical blanks
- Ghosting
- Light-induced fatigue
- Fog
- Bead-Carry-Out (BCO)
- Jagged characters
- Banding
- Auger mark
- Wrinkled/Stained paper
- Damage on the leading edge of paper

The output is too light

Action		Yes	No

1	The toner cartridges may be low or need to be replaced. Confirm the amount of toner left in each toner cartridge.
	   a Check the toner level in the **Status** tab in the Status Monitor.
	   b Replace the toner cartridges as necessary.
	
	Does this solve your problem?
		The task is complete.	Go to action 2.

2	If you are using non-Dell brand toner cartridges, enable the **Non-Dell Toner** option.
	   a Launch the **Tool Box**, and click **Service Tools** on the **Printer Maintenance** tab.
	   b Ensure that the **On** check box under **Non-Dell Toner** is selected.
	
	Does this solve your problem?
		The task is complete.	Go to action 3.

3	Disable the **Toner Saver** in the printer driver. **a** On the **Others** tab, ensure that **Off** is selected in the **Toner Saver** drop-down menu. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 4.

Action		Yes	No
4	The print media surface may be uneven. Try changing the **Paper Type** setting in the printer driver. For example, change the plain paper to thick. **a** On the **General** tab, change the **Paper Type** setting. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 5.
5	Verify that the correct print media is being used. See "Supported Paper Types." If not, use the print media recommended for the printer. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 6.

6	Clean inside the printer by using the cleaning rod. See "Cleaning the Raster Optical Scanner (ROS) Window."
	   a After the cleaning is completed, click **Chart Print** on the **Diagnosis** tab.
	   b Click **Pitch Configuration Chart**.
	   The Pitch Configuration Chart is printed.
	Does this solve your problem?
		The task is complete.	Go to action 7.

7	Replace the drum cartridges.
	   a Replace the drum cartridges. See "Replacing the Drum Cartridges."
	   b After you replace the drum cartridges, click **Chart Print** on the **Diagnosis** tab.
	   c Click **4 Colors Configuration Chart**.
	   The 4 Colors Configuration Chart is printed.
	Does this solve your problem?
		The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

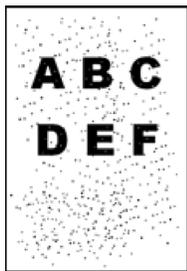## Toner smears or print comes off
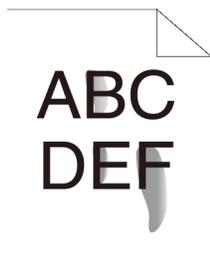
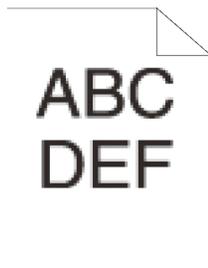| Action		Yes	No
1	The print media surface may be uneven. Try changing the **Paper Type** setting in the printer driver. For example, change the plain paper to thick. **a** On the **General** tab, change the **Paper Type** setting. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 2.
2	Verify that the correct print media is being used. See "Supported Paper Types." If not, use the print media recommended for the printer. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 3.

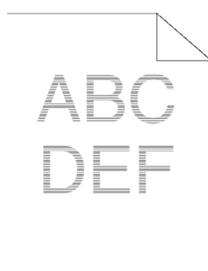| Action	Yes	No

3 Replace the drum cartridges.
    a Replace the drum cartridges. See "Replacing the Drum Cartridges."
    b After you replace the drum cartridges, test print your document again.
 	
Does this solve your problem?
	The task is complete.	Go to action 4.

4 Replace the fusing unit.
    a Replace the fusing unit. See "Replacing the Fusing Unit."
    b After you replace the fusing unit, click **Chart Print** on the **Diagnosis** tab.
    c Click **Pitch Configuration Chart**.
 	
      The Pitch Configuration Chart is printed.
 	
Does this solve your problem?
	The task is complete.	Go to action 5.

5 Replace the transfer belt unit, the 2nd Belt Transfer Roller (2nd BTR), and the retard roller.
    a Replace the transfer belt unit, the 2nd BTR, and the retard roller. See "Replacing the Transfer Belt Unit, the 2nd Belt Transfer Roller (2nd BTR), and the Retard Roller."
    b After you replace the transfer belt unit, the 2nd BTR, and the retard roller, click **Chart Print** on the **Diagnosis** tab.
    c Click **Pitch Configuration Chart**.
 	
    The Pitch Configuration Chart is printed.
 	
Does this solve your problem?
	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

Random spots/Blurred images
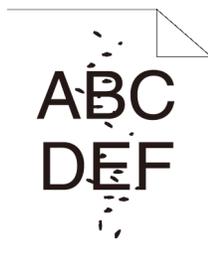
Action	Yes	No
1 Ensure that the toner cartridges are installed correctly. See "Installing a Toner Cartridge." Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 2.
2 Ensure that the drum cartridges are installed correctly. See "Installing a Drum Cartridge." Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 3.

Action	Yes	No

3   Replace the drum cartridges.
    a Replace the drum cartridges. See "Replacing the Drum Cartridges."
    b After you replace the drum cartridges, click **Chart Print** on the **Diagnosis** tab.
    c Click **Pitch Configuration Chart**.
    The Pitch Configuration Chart is printed.
  Does this solve your problem?
	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

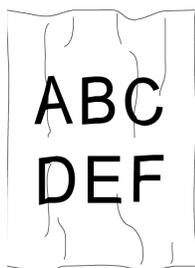## The entire output is blank

Action	Yes	No

1   The toner cartridges may be low or need to be replaced. Confirm the amount of toner left in each toner cartridge.
    a Check the toner level in the **Status** tab in the Status Monitor.
    b Replace the toner cartridges as necessary.
  Does this solve your problem?
	The task is complete.	Go to action 2.

2   If you are using non-Dell brand toner cartridges, enable the **Non-Dell Toner** option.
    a Launch the **Tool Box**, and click **Service Tools** on the **Printer Maintenance** tab.
    b Ensure that the **On** check box under **Non-Dell Toner** is selected.
  Does this solve your problem?
	The task is complete.	Go to action 3.

3   Disable the **Toner Saver** in the printer driver.
    a On the **Others** tab, ensure that **Off** is selected in the **Toner Saver** drop-down menu.
  Does this solve your problem?
	The task is complete.	Go to action 4.

4   The print media surface may be uneven. Try changing the **Paper Type** setting in the printer driver. For example, change the plain paper to thick.
    a On the **General** tab, change the **Paper Type** setting.
  Does this solve your problem?
	The task is complete.	Go to action 5.

5 Verify that the correct print media is being used. See "Supported Paper Types." If not, use the print media recommended for the printer. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 6.

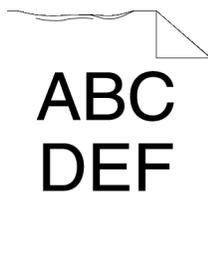| Action		Yes	No
6	Replace the drum cartridges. **a** Replace the drum cartridges. See "Replacing the Drum Cartridges." **b** After you replace the drum cartridges, click **Chart Print** on the **Diagnosis** tab. **c** Click **4 Colors Configuration Chart**. The 4 Colors Configuration Chart is printed. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

Streaks appear on the output

Action		Yes	No
1	The toner cartridges may be low or need to be replaced. Confirm the amount of toner left in each toner cartridge. **a** Check the toner level in the **Status** tab in the Status Monitor. **b** Replace the toner cartridges as necessary. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 2.
2	If you are using non-Dell brand toner cartridges, enable the **Non-Dell Toner** option. **a** Launch the **Tool Box**, and click **Service Tools** on the **Printer Maintenance** tab. **b** Ensure that the **On** check box under **Non-Dell Toner** is selected. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 3.
3	Replace the drum cartridges. **a** Replace the drum cartridges. See "Replacing the Drum Cartridges." **b** After you replace the drum cartridges, click **Chart Print** on the **Diagnosis** tab. **c** Click **4 Colors Configuration Chart**. The 4 Colors Configuration Chart is printed. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

Part or the entire output is black

Action		Yes	No
1	Ensure that the drum cartridges are installed correctly. See "Installing a Drum Cartridge." Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 2.
2	Ensure **Output Color** is set to **Color** in the printer driver. **a** On the **Graphics** tab, ensure that **Output Color** is set to **Color**. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 3.

3	Replace the drum cartridges.
	   a Replace the drum cartridges. See "Replacing the Drum Cartridges."
	   b After you replace the drum cartridges, click **Chart Print** on the **Diagnosis** tab.
	   c Click **4 Colors Configuration Chart**.
	     The 4 Colors Configuration Chart is printed.
	
	 Does this solve your problem?
		The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

Pitched color dots

Action		Yes	No

1	Locate the cause of the problem using the Pitch Configuration Chart.
	   a Launch the **Tool Box**, and click **Chart Print** on the **Diagnosis** tab.
	   b Click **Pitch Configuration Chart**.
	     The Pitch Configuration Chart is printed.
	   c Compare the pitch of the color spots on your output with that on the Pitch Configuration Chart, and locate the cause of the problem.
	
	 Is the cause of the problem located?
		Proceed to the action corresponding to the location of the problem:
		
		 • Drum cartridge - 2
		
		 • Fusing unit - 3
		
		 • Transfer belt unit - 4
			Contact Dell.

Action		Yes	No
2	Replace the drum cartridges.	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.
	a Replace the drum cartridges. See "Replacing the Drum Cartridges."		
	b After you replace the drum cartridges, click **Chart Print** on the **Diagnosis** tab.		
	c Click **Pitch Configuration Chart**.		
	The Pitch Configuration Chart is printed.		
	Does this solve your problem?		
3	Replace the fusing unit.	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.
	a Replace the fusing unit. See "Replacing the Fusing Unit."		
	b After you replace the fusing unit, click **Chart Print** on the **Diagnosis** tab.		
	c Click **Pitch Configuration Chart**.		
	The Pitch Configuration Chart is printed.		
	Does this solve your problem?		
4	Replace the transfer belt unit, the 2nd BTR, and the retard roller.	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.
	a Replace the transfer belt unit, the 2nd BTR, and the retard roller. See "Replacing the Transfer Belt Unit, the 2nd Belt Transfer Roller (2nd BTR), and the Retard Roller."		
	b After you replace the transfer belt unit, the 2nd BTR, and the retard roller, click **Chart Print** on the **Diagnosis** tab.		
	c Click **Pitch Configuration Chart**.		
	The Pitch Configuration Chart is printed.		
	Does this solve your problem?		

Vertical blanks

Action		Yes	No
1	Clean inside the printer by using the cleaning rod. See "Cleaning the Raster Optical Scanner (ROS) Window."	The task is complete.	Go to action 2.
	a After the cleaning is completed, click **Chart Print** on the **Diagnosis** tab.		
	b Click **Pitch Configuration Chart**.		
	The Pitch Configuration Chart is printed.		
	Does this solve your problem?		

Action		Yes	No

2	Ensure the light path is not covered.
	  a Remove the drum cartridges, and keep them in the dark place. See "Removing the Drum Cartridge."
	  b Check the light path, and then remove the shielding.
	  c Re-install the drum cartridges. See "Installing a Drum Cartridge."
	  d Launch the **Tool Box**, and click **Chart Print** on the **Diagnosis** tab.
	  e Click **Pitch Configuration Chart**.
	
	  The Pitch Configuration Chart is printed.
	
	Does this solve your problem?
		The task is complete.	Go to action 3.

3	Replace the drum cartridges.
	  a Replace the drum cartridges. See "Replacing the Drum Cartridges."
	  b After you replace the drum cartridges, click **Chart Print** on the **Diagnosis** tab.
	  c Click **Pitch Configuration Chart**.
	
	  The Pitch Configuration Chart is printed.
	
	Does this solve your problem?
		The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

Ghosting

Action		Yes	No

1	Locate the cause of the problem using the Ghost Configuration Chart.
	  a Launch the **Tool Box**, and click **Chart Print** on the **Diagnosis** tab.
	  b Click **Ghost Configuration Chart**.
	
	  The Ghost Configuration Chart is printed.
	
	Is the type of the problem identified?
		Proceed to the action corresponding to the type of ghosting.
		
		Positive ghost - 2a
		
		Negative ghost - 2b
			Contact Dell.

2a	Replace the drum cartridges.
	  a Replace the drum cartridges. See "Replacing the Drum Cartridges."
	  b After you replace the drum cartridges, click **Chart Print** on the **Diagnosis** tab.
	  c Click **Ghost Configuration Chart**.
	
	  The Ghost Configuration Chart is printed.
	
	Does this solve your problem?
		The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

2b	If you are using non-recommended print media, use the print media recommended for the printer. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 3.

Action		Yes	No

3	Adjust the transfer bias.
	
	  a On the operator panel, press the ⓘ (**Information**) button and tap the `Tools` tab → tap `Admin Settings`→ `Maintenance`→ `Adjust Transfer Belt Unit`.
	
	  b Tap `K Offset` or `YMC Offset`, and then decrease the value.
	
	  c Launch the **Tool Box**, and click **Chart Print** on the **Diagnosis** tab.
	
	  d Click **Ghost Configuration Chart**.
	
	    The Ghost Configuration Chart is printed.
	
	Does this solve your problem?
		The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

Light-induced fatigue

Action		Yes	No

1	Check the light fatigue pattern using the Pitch Configuration Chart.
	
	  a Launch the **Tool Box**, and click **Chart Print** on the **Diagnosis** tab.
	
	  b Click **Pitch Configuration Chart**.
	
	    The Pitch Configuration Chart is printed.
	
	Does the pattern on the output match with that on the Pitch Configuration Chart?
		Go to action 2.	Contact Dell.

2	Replace the drum cartridges. See "Replacing the Drum Cartridges." Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

Fog

Action		Yes	No

1	Replace the drum cartridges.
	   a Replace the drum cartridges. See "Replacing the Drum Cartridges."
	   b After you replace the drum cartridges, click **Chart Print** on the **Diagnosis** tab.
	   c Click **4 Colors Configuration Chart**.
	   The 4 Colors Configuration Chart is printed.
	Does this solve your problem?
		The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

Bead-Carry-Out (BCO)

Action		Yes	No

1	If the printer is installed in a high altitude location, set the altitude of the location.
	   a Launch the **Tool Box**, and click **Service Tools** on the **Printer Maintenance** tab.
	   b Under **Adjust Altitude**, select the value close to the altitude of the location where the printer is installed.
	Does this solve your problem?
		The task is complete.	Go to action 2.

2	Replace the drum cartridges. See "Replacing the Drum Cartridges." Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

Jagged characters

Action	Yes	No
1 Set **Screen** to **Fineness** in the printer driver. **a** On the **Others** tab, set **Screen** under **Items:** to **Fineness**. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 2.
2 Set **Print Mode** to **High Quality** in the printer driver. **a** On the **Graphics** tab, select **High Quality** from **Print Mode**. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 3.
3 Enable **Bitmap Smoothing** in the printer driver. **a** On the **Others** tab, set **Bitmap Smoothing** under **Items:** to **On**. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 4.
4 Enable **Print Page Mode** in the printer driver. **a** On the **Others** tab, set **Print Page Mode** under **Items:** to **On**. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 5.
5 If using a downloaded font, ensure that the font is recommended for the printer, operating system, and the application being used. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

Banding

Action	Yes	No

1 Locate the cause of the problem using the Pitch Configuration Chart.
    a Launch the **Tool Box**, and click **Chart Print** on the **Diagnosis** tab.
    b Click **Pitch Configuration Chart**.
    The Pitch Configuration Chart is printed.
Is the cause of the problem located?
	Proceed to the action corresponding to the location of the problem:
	• Drum cartridge - 2
	• Fusing unit - 3
	• Transfer belt unit - 4
		Contact Dell.

	Action	Yes	No
2	Replace the drum cartridges.	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.
	a Replace the drum cartridges. See "Replacing the Drum Cartridges."		
	b After you replace the drum cartridges, click **Chart Print** on the **Diagnosis** tab.		
	c Click **Pitch Configuration Chart**.		
	The Pitch Configuration Chart is printed.		
	Does this solve your problem?		
3	Replace the fusing unit.	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.
	a Replace the fusing unit. See "Replacing the Fusing Unit."		
	b After you replace the fusing unit, click **Chart Print** on the **Diagnosis** tab.		
	c Click **Pitch Configuration Chart**.		
	The Pitch Configuration Chart is printed.		
	Does this solve your problem?		
4	Replace the transfer belt unit, the 2nd BTR, and the retard roller.	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.
	a Replace the transfer belt unit, the 2nd BTR, and the retard roller. See "Replacing the Transfer Belt Unit, the 2nd Belt Transfer Roller (2nd BTR), and the Retard Roller."		
	b After you replace the transfer belt unit, the 2nd BTR, and the retard roller, click **Chart Print** on the **Diagnosis** tab.		
	c Click **Pitch Configuration Chart**.		
	The Pitch Configuration Chart is printed.		
	Does this solve your problem?		

Auger mark

	Action	Yes	No
1	Locate the cause of the problem using the Pitch Configuration Chart.	Go to action 2.	Contact Dell.
	a Launch the **Tool Box**, and click **Chart Print** on the **Diagnosis** tab.		
	b Click **Pitch Configuration Chart**.		
	The Pitch Configuration Chart is printed.		
	Does the output match with the pattern for auger mark?		
2	Replace the drum cartridges. See "Replacing the Drum Cartridges."	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.
	Does this solve your problem?		

Wrinkled/Stained paper

Action		Yes	No
1	Verify that the correct print media is being used. See "Supported Paper Types." If not, use the print media recommended for the printer. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	If printing on an envelope, go to action 2. If printing on print media other than envelopes, contact Dell.
2	Check the wrinkle. Is the wrinkle within 30 mm of the four edges of the envelope?	This type of wrinkle is considered normal. Your printer is not at fault.	Go to action 3.
3	Load the envelopes in the MPF properly. For details, see "Loading an Envelope in the MPF." Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

Damage on the leading edge of paper

Action		Yes	No
1	When you use the MPF, reverse the paper and then try again. When you use any of the trays, change the paper and then try again. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	(MPF) Go to action 2. (trays) Contact Dell.
2	Change the paper with another one and then try again. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 3.
3	Use any of the trays in place of the MPF. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

Jam/Alignment Problems

> **NOTE:** Some of the following procedures that use the **Tool Box** can also be performed using the operator panel or **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**. For information on how to use the operator panel and **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**, see "Understanding the Printer Menus" and "Dell™ Printer Configuration Web Tool."

- The top and side margins are incorrect
- Color registration is out of alignment
- Images are skewed
- Tray1/Optional 550-Sheet Feeder Misfeed Jam
- MPF Misfeed Jam
- Regi Jam (Exit Sensor On JAM)
- Exit Jam (Exit Sensor Off JAM)
- Tray1/Optional 550-Sheet Feeder Multi-feed Jam
- MPF Multi-feed Jam

The top and side margins are incorrect
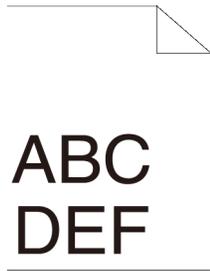
Action		Yes	No
1	Ensure that the margins are set correctly on the application being used. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

Color registration is out of alignment
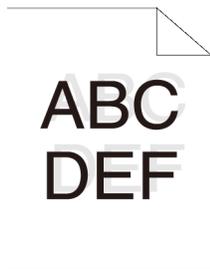
Action		Yes	No
1	Adjust the settings of the paper type on the printer driver to those of the tray. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 2.

Action		Yes	No
2	Execute auto color registration adjustment. **a** On the operator panel, press the ⓘ (**Information**) button and tap the `Tools` tab → tap `Admin Settings`→ `Maintenance`→ `Color Reg Adjust`→ `Auto Correct`→ `Start`. OR **a** Launch the **Tool Box**, and click **Service Tools** on the **Printer Maintenance** tab. **b** Click **Start** under **Auto Correct** in **Color Registration Adjustments**. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 3.
3	Do you have spare drum cartridges?	Go to action 4a.	Go to action 4b.
4a	Replace the drum cartridges. **a** Replace the drum cartridges. See "Replacing the Drum Cartridges." **b** Launch the **Tool Box**, and click **Service Tools** on the **Printer Maintenance** tab. **c** Click **Start** under **Print Color Regi Chart** in **Color Registration Adjustments**. The Color Regi Configuration Chart is printed. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.
4b	Print the Color Regi Configuration Chart and manually correct the color registration. **a** Launch the **Tool Box**, and click **Service Tools** on the **Printer Maintenance** tab. **b** Click **Start** under **Print Color Regi Chart** in **Color Registration Adjustments**. The Color Regi Configuration Chart is printed. **c** Identify the offset values from the chart and specify each value for process, left, and right colors in **Enter Number**. See "Adjusting Color Registration" for details. **d** Click **Apply New Settings**. **e** Click **Start** under **Print Color Regi Chart** to print the Color Regi Configuration Chart again. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

Images are skewed
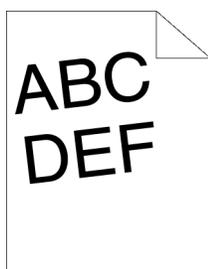
Action		Yes	No
1	Adjust the paper guides properly. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 2.

Action		Yes	No
2	Install the transfer belt unit according to an appropriate procedure. See "Installing a Transfer Belt Unit." Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

Tray1/Optional 550-Sheet Feeder Misfeed Jam

Action		Yes	No
1	Ensure that tray1 or the optional 550-sheet feeder is properly inserted. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Proceed to the action corresponding to the type of the print media being used: • Thick - 2a • Thin - 2b • Coated - 2c If using paper other than the above, go to action 2d, 2e.
2a	Use thick paper that is 216 g/m^2 or less. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 3a.
2b	Use thin paper that is 60 g/m^2 or more. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 3a.
2c	Load coated paper one sheet at a time. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 3b.
2d	Ensure that the print media is not curled. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 3a.
2e	Is the print media damp?	Go to action 3c.	Go to action 3a.
3a	Fan the print media. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 3b.
3b	Wipe the retard roller in tray1 or the optional 550-sheet feeder with a cloth moistened with water. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 4b.
3c	Turn over the print media. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 4a.
4a	Use print media that is not damp. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 3a.
4b	Replace the drum cartridges. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

MPF Misfeed Jam

	Action	Yes	No
1	Ensure that the MPF is properly inserted. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Proceed to the action corresponding to the type of the print media being used: • Thick - 2a • Thin - 2b • Coated - 2c • Envelope - 2d If using paper other than the above, go to action 2e.
2a	Use thick paper that is 216 g/m^2 or less. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 3a.
2b	Use thin paper that is 60 g/m^2 or more. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 3a.
2c	Load coated paper one sheet at a time. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 3b.
2d	Ensure that the envelope is properly loaded in the MPF as instructed in "Loading an Envelope in the MPF." Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 3c.
2e	Is the print media damp?	Go to action 3d.	Go to action 3a.
3a	Fan the print media. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 3b.
3b	Wipe the retard roller in the MPF with a cloth moistened with water. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 4b.
3c	If the envelope is deformed, correct it or use another envelope. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 3a.
3d	Turn over the print media. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 4a.
4a	Use print media that is not damp. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 3a.
4b	Replace the drum cartridges. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

Regi Jam (Exit Sensor On JAM)

	Action	Yes	No
1	Ensure that the drum cartridges are installed correctly. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 2.
2	Replace the drum cartridges. See "Replacing the Drum Cartridges." Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 3.

Action		Yes	No
3	Ensure that the fusing unit is set properly. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 4.

4	Replace the fusing unit.
	
	   a Replace the fusing unit. See "Removing the Fusing Unit."
	   b After you replace the fusing unit, click **Chart Print** on the **Diagnosis** tab.
	   c Click **Pitch Configuration Chart**.
	
	   The Pitch Configuration Chart is printed.
	
	Does this solve your problem?
		The task is complete.	Go to action 5.

5	Ensure that the transfer belt unit is installed correctly. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 6.

6	Replace the transfer belt unit, the 2nd BTR, and the retard roller.
	
	   a Replace the transfer belt unit, the 2nd BTR, and the retard roller. See "Replacing the Transfer Belt Unit, the 2nd Belt Transfer Roller (2nd BTR), and the Retard Roller."
	   b After you replace the transfer belt unit, the 2nd BTR, and the retard roller, click **Chart Print** on the **Diagnosis** tab.
	   c Click **Pitch Configuration Chart**.
	
	   The Pitch Configuration Chart is printed.
	
	Does this solve your problem?
		The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

Exit Jam (Exit Sensor Off JAM)

Action		Yes	No
1	Ensure the fusing unit is installed correctly. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 2.

2	Replace the fusing unit.
	
	   a Replace the fusing unit. See "Replacing the Fusing Unit."
	   b After you replace the fusing unit, click **Chart Print** on the **Diagnosis** tab.
	   c Click **Pitch Configuration Chart**.
	
	   The Pitch Configuration Chart is printed.
	
	Does this solve your problem?
		The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

Tray1/Optional 550-Sheet Feeder Multi-feed Jam

Action		Yes	No
1	Ensure that tray1 or the optional 550-sheet feeder is properly inserted. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	If using coated paper, go to action 2. If using other type of print media, go to action 3.
2	Load coated paper one sheet at a time. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 4.

Action		Yes	No
3	Use print media that is not damp. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 4.
4	Fan the print media. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 5.
5	Wipe the retard roller in tray1 or the optional 550-sheet feeder where the multi-feed occurred with a cloth moistened with water. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

MPF Multi-feed Jam

Action		Yes	No
1	Ensure the media type you are using. If using coated paper, go to action 2. If using other type of print media, go to action 3.	-	-
2	Load coated paper one sheet at a time. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 4.
3	Use print media that is not damp. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 4.
4	Fan the print media. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 5.
5	Wipe the retard roller in the MPF where the multi-feed occurred with a cloth moistened with water. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

Noise

Action		Yes	No
1	To specify the cause of the noise, perform the Auto Registration Adjustment. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 2.

2	Replace the transfer belt unit, the 2nd BTR, and the retard roller.
	
	  a Replace the transfer belt unit, the 2nd BTR, and the retard roller. See "Replacing the Transfer Belt Unit, the 2nd Belt Transfer Roller (2nd BTR), and the Retard Roller."
	  b After you replace the transfer belt unit, the 2nd BTR, and the retard roller, click **Chart Print** on the **Diagnosis** tab.
	  c Click **Pitch Configuration Chart**.
	    The Pitch Configuration Chart is printed.
	
	Does this solve your problem?
		The task is complete.	Go to action 3.

Action		Yes	No

3	Replace the fusing unit.
	   a Replace the fusing unit. See "Replacing the Fusing Unit."
	   b After you replace the fusing unit, click **Chart Print** on the **Diagnosis** tab.
	   c Click **Pitch Configuration Chart**.
	   The Pitch Configuration Chart is printed.
	
	Does this solve your problem?
		The task is complete.	Go to action 4.

4	Replace the waste toner box. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 5.
5	Replace the drum cartridges. Does this solve your problem?	The task is complete.	Go to action 6.
6	Replace the toner cartridge (K). See "Replacing the Toner Cartridges."	The task is complete. (The toner cartridge (K) you are using has been damaged. Replace it with a new one.)	Go to action 7.
7	Replace the toner cartridge (Y). See "Replacing the Toner Cartridges."	The task is complete. (The toner cartridge (Y) you are using has been damaged. Replace it with a new one.)	Go to action 8.
8	Replace the toner cartridge (M). See "Replacing the Toner Cartridges."	The task is complete. (The toner cartridge (M) you are using has been damaged. Replace it with a new one.)	Go to action 9.
9	Replace the toner cartridge (C). See "Replacing the Toner Cartridges."	The task is complete. (The toner cartridge (C) you are using has been damaged. Replace it with a new one.)	Contact Dell.

Copy Problems

Problem	Action
A document loaded in the DADF cannot be copied.	Ensure that the DADF cover is firmly closed.
	Ensure that the release lever is properly positioned.

Problem	Action
Vertical blanks or streaks appear on the output when scanned using the DADF.	Clean the DADF glass.
	Clean inside the printer by using the cleaning rod. See "Cleaning the Raster Optical Scanner (ROS) Window."

Fax Problems

Problem	Action
The printer is not working, there is no display and the buttons are not working.	Unplug the power cord and plug it in again.
	Ensure that there is power to the electrical receptacle.
No dial tone sounds.	Check that the phone line is connected properly. See "Connecting the Telephone Line."
	Check that the phone socket in the wall is working by plugging in another phone.
	Diagnose the fax connection. See "Diagnosing the Fax Connection."
The numbers stored in the memory do not dial correctly.	Ensure that the numbers are stored in the memory correctly.
	Print a Phone Book list.
The document does not feed into the printer.	Ensure that the document is not wrinkled and you are putting it in correctly. Check that the document is of the right size, not too thick or thin.
	Ensure that the DADF cover is firmly closed.
Faxes are not received automatically.	The FAX mode should be selected.
	Ensure that there is paper in the paper tray.
	Check to see if the display shows MFP Memory Full.
	If the time interval specified for the following features is too long, change the time interval shorter such as 30 seconds. • Auto Rec Fax • Auto Rec TEL/FAX • Auto Rec Ans/FAX
	Diagnose the fax connection. See "Diagnosing the Fax Connection."
The printer does not send faxes.	Sending Fax should show up on the display.
	Check the other fax machine you are sending to, to see if it can receive your fax.
	Check the dialing type for Tone or Pulse.
	Ensure that the document is loaded in the DADF or on the document glass.
	Diagnose the fax connection. See "Diagnosing the Fax Connection."
The incoming fax has blank spaces or is received in poor quality.	Check your printer by making a copy.
	The toner cartridge may be empty. Replace the toner cartridge. See "Replacing the Toner Cartridges."
	A noisy phone line can cause line errors. Set the fax modem speed to a slower speed.
	The fax machine sending you the fax may be faulty.
Some of the words on an incoming fax are stretched.	The fax machine sending you the fax had a temporary document jam.
There are lines on the documents you send.	Check the surface of the document glass and DADF glass for marks and clean it. See "Cleaning the Scanner."

Problem	Action
The printer dials a number, but the connection with another fax machine fails.	The other fax machine may be turned off, out of paper, or cannot answer incoming calls. Speak with the other machine operator and ask her/him to sort out the problem.
Documents are not stored in the memory.	There may not be enough memory to store the document. If the display shows a `MFP Memory Full` message, delete any documents you no longer need from the memory and then restore the document, or wait for the job in progress (e.g., a fax transmission or reception) to complete.
Blank areas appear at the bottom of each page or on other pages, with a small strip of text at the top.	You may have chosen the wrong paper settings in the user option setting. See "Print Media Guidelines."
The printer will not send or receive faxes.	Ensure that the country code is set correctly. Press the ⓘ (Information) button and tap the `Tools` tab→tap `Admin Settings`→ `Fax Settings`→`Fax Line Settings`→`Country`.
	Check the dialing type for Tone or Pulse.
	Check that the cables are connected properly.
	If the telephone line cord is connected to the printer via any device such as an answering machine and a computer, remove the device and directly connect the telephone line cord to the printer.
	Ensure that `Junk Fax Setup` is set to `off`.
An error often occurs during a fax transmission or reception.	Reduce the modem speed. Press the ⓘ (Information) button and tap the `Tools` tab→tap `Admin Settings`→`Fax Settings`→ `Transmission Defaults`→`Modem Speed`.
The printer receive faxes, but it does not print.	Check the toner level.
	Ensure that there is paper in the paper tray.
	Ensure that `Sent Fax Forward` is set to `off`.
	Check whether the printer is in the secure receiving mode. If this mode is turned on, enter the correct password or turn off this mode to print faxes in memory.

Scanning Problems

Problem	Action
The scanner does not work.	Ensure that you place the document to be scanned facing down from the document glass, or facing up in the DADF.
	There may not be enough available memory to hold the document you want to scan. Lower the scan resolution rate and then try scanning again.
	Check that the USB or Ethernet cable is connected properly.
	Ensure that the USB or Ethernet cable is not defective. Switch the cable with a known good cable. If necessary, replace the cable.
	If using the network TWAIN or Windows Image Acquisition (WIA) driver, check that the Ethernet cable is connected properly and the IP address of the printer is set correctly. To check the IP address, see "Verifying the IP Settings."
	Check that the scanner is configured correctly. Check the application you want to use to make certain that the scanner job is being sent to the correct port.

Problem	Action
	Ensure that the scanner sharing feature is disabled when you use Mac OS X before you scan documents via an ICA compatible application such as Image Capture. The printer does not support the scanner sharing feature of Mac OS X. Select a printer which is directly connected to the computer via USB or wired /wireless LAN and scan documents.
The printer scans very slowly.	Graphics are scanned more slowly than text when using the `Scan to E-mail` or `Scan to Network` feature.
	Communication speed becomes slow in scan mode because of the large amount of memory required to analyze and reproduce the scanned image.
	Scanning images at a high resolution takes more time than scanning at a low resolution.
Document misfeeds or multiple feeds occur in the DADF.	Check whether the DADF roller assembly is installed properly.
	Ensure the document's paper type meets the specifications for the printer. See "Supported Paper Types" for more information.
	Check whether the document is properly loaded in the DADF.
	Ensure that the document guides are adjusted properly.
	Ensure that the number of document sheets do not exceed the maximum capacity of the DADF.
	Ensure that the document is not curled.
	Fan the document well before loading it in the DADF.
Vertical blanks or streaks appear on the output when scanned using the DADF.	Clean the DADF glass.
	Clean inside the printer by using the cleaning rod. See "Cleaning the Raster Optical Scanner (ROS) Window."
A smear appears at the same location on the output when scanned using the document glass.	Clean the document glass.
Images are skewed.	Ensure that the document is loaded straight in the DADF or on the document glass.
Diagonal lines appear jagged when scanned using the DADF.	If the document uses thick media, try scanning it from the document glass.
Message appears on your computer screen: • "Device can't be set to the H/W mode you want." • "Port is being used by another program." • "Port is Disabled." • "Scanner is busy receiving or printing data. When the current job is completed, try again." • "Invalid handle." • "Scanning has failed."	There may be a copying or printing job in progress. When the current job is complete, try the job again.
	The selected port is currently being used. Restart your computer and try again.
	The cable may be improperly connected or the printer may be turned off.
	The scanner driver is not installed or an operating environment is not set up properly.
	Ensure that the port is properly connected and the printer is turned on. Then restart your computer.
	Check that the USB or Ethernet cable is connected properly.

Problem	Action
The printer does not properly transfer scan data to a specified destination via the **Scan to E-mail** or **Scan to Network** feature.	Check if the following settings have been set correctly on the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**. **Scan to Network** Check the following settings under **Address Book**→ **Server Address**: • **Server Address** • **Share Name** • **Server Path** • **Login Name** • **Login Password** **Scan to E-mail** Check the following setting under **Address Book**→ **E-Mail Address**: • **Address**
Cannot scan using WIA on a Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 computer.	Enable WIA on the computer. To enable WIA: **1** Click **Start**, point to **Administrative Tools**, and then click **Services**. **2** Right-click **Windows Image Acquisition (WIA)**, and then click **Start**.
Cannot scan using TWAIN or WIA on a Windows Server 2008 or Windows Server 2008 R2 computer.	Install the Desktop Experience feature on the computer. To install Desktop Experience: **1** Click **Start**, point to **Administrative Tools**, and then click **Server Manager**. **2** Under **Features Summary**, click **Add Features**. **3** Select the **Desktop Experience** check box, click **Next**, and then click **Install**. **4** Restart the computer.

Cannot scan using TWAIN or WIA on a Windows Server 2012 computer.	Install the Desktop Experience feature on the computer.
	To install Desktop Experience:
	1 Click **Server Manager** from the **Start** screen.
	  The **Server Manager** screen appears.
	2 Under **Manage**, click **Add Roles and Features**.
	  Add Roles and Features Wizard appears.
	3 Click **Next** to skip the **Before you begin** page.
	4 Ensure that **Role-based or feature-based installation** is selected, and then click **Next**.
	5 Ensure that **Select a server from the server pool** is selected, select the server under **Server Pool**, and then click **Next**.
	6 Click **Next** to skip the **Select server roles** page.
	7 Select the **Desktop Experience** check box under **User Interfaces and Infrastructure**, and then click **Next**.
	8 Click **Confirmation** from the list on the left.
	9 Select the **Restart the destination server automatically if required** check box, and then click **Install**.
	10 Restart the computer.

Digital Certificate Problems

Symptom	Cause	Action
The certificate import button is disabled.	SSL communication is disabled.	Create a self-signed certificate and enable SSL.
The certificate details button is disabled.		
The certificate cannot be imported.	The time setting is incorrect.	Confirm validity period of the certificate as well as the time setting of the device.
	The certificate file is incorrect.	Confirm whether the password is correct.
		Confirm whether the file type is PKCS#7/#12 or x509CACert (extension: p7b/p12/pfx/cer/crt).
		Confirm whether the attribute information (key Usage/Extended key usage) of the certificate to be imported is set correctly.
	The browser is incorrect.	Use Internet Explorer.
016-404 is displayed when trying to use security functions that require certificates.	The certificate data stored in internal memory is either deleted, corrupt, or is not readable.	Import the certificate and enable the security settings again.
A certificate cannot be set with "Certificate Details".	The validity period is invalid.	The validity period of the certificate is invalid. Confirm whether the time setting of the machine is correct, and whether the validity period of the certificate has expired.
	The certificate path is invalid.	The certificate chain (path validation) of the imported certificate may not be correctly validated. Confirm whether all of the high-level certificates (Trusted/Intermediate) have been imported and are not deleted, and whether the validity period has expired.
Although a certificate was imported, it is not displayed when selecting with "Local Device".	The type of the certificate is incorrect.	To import a certificate for use with the device (own device), import the secret key and a certificate of the PKCS#12 (p12/pfx) format as a pair.
Server validation is not operating correctly.	The certificate chain is incorrect when importing.	Although importing a root certificate (Trusted) to use for server authentication, an Intermediate certificate may be required when validating the path. When executing a certificate file with the certification authority, create the certificate with a format including all paths and then import that certificate.
Digital Signature cannot be selected with the IPsec setting.	The certificate cannot be associated.	Either the certificate has not been imported or the certificate has not been associated for use with Digital Signature of IPsec. Refer to "Setting the Certificate in the IPsec Digital Signature Mode" to set a certificate of IPsec.

Problems With Installed Optional Accessories

If an option does not operate correctly following installation or stops working:

- Turn off the printer, wait for 10 seconds, and then turn on the printer. If this does not fix the problem, unplug the printer, and check the connection between the option and the printer.
- Print the system settings report to see if the option is listed in the Installed Options list. If the option is not listed, re-install it. See "Report / List."
- Ensure the option is selected in the printer driver you are using.

The following table lists printer's option and corrective action for related problem. If the suggested corrective action does not correct the problem, call customer service.

Problem	Action
550-sheet feeder	• Ensure the 550-sheet feeder is correctly installed on the printer. Re-install the feeder. See "Removing the Optional 550-Sheet Feeder" and "Installing the Optional 550-Sheet Feeder."
	• Ensure the print media is loaded correctly. See "Loading Print Media in Tray1 and the Optional 550-Sheet Feeder" for more information.
Wireless adapter	• Ensure the wireless adapter is securely inserted to the correct slot.

Wi-Fi Direct Problems

Problem	Action
The device cannot discover the printer.	The printer may be connected to another device via Wi-Fi Direct. Disconnect the printer and the device. See "Disconnecting Wi-Fi Direct Network."
The printer cannot disconnect from the device even when the procedure in "Disconnecting Wi-Fi Direct Network" has been performed.	The device may be automatically reconnecting to the printer. Reset the passphrase for Wi-Fi Direct and disconnect the device. See "Resetting the Passphrase."
The network mode of the printer cannot be set to **Ad-hoc** mode.	Ensure that **Wi-Fi Direct** is set to **Disable**.
Wi-Fi Direct cannot be set to **Enable**.	Ensure that the network mode is set to **Infrastructure** mode.

Scanner Driver/Printer Utility Problems

Problem	Action
Unable to retrieve the Address Book data from the printer on the Address Book Editor.	Check that the USB or Ethernet cable is connected properly.
	Ensure that the printer is turned on.
	Ensure that the scanner driver is installed on your computer. (The Address Book Editor retrieves the Address Book data via the scanner driver when the printer is connected using a USB cable.)

Problem	Action
The TWAIN driver cannot connect to the printer.	Check that the USB or Ethernet cable is connected properly.
	If using the network connection, check that IP address of the printer is set correctly. To check the IP address, see "Scanning Using the TWAIN Driver."
	Check whether the printer is turned on. If the printer is turned on, reboot it by turning off the printer and then on again.
	If a scan application is running, close the application once, restart the application, and then try scanning again.
The scanner driver has not been registered on your computer and cannot be accessed from ScanButton Manager.	Install the scanner driver. If the scanner driver is installed, uninstall it and then re-install it again. After the installation of the scanner driver is completed, re-install the ScanButton Manager.
Failed to scan your document on the printer via ScanButton Manager.	Ensure that your computer and the printer is properly connected with the USB cable.
	Check whether the printer is turned on. If the printer is turned on, reboot it by turning off the printer and then on again.
	If a scan application is running, close the application once, restart the application, and then try scanning again.
	Network connection cannot be used. Connect with the USB cable.
	Uninstall ScanButton Manager from **Control Panel**→ **Add or Remove Programs** (**Programs and Features** in Windows Vista® and Windows® 7) on your computer and then re-install it again.
Failed to create an image file via ScanButton Manager.	Uninstall ScanButton Manager from **Control Panel**→ **Add or Remove Programs** on your computer and then re-install it again.
Failed to initialize ScanButton Manager.	Uninstall ScanButton Manager from **Control Panel**→ **Add or Remove Programs** on your computer and then re-install it again.
Failed to execute ScanButton Manager.	Uninstall ScanButton Manager from **Control Panel**→ **Add or Remove Programs** on your computer and then re-install it again.
An unexpected error occurred on ScanButton Manager.	Uninstall ScanButton Manager from **Control Panel**→ **Add or Remove Programs** on your computer and then re-install it again.

Other Problems

Problem	Action
Condensation has occurred inside the printer.	This usually occurs within several hours after you heat the room in winter. This also occurs when the printer is operating in a location where relative humidity reaches 85% or more. Adjust the humidity or relocate the printer to an appropriate environment.
A problem has occurred when using Dell Document Hub.	Visit **www.dell.com/dochub** for information about Dell Document Hub.

Contacting Service

When you call for printer service, be prepared to describe the problem you are experiencing or the error message that appears.

You need to know the model type and service tag of your printer. See the label located inside the front cover of your printer.

Appendix

Appendix

Dell™ Technical Support Policy

Technician-assisted technical support requires the cooperation and participation of the customer in the troubleshooting process and provides for restoration of the operating system, software program and hardware drivers to the original default configuration as shipped from Dell, as well as the verification of appropriate functionality of the printer and all Dell-installed hardware. In addition to this technician assisted technical support, online technical support is available at Dell Support. Additional technical support options may be available for purchase.

Dell provides limited technical support for the printer and any Dell-installed software and peripherals. Support for third-party software and peripherals is provided by the original manufacturer, including those purchased and/or installed through Software & Peripherals (DellWare), ReadyWare, and Custom Factory Integration (CFI/DellPlus).

Online Services

You can learn about Dell products and services on the following websites:

www.dell.com

www.dell.com/ap (Asian/Pacific countries only)

www.dell.com/jp (Japan only)

www.euro.dell.com (Europe only)

www.dell.com/la (Latin American and Caribbean countries)

www.dell.ca (Canada only)

You can access Dell Support through the following websites and e-mail addresses:

- Dell Support websites

  dell.com/support

  support.jp.dell.com (Japan only)

  support.euro.dell.com (Europe only)

- Dell Support e-mail addresses

  mobile_support@us.dell.com

  support@us.dell.com

  la-techsupport@dell.com (Latin America and Caribbean countries only)

  apsupport@dell.com (Asian/Pacific countries only)

- Dell Marketing and Sales e-mail addresses

  apmarketing@dell.com (Asian/Pacific countries only)

  sales_canada@dell.com (Canada only)

- Anonymous file transfer protocol (FTP)

  ftp.dell.com

  Log in as user: `anonymous`, and use your e-mail address as your password.

Warranty and Return Policy

Dell Computer Corporation ("Dell") manufactures its hardware products from parts and components that are new or equivalent to new in accordance with industry-standard practices. For information about the Dell warranty for your printer, see **dell.com/support**.

Recycling Information

It is recommended that customers dispose of their used computer hardware, monitors, printers, and other peripherals in an environmentally sound manner. Potential methods include reuse of parts or whole products and recycling of products, components, and/or materials.

For specific information on Dell's worldwide recycling programs, see **www.dell.com/recyclingworldwide**.

Contacting Dell

You can access Support for Home at **dell.com/support**. Select your region, enter the Service Tag of your printer and click Submit to access help tools and information.

You can contact Dell electronically using the following addresses:

- World Wide Web

  www.dell.com

  www.dell.com/ap (Asian/Pacific countries only)

  www.dell.com/jp (Japan only)

  www.euro.dell.com (Europe only)

  www.dell.com/la (Latin American and Caribbean countries)

  www.dell.ca (Canada only)

- Anonymous file transfer protocol (FTP)

  ftp.dell.com

  Log in as user: anonymous, and use your email address as your password.

- Electronic Support Service

  mobile_support@us.dell.com

  support@us.dell.com

  la-techsupport@dell.com (Latin America and Caribbean countries only)

  apsupport@dell.com (Asian/Pacific countries only)

  support.jp.dell.com (Japan only)

  support.euro.dell.com (Europe only)

- Electronic Quote Service

  apmarketing@dell.com (Asian/Pacific countries only)

  sales_canada@dell.com (Canada only)

Index

Symbols

(Copy) button, 109

(Delete) button, 110

(Home) button, 109

(Information) button, 110

(Job Status) button, 110

(Login/Logout) button, 109

(NFC) reader, 110

(Power Saver) button, 109

(Quick Dial-1 / Quick Dial-2) button, 110

(Redial / Pause) button, 109

Numerics

1000Base-T Full-Duplex, 159

100Base-TX Full-Duplex, 159

100Base-TX Half-Duplex, 159

10Base-T Full-Duplex, 159

10Base-T Half-Duplex, 159

2 Sided, 131

2 Sided Copying, 133, 145, 190, 204, 270

2 Sided Print, 131

2 Sided Printing, 134-135, 146, 191-192, 207, 209, 236, 283

2 Sided Scanning, 133, 135, 145, 148, 190-191, 205, 207, 276

2nd BTR, 36, 479

2-Up, 133, 145, 190, 204, 273

4 Colors Configuration Chart, 210

802.1x, 156, 175

A

A4, 297

A4<>Letter Switch, 130, 139, 187, 196, 247

A5, 297

About printer, 35

Access List, 175

Address Book, 121, 123, 138, 177, 407

Address Book Editor, 407

Ad-Hoc, 168

Adjust 2nd BTR, 135, 149

Adjust Altitude, 136, 151, 187, 198

Adjust Fusing Unit, 136, 150, 251

Adjust Transfer Belt Unit, 135, 149, 250

Adjusting color registration, 502

Admin Settings, 215

Administrator Account, 166

AirPrint, 156, 167, 321

Alert Tone, 130, 139, 187, 194

Alignment Chart, 211

All Tones, 130, 139

Altitude, 460

Ans Machine/Fax, 146

Appendix, 563

Apply New Settings, 124

Asset Tag Number, 117, 128

Assigning IP address, 71

Audio Tone, 186, 193

Authenticate Error Trap, 166

Authentication System, 156

Auto Clear Alert Tone, 130, 139, 187, 194

Auto Color To Mono Print, 137, 249

Auto Correct, 150, 197

Auto Exposure, 133, 135, 144, 148, 190, 203, 206, 273, 277

Auto Exposure Level, 133, 135, 144, 148, 190, 203, 206

Auto Log Print, 130, 139, 186, 195, 243

Forwarding E-mail Address, 134, 146

Forwarding Number, 134, 146

Front cover, 35

Front USB port, 35

FTP, 155, 159, 161

FTP Client, 155, 166

Function Enabled, 142, 254
  Scan to E-mail, 142

Function Enabled - Copy, 142

Function Enabled - Fax, 142

Fusing unit, 36, 477, 514, 521

G

Gateway Address, 160, 188, 201

Get Environment Sensor Info, 211

Ghost Configuration Chart, 210

Google Cloud Print, 156, 159, 167, 321

Group Dial, 216

H

Hex Dump, 131, 140, 221

Home Screen, 111

Host I/F, 128-129

Host Name, 128-129, 164, 172

How to install option, 45

How to remove option, 507

How to set up, 30

How to use printer, 29

HTTP, 155, 161

HTTP-SSL/TLS Communication, 434

I

ID, 128-129

ID Copy, 132, 274, 334

Identifying print media, 297

Ignore Form Feed, 131, 140

Image Compression, 135, 148, 191, 206

Image Enhance, 131, 140

Image Types, 135, 191, 208, 284

Important Information, 30

Impression Number, 129

Infrastructure, 168

Initialize NIC NVRAM Memory and restart
  printer, 170

Initialize Print Meter, 197, 252

Initialize PrintMeter, 151

Installing optional 550-Sheet Feeder, 45

Installing optional accessories, 45

Installing optional wireless adapter, 50

Interfaces, 459

Interval of Redial, 134, 147, 192, 209

Invalid Key Tone, 129, 138, 186, 193

IP Address, 71, 117, 120, 122, 153, 160, 166, 172,
  174-175, 188, 201

IP Address Mode, 188, 201

IP Filter (IPv4), 156, 175

IP filter setup, 162

IPP, 154, 159, 161

IPsec, 174, 437

IPsec Settings, 156, 174

IPv4, 166, 174

IPv6, 122, 154, 161, 166, 174

J

Job Completed Tone, 129, 139, 186, 194

Job History, 138, 188, 213

Job List, 120, 128

Job Name, 128-129

Job Status, 128

Job Submitted Time, 128-129

Job Time-out, 131, 140, 187, 195, 258

Job Type, 128-129

Junk Fax Setup, 134, 146, 191, 209, 235

PS Fonts List, 138, 188

PS Job Time-out, 131

PS printer driver, 80, 83

PS Settings, 131

Public Mail Box Print, 266, 311-312

Q

Quantity, 131, 140, 220, 267, 281

Quick Launch Utility, 406

Quick Reference Guide, 29

R

RAM Disk, 130, 139, 186, 195

Rear cover, 36

Receive Mode, 133, 146, 191, 208, 234

Receive Time-Out, 161

Recommended paper, 294

Reconfirm Recipients, 132

Recurrence, 132, 143

Recycled, 136, 149, 250-251

Red Hat, 97

Red Hat Enterprise Linux, 97, 459

Redial Attempts, 134, 147, 192, 209

Reduce / Enlarge, 132, 144, 189, 202

Reduce/Enlarge, 271

Re-enter Password, 142

Refresh, 124

Registration Adjustments, 197

Regular, 136

Relative humidity, 460

Remote Receive, 134, 146, 192, 209

Remote Receive Tone, 134, 146, 192, 209

Remove Blank Page, 287, 289

Removing optional 550-sheet feeder, 507

Removing optional wireless adapter, 510

Removing options, 507

Report 2 Sided Print, 130, 139, 187, 196

Reports, 138, 215

Resend Delay, 134, 147, 192, 209

Reset Defaults, 151, 197

Reset Print Server, 170

Resident fonts, 445

Resident scalable fonts, 445

Resolution, 133, 135, 145, 147, 190-191, 205-206, 275, 280

Restore Settings, 124

Retard roller, 479

Return policy, 564

Right frame, 123

Right side cover, 35

Ring Tone Volume, 133, 146, 191, 208, 234

RSA BSAFE, 25

S

Safety information, 30

Scalable fonts, 444

Scan, 285

Scan Defaults, 135, 190

Scan Settings Tool, 343

Scan to Dell Document Hub, 159

Scan to E-mail, 131, 274

Scan to Network, 132, 274, 347

Scan to PC, 132, 275, 338

Scan to USB, 132, 275

Scan to USB Memory, 360

Scan to WSD, 159, 279, 340

ScanButton Manager, 407

Search for Files, 285

Search Time-Out, 172

Secure Fax Receive, 267

Secure Print, 267, 311-312

Secure Receive, 235, 390

Secure Receive Set, 132, 142

U

V

W

Wireless Adapter, 50

Wireless adapter socket, 36

Wireless Settings, 153, 168

WPA-Enterprise, 169, 439-440

WPA-PSK, 169

WPS-PBC, 54

WPS-PIN, 54

WSD, 154, 161, 315

WSD Print, 159

X

XPS printer driver, 81, 84

Y

Yellow terminator, 62

YMC Offset, 135